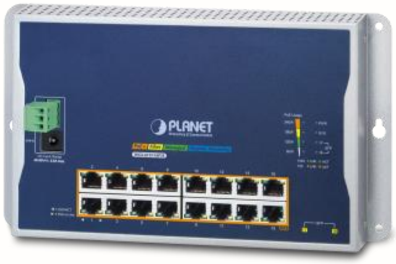
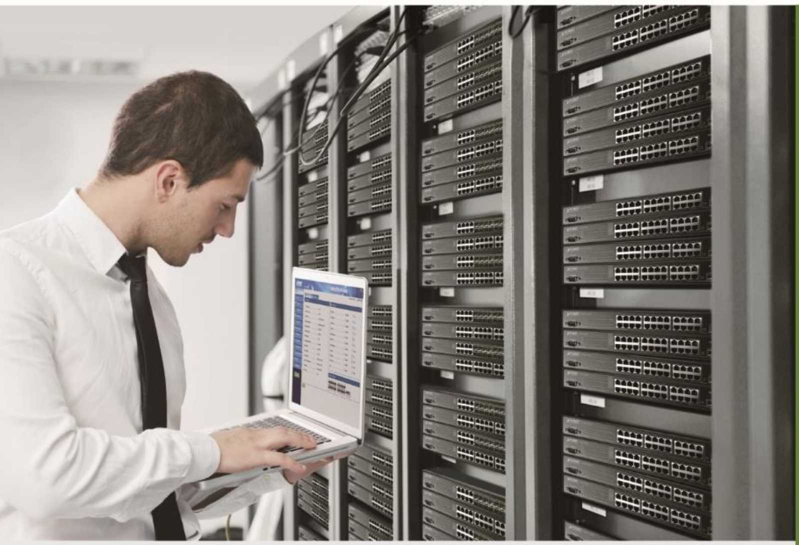
Networking & Communication

User’s Manual

Industrial Wall-mount Managed Gigabit Ethernet Switch

- WGS-4215 Series
- WGS-804HPT





www.PLANET.com.tw

Trademarks

Copyright © PLANET Technology Corp. 2025.

Contents are subject to revision without prior notice.

PLANET is a registered trademark of PLANET Technology Corp. All other trademarks belong to their respective owners.

Disclaimer

PLANET Technology does not warrant that the hardware will work properly in all environments and applications, and makes no warranty and representation, either implied or expressed, with respect to the quality, performance, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. PLANET has made every effort to ensure that this User's Manual is accurate; PLANET disclaims liability for any inaccuracies or omissions that may have occurred.

Information in this User's Manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of PLANET. PLANET assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies that may be contained in this User's Manual. PLANET makes no commitment to update or keep current the information in this User's Manual, and reserves the right to make improvements to this User's Manual and/or to the products described in this User's Manual, at any time without notice.

If you find information in this manual that is incorrect, misleading, or incomplete, we would appreciate your comments and suggestions.

FCC Warning

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the Instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

CE Mark Warning

This device is compliant with Class A of CISPR 32. In a residential environment this equipment may cause radio interference.

Energy Saving Note of the Device

This power required device does not support Standby mode operation. For energy saving, please remove the power cable to disconnect the device from the power circuit. In view of saving the energy and reducing the unnecessary power consumption, it is strongly suggested to remove the power connection for the device if this device is not intended to be active.

WEEE Warning

To avoid the potential effects on the environment and human health as a result of the presence of hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment, end users of electrical and electronic equipment should understand the meaning of the crossed-out wheeled bin symbol. Do not dispose of WEEE as unsorted municipal waste and have to collect such WEEE separately.

Revision

User's Manual of PLANET WGS Managed Series

Models: WGS-804HPT, WGS-4215-8T, WGS-4215-8T2S, WGS-4215-8P2S, WGS-4215-16P2S

Revision: 1.4 (January, 2025)

Part No: EM-WGS-804HPT_WGS-4215 series_v1.4

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION 10

1.1 Packet Contents 10

1.2 Product Description 11

1.3 How to Use This Manual 17

1.4 Product Features 18

1.5 Product Specifications 21

2. INSTALLATION 28

2.1 Hardware Description 28

2.1.1 Switch Front Panel 28

2.1.2 LED Indications 32

2.1.3 Physical Dimensions 39

2.2 Installing the Switch 44

2.2.1 Wall Mount/Magnet Installation 44

2.2.1.1 Wall-mount installation 44

2.2.1.2 Magnet Installation 45

2.2.2 DIN-rail Mount Installation 47

2.2.3 Installing the SFP transceiver 49

3. SWITCH MANAGEMENT 52

3.1 Requirements 52

3.2 Management Access Overview 53

3.3 Web Management 54

3.4 SNMP-based Network Management 55

3.5 PLANET Smart Discovery Utility 56

4. WEB CONFIGURATION 58

4.1 Logging in to the industial Managed Switch 59

4.1 Main Web Page 61

4.1.1 Save Button 63

4.2 System 64

4.2.1 System Information 64

4.2.2 IP Configurations 66

4.2.3 IPv6 Configuration 68
4.2.4 User Configuration 70
4.2.5 Time Settings 72
4.2.5.1 System Time 72
4.2.5.2 SNTP Server Settings 75
4.2.6 Log Management 76
4.2.6.1 Logging Service 76
4.2.6.2 Local Logging 77
4.2.6.3 Remote Syslog 79
4.2.6.4 Logging Message 81
4.2.7 SNMP Management 83
4.2.7.1 SNMP Setting 84
4.2.7.2 SNMP Community 85
4.2.7.3 SNMP View 86
4.2.7.4 SNMP Access Group 87
4.2.7.5 SNMP User 89
4.2.7.6 SNMPv1, 2 Notification Recipients 91
4.2.7.7 SNMPv3 Notification Recipients 92
4.2.7.8 SNMP Engine ID 94
4.2.7.9 SNMP Remote Engine ID 95
4.2.8 RMON 96
4.2.8.1 RMON Statistics 96
4.2.8.2 RMON Event 98
4.2.8.3 RMON Event Log 99
4.2.8.4 RMON Alarm 100
4.2.8.5 RMON History 103
4.2.8.6 RMON History Log 104
4.2.9 Remote Management 105
4.3 Port Management 107
4.3.1 Port Configuration 107
4.3.2 Port Counters 110
4.3.3 Bandwidth Utilization 115
4.3.4 Port Mirroring 116
4.3.5 Jumbo Frame 118
4.3.6 Port Error Disabled Configuration 119
4.3.7 Port Error Disabled Status 121
4.3.8 Protected Ports 121
4.3.9 EEE 124
4.3.10 SFP Module Information 125
4.3.10.1 SFP Module Status 125

4.3.10.2 SFP Module Detail Status 127

4.4 Link Aggregation 128

4.4.1 LAG Setting 130

4.4.2 LAG Management 131

4.4.3 LAG Port Setting....... 132

4.4.4 LACP Setting 134

4.4.5 LACP Port Setting....... 134

4.4.6 LAG Status 136

4.5 VLAN 138

4.5.1 VLAN Overview 138

4.5.2 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN 139

4.5.3 Management VLAN 143

4.5.4 Create VLAN 144

4.5.5 Interface Settings....... 145

4.5.6 Port to VLAN....... 149

4.5.7 Port VLAN Membership 151

4.5.8 Protocol VLAN Group Setting 152

4.5.9 Protocol VLAN Port Setting 154

4.5.10 GVRP Setting 155

4.5.11 GVRP Port Setting 157

4.5.12 GVRP VLAN 158

4.5.13 GVRP Statistics 159

4.5.14 VLAN setting example: 160

4.5.14.1 Two separate 802.1Q VLANs 160

4.5.14.2 VLAN Trunking between two 802.1Q aware switches 164

4.6 Spanning Tree Protocol 167

4.6.1 Theory 167

4.6.2 STP Global Settings 174

4.6.3 STP Port Setting....... 176

4.6.4 CIST Instance Setting....... 179

4.6.5 CIST Port Setting....... 181

4.6.6 MST Instance Setting 183

4.6.7 MST Port Setting 185

4.6.8 STP Statistics 187

4.7 Multicast 188

4.7.1 Properties 188

4.7.2 Multicast Throttling Setting 189

4.7.3 Multicast Profile Setting 190

4.8 IGMP Snooping 192

4.8.1 IGMP Setting 196

4.8.2 IGMP Querier Setting 198

4.8.3 IGMP Static Group.. 199

4.8.4 IGMP Group Table 200

4.8.5 IGMP Router Setting.. 200

4.8.6 IGMP Router Table 202

4.8.7 IGMP Forward All.. 203

4.8.8 IGMP Snooping Statics.. 204

4.8.9 IGMP Filter Setting 206

4.9 MLD Snooping.. 207

4.9.1 MLD Setting.. 207

4.9.2 MLD Static Group 209

4.9.3 MLD Group Table.. 210

4.9.4 MLD Router Setting 210

4.9.5 MLD Router Table.. 212

4.9.6 MLD Forward All 213

4.9.7 MLD Snooping Statics 214

4.9.8 MLD Filter Setting.. 216

4.10 LLDP.. 217

4.10.1 Link Layer Discovery Protocol 217

4.10.2 LLDP Global Setting 217

4.10.3 LLDP Port Setting.. 220

4.10.4 LLDP Local Device 223

4.10.5 LLDP Remote Device 225

4.10.6 MED Network Policy.. 226

4.10.7 MED Port Setting.. 230

4.10.8 LLDP Statistics 233

4.11 MAC Address Table 235

4.11.1 Dynamic Learned.. 235

4.11.2 Dynamic Address Setting.. 237

4.11.3 Static MAC Setting.. 238

4.11.4 MAC Filtering 239

4.12 Quality of Service 240

4.12.1 Understanding QoS 240

4.12.2 General.. 241

4.12.2.1 QoS Properties.. 241

4.12.2.2 QoS Port Settings.. 242

4.12.2.3 Queue Settings.. 243

4.12.2.4 CoS Mapping 244
4.12.2.5 DSCP Mapping 246
4.12.2.6 IP Precedence Mapping 247
4.12.3 QoS Basic Mode 249
4.12.3.1 Global Settings 249
4.12.3.2 Port Settings 250
4.12.4 Bandwidth Control 251
4.12.4.1 Ingress Bandwidth Control 251
4.12.4.2 Egress Bandwidth Control 252
4.12.4.3 Egress Queue 253
4.12.5 Storm Control 254
4.12.5.1 Global Setting 254
4.12.5.2 Port Setting 255
4.12.6 Voice VLAN 257
4.12.6.1 Introduction to Voice VLAN 257
4.12.6.2 Properties 258
4.12.6.3 Telephony OUI MAC Setting 259
4.12.6.4 Telephony OUI Port Setting 261

4.13 Security 262
4.13.1 Access 262
4.13.1.1 Telnet 262
4.13.1.2 SSH 264
4.13.1.3 HTTP 266
4.13.1.4 HTTPs 267
4.13.1.5 Access Method Profile Rules 268
4.13.1.6 Access Rules 270
4.13.2 AAA 271
4.13.2.1 Login List 272
4.13.2.2 Enable List 273
4.13.2.3 RADIUS Server 274
4.13.2.4 TACACS+ Server 277
4.13.3 802.1X 279
4.13.3.1 Understanding IEEE 802.1X Port-based Authentication 280
4.13.3.2 802.1X Setting 283
4.13.3.3 802.1X Port Setting 284
4.13.3.4 Guest VLAN Setting 286
4.13.3.5 Authenticated Host 288
4.13.3.6 Port Security 289
4.13.4 DHCP Snooping 291
4.13.4.1 Global Setting 293

4.13.4.2 VLAN Setting 294
4.13.4.3 Port Setting 295
4.13.4.4 Statistics 297
4.13.4.5 Database Agent 298
4.13.4.6 Rate Limit 300
4.13.4.7 Option82 Global Setting 301
4.13.4.8 Option82 Port Setting 302
4.13.4.9 Option82 Circuit-ID Setting 304
4.13.5 Dynamic ARP Inspection 305
4.13.5.1 Global Setting 305
4.13.5.2 VLAN Setting 306
4.13.5.3 Port Setting 307
4.13.5.4 Statistics 309
4.13.5.5 ARP Rate Limit 310
4.13.6 IP Source Guard 311
4.13.6.1 Port Settings 312
4.13.6.2 Binding Table 314
4.13.7 DoS 315
4.13.7.1 DoS Global Setting 315
4.13.7.2 DoS Port Setting 318
4.13.8 Access Control List 319
4.13.8.1 MAC-based ACL 320
4.13.8.2 MAC-based ACE 321
4.13.8.3 IPv4-based ACL 324
4.13.8.4 IPv4-based ACE 325
4.13.8.5 IPv6-based ACL 330
4.13.8.6 IPv6-based ACE 331
4.13.8.7 ACL Binding 336

4.14 Ring 337
4.14.1 Ring Wizard 338
4.14.2 ERPS 339

4.15 Power over Ethernet 342
4.15.1 PoE Switch Introduction 342
4.15.2 Power over Ethernet Powered Device 343
4.15.3 Power over Ethernet Configuration 345
4.15.4 PoE Status 349
4.15.5 PoE Schedule 350
4.15.6 PD Alive Check 353

4.16 Maintenance 355

4.16.1 Save Configuration 355
4.16.2 Factory Default 356
4.16.3 Reboot Switch 356
4.16.4 Backup Manager 357
4.16.5 Upgrade Manager..358
4.16.6 Dual Image 359
4.17 Diagnostics..360
4.17.1 Cable Diagnostics..360
4.17.2 Ping Test..362
4.17.3 IPv6 Ping Test..363

5. SWITCH OPERATION 364
5.1 Address Table..364
5.2 Learning..364
5.3 Forwarding & Filtering 364
5.4 Store-and-Forward 364
5.5 Auto-Negotiation 365

6. TROUBLESHOOTING..366

APPENDIX A Switch's RJ45 Pin Assignments..368
A.1 1000Mbps, 1000BASE-T 368
A.2 10/100Mbps, 10/100BASE-TX..368

1. INTRODUCTION

Thank you for purchasing PLANET WGS Managed Switch series, which comes with multiple Gigabit Ethernet copper ports, and SFP fiber optic ports, and robust Layer 2 and Layer 4 features. The description of this series is shown below:

WGS-804HPT	Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T Wall-mount Managed Switch with 4-Port PoE+ (-40~75 degrees C)
WGS-4215-8T	Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T Wall-mount Managed Switch (-40~75 degrees C)
WGS-4215-8T2S	Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T + 2-Port 100/1000X SFP Wall-mount Managed Switch (-40~75 degrees C)
WGS-4215-8P2S	Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE+ + 2-Port 100/1000X SFP Wall-mount Managed Switch (-40~75 degrees C)
WGS-4215-16P2S	Industrial 16-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE+ + 2-Port 100/1000X SFP Wall-mount Managed Switch (-10~60 degrees C)

"**Managed Switch**" is used as an alternative name in this user's manual.

1.1 Packet Contents

Open the box of the Managed Switch and carefully unpack it. The box should contain the following items:

Model Name / **Item**	WGS-804HPT	WGS-4215-8T	WGS-4215-8T2S	WGS-4215-8P2S	WGS-4215-16P2S
The Managed Switch	■	■	■	■	■
Quick Installation Guide	■	■	■	■	■
3-pin Terminal Block Connector	■	■	■	■	■
Wall-mounted Kit	■	■	■	■	■
DIN-rail Kit	■	■	■	■	■
Magnet Kit	■	■	■	■	■
RJ45 Dust Cap	8	8	8	8	16
SFP Dust Cap	x	x	2	2	2

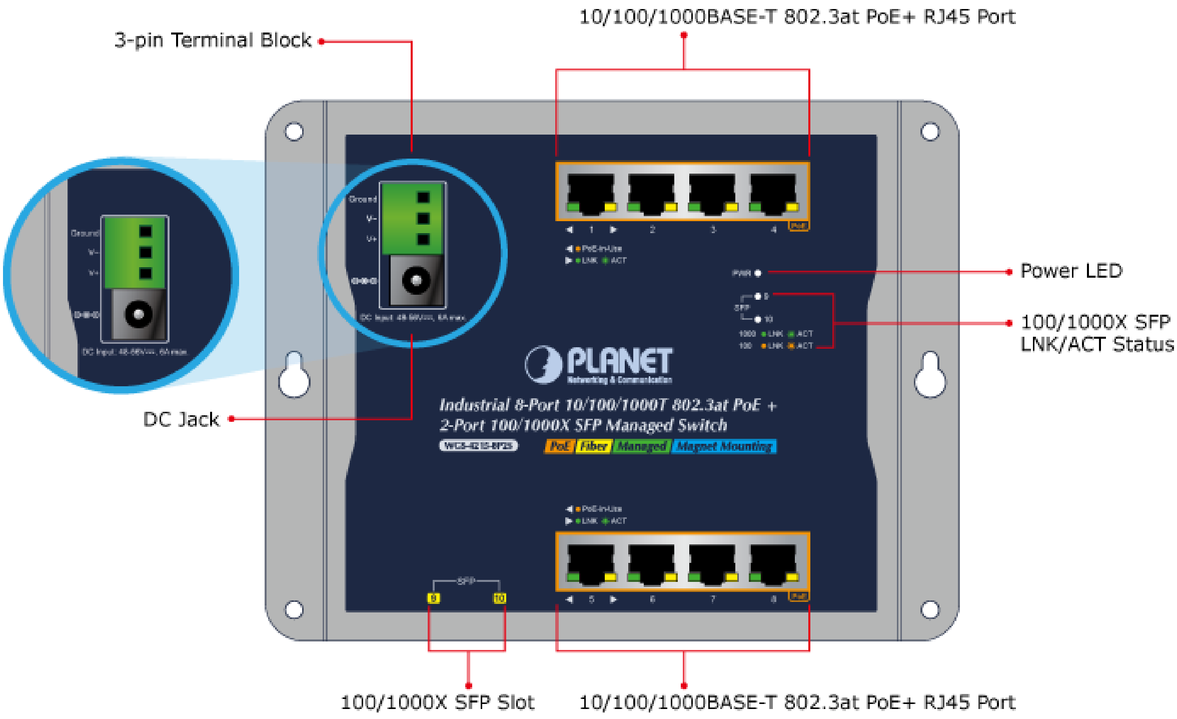
If any item is found missing or damaged, please contact your local reseller for replacement.

1.2 Product Description

Easily-deployed and Expanded Network

Designed to be installed in a wall enclosure or simply mounted on a wall in any convenient location, PLANET WGS managed series, an innovative, **Industrial Wall-mount Managed Gigabit Ethernet Switch,** offers IPv6/IPv4 dual stack management, **intelligent Layer 2 management functions**, and **user-friendly interface**. The WGS managed series is able to operate reliably, stably and quietly in any environment without affecting its performance. Featuring ultra networking speed and operating temperature ranging from **-40** to **75 degrees C (-10** to **60 degrees C for WGS-4215-16P2S)** in a compact but rugged IP30 **(IP40 for WGS-4215-16P2S)** metal housing, the WGS managed series is an ideal solution to meeting the demand for the following network applications:

- Building/Home automation network
- Internet of things (IoT)
- IP surveillance
- Wireless LAN


3-pin Terminal Block
10/100/1000BASE-T 802.3at PoE+ RJ45 Port
Power LED
100/1000X SFP LNK/ACT Status
DC Jack
Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE +
2-Port 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
PoE
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
100/1000X SFP Slot
10/100/1000BASE-T 802.3at PoE+ RJ45 Port

Model Name Item	WGS-804HPT	WGS-4215-8T	WGS-4215-8T2S	WGS-4215-8P2S	WGS-4215-16P2S
10/100/1000BASE-T Copper	8	8	8	8	16
100/1000BASE-X SFP	-	-	2	2	2
Power over Ethernet Standard	IEEE 802.3at PoE+	-	-	IEEE 802.3at PoE+	IEEE 802.3at PoE+
PoE Ports	4	-	-	8	16
PoE Budget	144 watts	-	-	200 watts	240 watts
Power Input	48~54V DC	12~48V DC	12~48V DC	48~54V DC	48~54V DC
Operating Temperature	-40~75°C	-40~75°C	-40~75°C	-40~75°C	-10~60°C

Innovative Wall-mount Installation

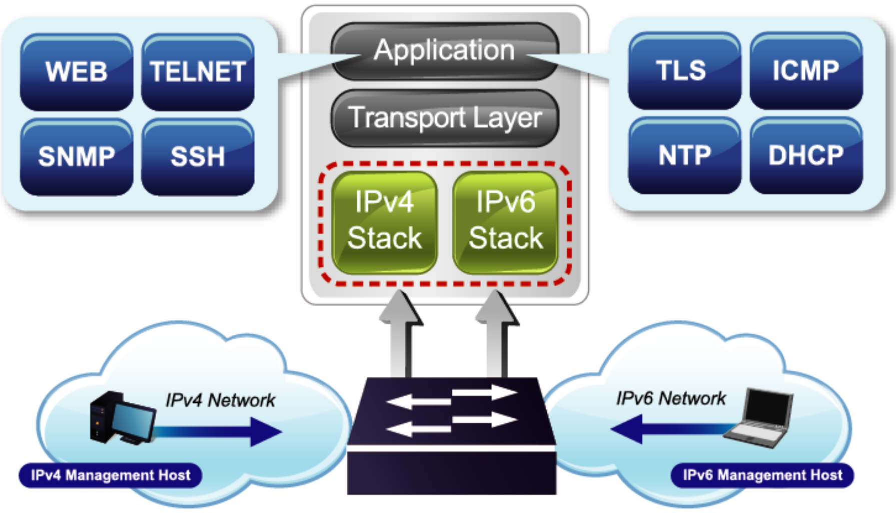
The WGS managed series is specially designed to be installed in a narrow environment, such as a wall enclosure or electric box. The compact, flat and wall-mounted design fits easily in any space-limited location. It adopts the user-friendly "**Front Access**" design, making the installing, cable wiring, LED monitoring and maintenance of the wall-mount managed switch placed in an enclosure very convenient for technicians. The WGS managed series can be installed by **fixed wall mounting**, **magnetic wall mounting** or **DIN rail**, thereby making its usability more flexible.

Dual Power Input for High Availability Network System

The WGS managed series (WGS-804HPT, WGS-4215-8T and WGS-4215-8T2S) features a strong dual power input system incorporated into customer's automation network to enhance system reliability and uptime. In the example below, when the 3-pin terminal block fails to work, the hardware failover function will be activated automatically to keep powering the WGS managed series via the DC plug power alternatively without any loss of operation.

IPv6/IPv4 Dual Stack

Supporting both IPv6 and IPv4 protocols, the WGS managed series helps the SMBs to step in the IPv6 era with the lowest investment as its network facilities need not to be replaced or overhauled if the IPv6 FTTx edge network is set up.


WEB
TELNET
SNMP
SSH
Application
Transport Layer
IPv4 Stack
IPv6 Stack
TLS
ICMP
NTP
DHCP
IPv4 Network
IPv4 Management Host
IPv6 Network
IPv6 Management Host

Robust Layer 2 Features

The WGS managed series can be programmed for advanced switch management functions such as dynamic port link aggregation, 802.1Q VLAN and **Q-in-Q VLAN**, **Multiple Spanning Tree protocol (MSTP)**, Loop and **BPDU Guard**, **IGMP Snooping**, and **MLD Snooping**. Via the link aggregation, the WGS managed series allows the operation of a high-speed trunk to combine with multiple ports such as a 16Gbps fat pipe, and supports fail-over as well. Also, the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is the Layer 2 protocol included to help discover basic information about neighboring devices on the local broadcast domain.

MSTP
QoS
Q-in-Q
LACP
LLDP
IGMP
MLD
L2/L4
Managed Switch
L2/L4
Managed Switch

Efficient Traffic Control

The WGS managed series is loaded with robust QoS features and powerful traffic management to enhance services to business-class data, voice, and video solutions. The functionality includes broadcast / multicast **storm control**, per port **bandwidth control**, IP DSCP QoS priority and remarking. It guarantees the best performance for VoIP and video stream transmission, and empowers the enterprises to take full advantage of the limited network resources.

Powerful Security

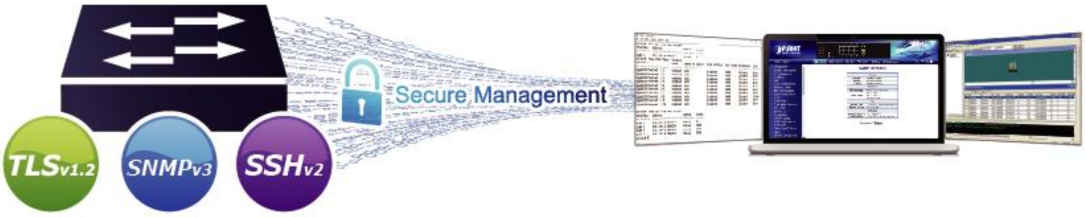
PLANET WGS managed series offers comprehensive **IPv4/IPv6** Layer 2 to Layer 4 **Access Control List (ACL)** for enforcing security to the edge. It can be used to restrict network access by denying packets based on source and destination IP address, TCP/UDP ports or defined typical network applications. Its protection mechanism also comprises **802.1X port-based** user and device authentication, which can be deployed with RADIUS to ensure the port level security and block illegal users. With the **Protected Port** function, communication between edge ports can be prevented to guarantee user privacy. Furthermore, **Port Security** function allows to limit the number of network devices on a given port.

Advanced Network Security

The WGS managed series also provides **DHCP Snooping**, **IP Source Guard** and **Dynamic ARP Inspection** functions to prevent IP snooping from attack and discard ARP packets with invalid MAC address. The network administrators can now construct highly secured corporate networks with considerably less time and effort than before.

Friendly and Secure Management

For efficient management, the WGS managed series is equipped with **Web**, **Telnet** and **SNMP** management interfaces. With the built-in Web-based management interface, the WGS managed series offers an easy-to-use, platform-independent management and configuration facility. By supporting the standard Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), the switch can be managed via any standard management software. For text-based management, the switch can be accessed via Telnet. Moreover, the WGS managed series offers secure remote management by supporting **SSH, SSL** and **SNMPv3** connections which encrypt the packet content at each session.


TLSv1.2
SNMPv3
SSHv2
Secure Management

Perfect Managed PoE+ Switch

PLANET WGS PoE managed series is the new generation of PLANET Managed Gigabit PoE+ Switch featuring PLANET **intelligent PoE** functions to improve the availability of critical business applications. It provides a quick, safe and cost-effective Power over Ethernet network solution to IP security surveillance for small businesses and enterprises.

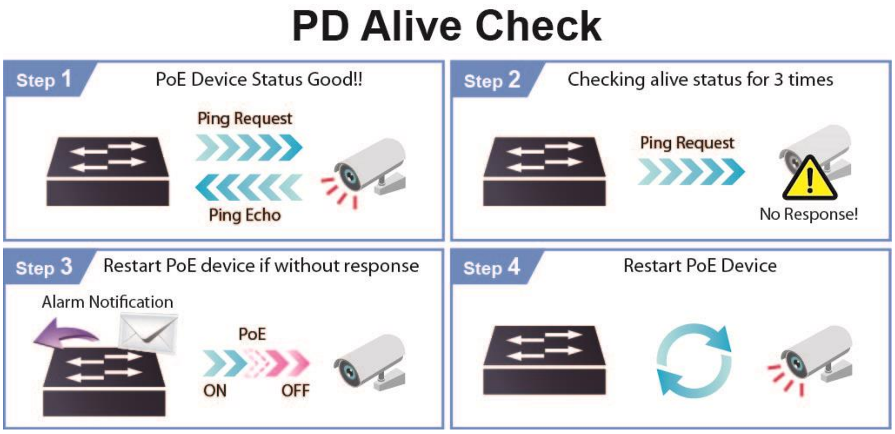
Built-in Unique PoE Functions for Powered Devices Management

As a managed PoE Switch for surveillance, wireless and VoIP networks, the WGS PoE managed series features special PoE Management functions:

- PD alive check
- Scheduled power recycling
- PoE schedule
- PoE usage monitoring

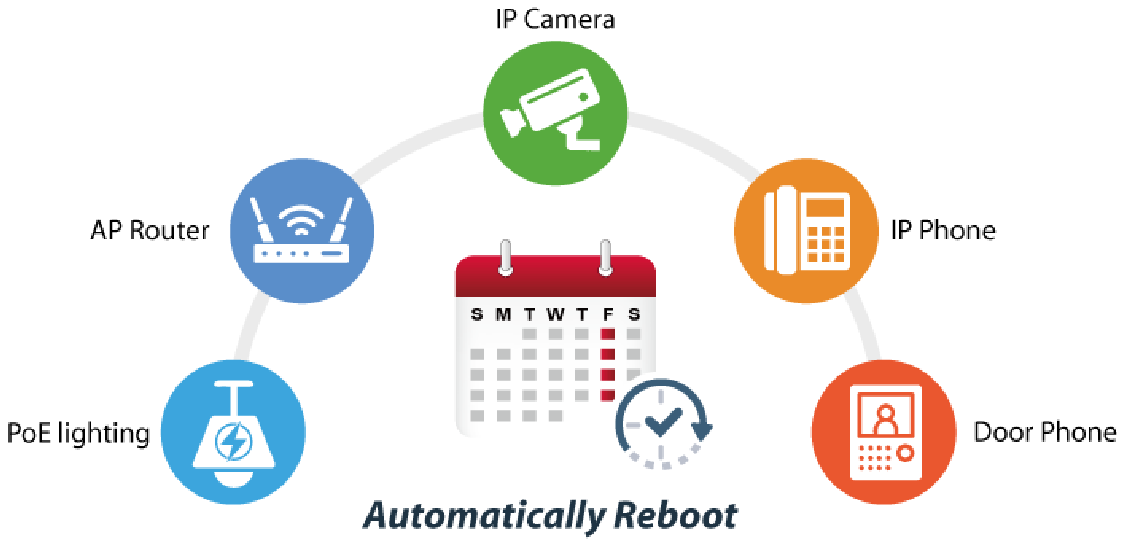
Intelligent Powered Device Alive Check

The WGS PoE managed series can be configured to monitor connected PD (Powered Device) status in real time via ping action. Once the PD stops working and responding, the WGS PoE managed series will resume the PoE port power and bring the PD back to work. It will greatly enhance the network reliability through the PoE port resetting the PD's power source and reducing administrator management burden.


PD Alive Check
Step 1
PoE Device Status Good!!
Ping Request
Ping Echo
Step 2
Checking alive status for 3 times
Ping Request
No Response!
Step 3
Restart PoE device if without response
Alarm Notification
PoE
ON
OFF
Step 4
Restart PoE Device

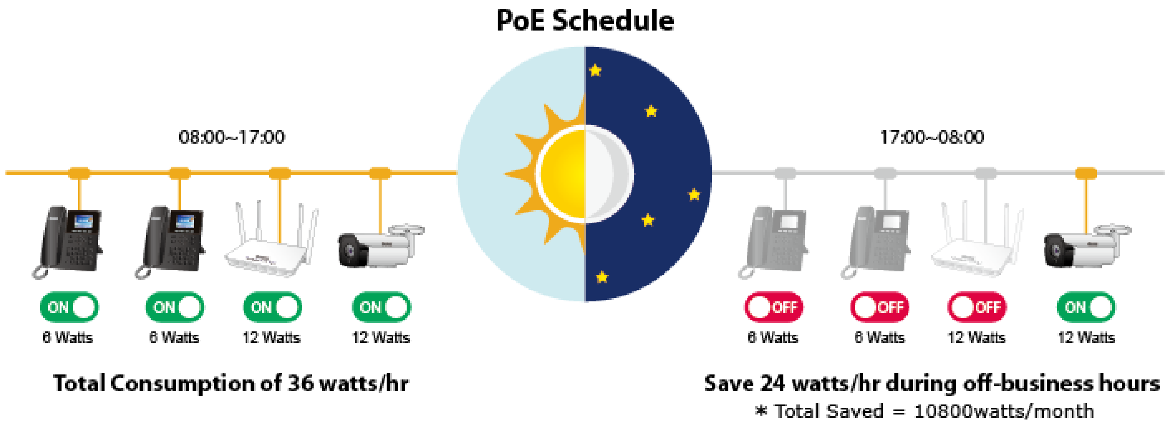
Scheduled Power Recycling

The WGS PoE managed series allows each of the connected PoE IP cameras or PoE wireless access points to reboot at a specific time each week. Therefore, it will reduce the chance of IP camera or AP crash resulting from buffer overflow.


IP Camera
AP Router
IP Phone
S M T W T F S
PoE lighting
Door Phone
Automatically Reboot

PoE Schedule for Energy Saving

Under the trend of energy saving worldwide and contributing to environmental protection, the WGS PoE managed series can effectively control the power supply besides its capability of giving high watts power. The "**PoE schedule**" function helps you to enable or disable PoE power feeding for each PoE port during specified time intervals and it is a powerful function to help SMBs or enterprises save power and money. It also increases security by powering off PDs that should not be in use during non-business hours.


PoE Schedule
08:00~17:00
ON
6 Watts
ON
6 Watts
ON
12 Watts
ON
12 Watts
Total Consumption of 36 watts/hr
17:00~08:00
OFF
6 Watts
OFF
6 Watts
OFF
12 Watts
ON
12 Watts
Save 24 watts/hr during off-business hours
* Total Saved = 10800watts/month

PoE Usage Monitoring

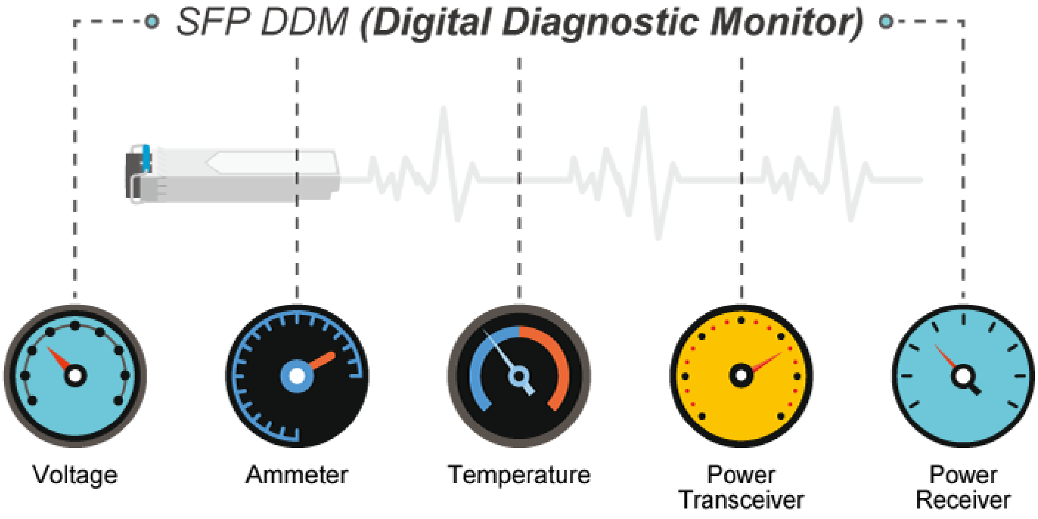
Via the power usage chart in the web management interface, the WGS PoE managed series enables the administrator to monitor the status of the power usage of the connected PDs in real time. Thus, it greatly enhances the management efficiency of the facilities.

Flexibility and Extension Solution

The WGS-4215 Series provides two dual-speed fiber SFP slots, it can also connect with the **100BASE-FX / 1000BASE-SX/LX** SFP (Small Form-factor Pluggable) fiber transceiver and then to backbone switch and monitoring center over a long distance. The distance can be extended from 550 meters to 2 kilometers (multi-mode fiber) and up to 10/20/30/40/50/70/120 kilometers (single-mode fiber or WDM fiber). They are well suited for applications within the enterprise data centers and distributions.

Intelligent SFP Diagnosis Mechanism

The WGS-4215 Series supports SFP-DDM (**Digital Diagnostic Monitor**) function that greatly helps network administrator to easily monitor real-time parameters of the SFP, such as optical output power, optical input power, temperature, laser bias current and transceiver supply voltage.


SFP DDM (Digital Diagnostic Monitor)
Voltage
Ammeter
Temperature
Power Transceiver
Power Receiver

1.3 How to Use This Manual

This User Manual is structured as follows:

Section 2, **INSTALLATION**

The section explains the functions of the Switch and how to physically install the Managed Switch.

Section 3, **SWITCH MANAGEMENT**

The section contains the information about the software function of the Managed Switch.

Section 4, **WEB CONFIGURATION**

The section explains how to manage the Managed Switch by Web interface.

Section 5, **SWITCH OPERATION**

The chapter explains how to do the switch operation of the Managed Switch.

Section 6, **TROUBLESHOOTING**

The chapter explains how to troubleshoot the Managed Switch.

Appendix A

The section contains cable information of the Managed Switch.

1.4 Product Features

- **Physical Port**
  - **10/100/1000BASE-T** Gigabit RJ45 copper
  - **100/1000BASE-X** mini-GBIC/SFP slots
- **Power over Ethernet (WGS PoE managed series)**
  - Complies with IEEE 802.3at High Power over Ethernet End-span PSE
  - Complies with IEEE 802.3af Power over Ethernet End-span PSE
  - IEEE 802.3af/802.3at devices powered
  - Supports PoE Power up to 36 watts for each PoE port
  - Auto detects powered device (PD)
  - Circuit protection prevents power interference between ports
  - Remote power feeding up to 100 meters
  - PoE Management
    - Total PoE power budget control
    - Per port PoE function enable/disable
    - PoE Port Power feeding priority
    - Per PoE port power limitation
    - PD classification detection
    - PD alive check
    - PoE schedule
- **Layer 2 Features**
  - Prevents packet loss with back pressure (half-duplex) and IEEE 802.3x pause frame flow control (full-duplex)
  - High performance Store and Forward architecture, broadcast storm control, runt/CRC filtering eliminates erroneous packets to optimize the network bandwidth
  - Supports **VLAN**
    - IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN
    - Provider Bridging (VLAN Q-in-Q) support (IEEE 802.1ad)
    - Protocol VLAN
    - Voice VLAN
    - Private VLAN
    - Management VLAN
    - GVRP
  - Supports **Spanning Tree Protocol**
    - STP (Spanning Tree Protocol)
    - RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol)
    - MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol)
    - STP BPDU Guard, BPDU Filtering and BPDU Forwarding
  - Supports **Link Aggregation**
    - IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)
    - Cisco ether-channel (static trunk)
  - Provides port mirroring (many-to-1)
  - Loop protection to avoid broadcast loops

- **Quality of Service**
  - Ingress/Egress Rate Limit per port bandwidth control
  - Storm Control support
    - Broadcast/Unknown unicast/Unknown multicast
  - Traffic classification
    - IEEE 802.1p CoS
    - TOS/DSCP/IP Precedence of IPv4/IPv6 packets
  - Strict priority and Weighted Round Robin (WRR) CoS policies

- **Multicast**
  - Supports IGMP Snooping v2 and v3
  - Supports MLD Snooping v1, v2
  - IGMP Querier mode support
  - IGMP Snooping port filtering
  - MLD Snooping port filtering

- **Security**
  - Authentication
    - IEEE 802.1X Port-based network access authentication
    - Built-in RADIUS client to co-operate with the RADIUS servers
    - RADIUS/TACACS+ login user access authentication
  - Access Control List
    - IPv4/IPv6 IP-based ACL
    - MAC-based ACL
  - MAC Security
    - Static MAC
    - MAC Filtering
  - Port Security for Source MAC address entries filtering
  - DHCP Snooping to filter distrusted DHCP messages
  - Dynamic ARP Inspection discards ARP packets with invalid MAC address to IP address binding
  - IP Source Guard prevents IP spoofing attacks
  - DoS Attack Prevention
  - SSH/SSL

- **Management**
  - IPv4 and IPv6 dual stack management
  - Switch Management Interface
    - Web switch management
    - Telnet Command Line Interface
    - SNMP v1, v2c and v3
    - SSH/SSL secure access
  - User Privilege Levels Control
  - Built-in Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) client
  - BOOTP and DHCP for IP address assignment

- System Maintenance
  - Firmware upload/download via HTTP/TFTP
  - Configuration upload/download through Web interface
  - Dual Images
  - Hardware reset button for system reboot or reset to factory default
- SNTP Network Time Protocol
- Cable Diagnostics
- Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) Protocol and LLDP-MED
- SNMP trap for interface Link Up and Link Down notification
- Event message logging to remote Syslog server
- Four RMON groups (history, statistics, alarms, and events)
- PLANET Smart Discovery Utility
- Smart fan with speed control

1.5 Product Specifications

WGS-804HPT / WGS-4215-8P2S / WGS-4215-16P2S

Product		**WGS-804HPT**	**WGS-4215-8P2S**	**WGS-4215-16P2S**
Hardware Specifications				
Copper Ports		8-Port 10/100/1000BASE-T RJ45 auto-MDI/MDI-X ports	8 x 10/100/1000BASE-T RJ45 auto-MDI/MDI-X ports	16 x 10/100/1000BASE-T RJ45 auto-MDI/MDI-X ports
SFP/mini-GBIC Slots		---	2 x 100/1000BASE-X SFP interfaces Supports 100/1000Mbps dual mode and DDM	
PoE Inject Port		4-Port with 802.3af / 802.3at PoE injector function (Port-1 to Port-4)	8-Port with 802.3af / 802.3at PoE injector function (Port-1 to Port-8)	16-Port with 802.3af / 802.3at PoE injector function (Port-1 to Port-8)
Switch Architecture		Store-and-Forward		
Switch Fabric		16Gbps/non-blocking	20Gbps/non-blocking	36Gbps/non-blocking
Switch Throughput@64 bytes		11.9Mpps @64 bytes	14.8Mpps @64 bytes	26.78Mpps @64 bytes
MAC Address Table		8K entries		
Shared Data Buffer		4.1 megabits		
Flow Control		IEEE 802.3x pause frame for full-duplex Back pressure for half-duplex		
Jumbo Frame		10 Kbytes		
Reset Button		< 5 sec: System reboot > 5 sec: Factory default		
LED	**Power LED**	Power (Green)	Power (Green)	
	PoE Port	PoE-in-Use (Amber) LNK/ACT (Green)	PoE-in-Use (Amber) LNK/ACT (Green)	PoE-in-Use (Amber) LNK/ACT (Green)
	PoE Power Usage LED	30W, 60W, 90W, 120W (Green)	N/A	60W, 120W, 180W, 240W (Amber)
	LAN Port	10/100/1000BASE-TX Port (Port-5 to Port-8): - 1000 (Green) - LNK/ACT (Green)	N/A	N/A
	Fiber Port	N/A	1000 LNK/ACT (Green)	100 LNK/ACT (Amber)
Connector		■ Removable 3-pin terminal block for power input - Pin 1/2 for Power (Pin 1: V+ / Pin 2: V-) - Pin 3 for earth ground		
		■ DC power jack with 2.1mm central pole		
Power Requirements		48~54V DC, 3A (max.)	48~54V DC, 5A (max.) **Note**: The two power input interfaces don't support power redundant function.	48~54V DC, 5.8A (max.) **Note**: The two power input interfaces don't support power redundant function.
Power Consumption/ Dissipation		Max. 152 watts/519 BTU	Max. 210 watts/716 BTU	Max. 253 watts/868 BTU

Dimensions (W x D x H)	148 x 25 x 134 mm	178 x 25 x 134 mm	245 x 24.4 x 140 mm
Weight	532g	640g	1090g
ESD Protection	Contact Discharge 6KV DC Air Discharge 8KV DC		
Enclosure	Metal		
Installation	Wall mount, magnetic wall mount and DIN-rail kit		
Power over Ethernet			
PoE Standard	IEEE 802.3af / 802.3at Power over Ethernet PSE		
PoE Power Supply Type	End-span		
PoE Power Output	IEEE 802.3af Standard - Per port 48V~54V DC (depending on the power supply), max. 15.4 watts IEEE 802.3at Standard - Per port 50V~54V DC (depending on the power supply), max. 36 watts		
Power Pin Assignment	1/2(+), 3/6(-)		
PoE Power Budget	144 watts (depending on power input)	200 watts (depending on power input)	240 watts (depending on power input)
Max. Number of Class 2 PDs	4	8	16
Max. Number of Class 3 PDs	4	8	16
Max. Number of Class 4 PDs	4	7	9
PoE Management Functions			
Enhanced PoE Mode	Standard/Legacy/Force		
PoE Management	PD Alive Check Scheduled Power Recycling PoE Schedule PoE Usage Monitoring PoE Extension		
Active PoE Device Live Detection	Yes		
PoE Power Recycling	Yes, daily or predefined schedule		
PoE Schedule	4 schedule profiles		
PoE Extend Mode	Yes, max. up to 250 meters		
Layer 2 Functions			
Port Mirroring	TX/RX/Both Many-to-1 monitor		
VLAN	802.1Q tagged-based VLAN Up to 256 VLAN groups, out of 4094 VLAN IDs 802.1ad Q-in-Q tunneling (VLAN stacking) Voice VLAN Protocol VLAN Private VLAN (Protected port) GVRP Management VLAN		
Link Aggregation	IEEE 802.3ad LACP and static trunk		

	Supports 4 groups with 4 ports per trunk (WGS-804HPT) Supports 1 groups with 2 SFP ports per trunk(WGS-4215 PoE Series)
Spanning Tree Protocol	STP, IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol RSTP, IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol MSTP, IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol STP BPDU Guard, BPDU Filtering and BPDU Forwarding
IGMP Snooping	IPv4 IGMP (v2/v3) snooping IGMP querier Up to 256 multicast groups
MLD Snooping	IPv6 MLD (v1/v2) snooping, up to 256 multicast groups
QoS	8 mapping ID to 8 level priority queues - Port Number - 802.1p priority - DSCP/IP precedence of IPv4/IPv6 packets Traffic classification based, strict priority and WRR Ingress/Egress Rate Limit per port bandwidth control
Ring	Supports ERPS, and complies with ITU-T G.8032 Recovery time < 450ms
Security Functions	
Access Control List	IPv4/IPv6 IP-based ACL/MAC-based ACL IPv4/IPv6 IP-based ACE/MAC-based ACE Max. 256 ACL entries
Port Security	IEEE 802.1X – Port-based authentication Built-in RADIUS client to co-operate with RADIUS server RADIUS/TACACS+ user access authentication
MAC Security	IP-MAC port binding MAC filter Static MAC address, max. 256 static MAC entries
Enhanced Security	DHCP Snooping and DHCP Option82 STP BPDU guard, BPDU filtering and BPDU forwarding DoS attack prevention ARP inspection IP source guard
Management Functions	
Basic Management Interfaces	Web browser Telnet SNMP v1, v2c
Secure Management Interfaces	SSHv2, TLSv1.2, SNMP v3
System Management	Firmware upgrade by HTTP/TFTP protocol through Ethernet network Configuration upload/download through HTTP/TFTP LLDP protocol SNTP PLANET Smart Discovery Utility PLANET NMS System/CloudViewer

Event Management	Remote/Local Syslog System log	
SNMP MIBs	RFC 1213 MIB-II RFC 1215 Generic Traps RFC 1493 Bridge MIB RFC 2674 Bridge MIB Extensions RFC 2737 Entity MIB (version 2) RFC 2819 RMON (1, 2, 3, 9) RFC 2863 Interface Group MIB RFC 3635 Ethernet-like MIB RFC 3621 Power Ethernet MIB	
Standards Conformance		
Regulatory Compliance	FCC Part 15 Class A, CE	
Stability Testing	IEC 60068-2-32 (free fall) IEC 60068-2-27 (shock) IEC 60068-2-6 (vibration)	
Standards Compliance	IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX/100BASE-FX IEEE 802.3z Gigabit SX/LX IEEE 802.3ab Gigabit 1000BASE-T IEEE 802.3x Flow Control and Back Pressure IEEE 802.3ad Port Trunk with LACP IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol IEEE 802.1p Class of Service IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Tagging IEEE 802.1x Port Authentication Network Control IEEE 802.1ab LLDP RFC 768 UDP RFC 783 TFTP RFC 791 IP RFC 792 ICMP RFC 2068 HTTP RFC 1112 IGMP v1 RFC 2236 IGMP v2 RFC 3376 IGMP v3 RFC 2710 MLD v1 RFC 3810 MLD v2 ITU G.8032 ERPS Ring	
Environment		
Operating	Temperature: -40 ~ 75 degrees C Relative Humidity: 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)	Temperature: -10 ~ 60 degrees C Relative Humidity: 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)
Storage	Temperature: -40 ~ 75 degrees C Relative Humidity: 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)	Temperature: -40 ~ 85 degrees C Relative Humidity: 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)

WGS-4215-8T / WGS-4215-8T2S

Product		**WGS-4215-8T**	**WGS-4215-8T2S**
Hardware Specifications			
Copper Ports		8 x 10/100/1000BASE-T RJ45 auto-MDI/MDI-X ports	
SFP/mini-GBIC Slots		---	2 x 100/1000BASE-X SFP interfaces Supports 100/1000Mbps dual mode and DDM
Switch Architecture		Store-and-Forward	
Switch Fabric		16Gbps/non-blocking	20Gbps/non-blocking
Switch Throughput@64Bytes		11.9Mpps	14.8Mpps
Address Table		8K entries	
Shared Data Buffer		4.1 megabits	
Flow Control		IEEE 802.3x pause frame for full-duplex Back pressure for half-duplex	
Jumbo Frame		10K bytes	
Reset Button		< 5 sec: System reboot > 5 sec: Factory default	
LED	**Power LED**	Power (**Green**)	Power (**Green**)
	RJ45 LED	1000 LNK/ACT (**Green**) 10/100 LNK/ACT (**Amber**)	1000 LNK/ACT (**Green**) 10/100 LNK/ACT (**Amber**)
	SFP LED	N/A	1000 LNK/ACT (**Green**) 100 LNK/ACT (**Amber**)
Dimensions (W x D x H)		148 x 25 x 134 mm	178 x 25 x 134 mm
Weight		496g	663kg
Power Requirements		12V~48V DC,1A 24V AC,1A	12V~48V DC,1A 24V AC,1A
Power Consumption/ Dissipation		10 watts (max.)/ 34 BTU	7.9 watts (max.)/ 26 BTU
ESD Protection		6KV DC	
Enclosure		Metal	
Layer 2 Functions			
Port Mirroring		TX/RX/both Many-to-1 monitor Up to 4 sessions	
VLAN		802.1Q tagged VLAN 802.1ad Q-in-Q tunneling (VLAN stacking) Voice VLAN Protocol VLAN Private VLAN (Protected port) GVRP Management VLAN	

	Up to 256 VLAN groups, out of 4094 VLAN IDs
Link Aggregation	IEEE 802.3ad LACP and static trunk Supports 4 groups of 8-port trunk
Spanning Tree Protocol	STP/RSTP/MSTP
IGMP Snooping	IGMP (v2/v3) snooping IGMP querier Up to 256 multicast groups
MLD Snooping	MLD (v1/v2) snooping, up to 256 multicast groups
QoS	8 mapping ID to 8 level priority queues - Port number - 802.1p priority - 802.1Q VLAN tag - DSCP field in IP packet Traffic classification based, strict priority and WRR
Ring	Supports ERPS, and complies with ITU-T G.8032 Recovery time < 450ms
Scurity Functions	
Access Control List	IPv4/IPv6 IP-based ACL/MAC-based ACL IPv4/IPv6 IP-based ACE/MAC-based ACE Max. 256 ACL entries
Port Security	IEEE 802.1X – Port-based authentication Built-in RADIUS client to co-operate with RADIUS server RADIUS/TACACS+ user access authentication
MAC Security	IP-MAC port binding MAC filter Static MAC address, max. 256 static MAC entries
Enhanced Security	DHCP Snooping and DHCP Option82 STP BPDU guard, BPDU filtering and BPDU forwarding DoS attack prevention ARP inspection IP source guard
Management Functions	
Basic Management Interfaces	RS232 to RJ45 Console Web browser Telnet SNMP v1, v2c
Secure Management Interfaces	SSHv2, TLS v1.2, SNMP v3
System Management	Firmware upgrade by HTTP/TFTP protocol through Ethernet network Configuration upload/download through HTTP/TFTP LLDP protocol SNTP PLANET Smart Discovery Utility PLANET NMS System/CloudViewer
Event Management	Remote/Local Syslog System log

SNMP MIBs	RFC 1213 MIB-II RFC 1215 Generic Traps RFC 1493 Bridge MIB RFC 2674 Bridge MIB Extensions RFC 2737 Entity MIB (Version 2) RFC 2819 RMON (1, 2, 3, 9) RFC 2863 Interface Group MIB RFC 3635 Ethernet-like MIB
Standards Conformance	
Regulatory Compliance	FCC Part 15 Class A, CE
Standards Compliance	IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX/100BASE-FX IEEE 802.3z Gigabit SX/LX IEEE 802.3ab Gigabit 1000T IEEE 802.3x flow control and back pressure IEEE 802.3ad port trunk with LACP IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol IEEE 802.1p Class of Service IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tagging IEEE 802.1x Port Authentication Network Control IEEE 802.1ab LLDP IEEE 802.3af Power over Ethernet IEEE 802.3at High Power over Ethernet RFC 768 UDP RFC 783 TFTP RFC 791 IP RFC 792 ICMP RFC 2068 HTTP RFC 1112 IGMP v1 RFC 2236 IGMP v2 RFC 3376 IGMP v3 RFC 2710 MLD v1 RFC 3810 MLD v2 ITU G.8032 ERPS Ring
Environment	
Operating	Temperature: -40 ~ 75 degrees C Relative Humidity: 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)
Storage	Temperature: -40 ~ 75 degrees C Relative Humidity: 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)

2. INSTALLATION

2.1 Hardware Description

The Industrial Managed Switch provides three different running speeds – 10Mbps, 100Mbps or 10000Mbps and automatically distinguishes the speed of incoming connection.

This section describes the hardware features and installation of the Managed Switch. For easier management and control of the Managed Switch, familiarize yourself with its display indicators and ports. Front panel illustrations in this chapter display the unit LED indicators. Before connecting any network device to the Managed Switch, please read this chapter completely.

2.1.1 Switch Front Panel

The front panel provides a simple interface monitoring of the Managed Switch. Figure 2-1-1a~Figure 2-1-1e shows the front panels of the Managed Switches.

WGS-804HPT Front Panel

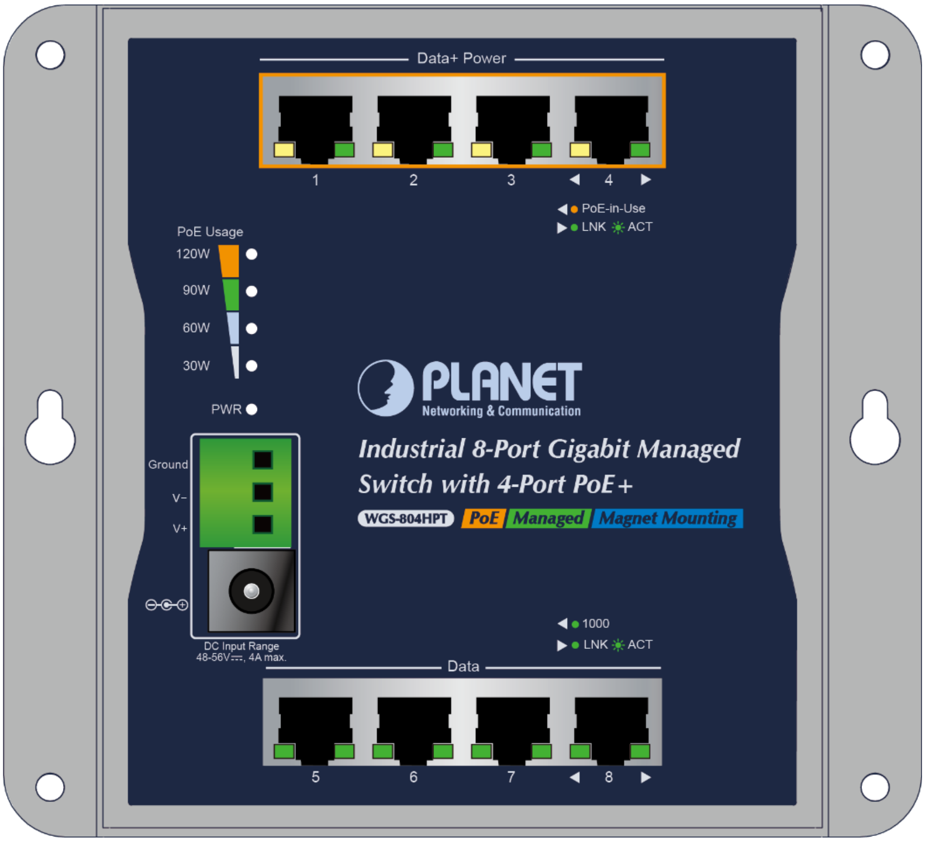

Data+ Power
1
2
3
4
PoE-in-Use
LNK ACT
PoE Usage
120W
90W
60W
30W
PWR
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port Gigabit Managed Switch with 4-Port PoE+
WGS-804HPT
PoE
Managed
Magnet Mounting
Ground
V−
V+
DC Input Range
48-56V⎓, 4A max.
1000
LNK ACT
Data
5
6
7
8

Figure 2-1-1a WGS-804HPT Front Panel

WGS-4215-8T Front Panel

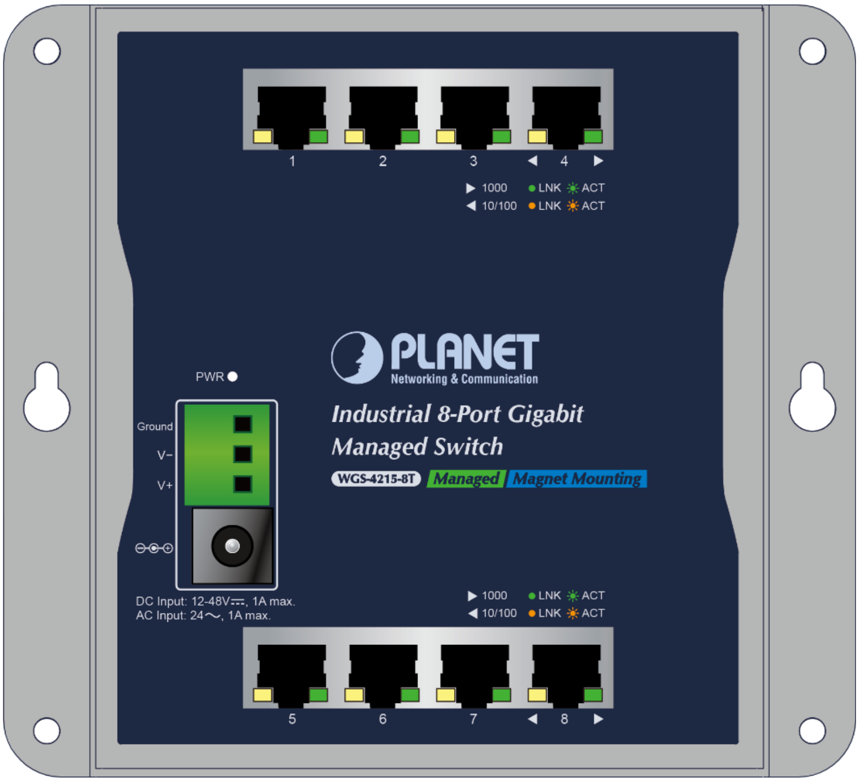

1
2
3
4
1000 LNK ACT
10/100 LNK ACT
PWR
Ground
V−
V+
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port Gigabit
Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8T
Managed
Magnet Mounting
DC Input: 12-48V⎓, 1A max.
AC Input: 24~, 1A max.
1000 LNK ACT
10/100 LNK ACT
5
6
7
8

Figure 2-1-1b WGS-4215-8T Front Panel

WGS-4215-8T2S Front Panel

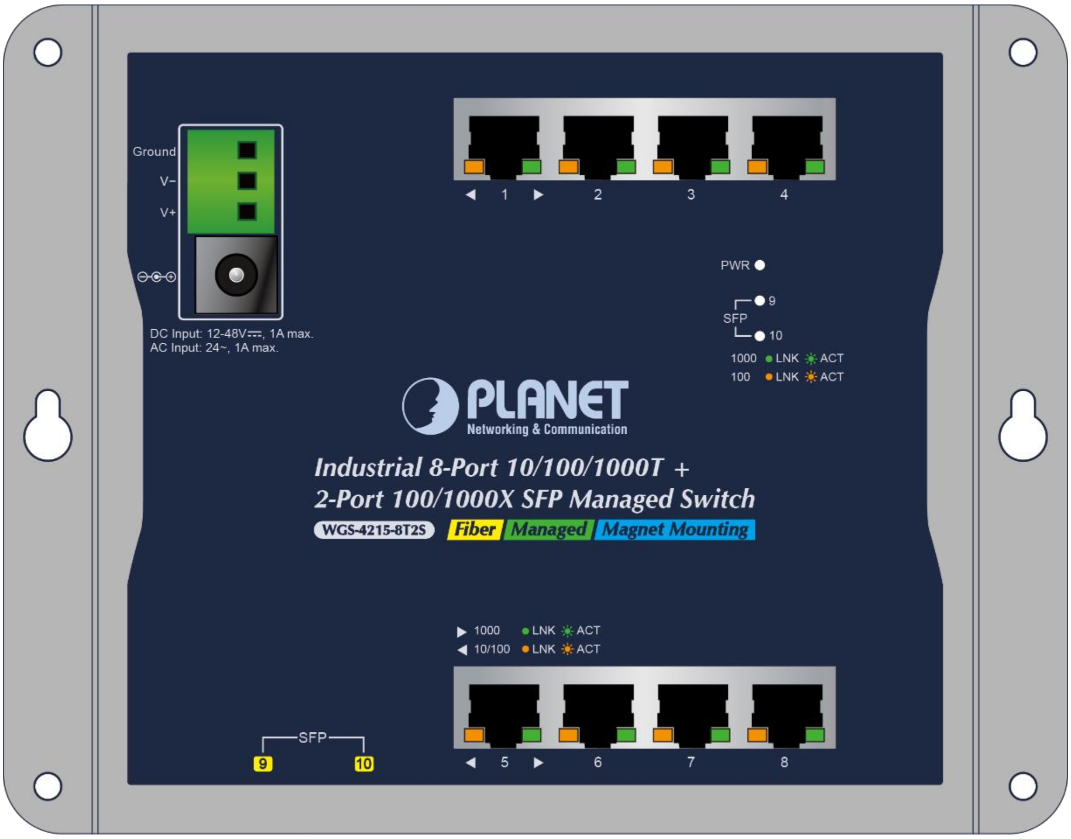

Ground
V−
V+
DC Input: 12-48V⎓, 1A max.
AC Input: 24~, 1A max.
1
2
3
4
PWR
SFP
9
10
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T +
2-Port 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8T2S
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
1000 LNK ACT
10/100 LNK ACT
SFP
9
10
5
6
7
8

Figure 2-1-1c WGS-4215-8T2S Front Panel

WGS-4215-8P2S Front Panel

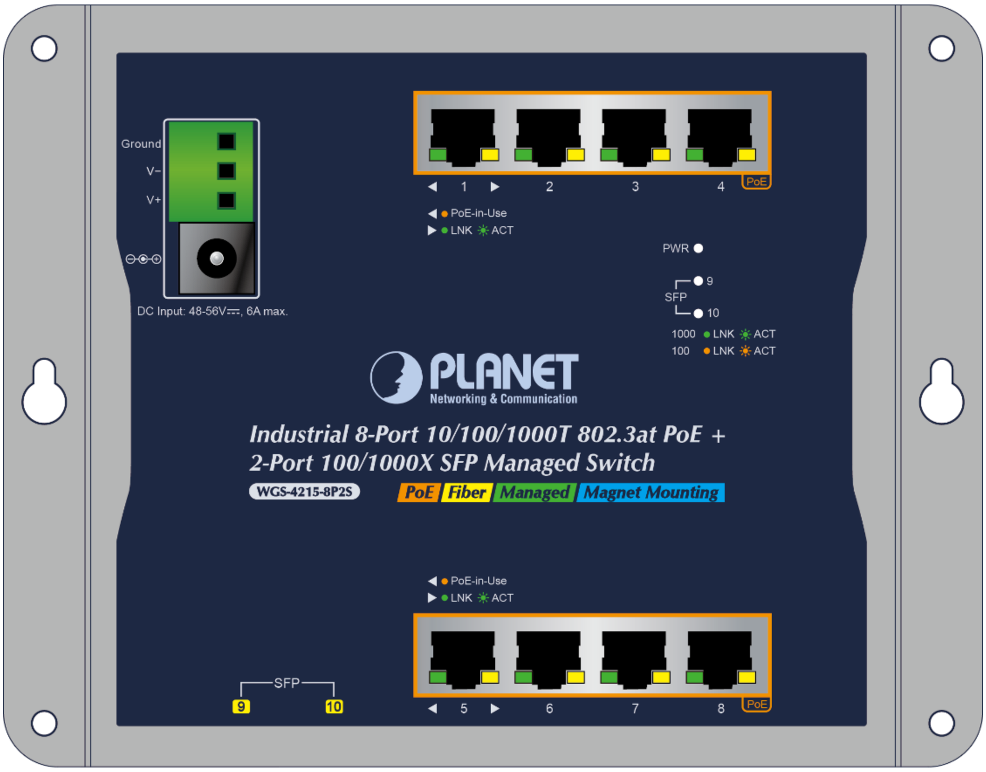

Ground
V−
V+
DC Input: 48-56V⎓, 6A max.
1
2
3
4
PoE
PoE-in-Use
LNK ACT
PWR
9
SFP
10
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE +
2-Port 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8P2S
PoE
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
PoE-in-Use
LNK ACT
SFP
9
10
5
6
7
8
PoE

Figure 2-1-1d WGS-4215-8P2S Front Panel

WGS-4215-16P2S Front Panel

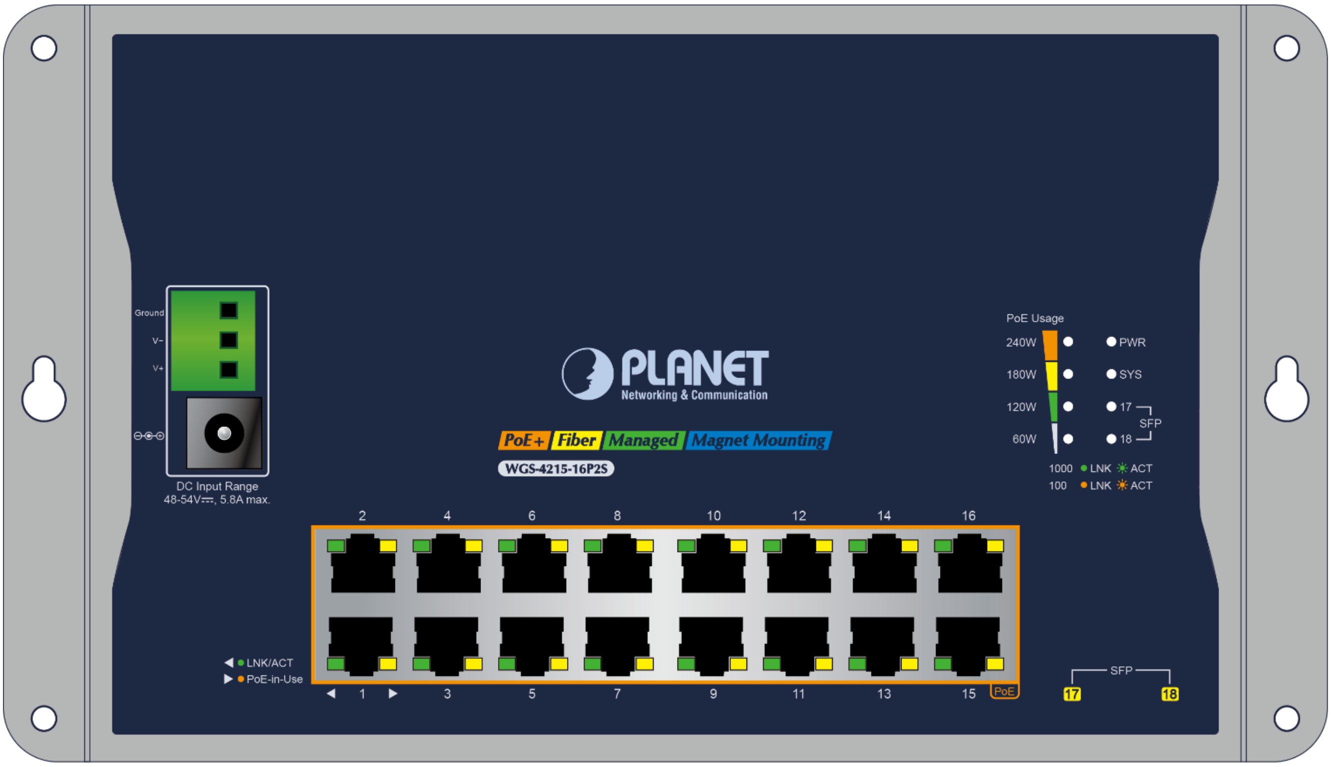

Ground
V−
V+
DC Input Range
48-54V⎓, 5.8A max.
PLANET
Networking & Communication
PoE+
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
WGS-4215-16P2S
PoE Usage
240W
180W
120W
60W
PWR
SYS
17
SFP
18
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
LNK/ACT
PoE-in-Use
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
PoE
SFP
17
18

Figure 2-1-1e WGS-4215-16P2S Front Panel

- **Gigabit TP Interface**

  10/100/1000BASE-T copper, RJ45 twisted-pair: Up to 100 meters.

- **100/1000BASE-X SFP Slots** (WGS-4215-8T2S and WGS-4215-8P2S only)

  Each of the SFP (Small Form-factor Pluggable) slots supports dual-speed, 1000BASE-SX/LX or 100BASE-FX

  - For 1000BASE-SX/LX SFP transceiver module: From 550 meters (multi-mode fiber) to 10/30/50/70/120 kilometers (single-mode fiber).
  - For 100BASE-FX SFP transceiver module: From 2 kilometers (multi-mode fiber) to 20/40/60 kilometers (single-mode fiber).

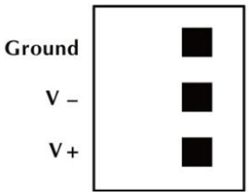
- **AC/DC Power Receptacle**

  The Managed Switch features a strong dual power input system (terminal block and DC jack) incorporated into customer's automation network to enhance system reliability and uptime.

Power Input Range / Model	3-pin Terminal Block	DC Jack
WGS-804HPT	48~54V DC	48~54V DC
WGS-4215-8T	12~48V DC, 24V AC	12~48V DC, 24V AC
WGS-4215-8T2S	12~48V DC, 24V AC	12~48V DC
WGS-4215-8P2S	48~54V DC	48~54V DC
WGS-4215-16P2S	48~54V DC	48~54V DC

To install the 3-pin Terminal Block Connector on the Wall-mount Managed Switch, follow the following steps:

Step 1: Insert positive DC power wire into **V+**, negative DC power wire into **V-**, and grounding wire into **Ground.**



Step 2: Tighten the wire-clamp screws for preventing the wires from loosening.

Power Notice: In some areas, installing a surge suppression device may also help to protect your Managed Switch from being damaged by unregulated surge or current to the Managed Switch.

- **Reset Button**

On the left of the front panel, the reset button is designed to reboot the Managed Switch without turning off and on the power. The following is the summary table of reset button functions:

Reset Button Pressed and Released	Function
< 5 sec: System Reboot	Reboot the Managed Switch.
> 5 sec: Factory Default	Reset the Managed Switch to Factory Default configuration. The Managed Switch will then reboot and load the default settings shown below: ◦ Default username: **admin** ◦ Default password: **sw + the last 6 characters of the MAC ID in lowercase** ◦ Default IP address: **192.168.0.100** ◦ Subnet mask: **255.255.255.0** ◦ Default gateway: **192.168.0.254**

2.1.2 LED Indications

The front panel LEDs indicates instant status of port links, data activity and system power; it helps monitor and troubleshoot when needed. Figure 2-1-2a~2-1-2d show the LED indications of these Managed Switches.

WGS-804HPT LED Indication

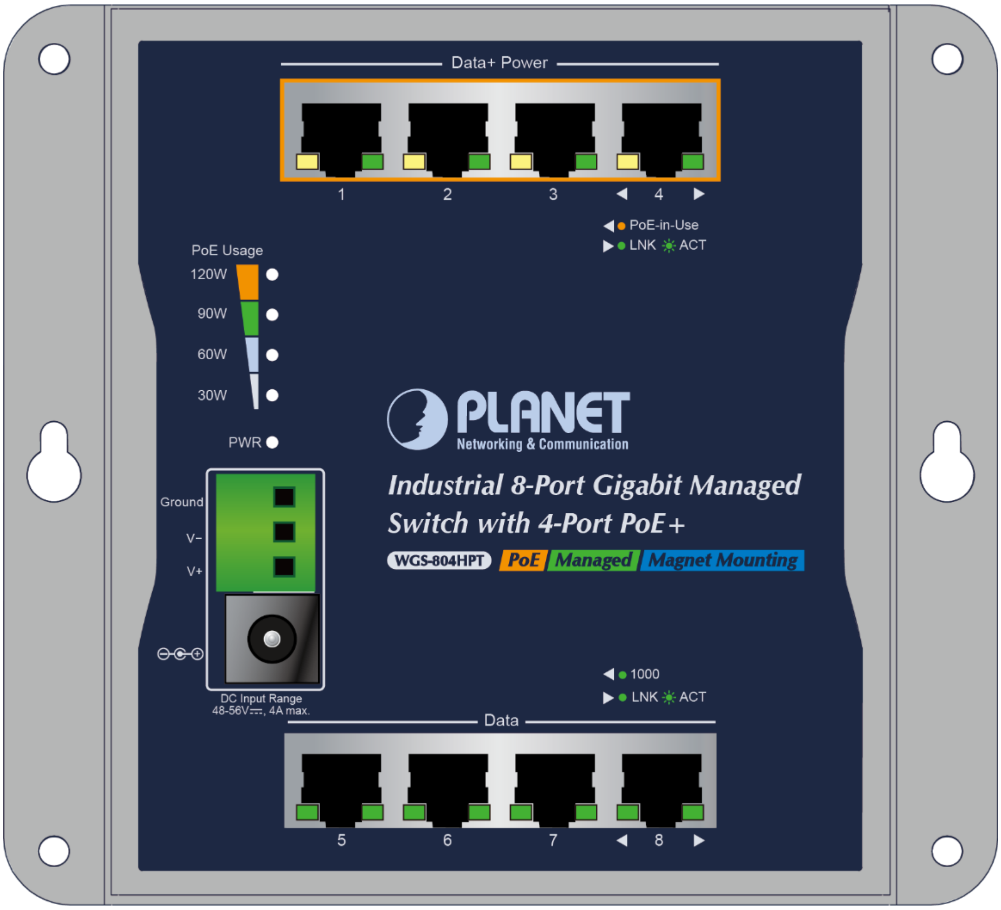

Data+ Power
1
2
3
4
PoE-in-Use
LNK ACT
PoE Usage
120W
90W
60W
30W
PWR
Ground
V-
V+
DC Input Range
48-56V⎓, 4A max.
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port Gigabit Managed Switch with 4-Port PoE+
WGS-804HPT
PoE
Managed
Magnet Mounting
1000
LNK ACT
Data
5
6
7
8

Figure 2-1-2a WGS-804HPT LED Panel

- **System**

LED	Color	Function
PWR	Green	**Lights** to indicate that the Switch has power.

- **PoE 10/100/1000BASE-T Interfaces (Port-1 to Port-4)**

LED	Color	Function
LNK/ACT	Green	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
PoE	Amber	**Lights**: To indicate the port is providing DC in-line power. **Off:** To indicate the connected device is not a PoE Powered Device (PD)

- **10/100/1000BASE-T Interfaces (Port-5 to Port-8)**

LED	Color	Function
LNK/ACT	Green	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
1000	Green	**Lights**: To indicate that the port is operating at **1000Mbps**. **Off:** If LNK/ACT LED is Off, it indicates that the port is link-down or operating at **10/100Mbps**

- **PoE Power Usage (Unit: Watt)**

LED	Color	Function
30	Amber	**Lights**: To indicate the system consumes over 30-watt PoE power budget
60	Amber	**Lights**: To indicate the system consumes over 60-watt PoE power budget
90	Amber	**Lights**: To indicate the system consumes over 90-watt PoE power budget
120	Amber	**Lights**: To indicate the system consumes over 120-watt PoE power budget

WGS-4215-8T LED Indication

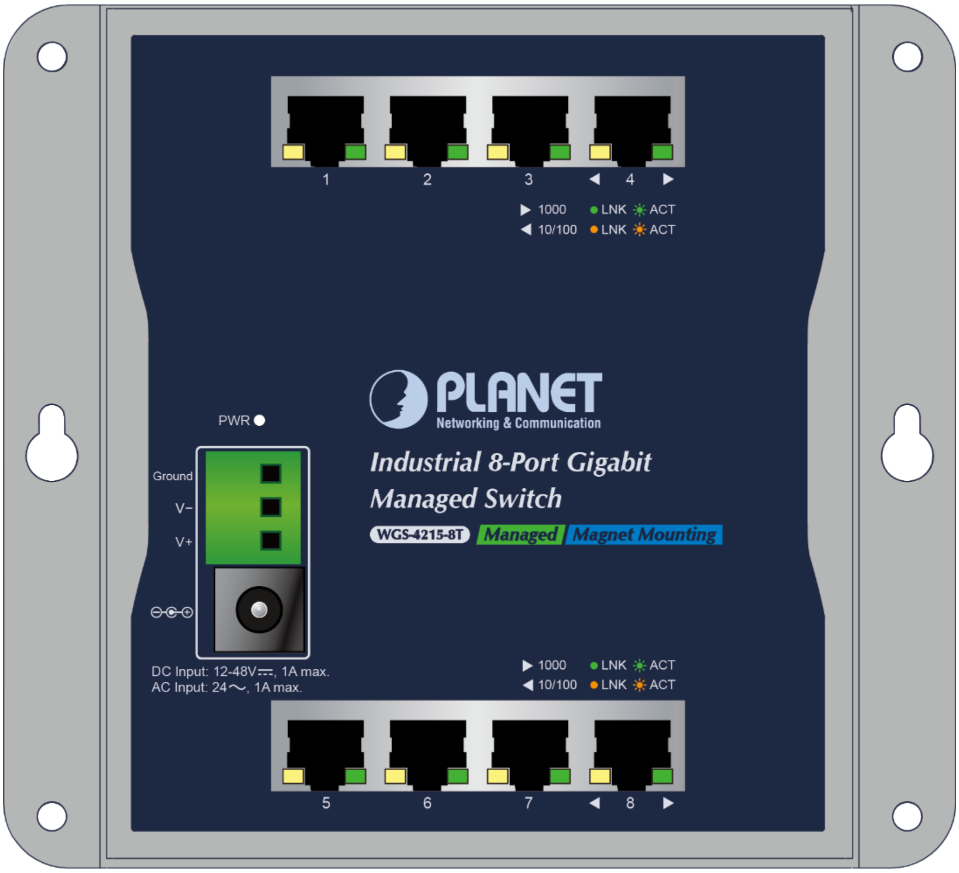

1
2
3
4
▶ 1000 ● LNK ✳ ACT
◀ 10/100 ● LNK ✳ ACT
PWR
Ground
V-
V+
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port Gigabit
Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8T
Managed
Magnet Mounting
DC Input: 12-48V⎓, 1A max.
AC Input: 24～, 1A max.
▶ 1000 ● LNK ✳ ACT
◀ 10/100 ● LNK ✳ ACT
5
6
7
8

Figure 2-1-2b WGS-4215-8T LED Panel

- **System**

LED	Color	Function
PWR	**Green**	**Lights** to indicate that the Switch has power.

- **10/100/1000BASE-T Interfaces (Port-1 to Port-8)**

LED	Color	Function
10/100 LNK/ACT	**Amber**	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established and operating at **10/100Mbps**. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
1000 LNK/ACT	**Green**	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established and operating at **1000Mbps**. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.

WGS-4215-8T2S LED Indication

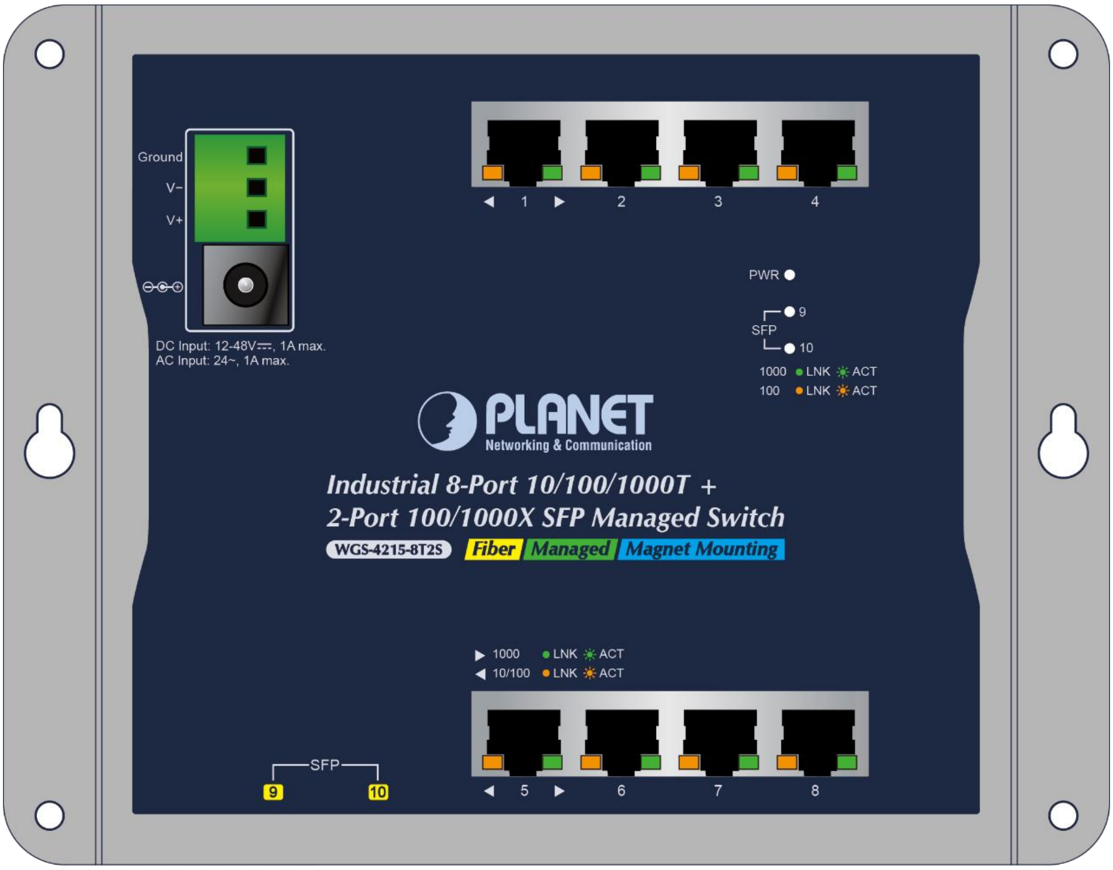

Ground
V-
V+
DC Input: 12-48V⎓, 1A max.
AC Input: 24~, 1A max.
1
2
3
4
PWR
SFP
9
10
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T +
2-Port 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8T2S
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
1000 LNK ACT
10/100 LNK ACT
SFP
9
10
5
6
7
8

Figure 2-1-2c WGS-4215-8T2S LED Panel

- **System**

LED	Color	Function
PWR	Green	**Lights** to indicate that the Switch has power.

- **10/100/1000BASE-T Interfaces (Port-1 to Port-8)**

LED	Color	Function
10/100 LNK/ACT	Amber	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established and operating at 10/**100Mbps**. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
1000 LNK/ACT	Green	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established and operating at **1000Mbps**. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.

- **100/1000BASE-X Interfaces (Port-9 to Port-10)**

LED	Color	Function
100 LNK/ACT	Amber	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established and operating at **100Mbps**. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
1000 LNK/ACT	Green	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established and operating at **1000Mbps**. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.

WGS-4215-8P2S LED Indication

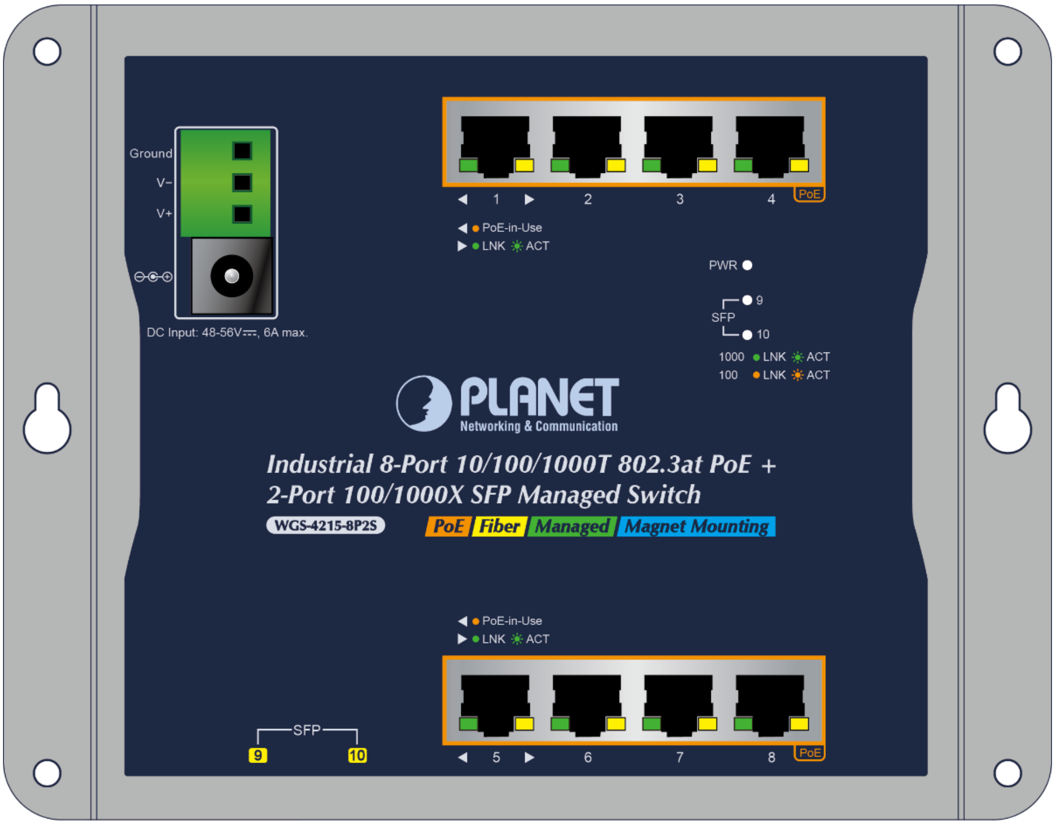

Ground
V-
V+
DC Input: 48-56V⎓, 6A max.
1
2
3
4
PoE
PoE-in-Use
LNK ACT
PWR
SFP
9
10
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE +
2-Port 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8P2S
PoE Fiber Managed Magnet Mounting
PoE-in-Use
LNK ACT
SFP
9
10
5
6
7
8
PoE

Figure 2-1-2d WGS-4215-8P2S LED Panel

- **System**

LED	Color	Function
PWR	**Green**	**Lights** to indicate that the Switch has power. **Blinks** to indicate the system of the Switch is booting.

- **PoE 10/100/1000BASE-T Interfaces (Ports 1 to 8)**

LED	Color	Function
LNK/ACT	**Green**	**Lights**: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established. **Blinks:** To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
PoE	**Amber**	**Lights**: To indicate the port is providing DC in-line power. **Off:** To indicate the connected device is not a PoE Powered Device (PD).

- **100/1000X SFP Interfaces (Ports 9 to 10)**

LED	Color	Function	
1000 LNK/ACT	**Green**	**Lights:**	It indicates the link through that port is successfully established at 1000Mbps.
		Blinks:	It indicates that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
100 LNK/ACT	**Amber**	**Lights:**	It indicates the link through that port is successfully established at 100Mbps.
		Blinks:	It indicates that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.

WGS-4215-16P2S LED Indication

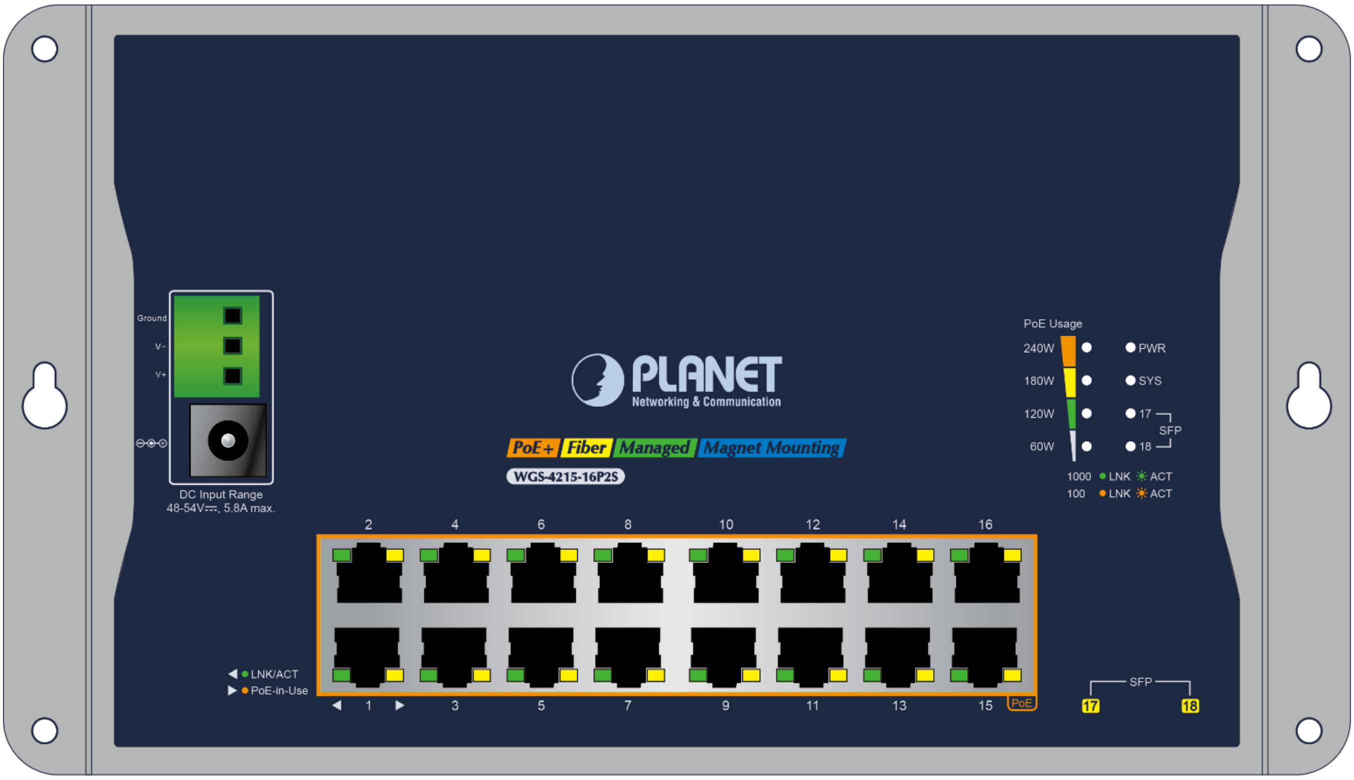

Ground
V-
V+
DC Input Range
48-54V⎓, 5.8A max.
PLANET
Networking & Communication
PoE+
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
WGS-4215-16P2S
PoE Usage
240W
180W
120W
60W
PWR
SYS
17
SFP
18
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
LNK/ACT
PoE-in-Use
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
PoE
SFP
17
18

Figure 2-1-2e WGS-4215-16P2S LED Panel

- **System**

LED	Color	Function
PWR	**Green**	**Lights** to indicate that the Switch has power.
SYS	**Green**	**Lights** to indicate the system is working.

- **Per 10/100/1000BASE-T Port**

LED	Color		Function
LNK/ACT	**Green**	**Lights**:	To indicate the link through that port is successfully established.
		Blinks:	To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
PoE-in-Use	**Amber**	**Lights**:	To indicate the port is providing DC in-line power.
		Off:	To indicate the connected device is not a PoE PD.

- **SFP 17 and SFP 18**

LED	Color	Function	
1000 LNK/ACT	**Green**	**Lights**:	To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at **1000Mbps**.
		Blinks:	To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
100 LNK/ACT	**Amber**	**Lights**:	To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at **100Mbps**.
		Blinks:	To indicate that the switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.

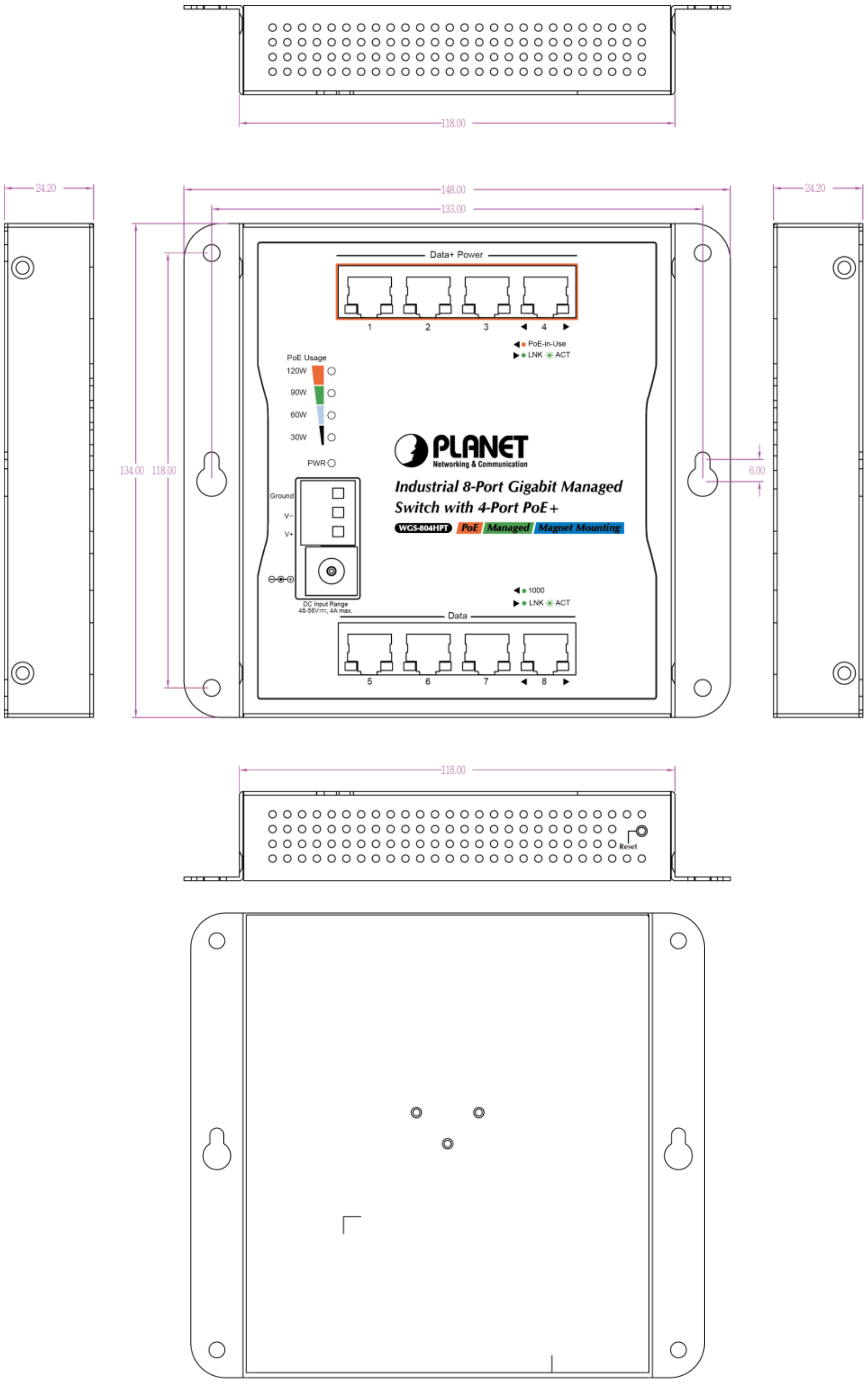
- **PoE Power Usage (Unit: Watt)**

LED	Color	Function	
60W	**Amber**	**Blinks**	To indicate the system consumes between 30 watts and 60 watts of PoE power.
		Lights	To indicate the system consumes between 60 watts and 90 watts of PoE power.
120W	**Amber**	**Blinks**	To indicate the system consumes between 90 watts and 120 watts of PoE power.
		Lights	To indicate the system consumes between 120 watts and 150 watts of PoE power.
180W	**Amber**	**Blinks**	To indicate the system consumes between 150 watts and 180 watts of PoE power.
		Lights	To indicate the system consumes between 180 watts and 210 watts of PoE power.
240W	**Amber**	**Blinks**	To indicate the system consumes between 210 watts and 240 watts of PoE power.
		Lights	To indicate the system consumes over 240 watts of PoE power.

2.1.3 Physical Dimensions

WGS-804HPT

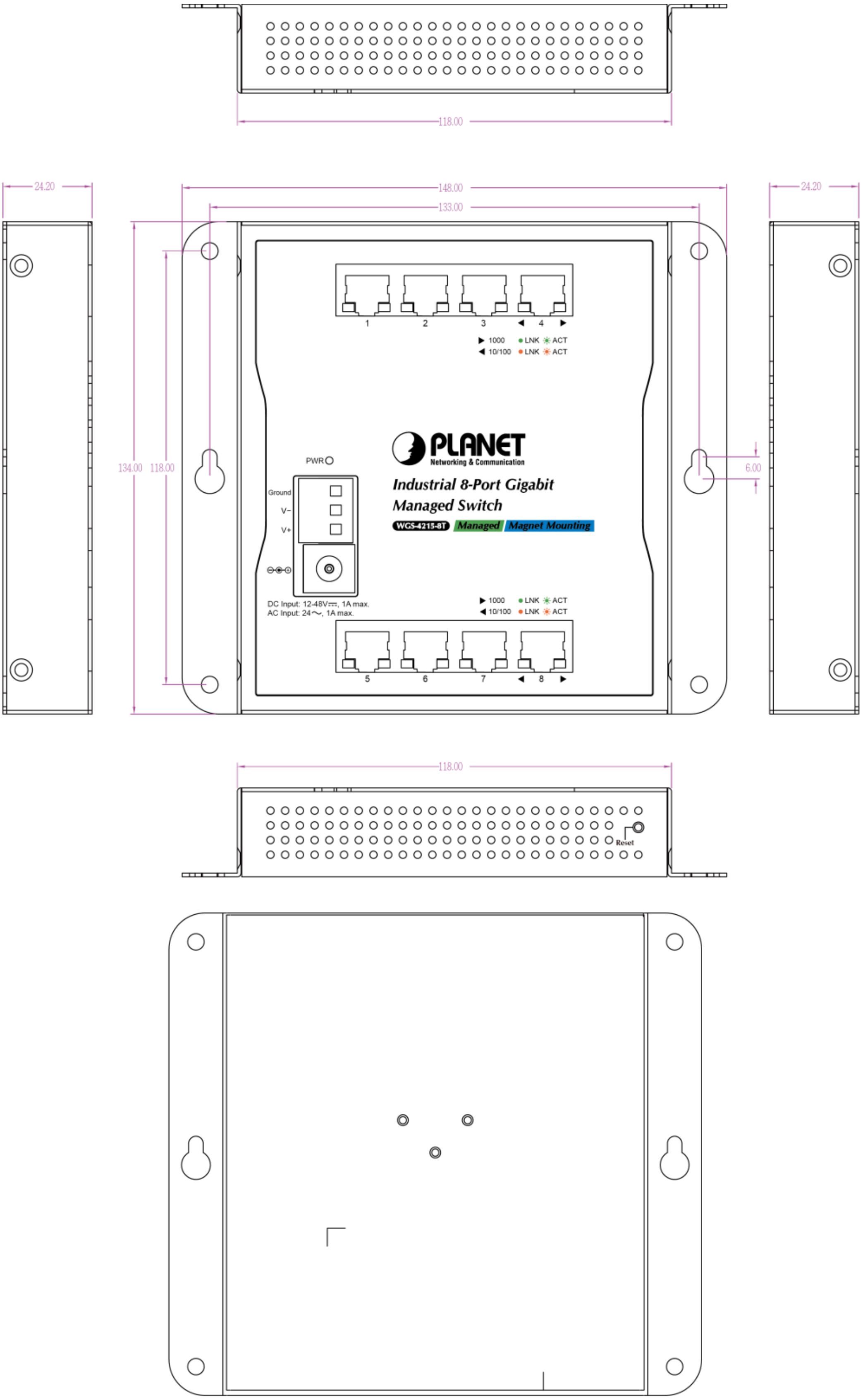
- Dimensions (W x D x H): 148 x 25 x 134mm


118.00
24.20
148.00
133.00
24.20
134.00
118.00
6.00
Data+ Power
1
2
3
4
PoE-in-Use
LNK ACT
PoE Usage
120W
90W
60W
30W
PWR
Ground
V-
V+
DC Input Range 48-56V⎓, 4A max.
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port Gigabit Managed
Switch with 4-Port PoE+
WGS-804HPT
PoE
Managed
Magnet Mounting
1000
LNK ACT
Data
5
6
7
8
118.00
Reset

Unit: mm

WGS-4215-8T

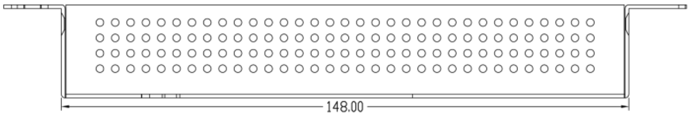
- Dimensions (W x D x H): 148 x 25 x 134mm

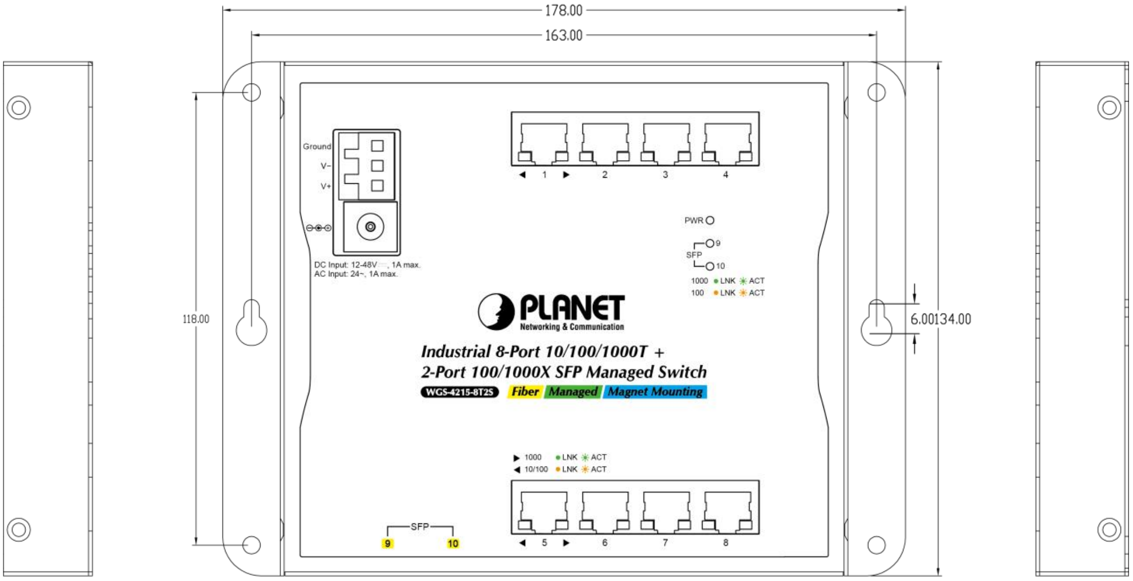

118.00
24.20
148.00
133.00
24.20
134.00
118.00
6.00
1
2
3
4
1000 LNK ACT
10/100 LNK ACT
PWR
Ground
V-
V+
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port Gigabit Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8T
Managed
Magnet Mounting
DC Input: 12-48V, 1A max.
AC Input: 24~, 1A max.
1000 LNK ACT
10/100 LNK ACT
5
6
7
8
118.00
Reset

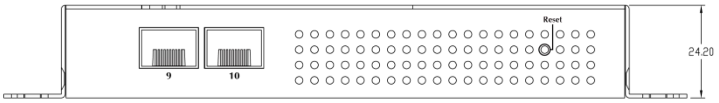
Unit: mm

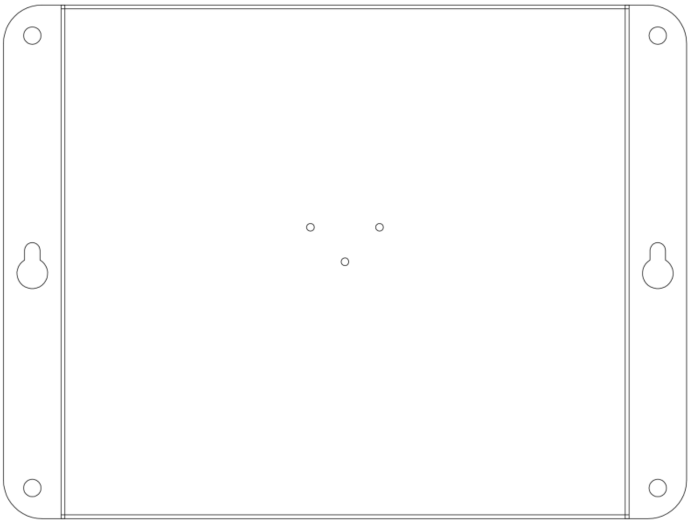
WGS-4215-8T2S

- Dimensions (W x D x H): 178 x 25 x 134mm




178.00
163.00
118.00
6.00
134.00
Ground
V-
V+
DC Input: 12-48V, 1A max.
AC Input: 24~, 1A max.
1
2
3
4
PWR
SFP
9
10
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T +
2-Port 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8T2S
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
1000 LNK ACT
10/100 LNK ACT
SFP
9
10
5
6
7
8

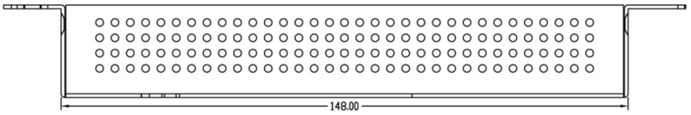

Reset
9
10
24.20

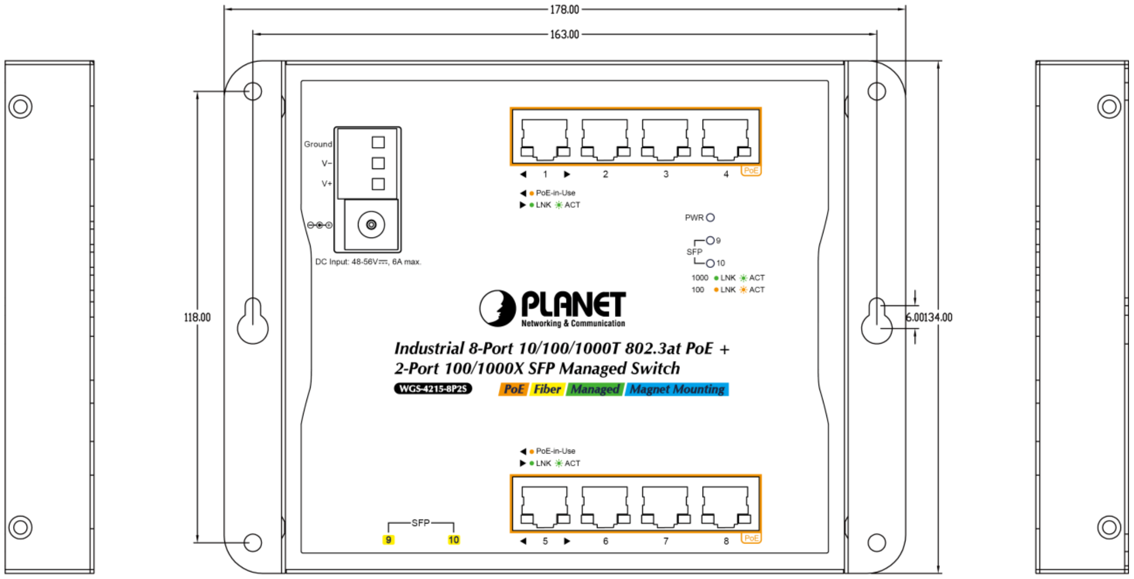


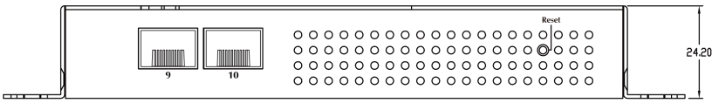
Unit: mm

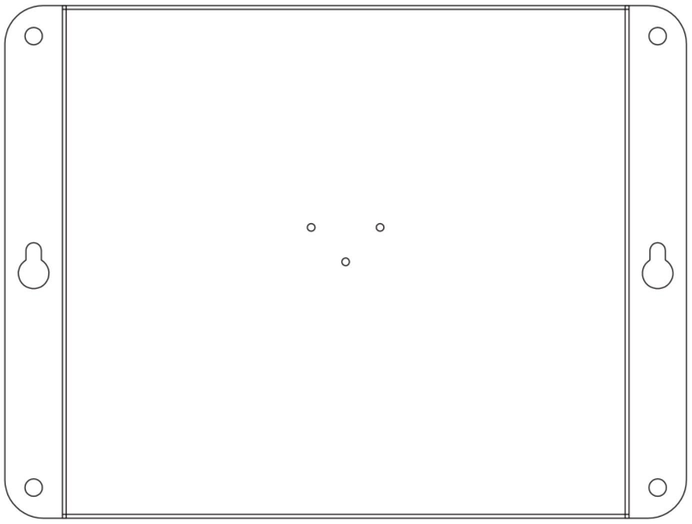
WGS-4215-8P2S

- Dimensions (W x D x H): 178 x 25 x 134mm




178.00
163.00
118.00
6.00
134.00
Ground
V-
V+
DC Input: 48-56V⎓, 6A max.
1
2
3
4
PoE
PoE-in-Use
LNK
ACT
PWR
SFP
9
10
1000
100
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE +
2-Port 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
WGS-4215-8P2S
PoE
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
5
6
7
8

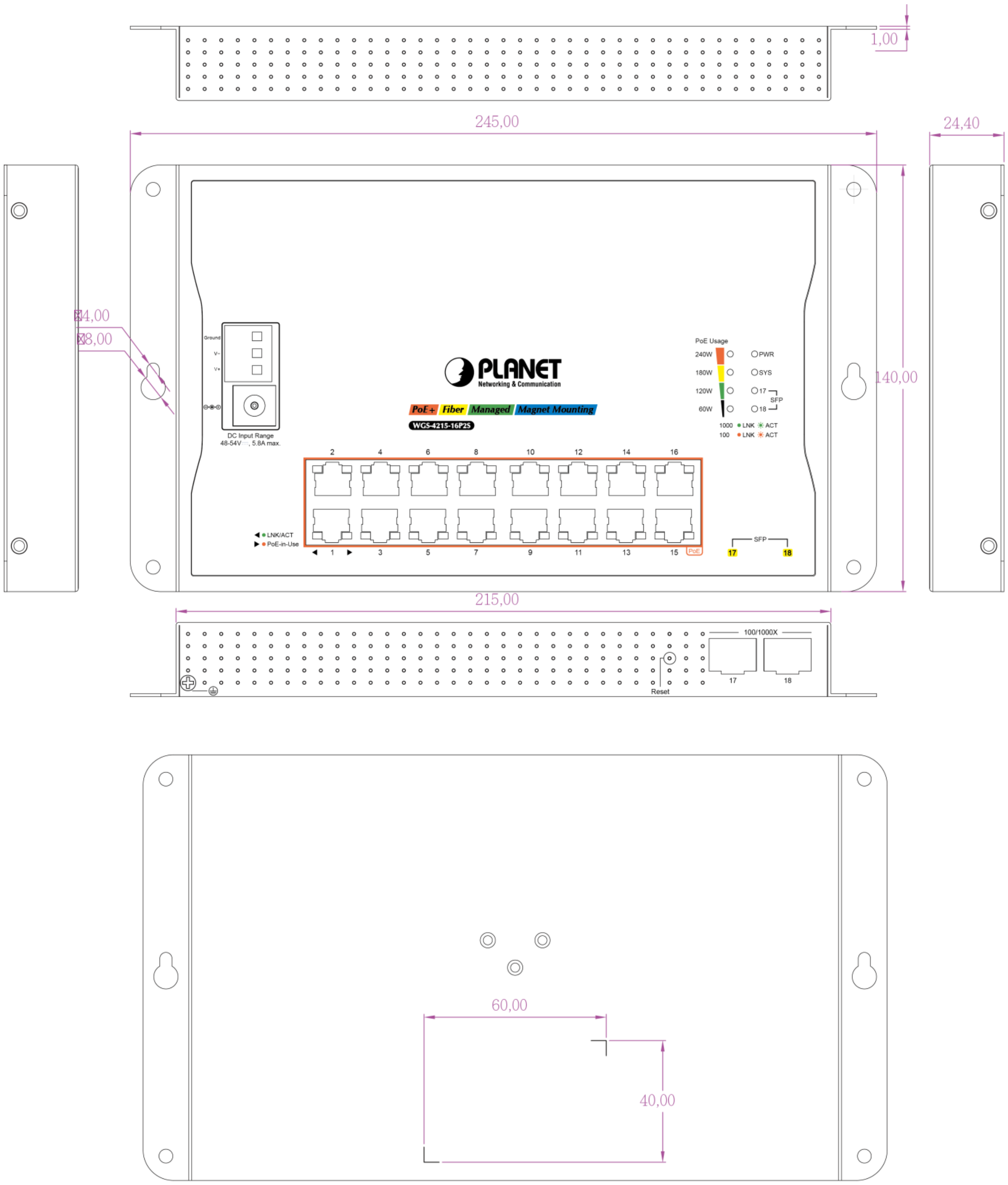

Reset
9
10
24.20



Unit: mm

WGS-4215-16P2S

- Dimensions (W x D x H): 245 x 140 x 24.4 mm


1,00
245,00
24,40
Ø4,00
Ø8,00
140,00
215,00
PoE Usage
240W
180W
120W
60W
PWR
SYS
17
18
SFP
1000 LNK ACT
100 LNK ACT
PoE+ Fiber Managed Magnet Mounting
WGS-4215-16P2S
Ground
V-
V+
DC Input Range
48-54V, 5.8A max.
LNK/ACT
PoE-in-Use
2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16
1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15
PoE
SFP
17
18
100/1000X
17
18
Reset
60,00
40,00

Unit: mm

2.2 Installing the Switch

This section describes how to install your Managed Switch and make connections to the Managed Switch. Please read the following topics and perform the procedures in the order being presented. To install your Managed Switch on a desktop or shelf, simply complete the following steps.

2.2.1 Wall Mount/Magnet Installation

2.2.1.1 Wall-mount installation

To install the Managed Switch on the wall, simply follow the following steps:

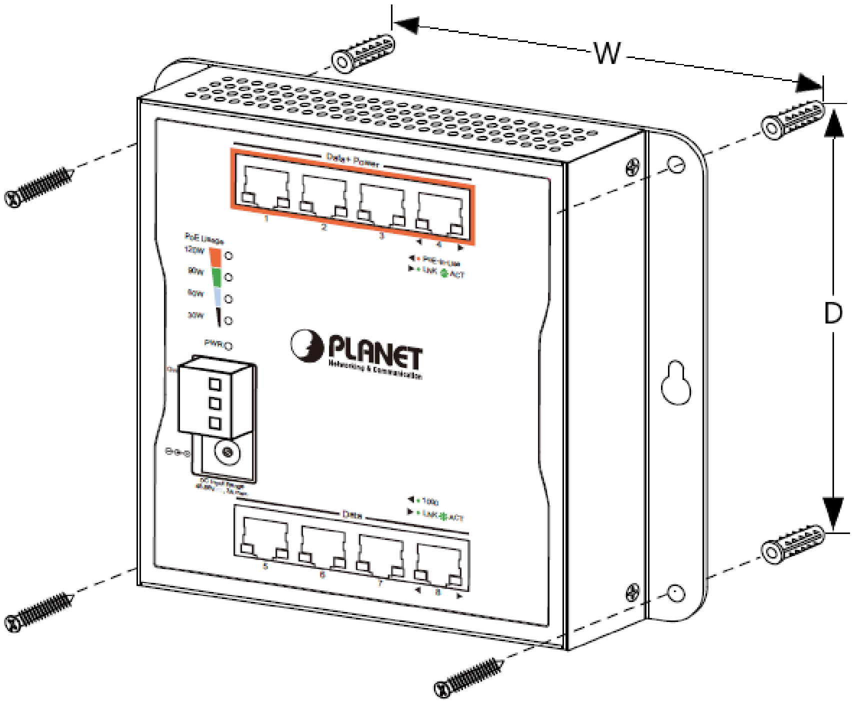
Step 1: There are 4 holes with 8mm diameter on the wall;

- WGS-804HPT/WGS-4215-8T: The distance between the 2 holes is 133mm
- WGS-4215 Series: The distance between the 2 holes is 163mm
- WGS-4215-16P2S: The distance between the 2 holes is 230mm

Note: The line through them must be horizontal.

Step 2: Install a conductor pipe inside the board hole and flush the edge of the conductor pipe with the wall surface.

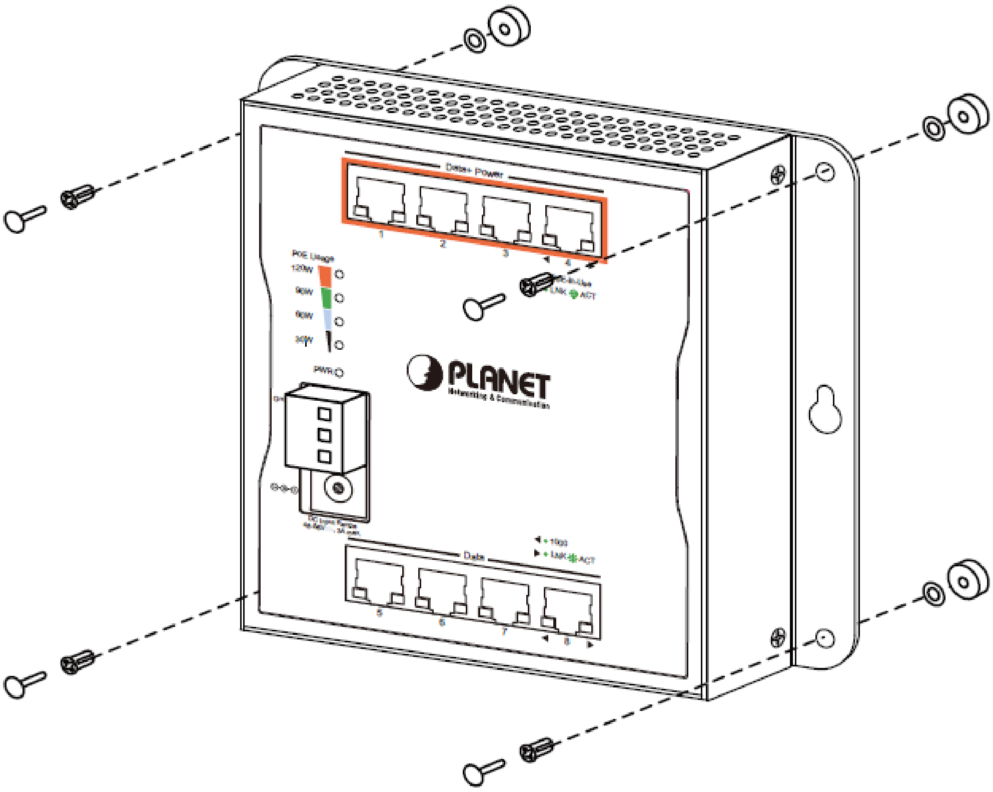
Step 3: Screw the bolts into the conductor pipe. The Wall-mount Managed Switch is between bolts and conductor pipe, as shown below.



Vary on model			
Distance (mm)	**8-port**	**8+2S**	**16+2S**
W	**133**	**163**	**230**
D	**118**	**118**	**124**

2.2.1.2 Magnet Installation

To install the Wall-mount Managed Switch on a magnetic surface, simply follow the following diagram:


Data+ Power
1
2
3
4
PoE Usage
120W
90W
60W
30W
PWR
PLANET
Networking & Communication
Data
5
6
7
8

Caution

Warning!

As the magnetic mounting is not securely fixed, be aware that the switch will not fall or break due to vibration when installing the switch.

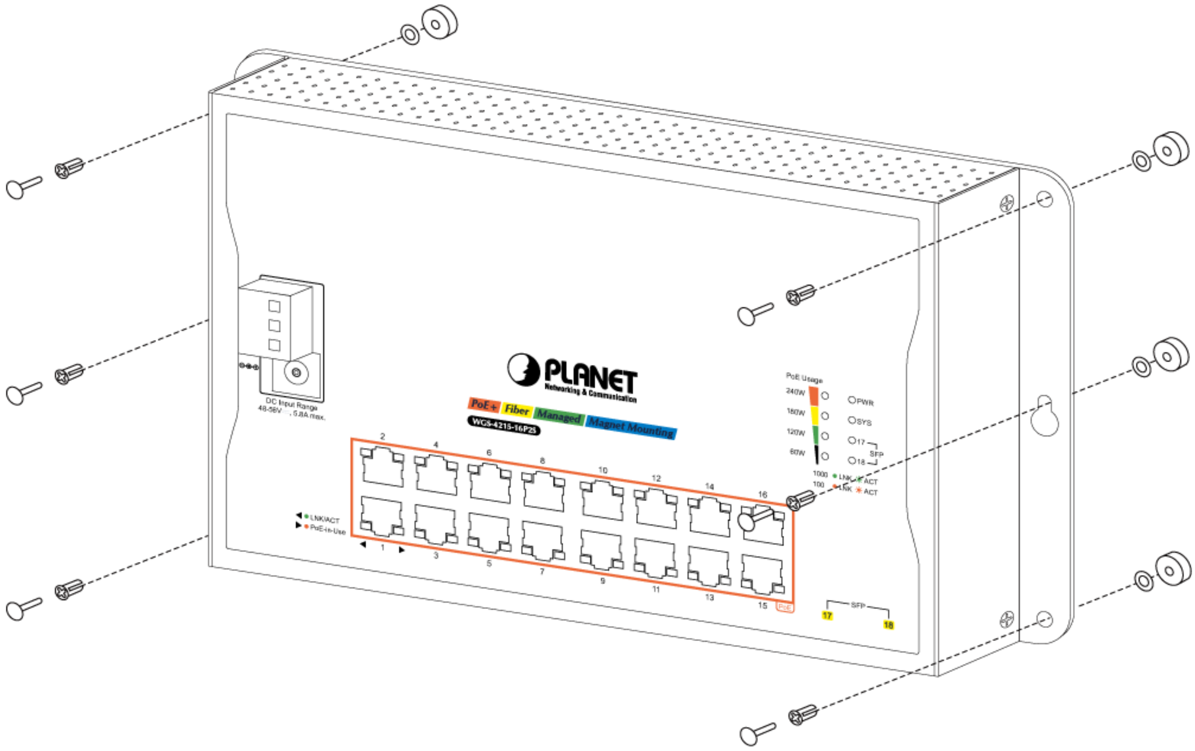
Note

Please use the screw from the magnet kit to avoid breaking the device.

Magnet Installation of WGS-4215-16P2S

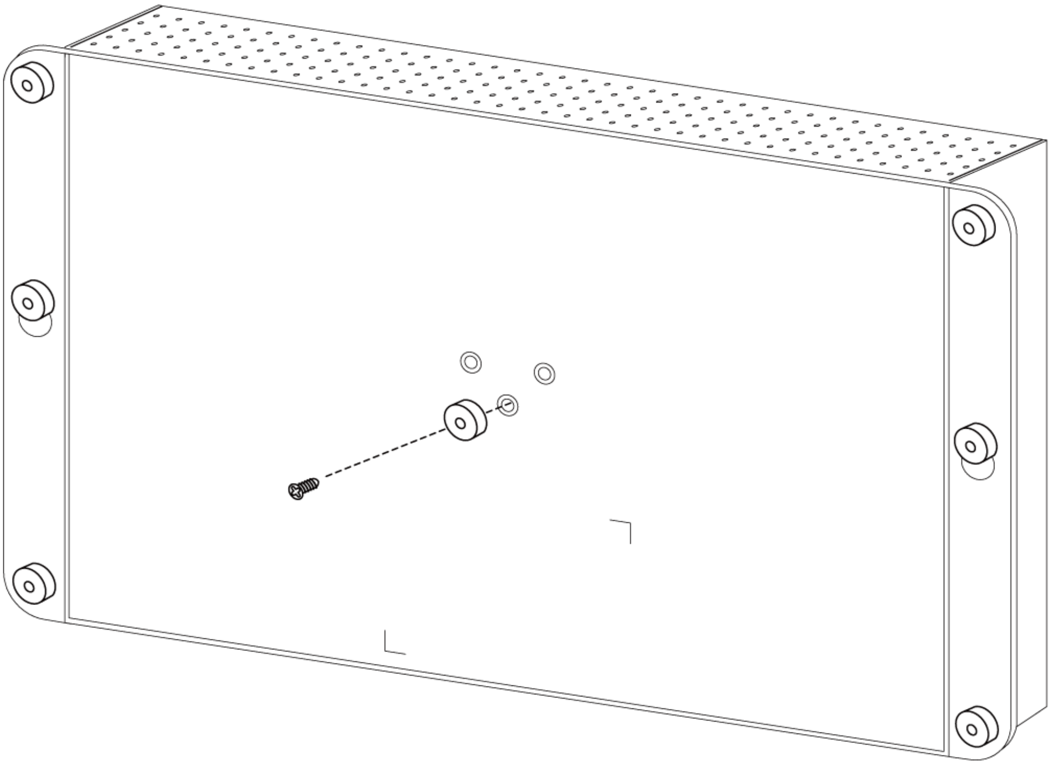
There are six holes on the unit, using six round magnets to install. Please refer to the following diagrams for the installation:

Step 1: The six round magnets are to be placed on the six holes of the back of the switch.


PLANET
Networking & Communication
PoE+
Fiber
Managed
Magnet Mounting
WGS-4215-16P2S
DC Input Range
48-56V ⎓ 5.8A max.
PoE Usage
240W
180W
120W
60W
PWR
SYS
17
18
SFP
1000
100
LNK
ACT
LNK/ACT
PoE-in-Use
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
SFP
17
18

Step 2: Turn the switch to front and push the six plastic anchors into the six holes and then push the bolts into the anchors to secure the magnets.

Step 3: One last round magnet should be fixed in the middle of the switch.

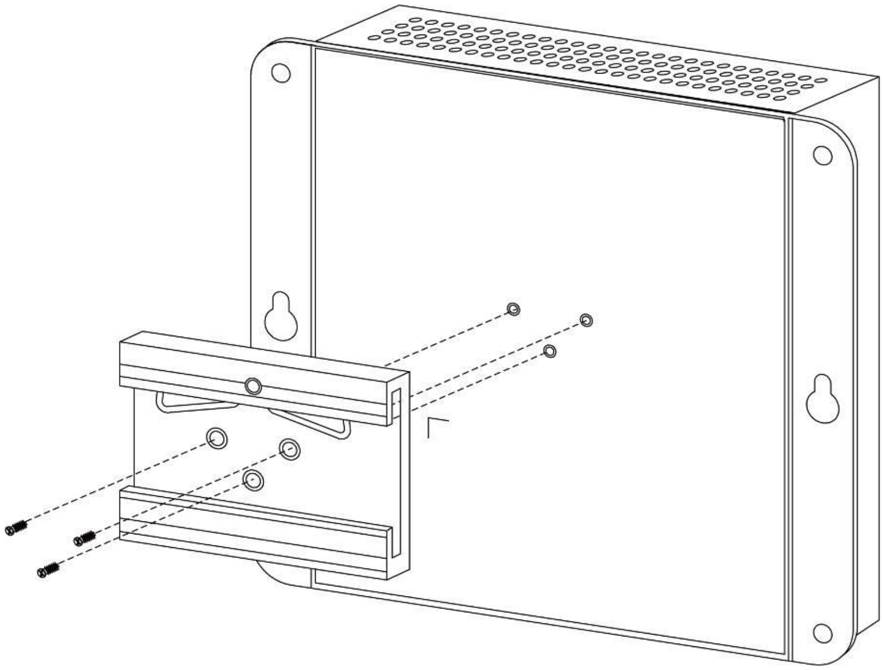


Step 4: Now the you can place the switch onto any magnetic surface.

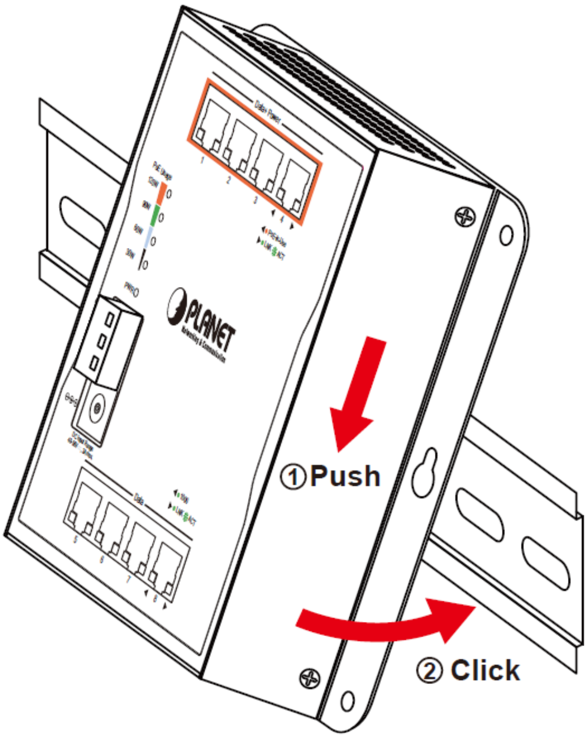
2.2.2 DIN-rail Installation

The DIN-rail kit is included in the package. When the wall-mount application for the Wall-mount Managed Switch needs to be replaced with DIN-rail application, please refer to the following diagrams to screw the DIN-rail on the Wall-mount Managed Switch. To hang up the Wall-mount Managed Switch, follow the steps below:

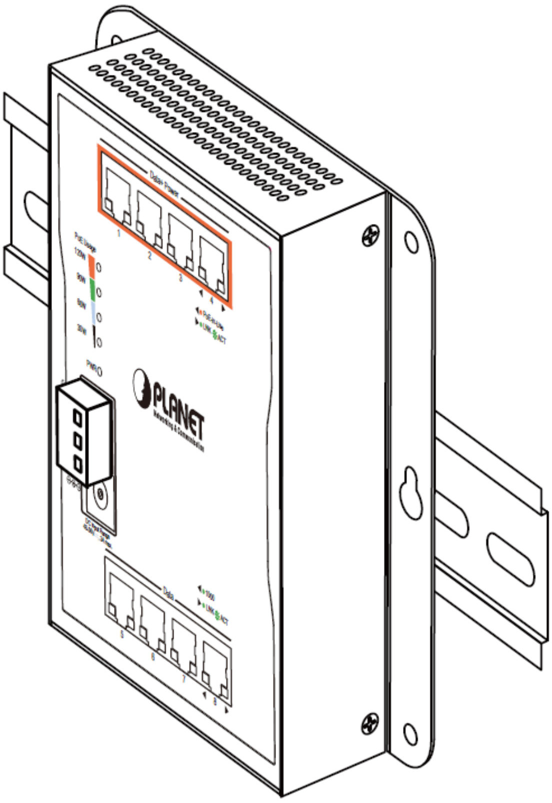
Step 1: Screw the DIN-rail on the Wall-mount Managed Switch.



Step 2: Lightly slide the bottom of DIN-rail into the rail.



Step 3: Check whether the DIN-rail is tightly on the track.



2.2.3 Installing the SFP transceiver

The sections describe how to insert an SFP transceiver into an SFP slot. The SFP transceivers are hot-pluggable and hot-swappable. You can plug in and out the transceiver to/from any SFP port without having to power down the Managed Switch, as the Figure 2-1-2e shows.

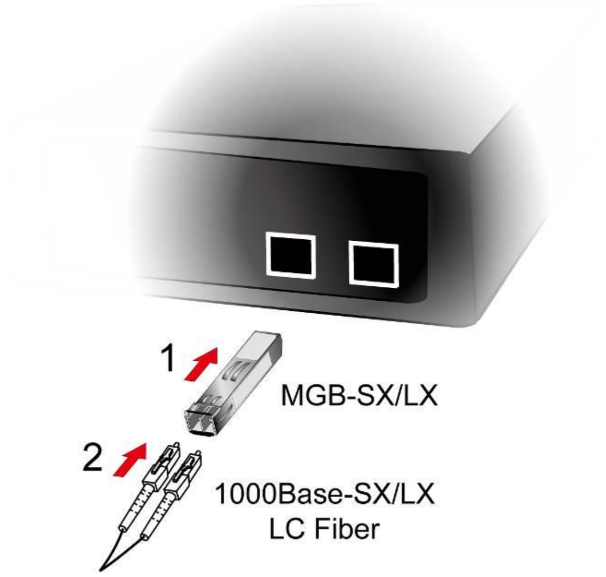


Figure 2-1-2f Plug in the SFP transceiver

- **Approved PLANET SFP Transceivers**

PLANET Managed Switch supports both single mode and multi-mode SFP transceivers. The following list of approved PLANET SFP transceivers is correct at the time of publication:

Fast Ethernet Transceiver (100BASE-X SFP)

Model	Speed (Mbps)	Connector Interface	Fiber Mode	Distance	Wavelength (nm)	Operating Temp.
MFB-FX	100	LC	Multi Mode	2km	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MFB-F20	100	LC	Single Mode	20km	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MFB-F40	100	LC	Single Mode	40km	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MFB-F60	100	LC	Single Mode	60km	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MFB-F120	100	LC	Single Mode	120km	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MFB-TFX	100	LC	Multi Mode	2km	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MFB-TF20	100	LC	Single Mode	20km	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C

Fast Ethernet Transceiver (100BASE-BX, Single Fiber Bi-directional SFP)

Model	Speed (Mbps)	Connector Interface	Fiber Mode	Distance	Wavelength (TX)	Wavelength (RX)	Operating Temp.
MFB-FA20	100	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1310nm	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MFB-FB20	100	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1550nm	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MFB-TFA20	100	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1310nm	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MFB-TFB20	100	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1550nm	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MFB-TFA40	100	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	40km	1310nm	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MFB-TFB40	100	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	40km	1550nm	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C

Gigabit Ethernet Transceiver (1000BASE-X SFP)

Model	Speed (Mbps)	Connector Interface	Fiber Mode	Distance	Wavelength (nm)	Operating Temp.
MGB-GT	1000	Copper	--	100m	--	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-SX	1000	LC	Multi Mode	550m	850nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-SX2	1000	LC	Multi Mode	2km	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LX	1000	LC	Single Mode	10km	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-L30	1000	LC	Single Mode	30km	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-L50	1000	LC	Single Mode	50km	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-L70	1000	LC	Single Mode	70km	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-L120	1000	LC	Single Mode	120km	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-TSX	1000	LC	Multi Mode	550m	850nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLX	1000	LC	Single Mode	10km	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TL30	1000	LC	Single Mode	30km	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TL70	1000	LC	Single Mode	70km	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C

Gigabit Ethernet Transceiver (1000BASE-BX, Single Fiber Bi-directional SFP)

Model	Speed (Mbps)	Connector Interface	Fiber Mode	Distance	Wavelength (TX)	Wavelength (RX)	Operating Temp.
MGB-LA10	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	10km	1310nm	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LB10	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	10km	1550nm	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LA20	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1310nm	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LB20	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1550nm	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LA40	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	40km	1310nm	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LB40	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	40km	1550nm	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LA60	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	60km	1310nm	1550nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-LB60	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	60km	1550nm	1310nm	0 ~ 60 degrees C
MGB-TLA10	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	10km	1310nm	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLB10	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	10km	1550nm	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLA20	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1310nm	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLB20	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	20km	1550nm	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLA40	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	40km	1310nm	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLB40	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	40km	1550nm	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLA60	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	60km	1310nm	1550nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C
MGB-TLB60	1000	WDM(LC)	Single Mode	60km	1550nm	1310nm	-40 ~ 75 degrees C

Note

It is recommended to use PLANET SFPs on the **Industrial Managed Switch**. If you insert an SFP transceiver that is not supported, the **Industrial Managed Switch** might not recognize it.

Note

Please choose the SFP transceiver which can be operated in the temperature range of -40~75 degrees C.

1000BASE-SX/LX:

1. Before we connect Managed Switch to the other network device, we have to make sure both sides of the SFP transceivers are with the same media type, for example, 1000BASE-SX to 1000BASE-SX, 1000BASE-LX to 1000BASE-LX.

2. Check whether the fiber-optic cable type matches with the SFP transceiver requirement.
    - To connect to 1000BASE-SX SFP transceiver, please use the multi-mode fiber cable with one side being the male duplex LC connector type.
    - To connect to 1000BASE-LX SFP transceiver, please use the single-mode fiber cable with one side being the male duplex LC connector type.

Connect the Fiber Cable

1. Insert the duplex LC connector into the SFP transceiver.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to a device with SFP transceiver installed.
3. Check the LNK/ACT LED of the SFP slot on the front of the Managed Switch. Ensure that the SFP transceiver is operating correctly.
4. Check the Link mode of the SFP port if the link fails. To function with some fiber-NICs or media converters, user has to set the port Link mode to **"1000 Force"** or **"100 Force"**.

Remove the Transceiver Module

1. Make sure there is no network activity anymore.
2. Remove the fiber-optic cable gently.
3. Lift up the lever of the MGB module and turn it to a horizontal position.
4. Pull out the module gently through the lever.

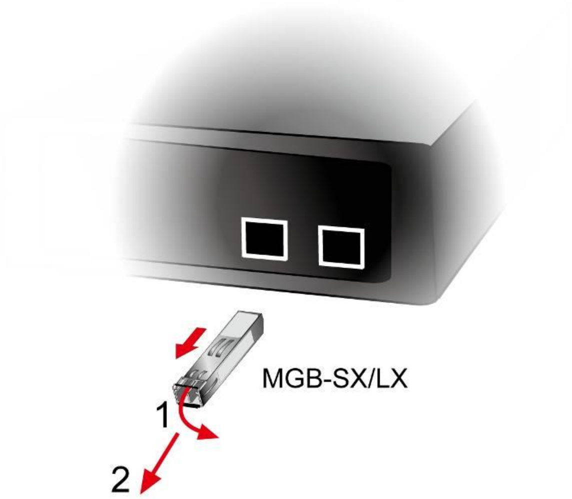


Figure 2-1-2g How to Pull Out the SFP Transceiver

Never pull out the module without lifting up the lever of the module and turning it into a horizontal position. Directly pulling out the module could damage the module and the SFP module slot of the Managed Switch.

3. SWITCH MANAGEMENT

This chapter explains the methods that you can use to configure management access to the Managed Switch. It describes the types of management applications and the communication and management protocols that deliver data between your management device (workstation or personal computer) and the system. It also contains information about port connection options.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Requirements
- Management Access Overview
- Web Management Access
- SNMP Access
- Standards, Protocols, and Related ReadingRequirements

3.1 Requirements

- **Workstations** running Windows 2000/XP, 2003, Vista/7/8, 2008, MAC OS9 or later, Linux, UNIX or other platforms are compatible with **TCP/IP** protocols.
- **Workstation** is installed with **Ethernet NIC** (Network Interface Card).
- Ethernet Port connection
    - Network cables -- Use standard network (UTP) cables with RJ45 connectors.
- The above Workstation is installed with **Web browser** and **Java runtime environment** plug-in.

Note

It is recommended to use Internet Explore 8.0 or above to access Managed Switch.

3.2 Management Access Overview

The Managed Switch gives you the flexibility to access and manage it using any or all of the following methods:

- **Web browser** interface
- An external **SNMP-based network management application**

The Web browser interfaces are embedded in the Managed Switch software and are available for immediate use. Each of these management methods has their own advantages. Table 3-1 compares the three management methods.

Method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Web Browser	• Ideal for configuring the switch remotely • Compatible with all popular browsers • Can be accessed from any location • Most visually appealing	• Security can be compromised (hackers need to only know the IP address and subnet mask) • May encounter lag times on poor connections
SNMP Agent	• Communicates with switch functions at the MIB level • Based on open standards	• Requires SNMP manager software • Least visually appealing of all three methods • Some settings require calculations • Security can be compromised (hackers need to only know the community name)

Table 3-1 Comparison of Management Methods

3.3 Web Management

The Managed Switch offers management features that allow users to manage the Managed Switch from anywhere on the network through a standard browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer. After you set up your IP address for the switch, you can access the Managed Switch's Web interface applications directly in your Web browser by entering the IP address of the Managed Switch.

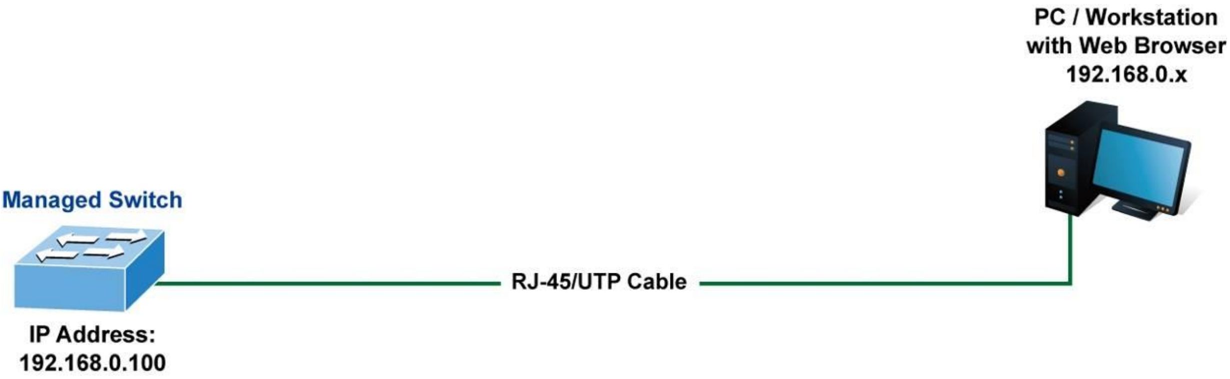
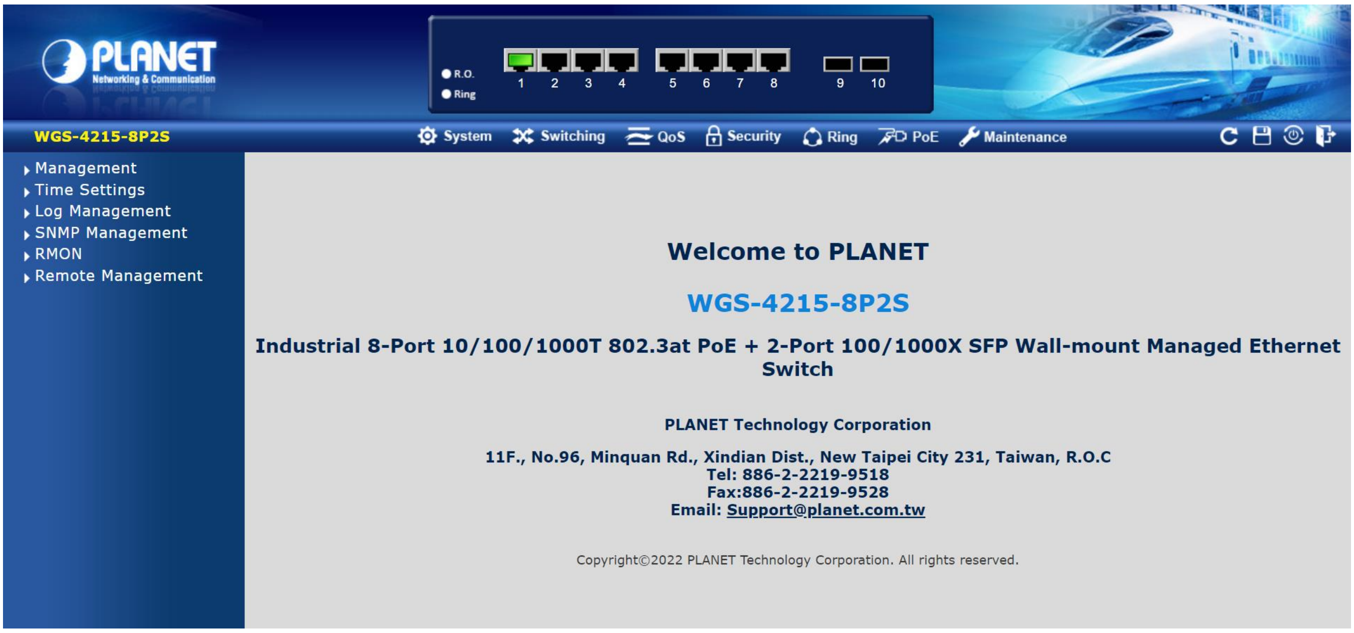

PC / Workstation
with Web Browser
192.168.0.x
Managed Switch
RJ-45/UTP Cable
IP Address:
192.168.0.100

Figure 3-1-1 Web Management

You can then use your Web browser to list and manage the Managed Switch configuration parameters from one central location. Web Management requires either **Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0** or later, **Google Chrome**, **Safari** or **Mozilla Firefox 1.5** or later.


PLANET
Networking & Communication
R.O.
Ring
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
WGS-4215-8P2S
System
Switching
QoS
Security
Ring
PoE
Maintenance
Management
Time Settings
Log Management
SNMP Management
RMON
Remote Management

Welcome to PLANET

WGS-4215-8P2S

Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE + 2-Port 100/1000X SFP Wall-mount Managed Ethernet Switch

PLANET Technology Corporation

11F., No.96, Minquan Rd., Xindian Dist., New Taipei City 231, Taiwan, R.O.C
Tel: 886-2-2219-9518
Fax:886-2-2219-9528
Email: Support@planet.com.tw

Copyright©2022 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-1-2 Web Main Screen of Managed Switch

3.4 SNMP-based Network Management

You can use an external SNMP-based application to configure and manage the Managed Switch, such as SNMPc Network Manager, HP Openview Network Node Management (NNM) or What’s Up Gold. This management method requires the SNMP agent on the switch and the SNMP Network Management Station to use the **same community string**. This management method, in fact, uses two community strings: the **get community** string and the **set community** string. If the SNMP Network management Station only knows the set community string, it can read and write to the MIBs. However, if it only knows the get community string, it can only read MIBs. The default gets and sets community strings for the Managed Switch are public.

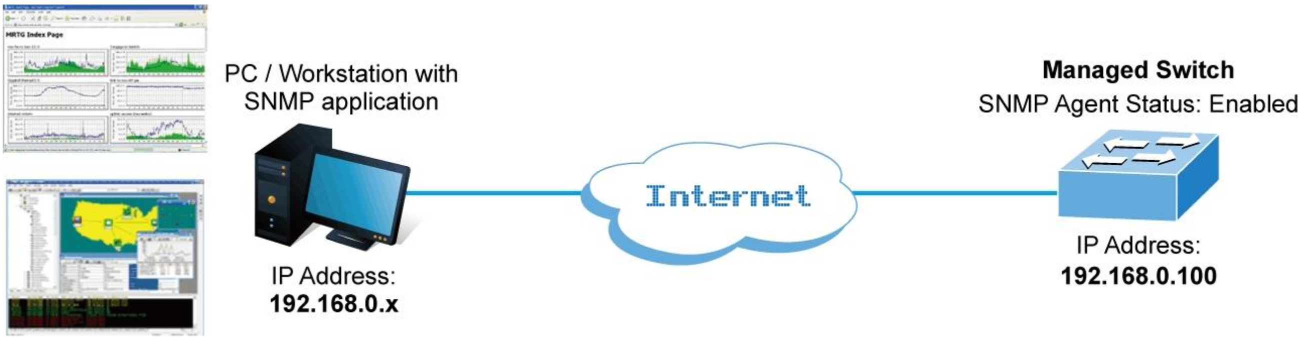
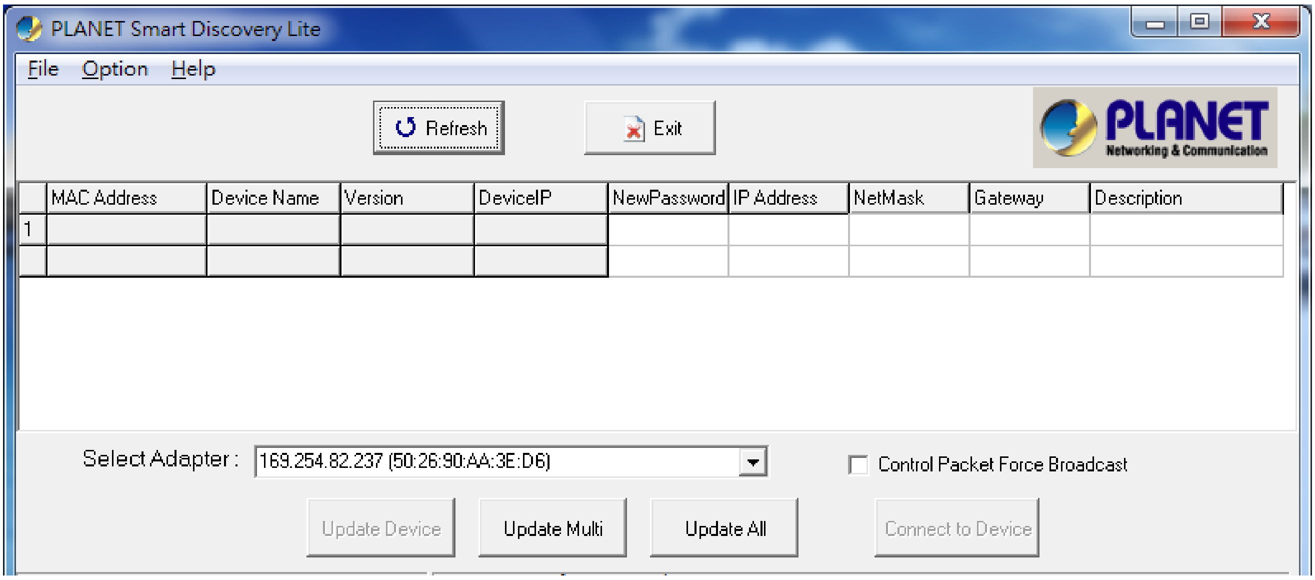

PC / Workstation with SNMP application
IP Address:
192.168.0.x
Internet
Managed Switch
SNMP Agent Status: Enabled
IP Address:
192.168.0.100

Figure 3-1-3 SNMP Management

3.5 PLANET Smart Discovery Utility

For easily listing the Managed Switch in your Ethernet environment, the Planet Smart Discovery Utility from user's manual CD-ROM is an ideal solution. The following installation instructions are to guide you to running the Planet Smart Discovery Utility.

1. Deposit the Planet Smart Discovery Utility in administrator PC.
2. Run this utility as the following screen appears.


PLANET Smart Discovery Lite
File
Option
Help
Refresh
Exit
PLANET
Networking & Communication
☐ Control Packet Force Broadcast
Update Device
Update Multi
Update All
Connect to Device

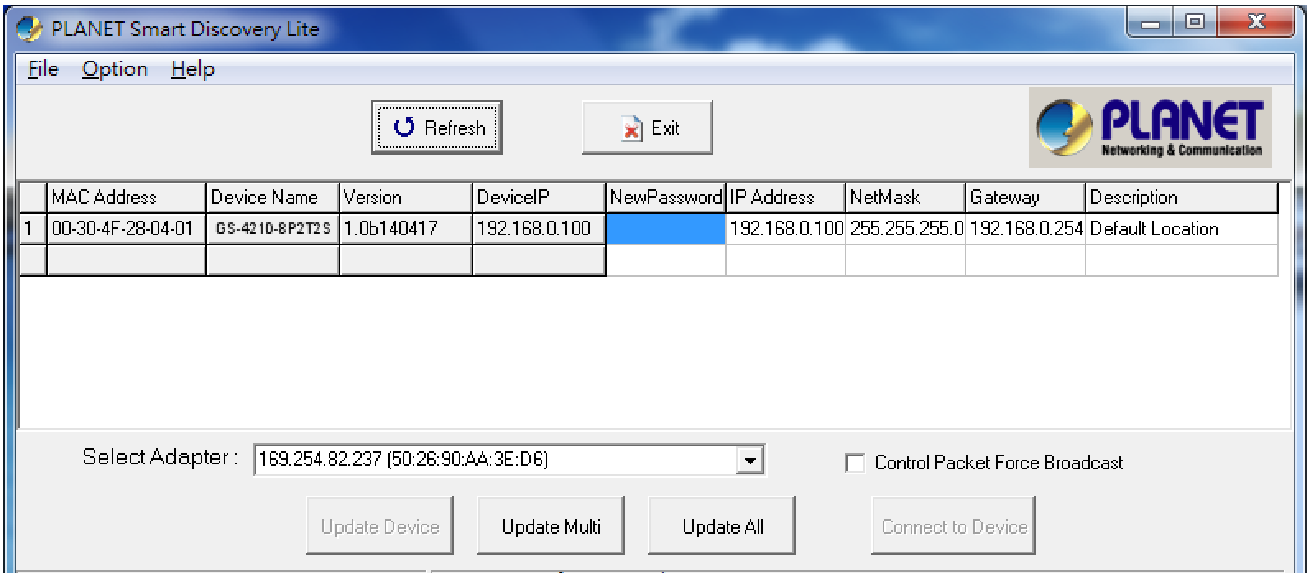
	MAC Address	Device Name	Version	DeviceIP	NewPassword	IP Address	NetMask	Gateway	Description
1									

Select Adapter : 169.254.82.237 (50:26:90:AA:3E:D6)

Figure 3-1-4 Planet Smart Discovery Utility Screen

If there are two LAN cards or above in the same administrator PC, choose a different LAN card by using the **"Select Adapter"** tool.

3. Press the **"Refresh"** button for the currently connected devices in the discovery list as the screen shows below:


PLANET Smart Discovery Lite
File
Option
Help
Refresh
Exit
PLANET
Networking & Communication
☐ Control Packet Force Broadcast
Update Device
Update Multi
Update All
Connect to Device

	MAC Address	Device Name	Version	DeviceIP	NewPassword	IP Address	NetMask	Gateway	Description
1	00-30-4F-28-04-01	GS-4210-8P2T2S	1.0b140417	192.168.0.100		192.168.0.100	255.255.255.0	192.168.0.254	Default Location

Select Adapter : 169.254.82.237 (50:26:90:AA:3E:D6)

Figure 3-1-5 Planet Smart Discovery Utility Screen

1. This utility shows all the necessary information from the devices, such as MAC Address, Device Name, firmware version and Device IP Subnet address. It can also assign new password, IP Subnet address and description to the devices.

2. After setup is completed, press the **"Update Device"**, **"Update Multi"** or **"Update All"** button to take effect. The meaning of the 3 buttons above are shown below:

   - **Update Device**: use current setting on one single device.
   - **Update Multi:** use current setting on multi-devices.
   - **Update All:** use current setting on whole devices in the list.

   The same functions mentioned above also can be found in **"Option"** tools bar.

3. To click the **"Control Packet Force Broadcast"** function, it allows you to assign a new setting value to the Web Smart Switch under a different IP subnet address.

4. Press the **"Connect to Device"** button and the Web login screen appears in Figure 3-1-2.

5. Press **the "Exit"** button to shut down the Planet Smart Discovery Utility.

4. WEB CONFIGURATION

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the Web-based management.

About Web-based Management

The Managed Switch offers management features that allow users to manage the Managed Switch from anywhere on the network through a standard browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer.

The Web-based Management supports Internet Explorer 8.0. It is based on Java Applets with an aim to reduce network bandwidth consumption, enhance access speed and present an easy viewing screen.

Note

By default, IE8.0 or later version does not allow Java Applets to open sockets. The user has to explicitly modify the browser setting to enable Java Applets to use network ports.

The Managed Switch can be configured through an Ethernet connection, making sure the manager PC must be set on the same IP subnet address as the Managed Switch.

For example, the default IP address of the Managed Switch is ***192.168.0.100***, then the manager PC should be set at **192.168.0.x** (where x is a number between 1 and 254, except 100), and the default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

If you have changed the default IP address of the Managed Switch to 192.168.1.1 with subnet mask 255.255.255.0 via WebUI, then the manager PC should be set at 192.168.1.x (where x is a number between 2 and 254) to do the relative configuration on manager PC.

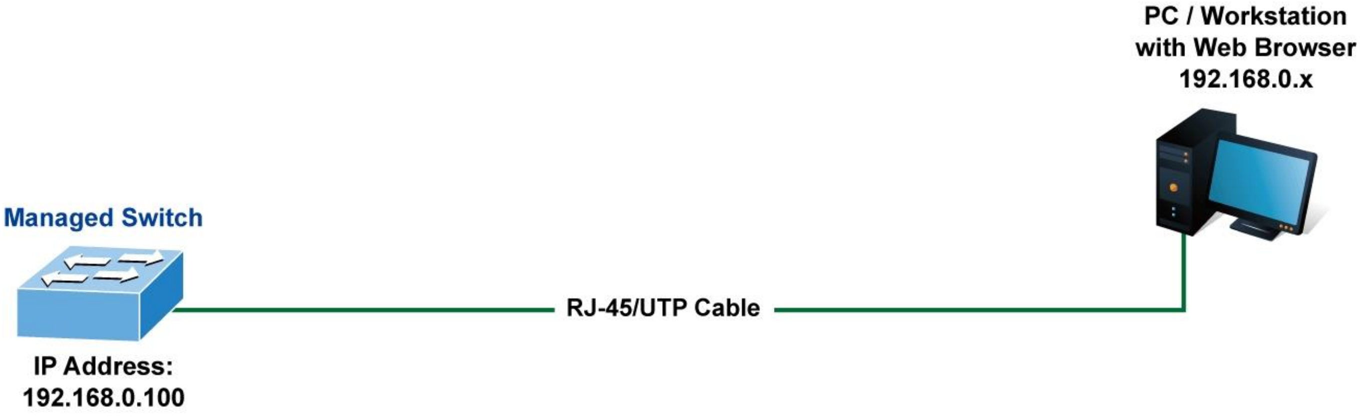


Figure 4-1-1 Web Management

4.1 Logging in to the industial Managed Switch

1. Use Google Chrome or above Web browser and enter IP address https://192.168.0.100 to access the Web interface.

The following web screen is based on the firmware version before **February of 2024**.

2. When the following dialog box appears, please enter the default user name "admin" and password "admin" (or the password you have changed before)

Default User Name: **admin**
Default Password: **admin**

The following web screen is based on the firmware version of **February of 2024** or **after**.

3. When the following dialog box appears, please enter the default user name "admin" and the password. Refer to **Section 3-3-1** to determine your initial login password.

Default IP Address: **192.168.0.100**
Default User Name: **admin**
Default Password: **sw + the last 6 characters of the MAC ID in lowercase**

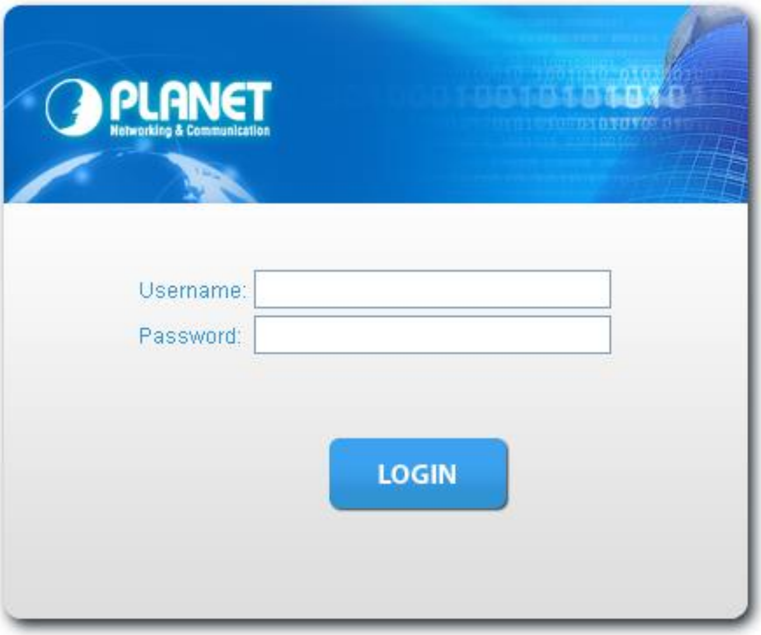
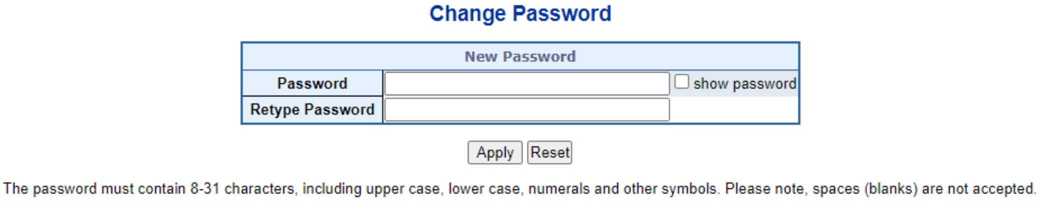


Figure 4-1-2 Login screen

4. After logging in, you will be prompted to change the initial password to a permanent one.



Change Password

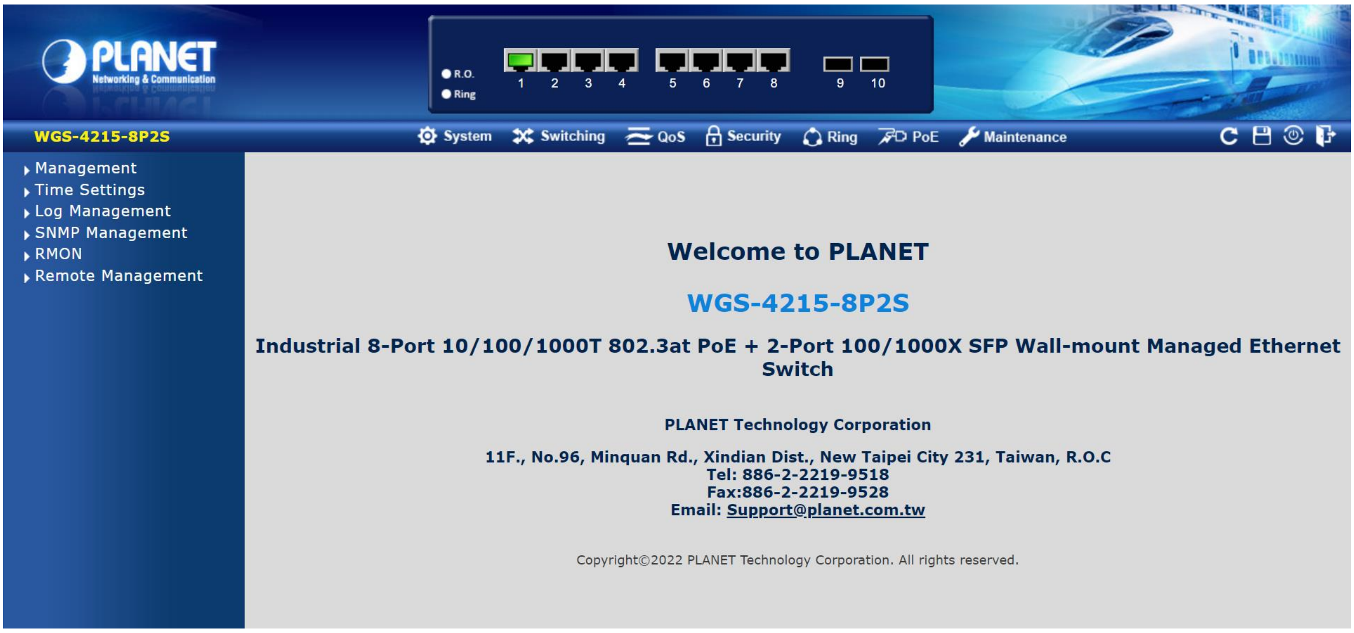
New Password		
Password		☐ show password
Retype Password		

Apply
Reset

The password must contain 8-31 characters, including upper case, lower case, numerals and other symbols. Please note, spaces (blanks) are not accepted.

Figure 4-1-3: Create a New Password

5. Once the password change is complete, re-enter the web interface using your new password and the main screen appears as shown below:



R.O.
Ring
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
WGS-4215-8P2S
System
Switching
QoS
Security
Ring
PoE
Maintenance
Management
Time Settings
Log Management
SNMP Management
RMON
Remote Management

Welcome to PLANET

WGS-4215-8P2S

Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE + 2-Port 100/1000X SFP Wall-mount Managed Ethernet Switch

PLANET Technology Corporation

11F., No.96, Minquan Rd., Xindian Dist., New Taipei City 231, Taiwan, R.O.C
Tel: 886-2-2219-9518
Fax:886-2-2219-9528
Email: Support@planet.com.tw

Copyright©2022 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-1-4 Default Main Page

Now, you can use the Web management interface to continue the switch management or manage the Managed Switch by Web interface. The Switch Menu on the left of the web page lets you access all the commands and statistics the Managed Switch provides.

Note

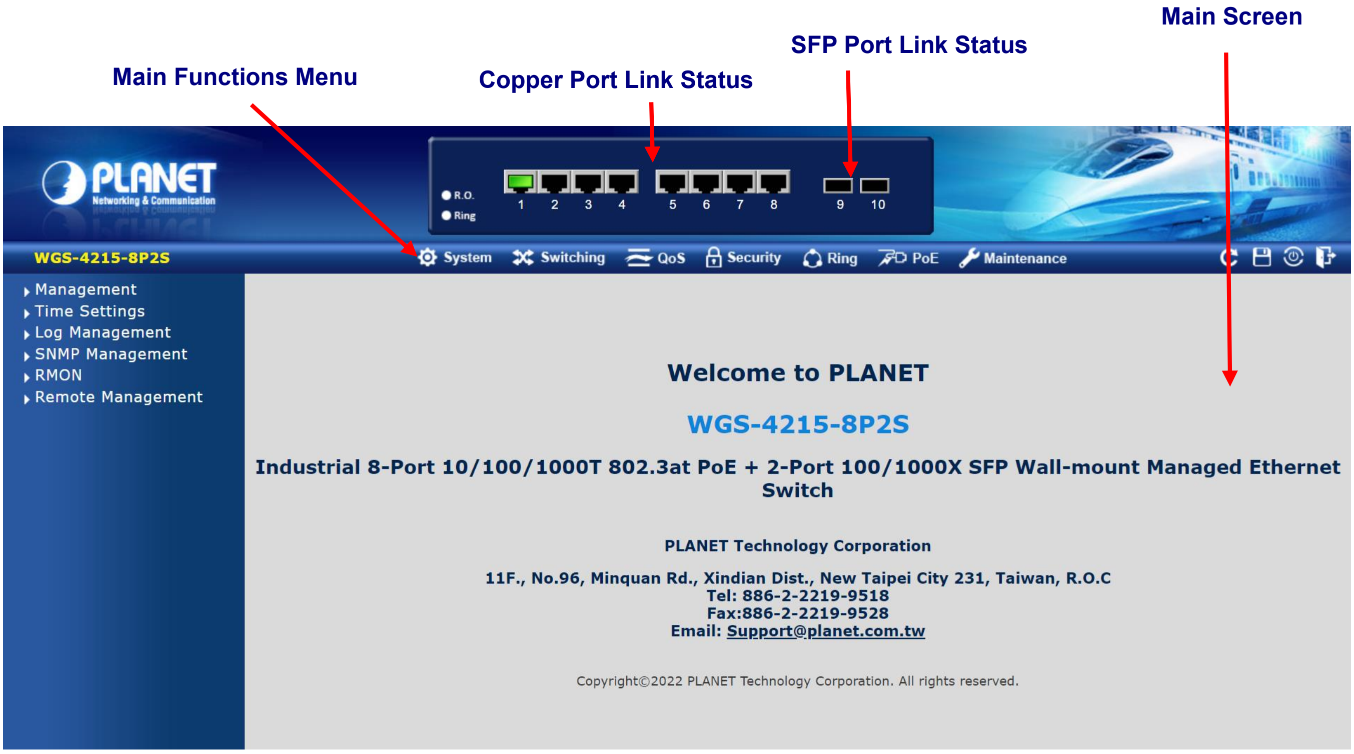
- It is recommended to use Internet Explore 8.0 or above to access Managed Switch.
- The changed IP address takes effect immediately after clicking on the **Save** button. You need to use the new IP address to access the Web interface.

Note

- For security reason, please change and memorize the new password after this first setup.
- Only accept command in lowercase letter under Web interface.

4.1.1 Main Web Page

The Managed Switch provides a Web-based browser interface for configuring and managing it. This interface allows you to access the Managed Switch using the Web browser of your choice. This chapter describes how to use the Managed Switch's Web browser interface to configure and manage it.


Main Screen
SFP Port Link Status
Main Functions Menu
Copper Port Link Status
PLANET Networking & Communication
R.O.
Ring
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
WGS-4215-8P2S
System
Switching
QoS
Security
Ring
PoE
Maintenance
Management
Time Settings
Log Management
SNMP Management
RMON
Remote Management

Welcome to PLANET

WGS-4215-8P2S

Industrial 8-Port 10/100/1000T 802.3at PoE + 2-Port 100/1000X SFP Wall-mount Managed Ethernet Switch

PLANET Technology Corporation

11F., No.96, Minquan Rd., Xindian Dist., New Taipei City 231, Taiwan, R.O.C
Tel: 886-2-2219-9518
Fax:886-2-2219-9528
Email: Support@planet.com.tw

Copyright©2022 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-1-5 Main Page

Panel Display

The Web agent displays an image of the Managed Switch's ports. The Mode can be set to display different information for the ports, including Link up or Link down. Clicking on the image of a port opens the **Port Statistics** page.

The port states are illustrated as follows:

State	**Disabled**	**Down**	**Link**	**PoE-in-use**
RJ45 Ports	🟥	⬛	🟩	🟧
SFP Ports	🟥	⬛	🟩	

Main Menu

Using the onboard Web agent, you can define system parameters, manage and control the Managed Switch, and all its ports, or monitor network conditions. Via the Web-Management, the administrator can set up the Managed Switch by selecting the functions those listed in the Main Function. The screen in Figure 4-1-6 appears.

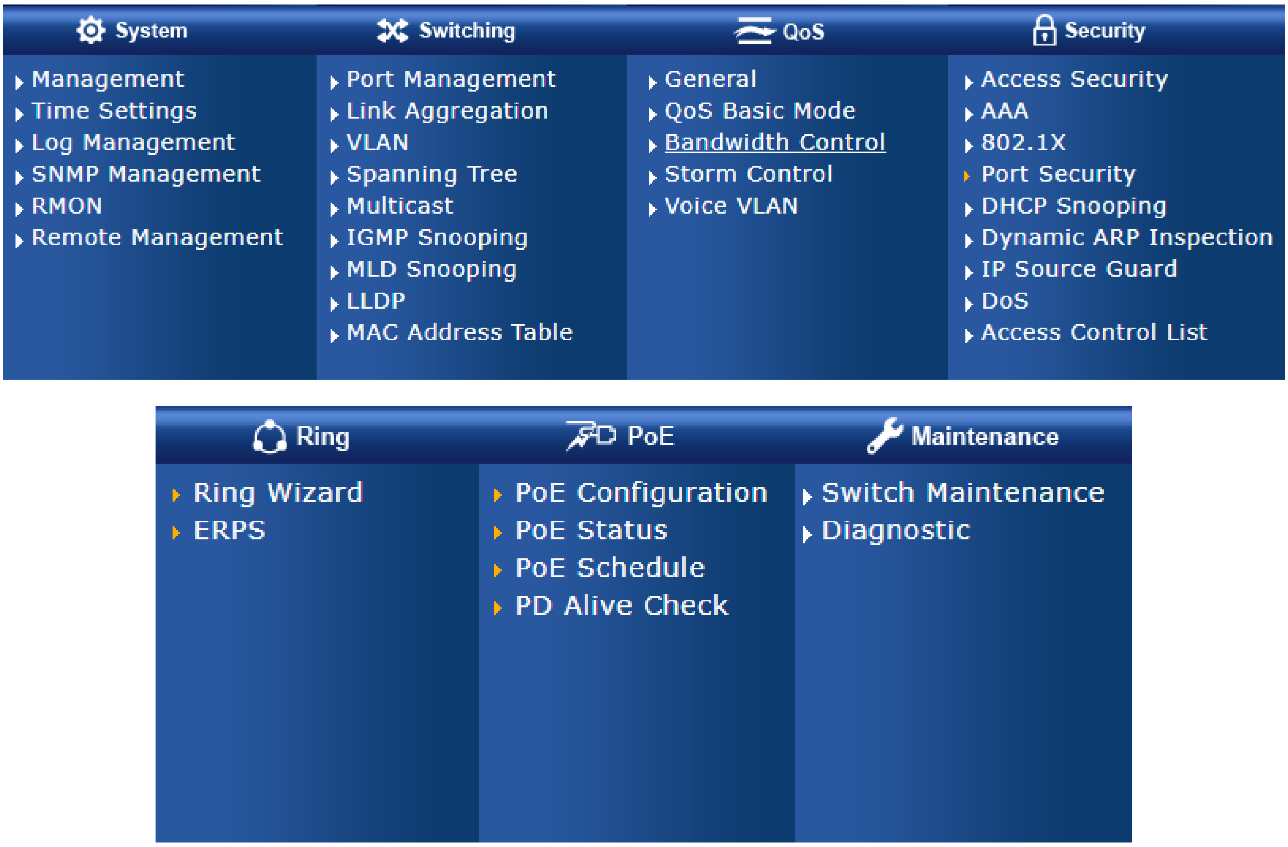

System
Management
Time Settings
Log Management
SNMP Management
RMON
Remote Management
Switching
Port Management
Link Aggregation
VLAN
Spanning Tree
Multicast
IGMP Snooping
MLD Snooping
LLDP
MAC Address Table
QoS
General
QoS Basic Mode
Bandwidth Control
Storm Control
Voice VLAN
Security
Access Security
AAA
802.1X
Port Security
DHCP Snooping
Dynamic ARP Inspection
IP Source Guard
DoS
Access Control List
Ring
Ring Wizard
ERPS
PoE
PoE Configuration
PoE Status
PoE Schedule
PD Alive Check
Maintenance
Switch Maintenance
Diagnostic

Figure 4-1-6 Managed Switch Main Functions Menu

Buttons

: Click to refresh the page.

: Click to save changes

: Click to reboot the Managed Switch.

: Click to logout the Managed Switch.

4.1.2 Save Button

This save button allows you to save the running/startup/backup configuration or reset switch in default parameter. The screen in Figure 4-1-7 appears.

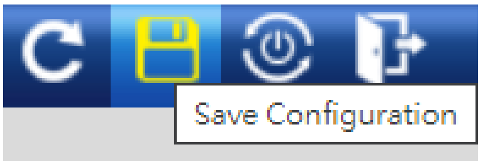


Figure 4-1-7 Save Button Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Save Configuration to FLASH**	Click to save the configuration. For more detailed information, please refer to chapter 4.1.2
• **Restore to Default**	Click to reset switch in default parameter. For more detailed information, please refer to chapter 4.15.1

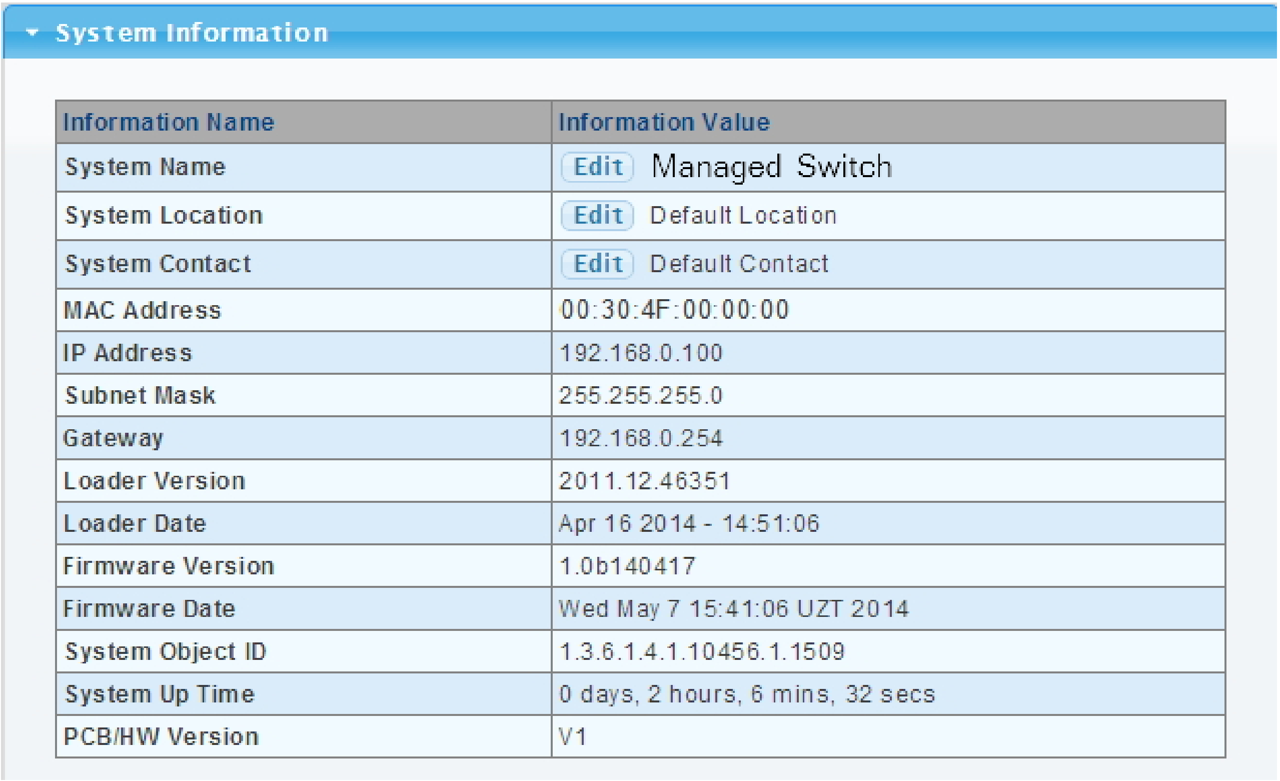
4.2 System

Use the System menu items to display and configure basic administrative details of the Managed Switch. Under System the following topics are provided to configure and view the system information. This section has the following items:

■ **System Information**	The switch system information is provided here.
■ **IP Configurations**	Configure the switch-managed IP information on this page.
■ **IPv6 Configuration**	Configure the switch-managed IPv6 information on this page.
■ **User Configuration**	Configure new user name and password on this page.
■ **Time Settings**	Configure SNTP on this page.
■ **Log Management**	The switch log information is provided here.
■ **SNMP Management**	Configure SNMP on this page.

4.2.1 System Information

The System Info page provides information for the current device information. System Info page helps a switch administrator to identify the hardware MAC address, software version and system uptime. The screens in Figure 4-2-1 & Figure 4-2-2 appear.



Information Name	Information Value
System Name	Managed Switch
System Location	Default Location
System Contact	Default Contact
MAC Address	00:30:4F:00:00:00
IP Address	192.168.0.100
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Gateway	192.168.0.254
Loader Version	2011.12.46351
Loader Date	Apr 16 2014 - 14:51:06
Firmware Version	1.0b140417
Firmware Date	Wed May 7 15:41:06 UZT 2014
System Object ID	1.3.6.1.4.1.10456.1.1509
System Up Time	0 days, 2 hours, 6 mins, 32 secs
PCB/HW Version	V1

Figure 4-2-1 System Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

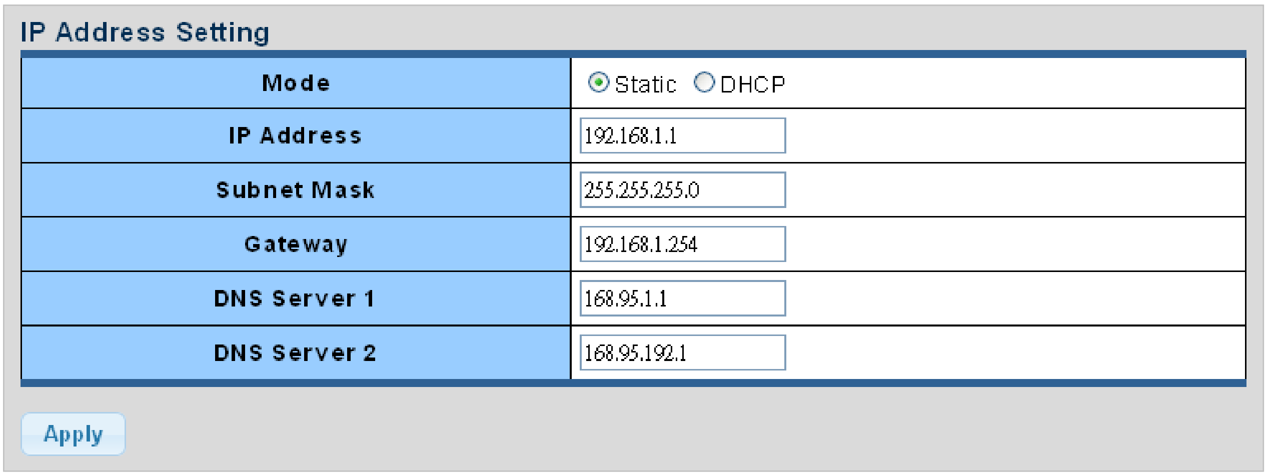
Object	Description
• **System Name**	Display the current system name
• **System Location**	Display the current system location
• **System Contact**	Display the current system contact
• **MAC Address**	The MAC address of this Managed Switch.
• **IP Address**	The IP address of this Managed Switch.
• **Subnet Mask**	The subnet mask of this Managed Switch.
• **Gateway**	The gateway of this Managed Switch.
• **Loader Version**	The loader version of this Managed Switch.
• **Loader Date**	The loader date of this Managed Switch.
• **Firmware Version**	The firmware version of this Managed Switch.
• **Firmware Date**	The firmware date of this Managed Switch.
• **System Object ID**	The system object ID of the Managed Switch.
• **System Uptime**	The period of time the device has been operational.
• **PCN/HW Version**	The hardware version of this Managed Switch.

Buttons

Edit: Click to edit parameter.

4.2.2 IP Configurations

The IP Configuration includes the IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway. The configured column is used to view or change the IP configuration. Fill out the IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway for the device. The screens in Figure 4-2-2 & Figure 4-2-3 appear.



IP Address Setting

Mode	● Static ○ DHCP
IP Address	192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Gateway	192.168.1.254
DNS Server 1	168.95.1.1
DNS Server 2	168.95.192.1

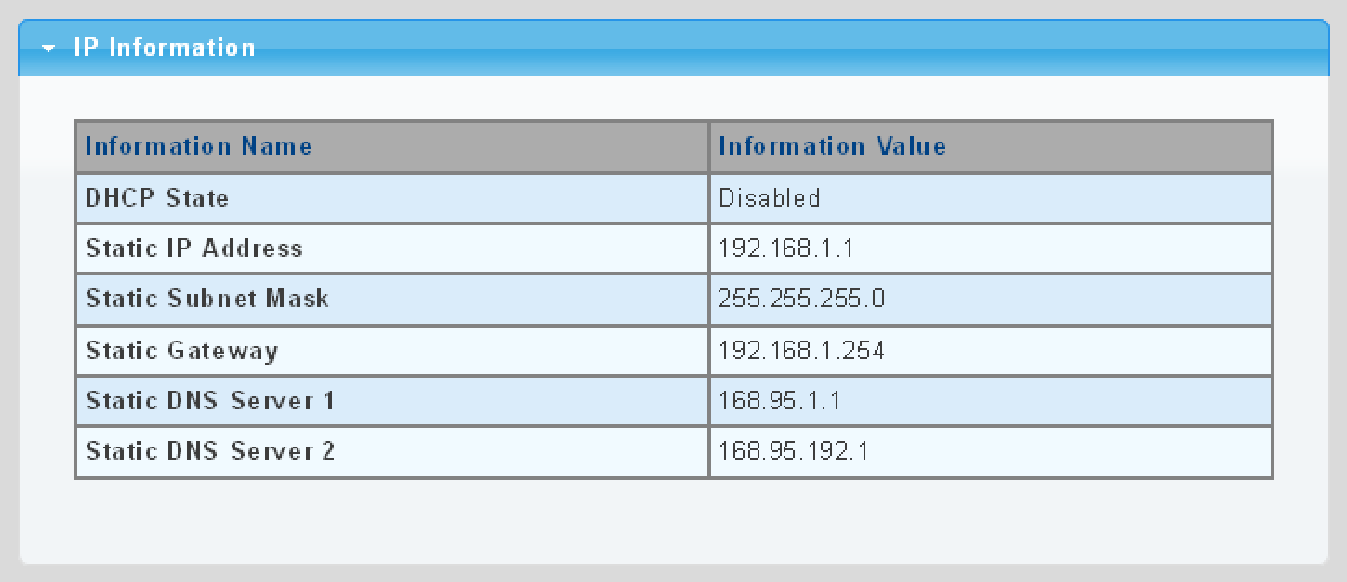
Figure 4-2-2 IP Address Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Mode**	Indicates the IP address mode operation. Possible modes are: **Static**: Enable NTP mode operation. When enabling NTP mode operation, the agent forwards and transfers NTP messages between the clients and the server when they are not on the same subnet domain. **DHCP**: Enable DHCP client mode operation. Enable the DHCP client by checking this box. If DHCP fails and the configured IP address is zero, DHCP will retry. If DHCP fails and the configured IP address is non-zero, DHCP will stop and the configured IP settings will be used. The DHCP client will announce the configured System Name as hostname to provide DNS lookup.
- **IP Address**	Provide the IP address of this switch in dotted decimal notation.
- **Subnet Mask**	Provide the subnet mask of this switch in dotted decimal notation.
- **Gateway**	Provide the IP address of the router in dotted decimal notation.
- **DNS Server 1/2**	Provide the IP address of the DNS Server in dotted decimal notation.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



IP Information

Information Name	Information Value
DHCP State	Disabled
Static IP Address	192.168.1.1
Static Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Static Gateway	192.168.1.254
Static DNS Server 1	168.95.1.1
Static DNS Server 2	168.95.192.1

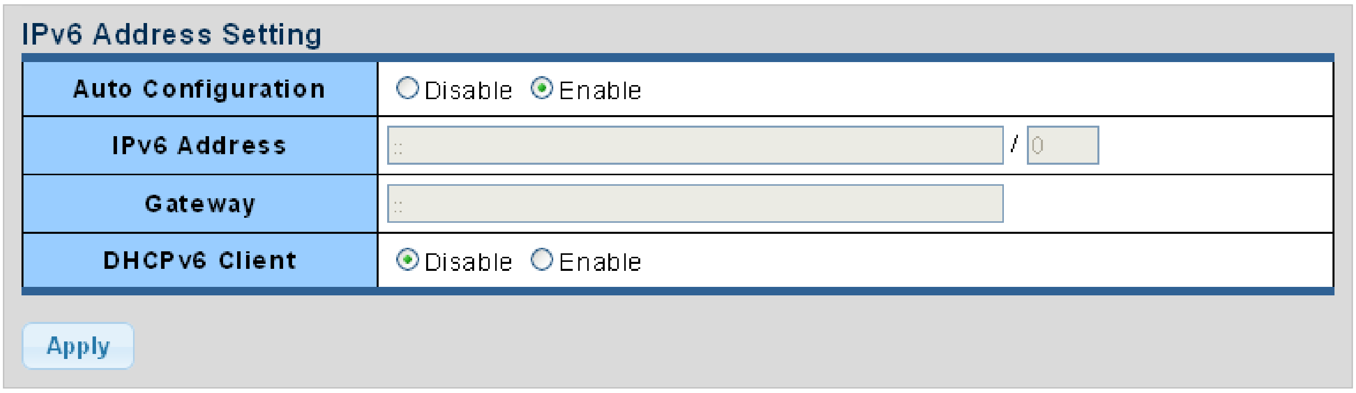
Figure 4-2-3 IP Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **DHCP State**	Display the current DHCP state.
• **IP Address**	Display the current IP address.
• **Subnet Mask**	Display the current subnet mask.
• **Gateway**	Display the current gateway.
• **DNS Server 1/2**	Display the current DNS server.

4.2.3 IPv6 Configuration

The IPv6 Configuration includes Auto Configuration, IPv6 Address and Gateway. The configured column is used to view or change the IPv6 configuration. Fill out the Auto Configuration, IPv6 Address and Gateway for the device. The screens in Figure 4-2-4 & Figure 4-2-5 appear.



Auto Configuration	○ Disable ● Enable
IPv6 Address	:: / 0
Gateway	::
DHCPv6 Client	● Disable ○ Enable

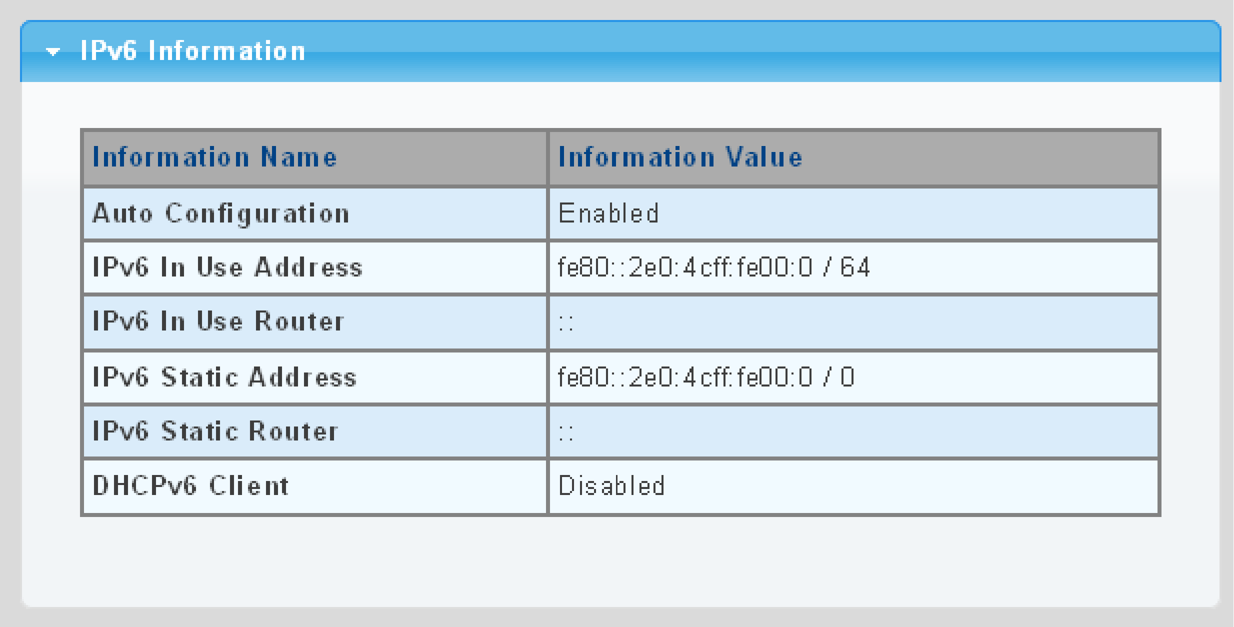
Figure 4-2-4 IPv6 Address Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Auto Configuration**	Enable IPv6 auto-configuration by checking this box. If it fails, the configured IPv6 address is zero. The router may delay responding to a router solicitation for a few seconds; the total time needed to complete auto-configuration can be significantly longer.
• **IPv6 Address**	Provide the IPv6 address of this switch. IPv6 address is in 128-bit records represented as eight fields of up to four hexadecimal digits with a colon separating each field (:). For example, 'fe80::215:c5ff:fe03:4dc7'. The symbol '::' is a special syntax that can be used as a shorthand way of representing multiple 16-bit groups of contiguous zeros; but it can only appear once. It also uses the following legally IPv4 address. For example, ':192.1.2.34'. Provide the IPv6 Prefix of this switch. The allowed range is 1 through 128.
• **Gateway**	Provide the IPv6 gateway address of this switch. IPv6 address is in 128-bit records represented as eight fields of up to four hexadecimal digits with a colon separating each field (:). For example, 'fe80::215:c5ff:fe03:4dc7'.
• **DHCPv6 Client**	To enable this Managed Switch to accept a configuration from a **Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol version 6 (DHCPv6)** server. By default, the Managed Switch does not perform DHCPv6 client actions. DHCPv6 clients request the delegation of long-lived prefixes that they can push to individual local hosts.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



IPv6 Information

Information Name	Information Value
Auto Configuration	Enabled
IPv6 In Use Address	fe80::2e0:4cff:fe00:0 / 64
IPv6 In Use Router	::
IPv6 Static Address	fe80::2e0:4cff:fe00:0 / 0
IPv6 Static Router	::
DHCPv6 Client	Disabled

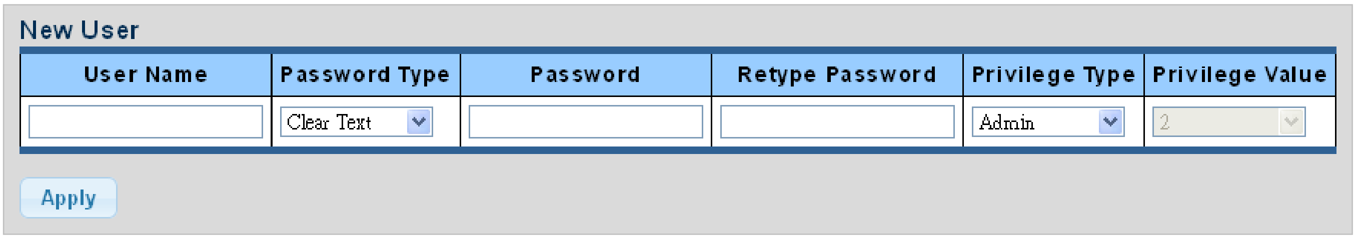
Figure 4-2-5 IPv6 Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Auto Configuration**	Display the current auto configuration state
• **IPv6 In Use Address**	Display the current IPv6 in-use address
• **IPv6 In Use Router**	Display the current in-use gateway
• **IPv6 Static Address**	Display the current IPv6 static address
• **IPv6 Static Router**	Display the current IPv6 static gateway
• **DHCPv6 Client**	Display the current DHCPv6 client status

4.2.4 User Configuration

This page provides an overview of the current users and privilege type. Currently the only way to login as another user on the Web server is to close and reopen the browser. After the setup is completed, please press "**Apply**" button to take effect. Please login Web interface with a new user name and password; the screens in Figure 4-2-6 & Figure 4-2-7 appear.



New User

User Name	Password Type	Password	Retype Password	Privilege Type	Privilege Value
	Clear Text			Admin	2

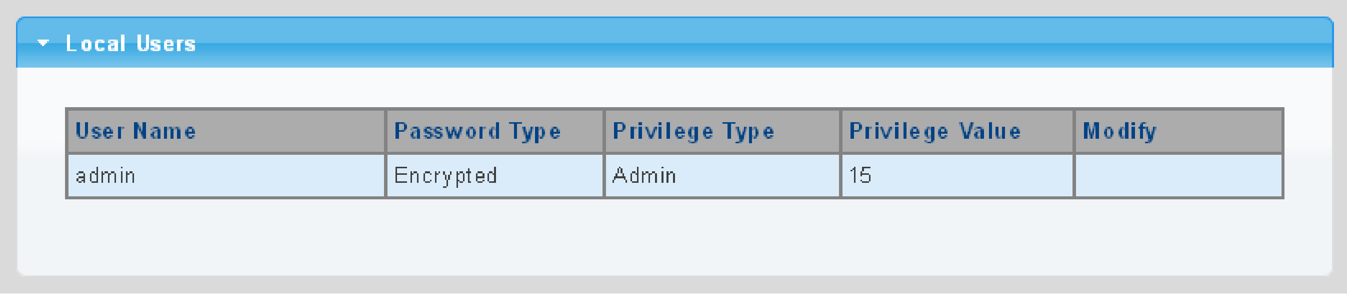
Figure 4-2-6 Local User Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Username**	The name identifying the user. Maximum length: **32** characters; Maximum number of users: **8**
- **Password Type**	The password type for the user.
- **Password**	Enter the user's new password here. (Range: 0-32 characters plain text, case sensitive)
- **Retype Password**	Please enter the user's new password here again to confirm.
- **Privilege Type**	The privilege type for the user. Options: - **Admin** - **User** - **Other**

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



User Name	Password Type	Privilege Type	Privilege Value	Modify
admin	Encrypted	Admin	15	

Figure 4-2-7 Local User Page Screenshot

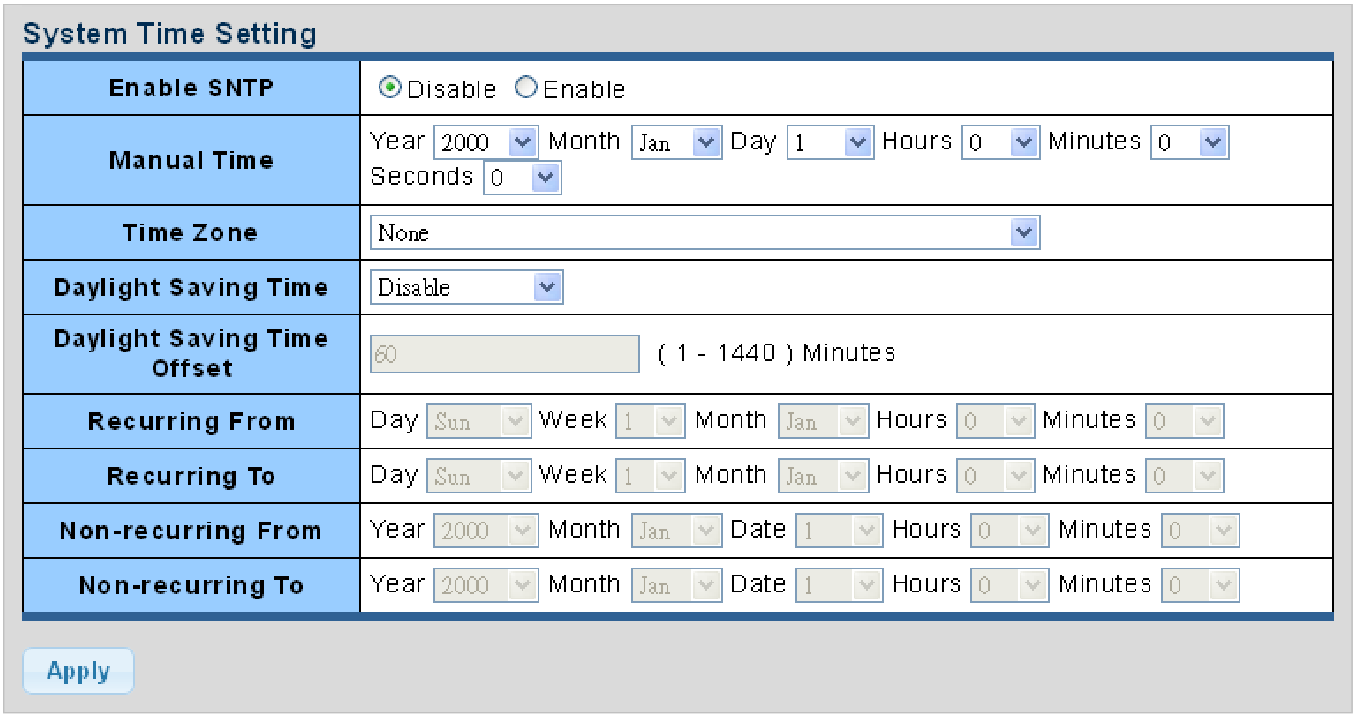
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Username**	Display the current username
• **Password Type**	Display the current password type
• **Privilege Type**	Display the current privilege type
• **Modify**	Click to modify the local user entry Delete: Delete the current user

4.2.5 Time Settings

4.2.5.1 System Time

Configure SNTP on this page. **SNTP** is an acronym for **Simple Network Time Protocol**, a network protocol for synchronizing the clocks of computer systems. You can specify SNTP Servers and set GMT Time zone. The SNTP Configuration screens in Figure 4-2-8 & Figure 4-2-9 appear.



System Time Setting

Enable SNTP	● Disable ○ Enable
Manual Time	Year 2000 Month Jan Day 1 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds 0
Time Zone	None
Daylight Saving Time	Disable
Daylight Saving Time Offset	60 (1 - 1440) Minutes
Recurring From	Day Sun Week 1 Month Jan Hours 0 Minutes 0
Recurring To	Day Sun Week 1 Month Jan Hours 0 Minutes 0
Non-recurring From	Year 2000 Month Jan Date 1 Hours 0 Minutes 0
Non-recurring To	Year 2000 Month Jan Date 1 Hours 0 Minutes 0

Figure 4-2-8 SNTP Setup Page Screenshot

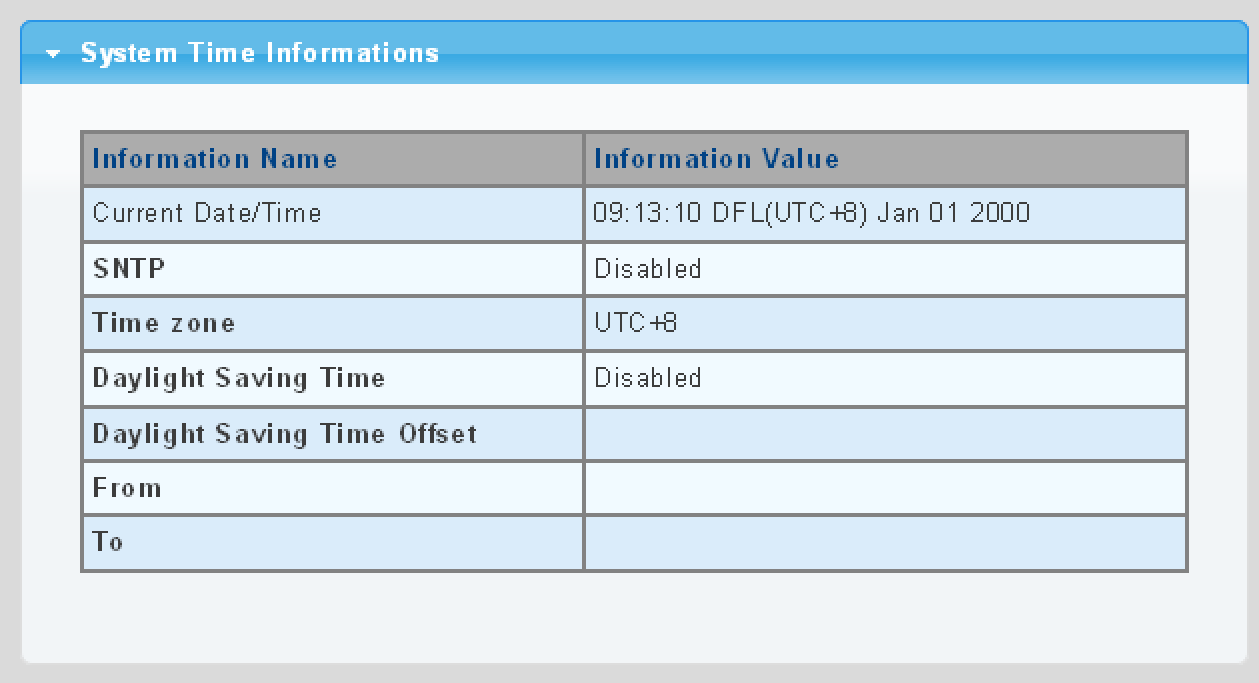
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Enable SNTP**	**Enabled**: Enable SNTP mode operation. When enabling SNTP mode operation, the agent forwards and transfers SNTP messages between the clients and the server when they are not on the same subnet domain. **Disabled**: Disable SNTP mode operation.
• **Manual Time**	To set time manually. • **Year** - Select the starting Year. • **Month** - Select the starting month. • **Day** - Select the starting day. • **Hours** - Select the starting hour. • **Minutes** - Select the starting minute. • **Seconds** - Select the starting seconds.
• **Time Zone**	Allows to select the time zone according to the current location of switch.

• **Daylight Saving Time**	This is used to set the clock forward or backward according to the configurations set below for a defined Daylight Saving Time duration. Select 'Disable' to disable the Daylight Saving Time configuration. Select 'Recurring' and configure the Daylight Saving Time duration to repeat the configuration every year. Select 'Non-Recurring' and configure the Daylight Saving Time duration for single time configuration. (Default: Disabled).
• **Daylight Saving Time Offset**	Enter the number of minutes to add during Daylight Saving Time. (Range: 1 to 1440)
• **Recurring From**	• **Week** - Select the starting week number. • **Day** - Select the starting day. • **Month** - Select the starting month. • **Hours** - Select the starting hour. • **Minutes** - Select the starting minute.
• **Recurring To**	• **Week** - Select the starting week number. • **Day** - Select the starting day. • **Month** - Select the starting month. • **Hours** - Select the starting hour. • **Minutes** - Select the starting minute.
• **Non-recurring From**	• **Week** - Select the starting week number. • **Day** - Select the starting day. • **Month** - Select the starting month. • **Hours** - Select the starting hour. • **Minutes** - Select the starting minute.
• **Non-recurring To**	• **Week** - Select the starting week number. • **Day** - Select the starting day. • **Month** - Select the starting month. • **Hours** - Select the starting hour. • **Minutes** - Select the starting minute.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



System Time Informations

Information Name	Information Value
Current Date/Time	09:13:10 DFL(UTC+8) Jan 01 2000
SNTP	Disabled
Time zone	UTC+8
Daylight Saving Time	Disabled
Daylight Saving Time Offset	
From	
To	

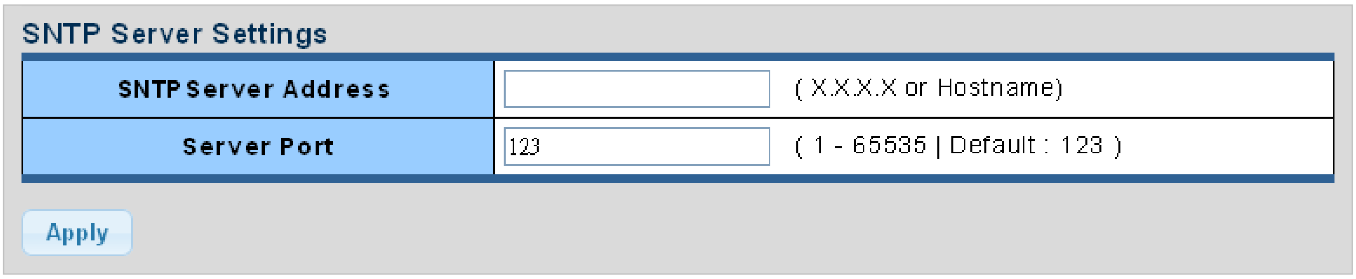
Figure 4-2-9 Time Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Current Data/Time**	Display the current data/time
- **SNTP**	Display the current SNTP state
- **Time Zone**	Display the current time zone
- **Daylight Saving Time**	Display the current daylight saving time state
- **Daylight Saving Time Offset**	Display the current daylight saving time offset state
- **From**	Display the current daylight saving time from
- **To**	Display the current daylight saving time to

4.2.5.2 SNTP Server Settings

The SNTP Server Configuration screens in Figure 4-2-10 & Figure 4-2-11 appear.



SNTP Server Settings

SNTP Server Address	(X.X.X.X or Hostname)
Server Port	123 (1 - 65535 | Default : 123)

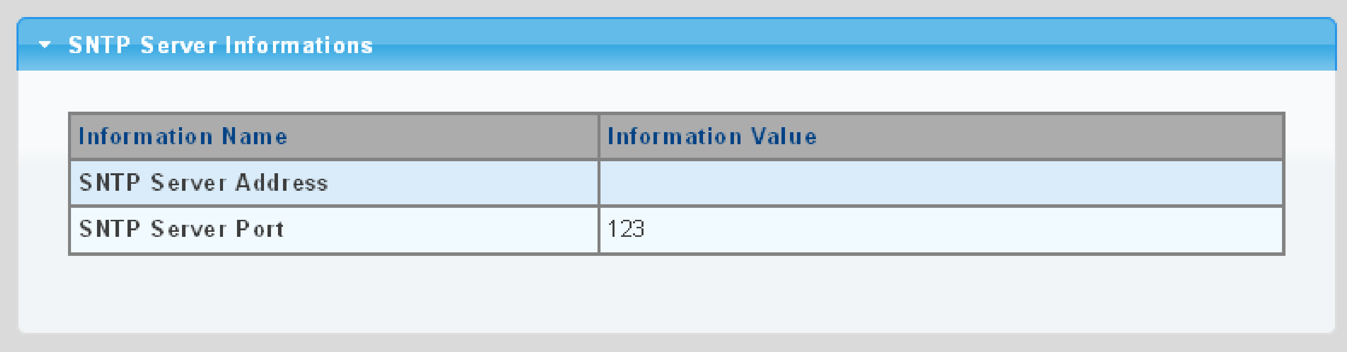
Figure 4-2-10 SNTP Setup Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **SNTP Server Address**	Type the IP address or domain name of the SNTP server
- **Server Port**	Type the port number of the SNTP

Buttons

: Click to apply changes.



SNTP Server Informations

Information Name	Information Value
SNTP Server Address	
SNTP Server Port	123

Figure 4-2-11 SNTP Server Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **SNTP Server Address**	Display the current SNTP server address
- **Server Port**	Display the current SNTP server port

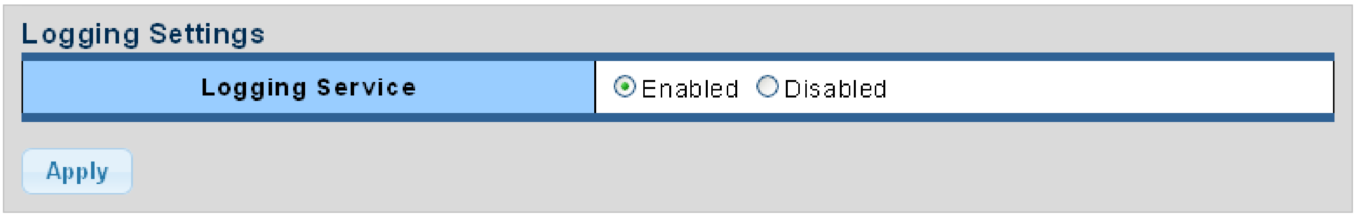
4.2.6 Log Management

The Managed Switch log management is provided here. The local logs allow you to configure and limit system messages that are logged to flash or RAM memory. The default is for event levels 0 to 3 to be logged to flash and levels 0 to 6 to be logged to RAM. The following table lists the event levels of the Managed Switch:

Level	Severity Name	Description
7	**Debug**	Debugging messages
6	**Informational**	Informational messages only
5	**Notice**	Normal but significant condition, such as cold start
4	**Warning**	Warning conditions (e.g., return false, unexpected return)
3	**Error**	Error conditions (e.g., invalid input, default used)
2	**Critical**	Critical conditions (e.g., memory allocation, or free memory error - resource exhausted)
1	**Alert**	Immediate action needed
0	**Emergency**	System unusable

4.2.6.1 Logging Service

The switch system local log information is provided here. The local Log screens in Figure 4-2-12 & Figure 4-2-13 appear.



Logging Settings

Logging Service: ● Enabled ○ Disabled

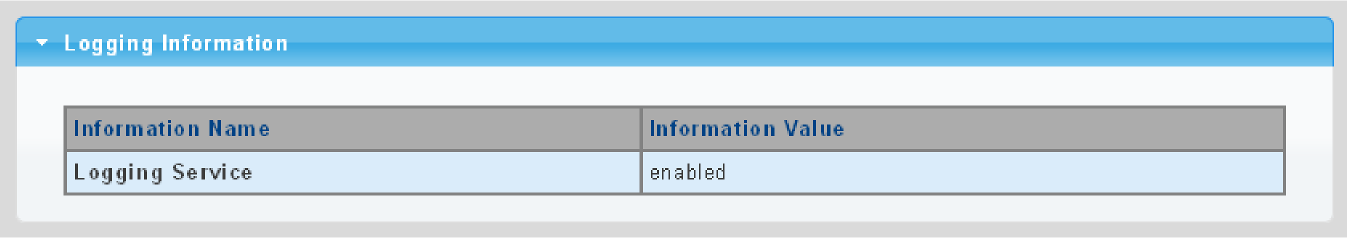
Figure 4-2-12 Logging Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Logging Service**	**Enabled**: Enable logging service operation. **Disabled**: Disable logging service operation.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
Logging Service	enabled

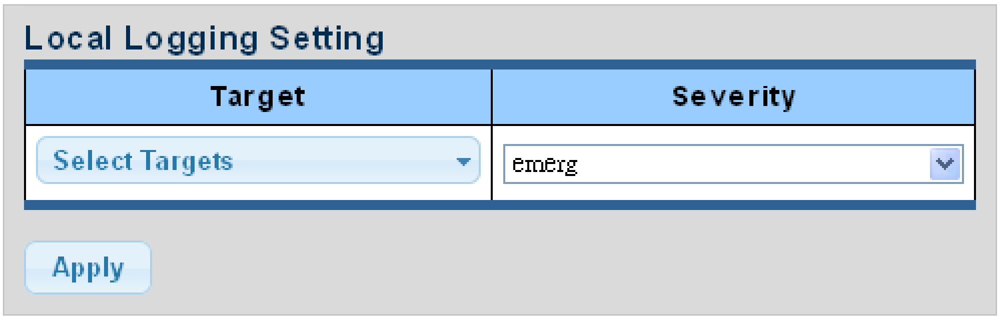
Figure 4-2-13 Logging Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Logging Service**	Display the current logging service status

4.2.6.2 Local Logging

The switch system local log information is provided here. The local Log screens in Figure 4-2-14 & Figure 4-2-15 appear.



Target	Severity
Select Targets	emerg

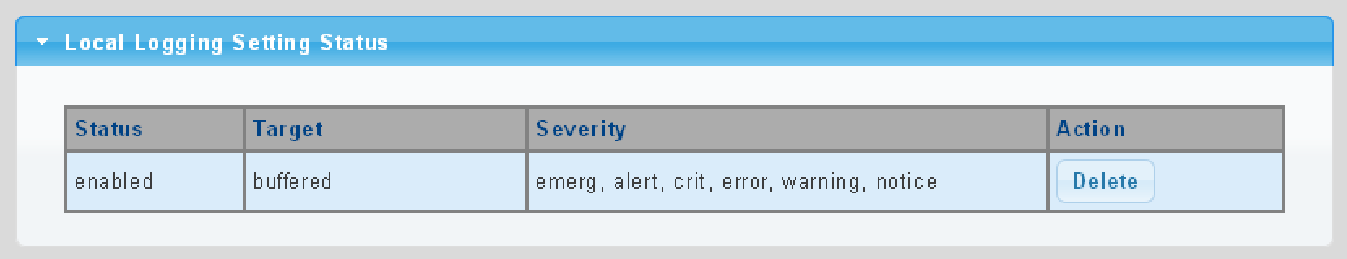
Figure 4-2-14 Local Log Target Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Target**	The target of the local log entry. The following target types are supported: ■ **Buffered**: Target the buffer of the local log. ■ **File**: Target the file of the local log.
• **Severity**	The severity of the local log entry. The following severity types are supported: ■ **emerg**: Emergency level of the system unstable for local log. ■ **alert**: Alert level of the immediate action needed for local log. ■ **crit**: Critical level of the critical conditions for local log. ■ **error**: Error level of the error conditions for local log. ■ **warning**: Warning level of the warning conditions for local log. ■ **notice**: Notice level of the normal but significant conditions for local log. ■ **info**: Informational level of the informational messages for local log. ■ **debug**: Debug level of the debugging messages for local log.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Status	Target	Severity	Action
enabled	buffered	emerg, alert, crit, error, warning, notice	Delete

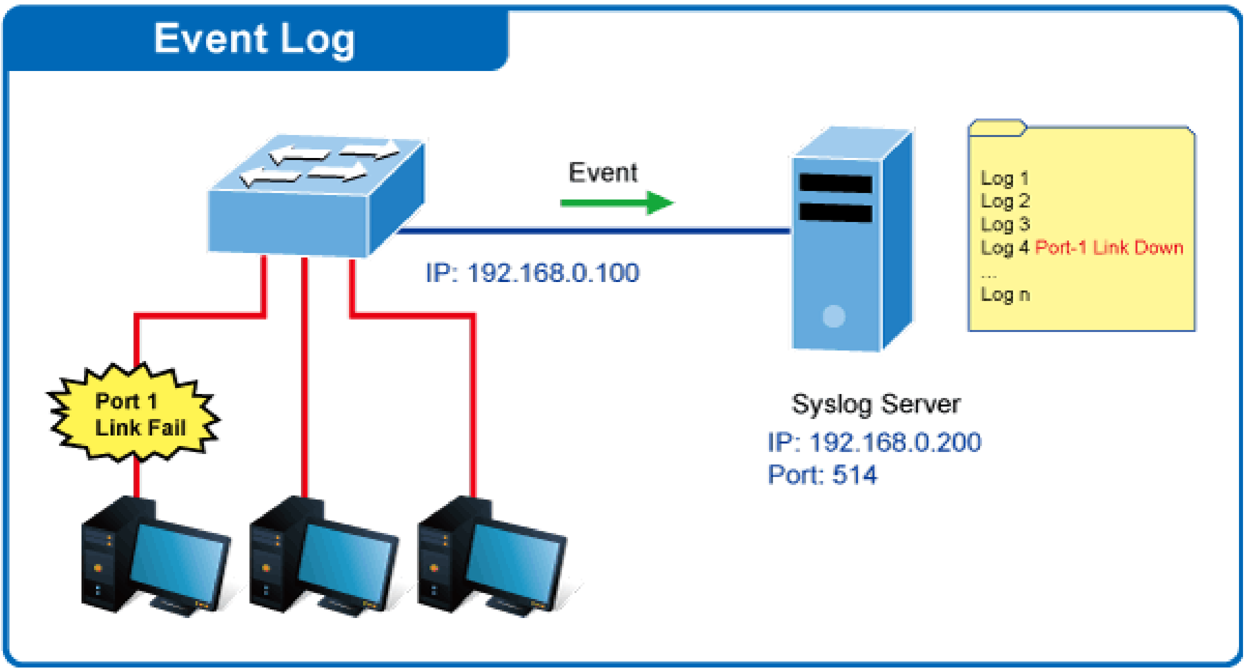
Figure 4-2-15 Local Log Setting Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

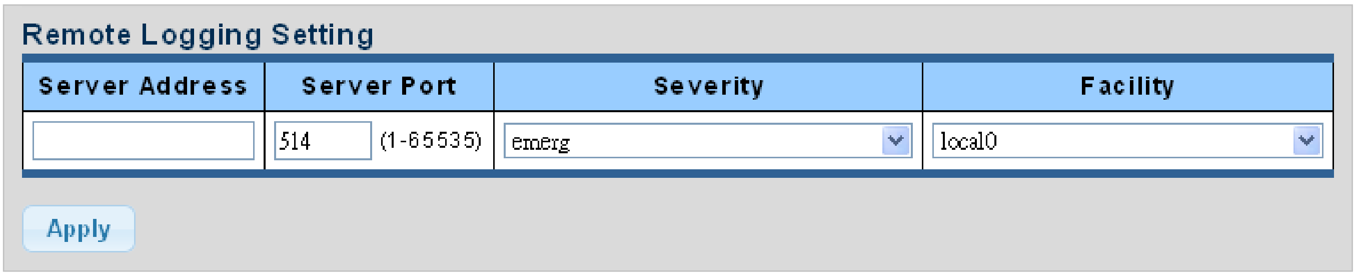
Object	Description
• **Status**	Display the current local log state
• **Target**	Display the current local log target
• **Severity**	Display the current local log severity
• **Action**	Delete: Delete the current status

4.2.6.3 Remote Syslog

Configure remote syslog on this page. The Remote Syslog page allows you to configure the logging of messages that are sent to syslog servers or other management stations. You can also limit the event messages sent to only those messages below a specified level.


Event Log
Event
IP: 192.168.0.100
Port 1
Link Fail
Log 1
Log 2
Log 3
Log 4 Port-1 Link Down
...
Log n
Syslog Server
IP: 192.168.0.200
Port: 514

The Remote Syslog screens in Figure 4-2-16 & Figure 4-2-17 appear.


Remote Logging Setting

Server Address	Server Port	Severity	Facility
	514 (1-65535)	emerg	local0

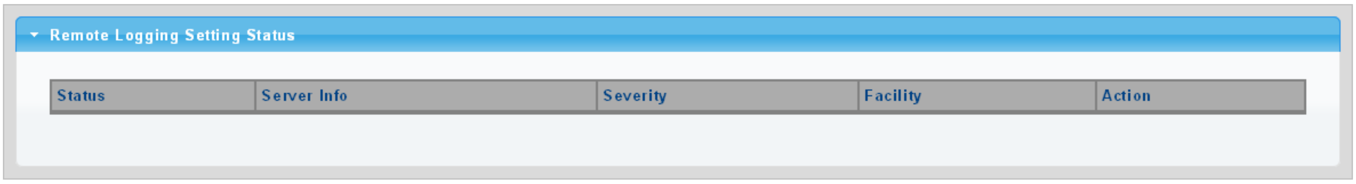
Figure 4-2-16 Remote Log Target Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Server Address**	Provide the remote syslog IP address of this switch.
• **Server Port**	Provide the port number of remote syslog server. Default Port no.: **514**
• **Severity**	The severity of the local log entry. The following severity types are supported: ■ **emerg**: Emergency level of the system unstable for local log. ■ **alert**: Alert level of the immediate action needed for local log. ■ **crit**: Critical level of the critical conditions for local log. ■ **error**: Error level of the error conditions for local log. ■ **warning**: Warning level of the warning conditions for local log. ■ **notice**: Notice level of the normal but significant conditions for local log. ■ **info**: Informational level of the informational messages for local log. ■ **debug**: Debug level of the debugging messages for local log.
• **Facility**	**Local0~7**: local user 0~7

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Remote Logging Setting Status

Status	Server Info	Severity	Facility	Action

Figure 4-2-17 Remote Log Setting Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Status**	Display the current remote syslog state
• **Server Info**	Display the current remote syslog server information
• **Severity**	Display the current remote syslog severity
• **Facility**	Display the current remote syslog facility
• **Action**	Delete: Delete the remote server entry

4.2.6.4 Logging Message

The switch log view is provided here. The Log View screens in Figure 4-2-18, Figure 4-2-19 & Figure 4-2-20 appear.

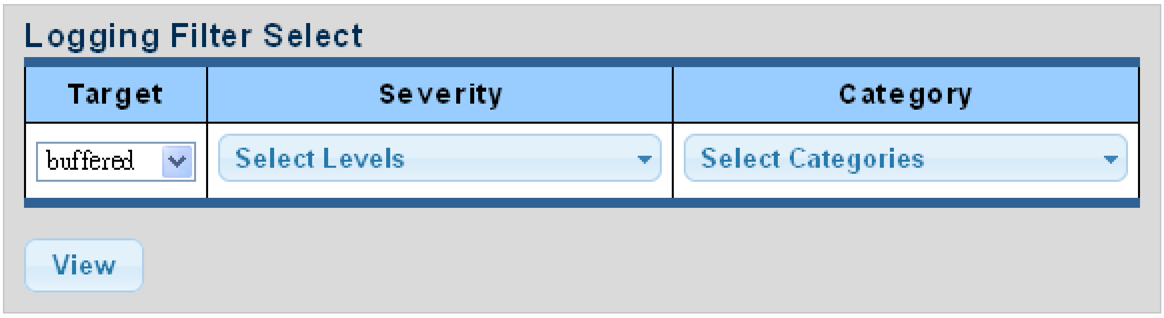


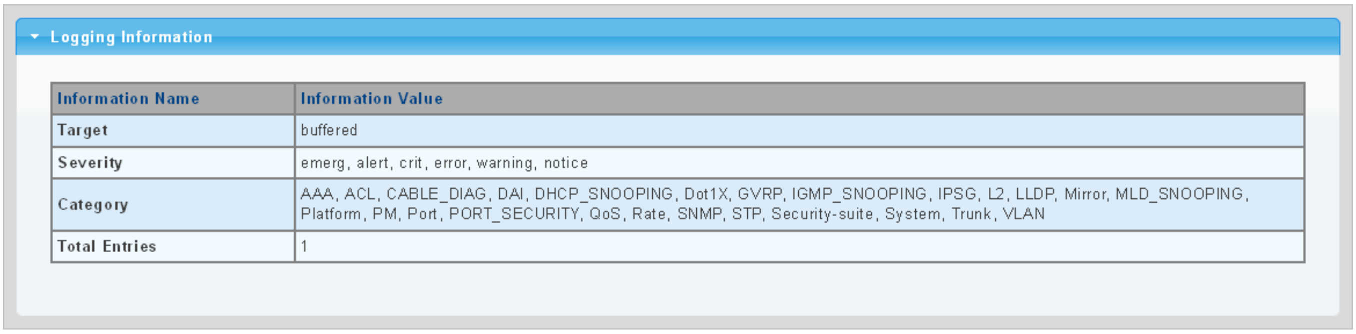
Figure 4-2-18 Log Information Select Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Target**	The target of the log view entry. The following target types are supported: ■ **Buffered**: Target the buffered of the log view. ■ **File**: Target the file of the log view.
• **Severity**	The severity of the log view entry. The following severity types are supported: ■ **emerg**: Emergency level of the system unstable for log view. ■ **alert**: Alert level of the immediate action needed for log view. ■ **crit**: Critical level of the critical conditions for log view. ■ **error**: Error level of the error conditions for log view. ■ **warning**: Warning level of the warning conditions for log view. ■ **notice**: Notice level of the normal but significant conditions for log view. ■ **info**: Informational level of the informational messages for log view. ■ **debug**: Debug level of the debugging messages for log view.
• **Category**	The category of the log view includes: AAA, ACL, CABLE_DIAG, DAI, DHCP_SNOOPING, Dot1X, GVRP, IGMP_SNOOPING, IPSG, L2, LLDP, Mirror, MLD_SNOOPING, Platform, PM, Port, PORT_SECURITY, QoS, Rate, SNMP and STP

Buttons

View: Click to view log.



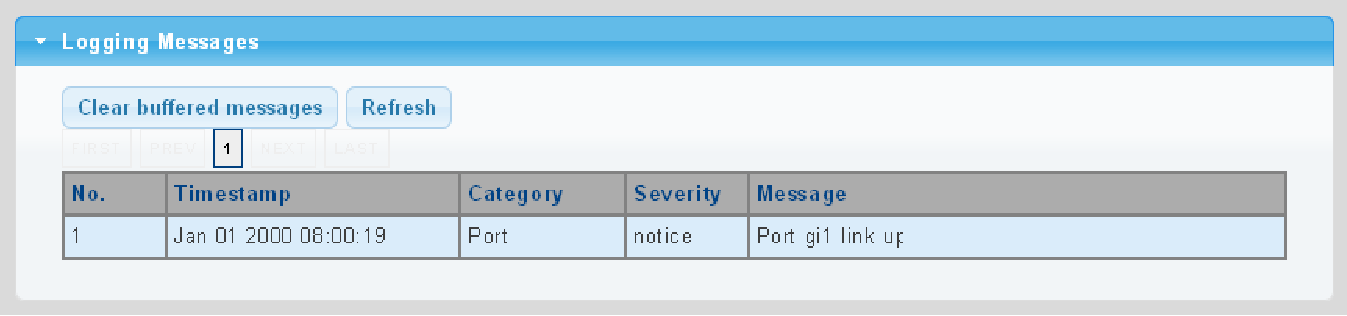
Logging Information

Information Name	Information Value
Target	buffered
Severity	emerg, alert, crit, error, warning, notice
Category	AAA, ACL, CABLE_DIAG, DAI, DHCP_SNOOPING, Dot1X, GVRP, IGMP_SNOOPING, IPSG, L2, LLDP, Mirror, MLD_SNOOPING, Platform, PM, Port, PORT_SECURITY, QoS, Rate, SNMP, STP, Security-suite, System, Trunk, VLAN
Total Entries	1

Figure 4-2-19 Logging Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Target**	Display the current log target
• **Severity**	Display the current log severity
• **Category**	Display the current log category
• **Total Entries**	Display the current log entries



Logging Messages

No.	Timestamp	Category	Severity	Message
1	Jan 01 2000 08:00:19	Port	notice	Port gi1 link up

Figure 4-2-20 Logging Messages Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **No.**	This is the number for logs
• **Timestamp**	Display the time of log
• **Category**	Display the category type
• **Severity**	Display the severity type
• **Message**	Display the log message

Buttons

Clear: Click to clear the log.

Refresh: Click to refresh the log.

4.2.7 SNMP Management

The **Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)** is an application layer protocol that facilitates the exchange of management information between network devices. It is part of the **Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** protocol suite. SNMP enables network administrators to manage network performance, find and solve network problems, and plan for network growth.

An SNMP-managed network consists of three key components: Network management stations (NMS's), SNMP agents, Management information base (MIB) and network-management protocol:

◦ **Network management stations (NMS's):** Sometimes called consoles, these devices execute management applications that monitor and control network elements. Physically, NMS's are usually engineering workstation-caliber computers with fast CPUs, megapixel color displays, substantial memory, and abundant disk space. At least one NMS must be present in each managed environment.

◦ **Agents**：Agents are software modules that reside in network elements. They collect and store management information such as the number of error packets received by a network element.

◦ **Management information base (MIB)**：A MIB is a collection of managed objects residing in a virtual information store. Collections of related managed objects are defined in specific MIB modules.

◦ **Network-management protocol**：A management protocol is used to convey management information between agents and NMS's. SNMP is the Internet community's de facto standard management protocol.

SNMP Operations

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol. NMS's can send multiple requests without receiving a response.

◦ **Get --** Allows the NMS to retrieve an object instance from the agent.

◦ **Set --** Allows the NMS to set values for object instances within an agent.

◦ **Trap --** Used by the agent to asynchronously inform the NMS of some event. The SNMPv2 trap message is designed to replace the SNMPv1 trap message.

SNMP community

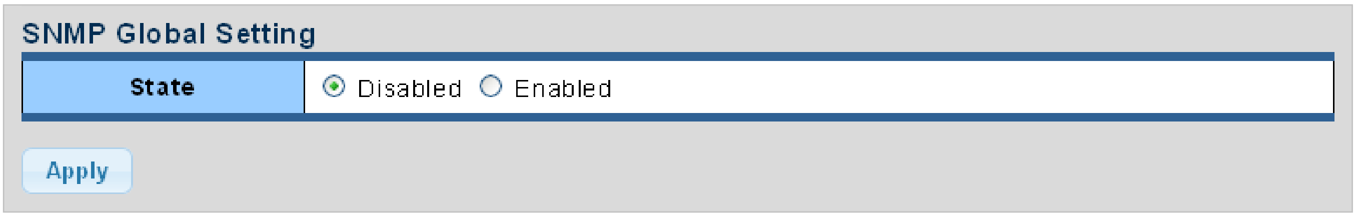
An SNMP community is the group that devices and management stations running SNMP belong to. It helps define where information is sent. The community name is used to identify the group. An SNMP device or agent may belong to more than one SNMP community. It will not respond to requests from management stations that do not belong to one of its communities. SNMP default communities are:

◦ **Write** = private

◦ **Read** = public

4.2.7.1 SNMP Setting

Configure SNMP setting on this page. The SNMP System global setting screens in Figure 4-2-21 & Figure 4-2-22 appear.



SNMP Global Setting

State	● Disabled ○ Enabled

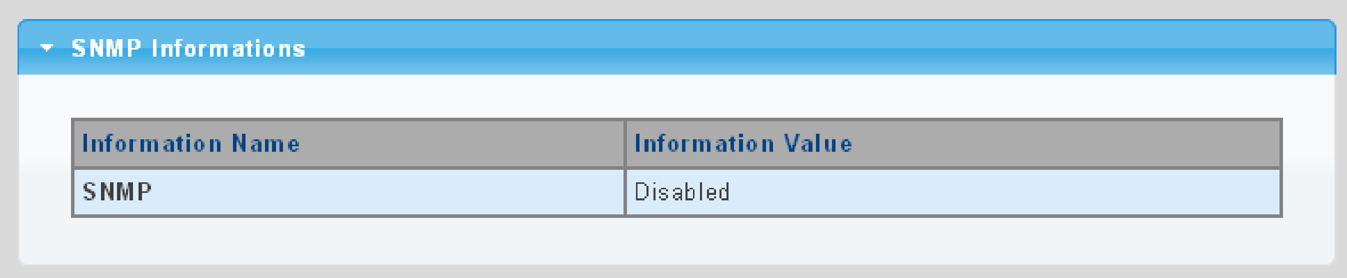
Figure 4-2-21 SNMP Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Status**	Indicates the SNMP mode operation. Possible modes are: **Enabled**: Enable SNMP mode operation. **Disabled**: Disable SNMP mode operation.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



SNMP Informations

Information Name	Information Value
SNMP	Disabled

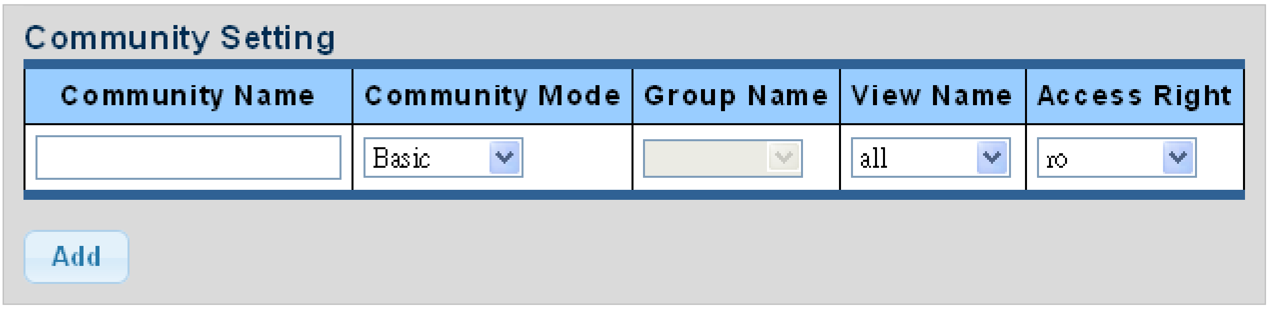
Figure 4-2-22 SNMP Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **SNMP**	Display the current SNMP status

4.2.7.2 SNMP Community

Configure SNMP Community on this page. The SNMP Community screens in Figure 4-2-23 & Figure 4-2-24 appear.



Community Setting

Community Name	Community Mode	Group Name	View Name	Access Right
	Basic		all	ro

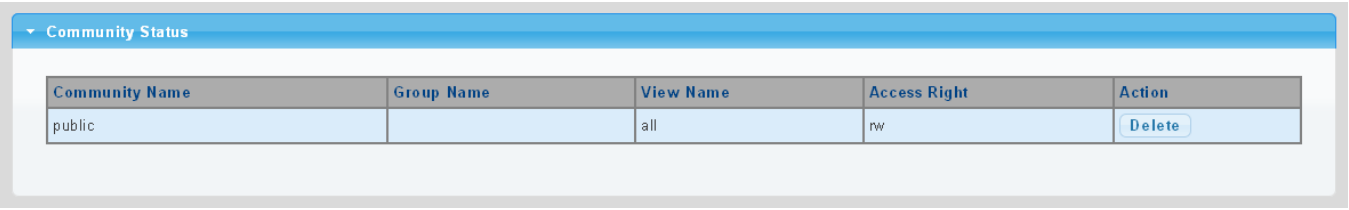
Figure 4-2-23 Community Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Community Name**	Indicates the community read/write access string to permit access to SNMP agent. The allowed string length is 0 to 16.
- **Community Mode**	Indicates the SNMP community supported mode. Possible versions are: ■ **Basic**: Set SNMP community mode supported version 1 and 2c. ■ **Advanced**: Set SNMP community mode supported version 3.
- **Group Name**	A string identifying the group name that this entry should belong to. The allowed string length is 1 to 16.
- **View Name**	A string identifying the view name that this entry should belong to. The allowed string length is 1 to 16.
- **Access Right**	Indicates the SNMP community type operation. Possible types are: **RO=Read-Only**: Set access string type in read-only mode. **RW=Read-Write**: Set access string type in read-write mode.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Community Status

Community Name	Group Name	View Name	Access Right	Action
public		all	rw	Delete

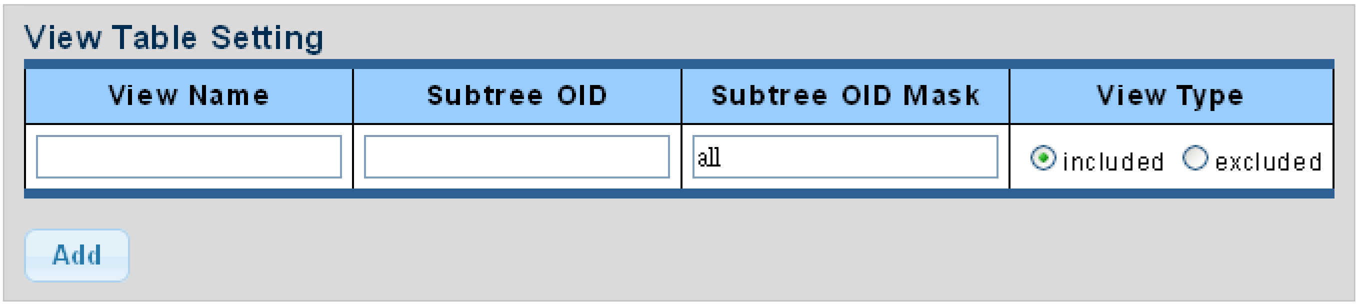
Figure 4-2-24 Community Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Community Name**	Display the current community type
• **Group Name**	Display the current SNMP access group's name
• **View Name**	Display the current view name
• **Access Right**	Display the current access type
• **Delete**	Delete : Delete the community entry

4.2.7.3 SNMP View

Configure SNMPv3 view table on this page. The entry index keys are **View Name** and **OID Subtree**. The SNMPv3 View Table Setting screens in Figure 4-2-25 and Figure 4-2-26 appear.



View Table Setting

View Name	Subtree OID	Subtree OID Mask	View Type
		all	● included ○ excluded

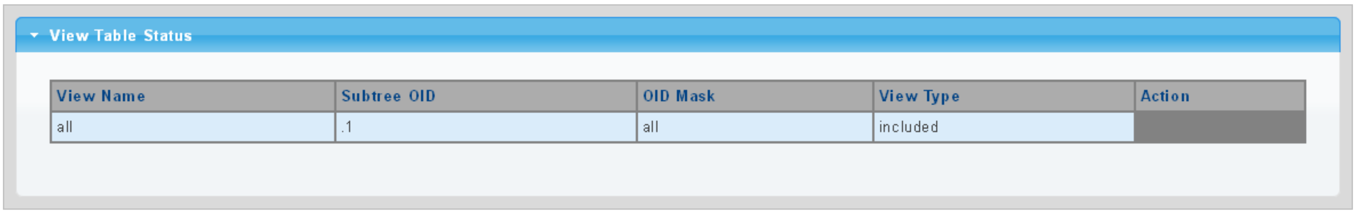
Figure 4-2-25 SNMPv3 View Table Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **View Name**	A string identifying the view name that this entry should belong to. The allowed string length is 1 to 16.
• **Subtree OID**	The OID defining the root of the subtree to add to the named view. The allowed string content is digital number or asterisk (*).
• **Subtree OID Mask**	The bitmask identifies which positions in the specified object identifier are to be regarded as "wildcards" for the purpose of pattern-matching.
• **View Type**	Indicates the view type that this entry should belong to. Possible view type are: **included**: An optional flag to indicate that this view subtree should be included. **excluded**: An optional flag to indicate that this view subtree should be excluded. General, if a view entry's view type is 'excluded', it should exist another view entry in which view type is 'included' and its OID subtree oversteps the 'excluded' view entry.

Buttons

Add : Click to add a new view entry.



View Table Status

View Name	Subtree OID	OID Mask	View Type	Action
all	.1	all	included	

Figure 4-2-26 SNMP View Table Status Page Screenshot

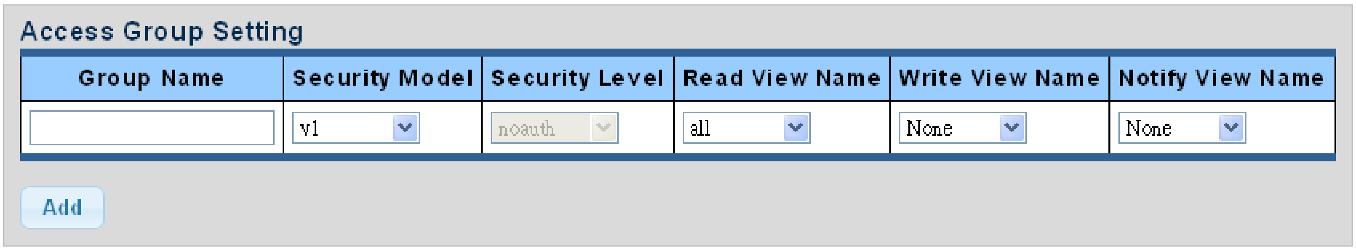
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **View Name**	Display the current SNMP view name
- **Subtree OID**	Display the current SNMP subtree OID
- **OID Mask**	Display the current SNMP OID mask
- **View Type**	Display the current SNMP view type
- **Action**	Delete : Delete the view table entry.

4.2.7.4 SNMP Access Group

Configure SNMPv3 access group on this page. The entry index keys are **Group Name**, **Security Model** and **Security Level**.

The SNMPv3 Access Group Setting screens in Figure 4-2-27 & Figure 4-2-28 appear.



Access Group Setting

Group Name	Security Model	Security Level	Read View Name	Write View Name	Notify View Name
	v1	noauth	all	None	None

Figure 4-2-27 SNMPv3 Access Group Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

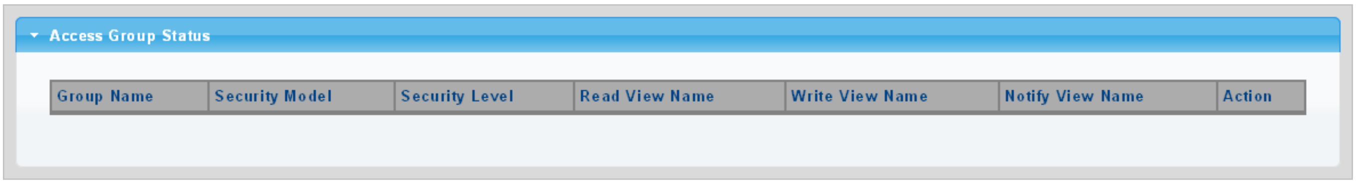
Object	Description
- **Group Name**	A string identifying the group name that this entry should belong to. The allowed string length is 1 to 16.
- **Security Model**	Indicates the security model that this entry should belong to. Possible security models are: ■ **v1**: Reserved for SNMPv1. ■ **v2c**: Reserved for SNMPv2c. ■ **V3**: Reserved for SNMPv3 or User-based Security Model (USM)

• **Security Level**	Indicates the security model that this entry should belong to. Possible security models are: ■ **Noauth**: None authentication and none privacy security levels are assigned to the group. ■ **auth**: Authentication and none privacy. ■ **priv**: Authentication and privacy. Note: The Security Level applies to SNNPv3 only.
• **Read View Name**	Read view name is the name of the view in which you can only view the contents of the agent. The allowed string length is 1 to 16.
• **Write View Name**	Write view name is the name of the view in which you enter data and configure the contents of the agent. The allowed string length is 1 to 16.
• **Notify View Name**	Notify view name is the name of the view in which you specify a notify, inform, or trap.

Buttons

Add: Click to add a new access entry.

Delete: Check to delete the entry.



Access Group Status

Group Name	Security Model	Security Level	Read View Name	Write View Name	Notify View Name	Action

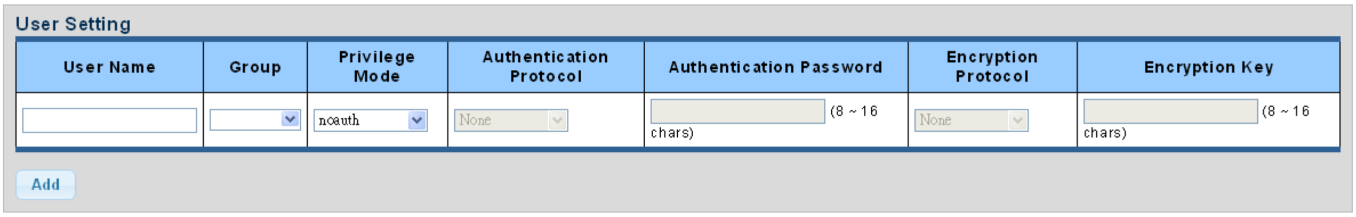
Figure 4-2-28 SNMP View Table Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Group Name**	Display the current SNMP access group name
• **Security Model**	Display the current security model
• **Security Level**	Display the current security level
• **Read View Name**	Display the current read view name
• **Write View Name**	Display the current write view name
• **Notify View Name**	Display the current notify view name
• **Action**	Delete: Delete the access group entry.

4.2.7.5 SNMP User

Configure SNMPv3 users table on this page. Each SNMPv3 user is defined by a unique name. Users must be configured with a specific security level and assigned to a group. The SNMPv3 group restricts users to a specific read, write, and notify view. The entry index key is **User Name**. The SNMPv3 User Setting screens in Figure 4-2-29 & Figure 4-2-30 appear.



User Name	Group	Privilege Mode	Authentication Protocol	Authentication Password	Encryption Protocol	Encryption Key
		noauth	None	(8 ~ 16 chars)	None	(8 ~ 16 chars)

Figure 4-2-29 SNMPv3 Users Configuration Page Screenshot

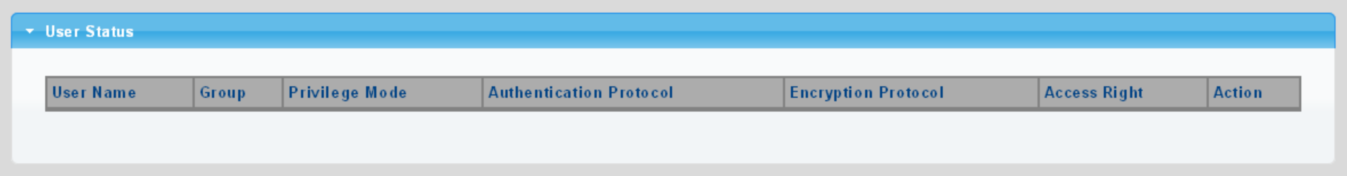
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **User Name**	A string identifying the user name that this entry should belong to. The allowed string length is 1 to 16.
• **Group**	The SNMP Access Group. A string identifying the group name that this entry should belong to.
• **Privilege Mode**	Indicates the security model that this entry should belong to. Possible security models are: ■ **NoAuth**: None authentication and none privacy. ■ **Auth**: Authentication and none privacy. ■ **Priv**: Authentication and privacy. The value of security level cannot be modified if entry already exists. That means you must first ensure that the value is set correctly.
• **Authentication Protocol**	Indicates the authentication protocol that this entry should belong to. Possible authentication protocols are: ■ **None**: None authentication protocol. ■ **MD5**: An optional flag to indicate that this user using MD5 authentication protocol. ■ **SHA**: An optional flag to indicate that this user using SHA authentication protocol. The value of security level cannot be modified if entry already exists. That means you must first ensure that the value is set correctly.
• **Authentication Password**	A string identifying the authentication pass phrase. For both MD5 and SHA authentication protocols, the allowed string length is 8 to 16.
• **Encryption Protocol**	Indicates the privacy protocol that this entry should belong to. Possible privacy protocol are:

	■ **None**: None privacy protocol. ■ **DES**: An optional flag to indicate that this user using DES authentication protocol.
• **Encryption Key**	A string identifying the privacy pass phrase. The allowed string length is 8 to 16.

Buttons

Add: Click to add a new user entry.



User Status

User Name	Group	Privilege Mode	Authentication Protocol	Encryption Protocol	Access Right	Action

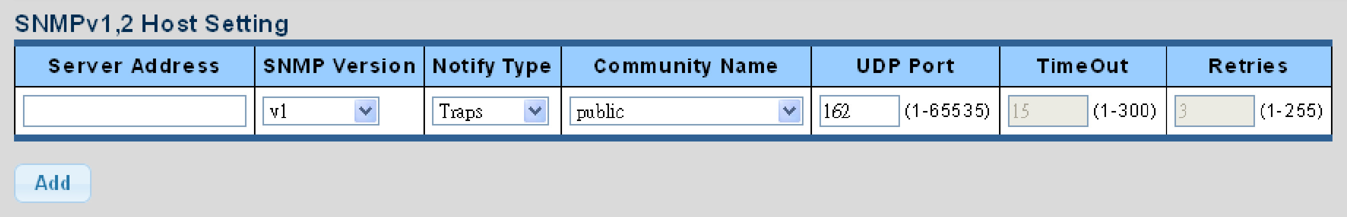
Figure 4-2-30 SNMPv3 Users Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **User Name**	Display the current user name
• **Group**	Display the current group
• **Privilege Mode**	Display the current privilege mode
• **Authentication Protocol**	Display the current authentication protocol
• **Encryption Protocol**	Display the current encryption protocol
• **Access Right**	Display the current access right
• **Action**	**Delete**: Delete the user entry

4.2.7.6 SNMPv1, 2 Notification Recipients

Configure SNMPv1 and 2 notification recipients on this page. The SNMPv1, 2 Notification Recipients screens in Figure 4-2-31 & Figure 4-2-32 appear.



SNMPv1,2 Host Setting

Server Address	SNMP Version	Notify Type	Community Name	UDP Port	TimeOut	Retries
	v1	Traps	public	162 (1-65535)	15 (1-300)	3 (1-255)

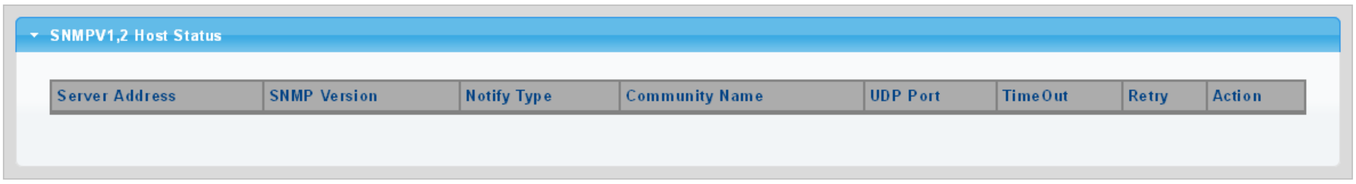
Figure 4-2-31 SNMPv1, 2 Notification Recipients Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Server Address**	Indicates the SNMP trap destination address. It allows a valid IP address in dotted decimal notation ('x.y.z.w'). It can also represent a legally valid IPv4 address. For example, '::192.1.2.34'.
• **SNMP Version**	Indicates the SNMP trap supported version. Possible versions are: ■ **SNMP v1**: Set SNMP trap supported version 1. ■ **SNMP v2c**: Set SNMP trap supported version 2c.
• **Notify Type**	Set the notify type in traps or informs.
• **Community Name**	Indicates the community access string when send SNMP trap packet.
• **UDP Port**	Indicates the SNMP trap destination port. SNMP Agent will send SNMP message via this port, the port range is 1~65535.
• **Time Out**	Indicates the SNMP trap inform timeout. The allowed range is **1** to **300**.
• **Retries**	Indicates the SNMP trap inform retry times. The allowed range is **1** to **255**.

Buttons

Add: Click to add a new SNMPv1, 2 host entry.



SNMPV1,2 Host Status

Server Address	SNMP Version	Notify Type	Community Name	UDP Port	TimeOut	Retry	Action

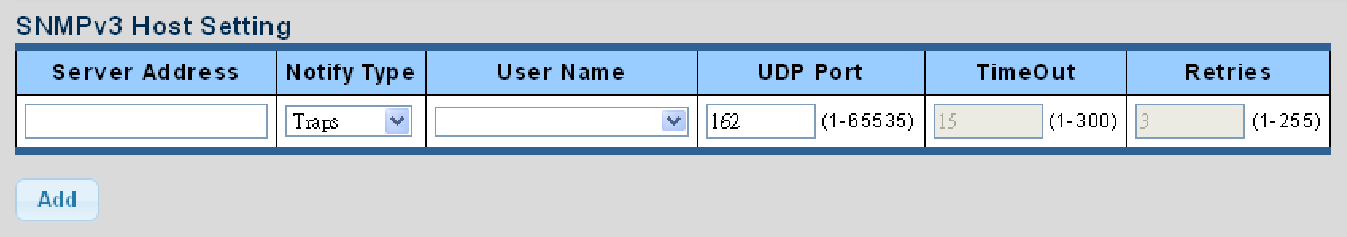
Figure 4-2-32 SNMPv1, 2 Host Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Server Address**	Display the current server address
- **SNMP Version**	Display the current SNMP version
- **Notify Type**	Display the current notify type
- **Community Name**	Display the current community name
- **UDP Port**	Display the current UDP port
- **Time Out**	Display the current time out
- **Retries**	Display the current retry times
- **Action**	Delete : Delete the SNMPv1, 2 host entry.

4.2.7.7 SNMPv3 Notification Recipients

Configure SNMPv3 notification recipients on this page. The SNMPv1, 2 Notification Recipients screens in Figure 4-2-33 & Figure 4-2-34 appear.



SNMPv3 Host Setting

Server Address	Notify Type	User Name	UDP Port	TimeOut	Retries
	Traps		162 (1-65535)	15 (1-300)	3 (1-255)

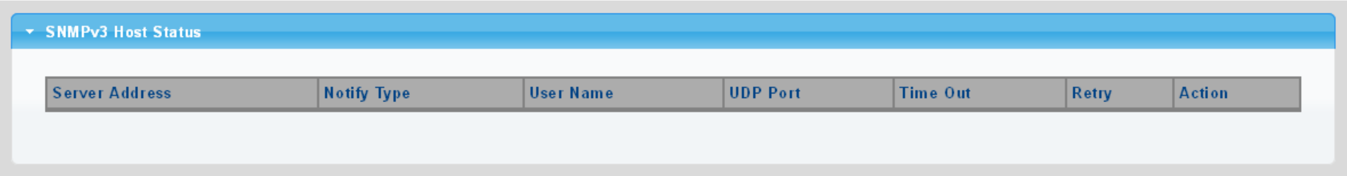
Figure 4-2-33 SNMPv3 Notification Recipients Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Server Address**	Indicates the SNMP trap destination address. It allows a valid IP address in dotted decimal notation ('x.y.z.w'). It can also represent a legally valid IPv4 address. For example, '::192.1.2.34'.
- **Notify Type**	Set the notify type in traps or informs.
- **User Name**	Indicates the user string when send SNMP trap packet.
- **UDP Port**	Indicates the SNMP trap destination port. SNMP Agent will send SNMP message via this port, the port range is 1~65535.
- **Time Out**	Indicates the SNMP trap inform timeout. The allowed range is **1** to **300**.
- **Retries**	Indicates the SNMP trap inform retry times. The allowed range is **1** to **255**.

Buttons

Add: Click to add a new SNMPv3 host entry.



SNMPv3 Host Status

Server Address	Notify Type	User Name	UDP Port	Time Out	Retry	Action

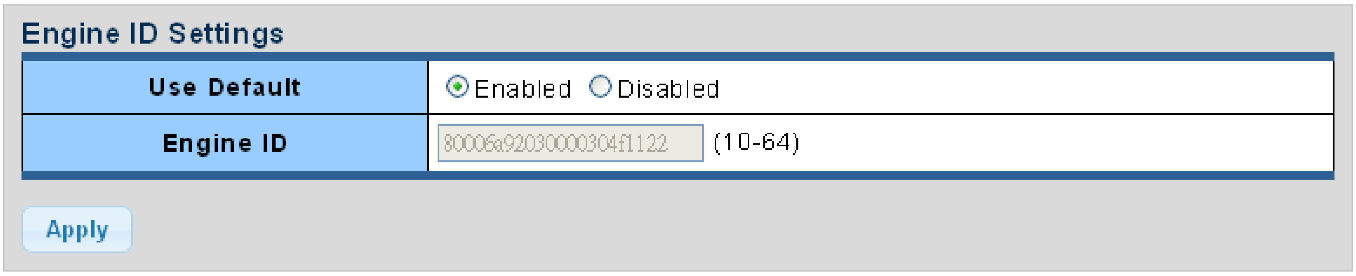
Figure 4-2-34 SNMPv3 Host Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Server Address**	Display the current server address
- **Notify Type**	Display the current notify type
- **User Name**	Display the current user name
- **UDP Port**	Display the current UDP port
- **Time Out**	Display the current time out
- **Retries**	Display the current retry times
- **Action**	Delete: Delete the SNMPv3 host entry

4.2.7.8 SNMP Engine ID

Configure SNMPv3 Engine ID on this page. The entry index key is Engine ID. The remote engine ID is used to compute the security digest for authenticating and encrypting packets sent to a user on the remote host. The SNMPv3 Engine ID Setting screens in Figure 4-2-35 & Figure 4-2-36 appear.



Use Default: ● Enabled ○ Disabled

Engine ID: 80006a92030000304f1122 (10-64)

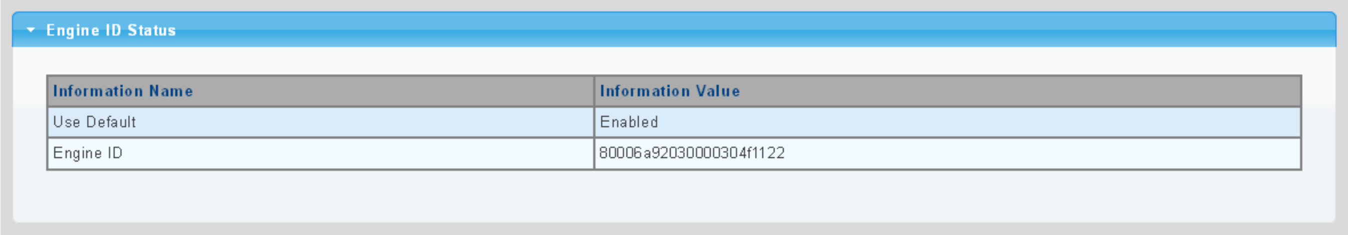
Figure 4-2-35 SNMPv3 Engine ID Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Engine ID**	An octet string identifying the engine ID that this entry should belong to. The string must contain an even number between 10 and 64 hexadecimal digits, but all-zeros and all-'F's are not allowed.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
Use Default	Enabled
Engine ID	80006a92030000304f1122

Figure 4-2-36 SNMPv3 Engine ID Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **User Default**	Display the current status
- **Engine ID**	Display the current engine ID

4.2.7.9 SNMP Remote Engine ID

Configure SNMPv3 remote Engine ID on this page. The SNMPv3 Remote Engine ID Setting screens in Figure 4-2-37 & Figure 4-2-38 appear.

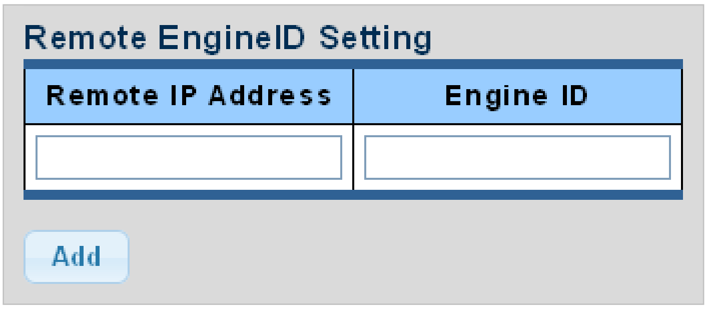

Remote EngineID Setting
Remote IP Address
Engine ID
Add

Figure 4-2-37 SNMPv3 Remote Engine ID Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Remote IP Address**	Indicates the SNMP remote engine ID address. It allows a valid IP address in dotted decimal notation ('x.y.z.w').
• **Engine ID**	An octet string identifying the engine ID that this entry should belong to.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

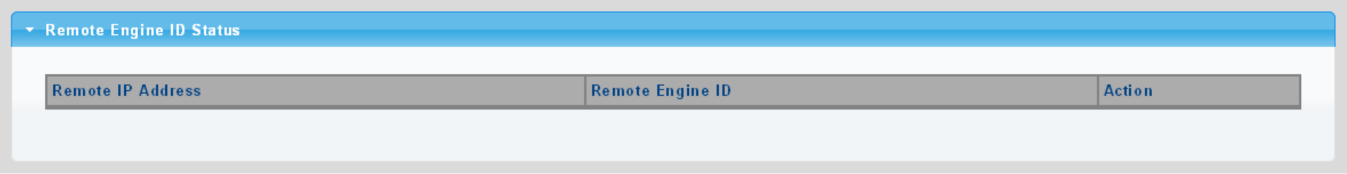

Remote Engine ID Status
Remote IP Address
Remote Engine ID
Action

Figure 4-2-38 SNMPv3 Remote Engine ID Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Remote IP Address**	Display the current remote IP address
• **Engine ID**	Display the current engine ID
• **Action**	Delete: Delete the remote IP address entry

4.2.8 RMON

RMON is the most important expansion of the standard SNMP. RMON is a set of MIB definitions, used to define standard network monitor functions and interfaces, enabling the communication between SNMP management terminals and remote monitors. RMON provides a highly efficient method to monitor actions inside the subnets.

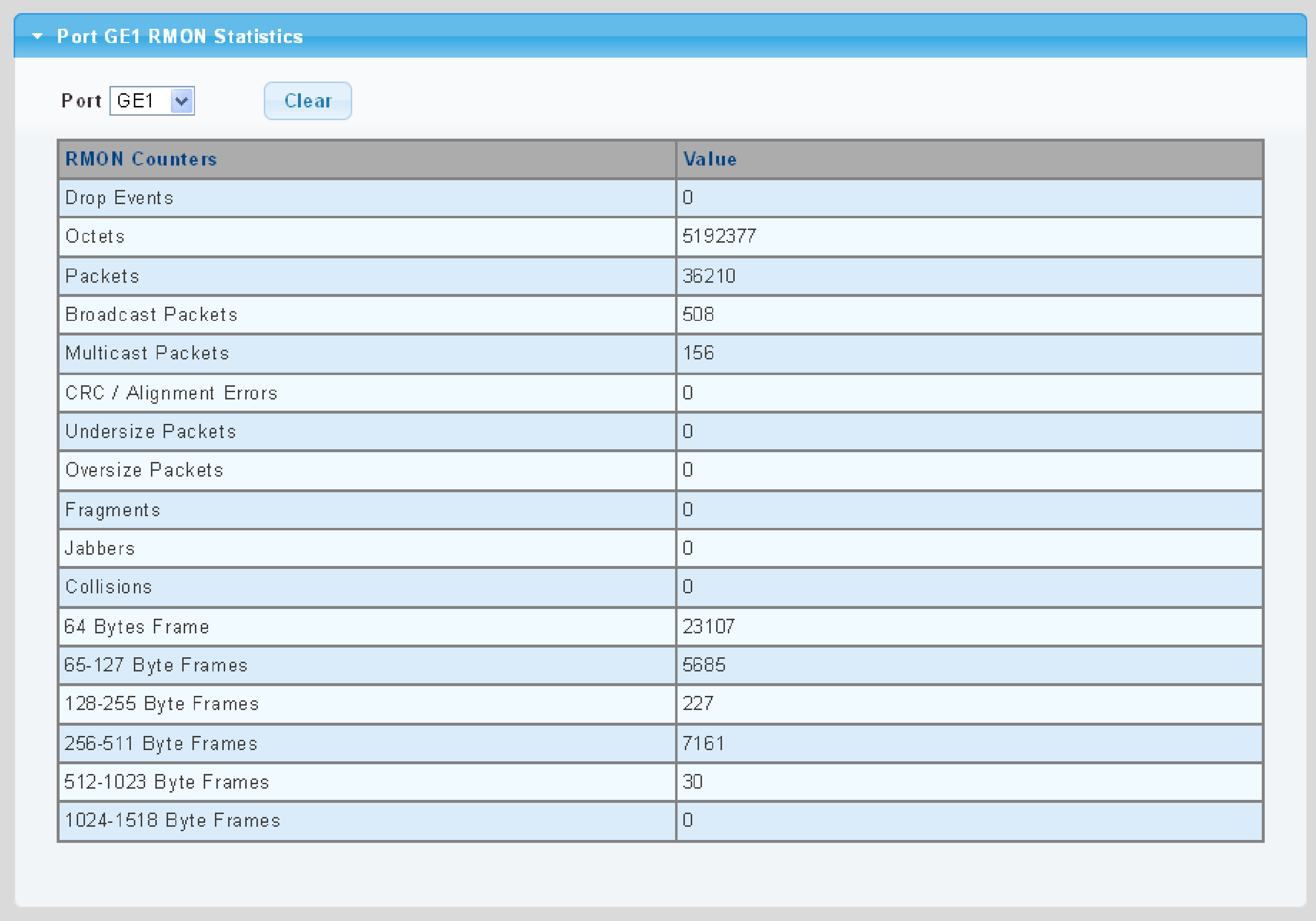
MID of RMON consists of 10 groups. The switch supports the most frequently used group 1, 2, 3 and 9:

- **Statistics:** Maintain basic usage and error statistics for each subnet monitored by the Agent.
- **History:** Record periodical statistic samples available from Statistics.
- **Alarm:** Allow management console users to set any count or integer for sample intervals and alert thresholds for RMON Agent records.
- **Event:** A list of all events generated by RMON Agent.

Alarm depends on the implementation of Event. Statistics and History display some current or history subnet statistics. Alarm and Event provide a method to monitor any integer data change in the network, and provide some alerts upon abnormal events (sending Trap or record in logs).

4.2.8.1 RMON Statistics

This page provides a Detail of a specific RMON statistics entry; RMON Statistics screen in Figure 4-2-39 appears.



RMON Counters	Value
Drop Events	0
Octets	5192377
Packets	36210
Broadcast Packets	508
Multicast Packets	156
CRC / Alignment Errors	0
Undersize Packets	0
Oversize Packets	0
Fragments	0
Jabbers	0
Collisions	0
64 Bytes Frame	23107
65-127 Byte Frames	5685
128-255 Byte Frames	227
256-511 Byte Frames	7161
512-1023 Byte Frames	30
1024-1518 Byte Frames	0

Figure 4-2-39 RMON Statistics Detail Page Screenshot

The Page includes the following fields:

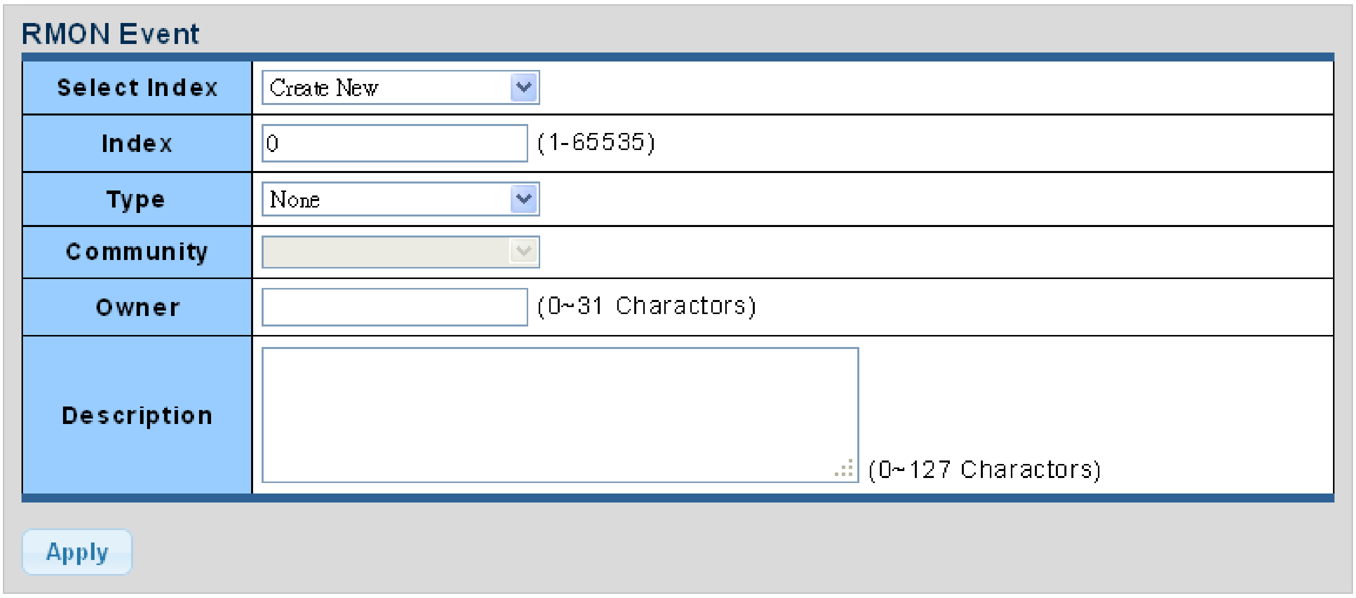
Object	Description
- **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
- **Drop Events**	The total number of events in which packets were dropped by the probe due to lack of resources
- **Octets**	The total number of octets of data (including those in bad packets) received on the network
- **Packets**	The total number of packets (including bad packets, broadcast packets, and multicast packets) received
- **Broadcast Packets**	The total number of good packets received that were directed to the broadcast address
- **Multicast Packets**	The total number of good packets received that were directed to a multicast address
- **CRC/Alignment Errors**	The total number of packets received that had a length (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) of between 64 and 1518 octets
- **Undersize Packets**	The total number of packets received that were less than 64 octets
- **Oversize Packets**	The total number of packets received that were longer than 1518 octets
- **Fragments**	The number of frames which size is less than 64 octets received with invalid CRC
- **Jabbers**	The number of frames which size is larger than 64 octets received with invalid CRC
- **Collisions**	The best estimate of the total number of collisions on this Ethernet segment.
- **64 Bytes Frame**	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length
- **65~127 Byte Frames**	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 to 127 octets in length
- **128~255 Byte Frames**	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 to 255 octets in length
- **256~511 Byte Frames**	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 to 511 octets in length
- **512~1023 Byte Frames**	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 to 1023 octets in length
- **1024~1518 Byte Frames**	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 to 1518 octets in length

Buttons

Clear: Click to clear the RMON statistics

4.2.8.2 RMON Event

Configure RMON Event table on this page. The RMON Event screens in Figure 4-2-40 & Figure 4-2-41 appear.



RMON Event

Select Index	Create New
Index	0 (1-65535)
Type	None
Community	
Owner	(0~31 Charactors)
Description	(0~127 Charactors)

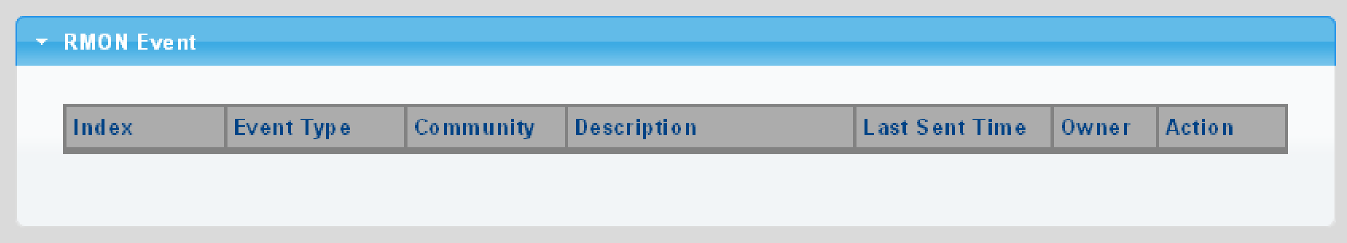
Figure 4-2-40 RMON Event Configuration Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Select Index**	Select index from this drop-down list to create new index or modify index
• **Index**	Indicates the index of the entry. The range is from 1 to 65535
• **Type**	Indicates the notification of the event, the possible types are: ■ **none**: The total number of octets received on the interface, including framing characters. ■ **log**: The number of uni-cast packets delivered to a higher-layer protocol. ■ **SNMP-Trap**: The number of broad-cast and multi-cast packets delivered to a higher-layer protocol. ■ **Log and Trap**: The number of inbound packets that are discarded even the packets are normal.
• **Community**	Specify the community when trap is sent, the string length is from 0 to 127, default is "public".
• **Owner**	Indicates the owner of this event, the string length is from 0 to 127, default is a null string
• **Description**	Indicates description of this event, the string length is from 0 to 127, default is a null string

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



RMON Event

Index	Event Type	Community	Description	Last Sent Time	Owner	Action

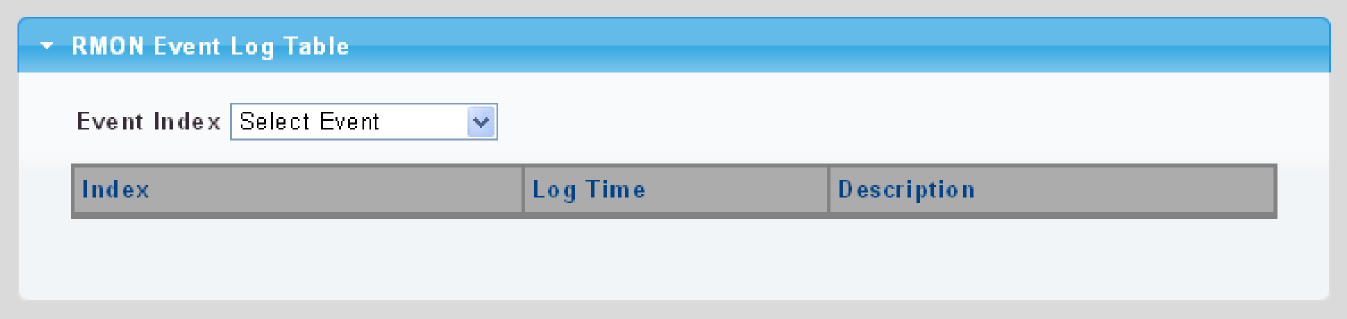
Figure 4-2-41 RMON Event Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Index**	Display the current event index
- **Event Type**	Display the current event type
- **Community**	Display the current community for SNMP trap
- **Description**	Display the current event description
- **Last Sent Time**	Display the current last sent time
- **Owner**	Display the current event owner
- **Action**	Click Delete to delete RMON event entry

4.2.8.3 RMON Event Log

This page provides an overview of RMON Event Log. The RMON Event Log Table screen in Figure 4-2-42 appears.



RMON Event Log Table

Event Index: Select Event

Index	Log Time	Description

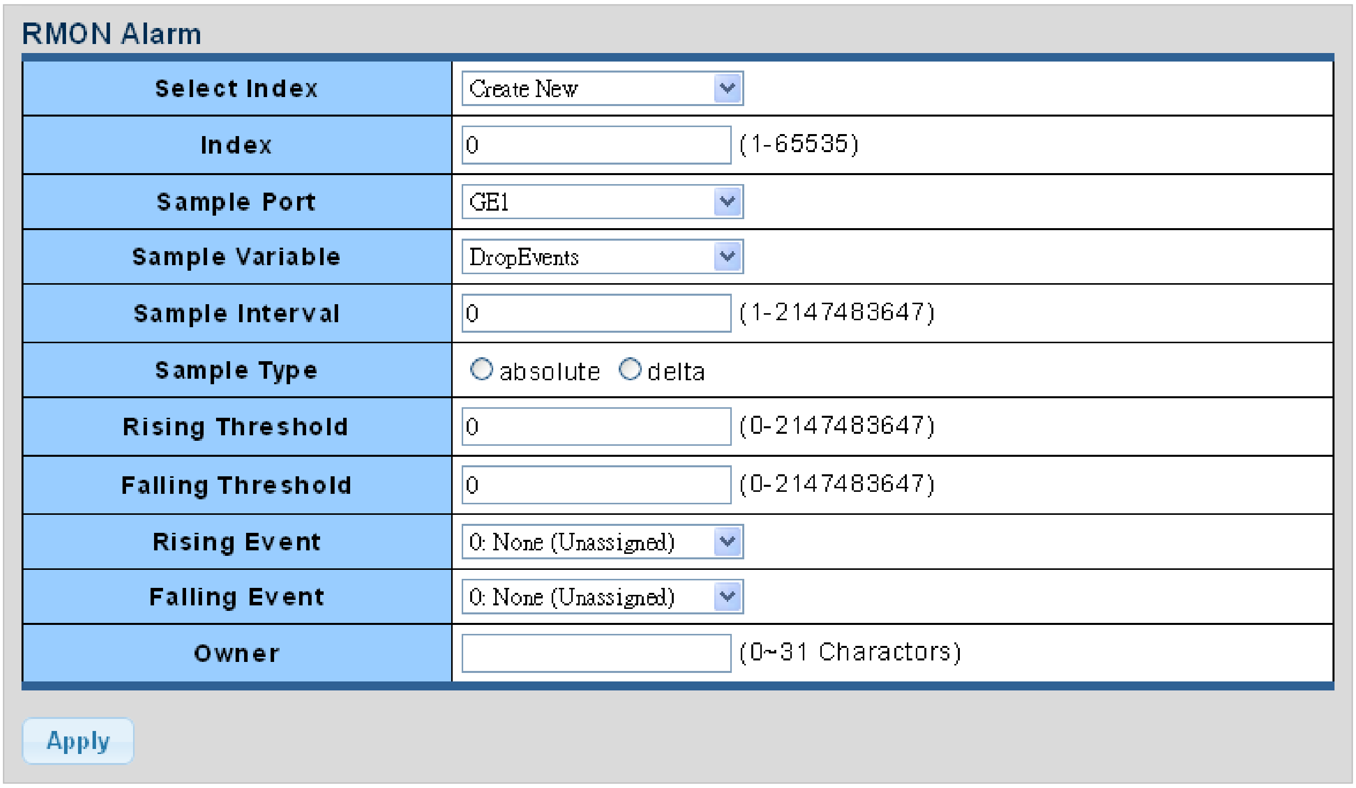
Figure 4-2-42 RMON Event Log Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Select Index**	Select index from this drop-down list
- **Index**	Indicates the index of the log entry
- **Log Time**	Indicates Event log time
- **Description**	Indicates the Event description

4.2.8.4 RMON Alarm

Configure RMON Alarm table on this page. The RMON Alarm screens in Figure 4-2-43 & Figure 4-2-44 appear.



RMON Alarm

Select Index	Create New
Index	0 (1-65535)
Sample Port	GE1
Sample Variable	DropEvents
Sample Interval	0 (1-2147483647)
Sample Type	○ absolute ○ delta
Rising Threshold	0 (0-2147483647)
Falling Threshold	0 (0-2147483647)
Rising Event	0: None (Unassigned)
Falling Event	0: None (Unassigned)
Owner	(0~31 Charactors)

Figure 4-2-43 RMON Alarm Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

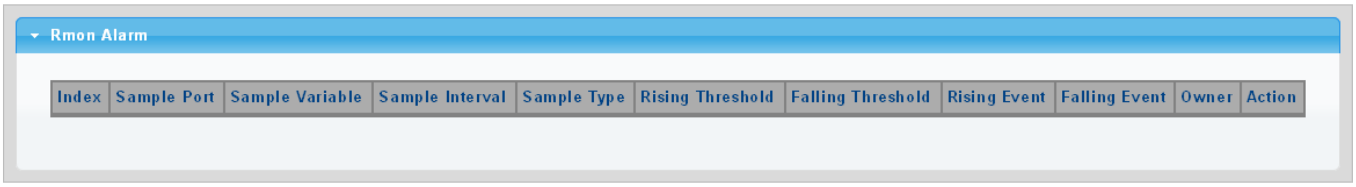
Object	Description
• **Select Index**	Select index from this drop-down list to create the new index or modify the index
• **Index**	Indicates the index of the alarm entry
• **Sample Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Sample Variable**	Indicates the particular variable to be sampled, the possible variables are: ■ **DropEvents**: The total number of events in which packets were dropped due to lack of resources. ■ **Octets**: The number of received and transmitted (good and bad) bytes. Includes FCS, but excludes framing bits. ■ **Pkts**: The total number of frames (bad, broadcast and multicast) received and transmitted. ■ **BroadcastPkts**: The total number of good frames received that were directed to the broadcast address. Note that this does not include multicast packets.

	■ **MulticastPkts**: The total number of good frames received that were directed to this multicast address. ■ **CRCAlignErrors**: The number of CRC/alignment errors (FCS or alignment errors). ■ **UnderSizePkts**: The total number of frames received that were less than 64 octets long(excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and were otherwise well formed. ■ **OverSizePkts**: The total number of frames received that were longer than 1518 octets(excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and were otherwise well formed. ■ **Fragments**: The total number of frames received that were less than 64 octets in length (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and had either an FCS or alignment error. ■ **Jabbers**: The total number of frames received that were longer than 1518 octets (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets), and had either an FCS or alignment error. ■ **Collisions**: The best estimate of the total number of collisions on this Ethernet segment. ■ **Pkts64Octets**: The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted that were 64 octets in length (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets). ■ **Pkts64to172Octets**: The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted where the number of octets falls within the specified range (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets). ■ **Pkts158to255Octets**: The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted where the number of octets falls within the specified range (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets). ■ **Pkts256to511Octets**: The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted where the number of octets falls within the specified range (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets). ■ **Pkts512to1023Octets**: The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted where the number of octets falls within the specified range (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets). ■ **Pkts1024to1518Octets**: The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted where the number of octets falls within the specified range (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
• **Sample Interval**	Sample interval (1–2147483647)
• **Sample Type**	The method of sampling the selected variable and calculating the value to be compared against the thresholds, possible sample types are:

	■ **Absolute**: Get the sample directly (default). ■ **Delta**: Calculate the difference between samples.
• **Rising Threshold**	Rising threshold value (0–2147483647)
• **Falling Threshold**	Falling threshold value (0–2147483647)
• **Rising Event**	Event to fire when the rising threshold is crossed
• **Falling Event**	Event to fire when the falling threshold is crossed
• **Owner**	Specify an owner for the alarm

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Rmon Alarm

Index	Sample Port	Sample Variable	Sample Interval	Sample Type	Rising Threshold	Falling Threshold	Rising Event	Falling Event	Owner	Action

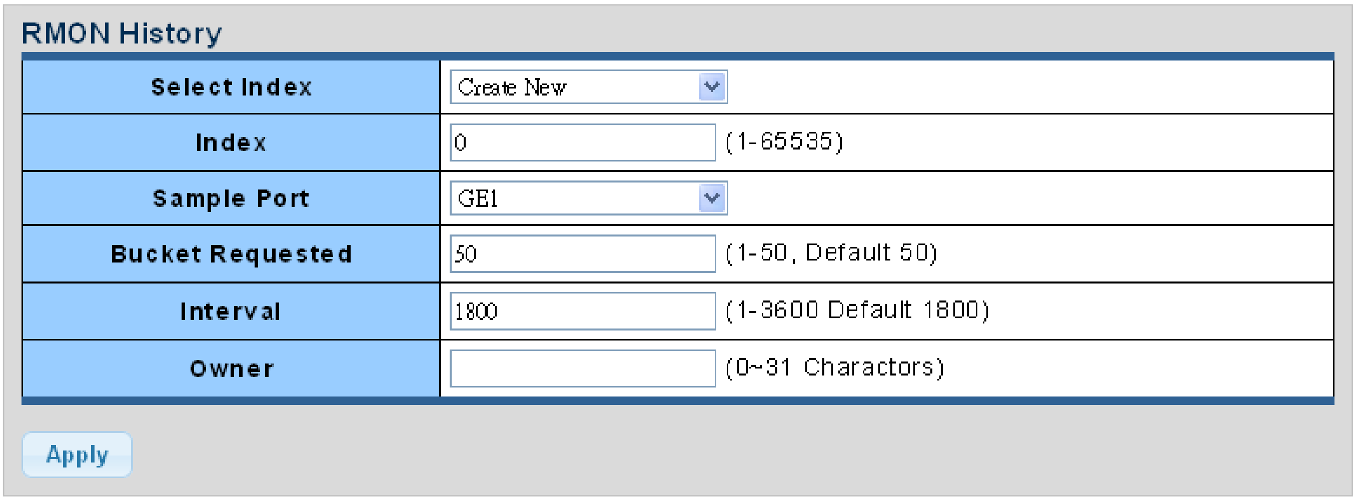
Figure 4-2-44 RMON Alarm Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Index**	Indicates the index of Alarm control entry
• **Sample Port**	Display the current sample port
• **Sample Variable**	Display the current sample variable
• **Sample Interval**	Display the current interval
• **Sample Type**	Display the current sample type
• **Rising Threshold**	Display the current rising threshold
• **Falling Threshold**	Display the current falling threshold
• **Rising Event**	Display the current rising event
• **Falling Event**	Display the current falling event
• **Owner**	Display the current owner
• **Action**	Click Delete to delete RMON alarm entry

4.2.8.5 RMON History

Configure RMON History table on this page. The RMON History screens in Figure 4-2-45 & Figure 4-2-46 appear.



RMON History

Select Index	Create New
Index	0 (1-65535)
Sample Port	GE1
Bucket Requested	50 (1-50, Default 50)
Interval	1800 (1-3600 Default 1800)
Owner	(0~31 Charactors)

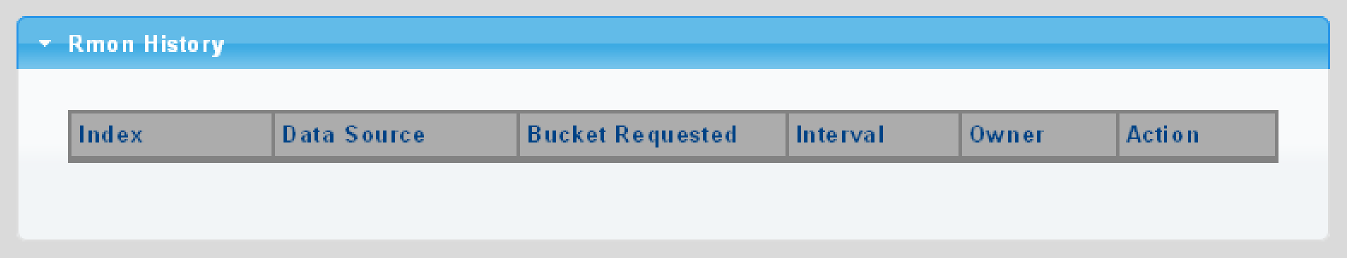
Figure 4-2-45 RMON History Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Select Index**	Select index from this drop-down list to create the new index or modify the index
- **Index**	Indicates the index of the history entry
- **Sample Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
- **Bucket Requested**	Indicates the maximum data entries associated this History control entry stored in RMON. The range is from 1 to 50, default value is 50
- **Interval**	Indicates the interval in seconds for sampling the history statistics data. The range is from 1 to 3600, default value is 1800 seconds.
- **Owner**	Specify an owner for the history

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Rmon History

Index	Data Source	Bucket Requested	Interval	Owner	Action

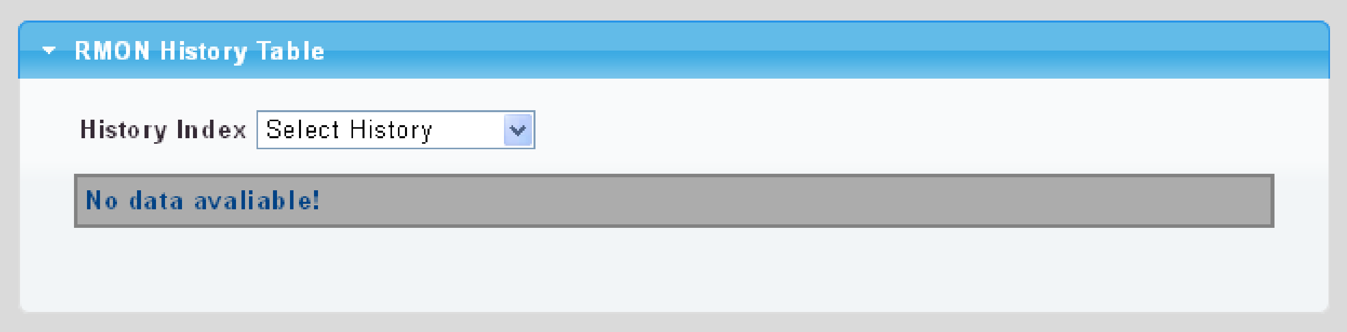
Figure 4-2-46 RMON History Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Index**	Display the current index
- **Data Source**	Display the current data source
- **Bucket Requested**	Display the current bucket requested
- **Interval**	Display the current interval
- **Owner**	Display the current owner
- **Action**	Click Delete to delete RMON history entry.

4.2.8.6 RMON History Log

This page provides a detail of RMON history entries; screen in Figure 4-2-47 appears.



History Index: Select History

No data avaliable!

Figure 4-2-47 RMON History Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **History Index**	Select history index from this drop-down list

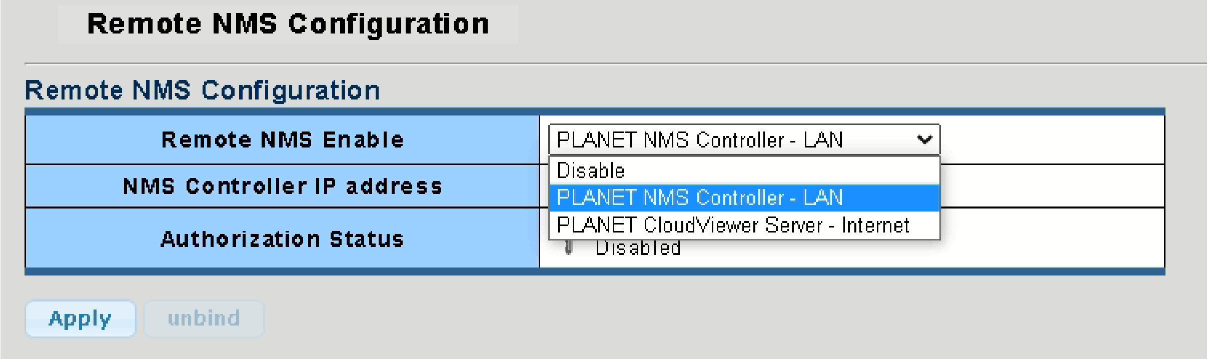
Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

4.2.9 Remote Management

The Industrial Managed Switch can support both NMS contoleer and CloudViewer Sever for remote management. PLANET's **NMS Controller** is a Network Management System can monitor all kinds of deployed network devices, such as managed switches, media converters, routers, smart APs, VoIP phones, IP cameras, etc., compliant with the SNMP Protocol, ONVIF Protocol and PLANET Smart Discovery utility. The **CloudViewer** is a free networking service just for PLANET Products. This service provides simplified network monitoring and real-time network status. Working with PLANET CloudViewer app, user can easily check network status, device information, Port and PoE status from Internet. Any other services are not included.

The Remote NMS Configuration screens in Figure 4-2-48 appear.



Remote NMS Configuration

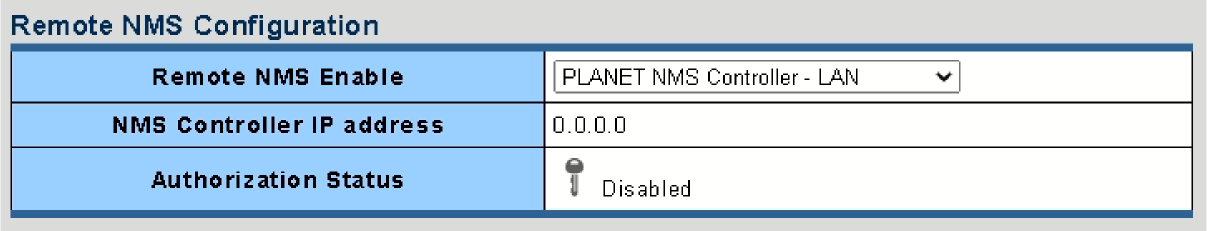
Remote NMS Configuration

Remote NMS Enable	PLANET NMS Controller - LAN
NMS Controller IP address	
Authorization Status	Disabled

Disable
PLANET NMS Controller - LAN
PLANET CloudViewer Server - Internet
Apply
unbind

Figure 4-2-48: Remote NMS Configuration page Screenshot

The **NMS Controller** – LAN Configuration screens in Figure 4-2-49 appear.



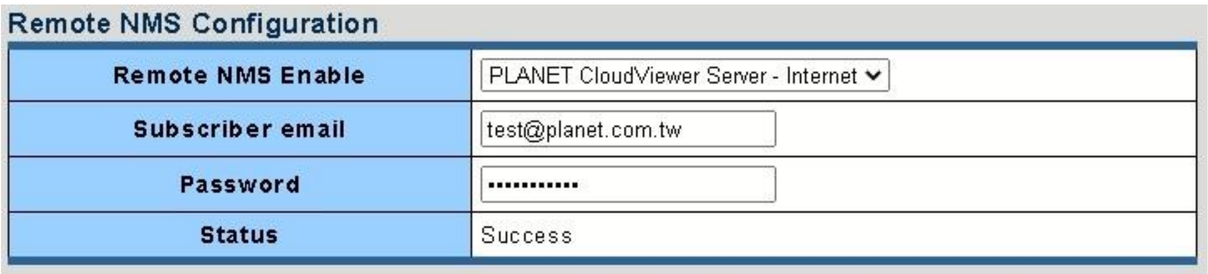
Remote NMS Configuration

Remote NMS Enable	PLANET NMS Controller - LAN
NMS Controller IP address	0.0.0.0
Authorization Status	Disabled

Figure 4-2-49 NMS Controller – LAN Configuration Page Screenshot

Object	Description
• **Remote NMS Enable**	Enable NMS management
• **NMS Controller IP address**	The IP address of NMS Controller
• **Authorization Status**	Indicate the authorization status of the switch to NMS Controller

The CloudViewer Server – Internet screens in Figure 4-2-50 appear.



Remote NMS Configuration

Remote NMS Enable	PLANET CloudViewer Server - Internet
Subscriber email	test@planet.com.tw
Password	•••••••••••
Status	Success

Figure 4-2-50 CloudViewer Server – Internet Configuration Page Screenshot

Object	Description
• **Remote NMS Enable**	Enable NMS management
• **Subscriber email**	The email registered on CloudViewer Server
• **Password**	The password of your CloudViewer account
• **Status**	Indicate the status of connecting CloudViewer Server

4.3 Port Management

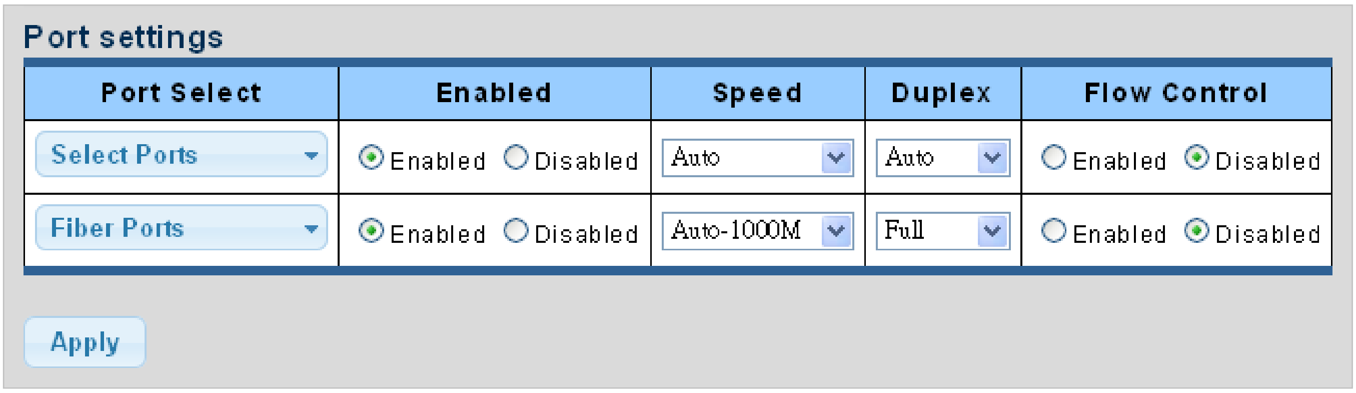
Use the Port Menu to display or configure the Managed Switch's ports. This section has the following items:

■ **Port Configuration**	Configures port configuration settings
■ **Port Counters**	Lists Ethernet and RMON port statistics
■ **Bandwidth Utilization**	Displays current bandwidth utilization
■ **Port Mirroring**	Sets the source and target ports for mirroring
■ **Jumbo Frame**	Sets the jumbo frame on the switch
■ **Port Error Disable Configuration**	Configures port error disable settings
■ **Port Error Disabled Status**	Disables port error status
■ **Protected Ports**	Configures protected ports settings
■ **EEE**	Configures EEE settings
■ **SFP Module Information**	Displays SFP module information.

4.3.1 Port Configuration

This page displays current port configurations and status. Ports can also be configured here. The table has one row for each port on the selected switch in a number of columns, which are:

The Port Configuration screens in Figure 4-3-1 & Figure 4-3-2 appear.



Port settings

Port Select	Enabled	Speed	Duplex	Flow Control
Select Ports	● Enabled ○ Disabled	Auto	Auto	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Fiber Ports	● Enabled ○ Disabled	Auto-1000M	Full	○ Enabled ● Disabled

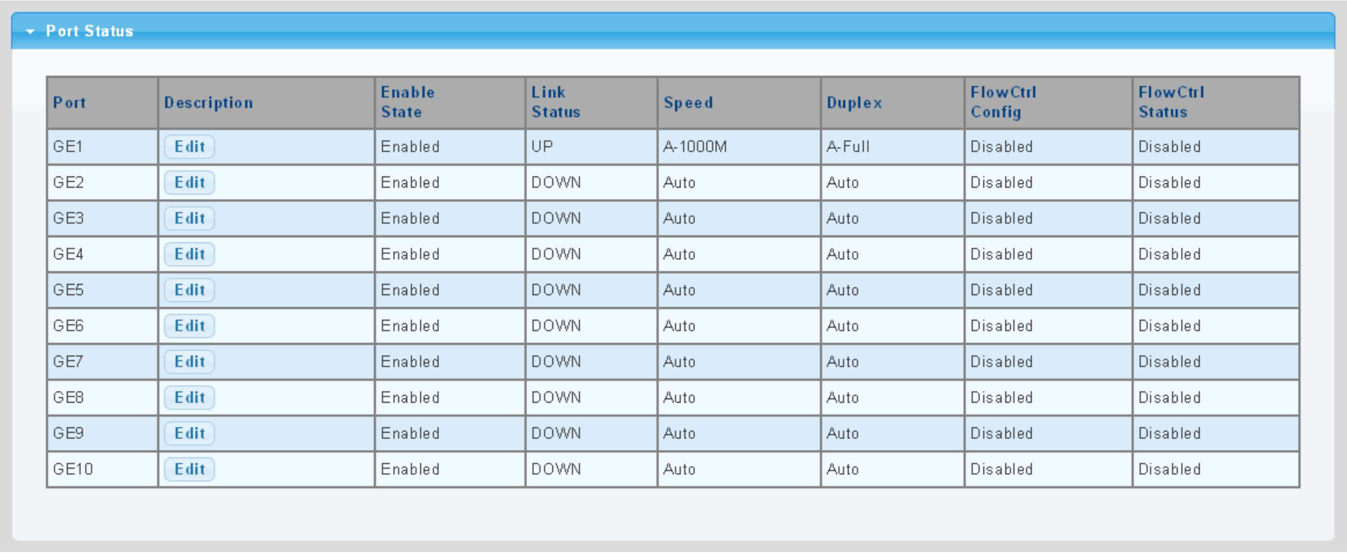
Figure 4-3-1 Port Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list.
• **Enabled**	Indicates the port state operation. Possible state are: **Enabled** - Start up the port manually. **Disabled** – Shut down the port manually.
• **Speed**	Select any available link speed for the given switch port. Draw the menu bar to select the mode. ■ **Auto** - Setup Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-10M** - Setup 10M Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-100M** - Setup 100M Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-1000M** - Setup 1000M Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-10/100M** - Setup 10/100M Auto negotiation. ■ **10M** - Setup 10M Force mode. ■ **100M** - Setup 100M Force mode. ■ **1000M** - Setup 1000M Force mode.
• **Duplex**	Select any available link duplex for the given switch port. Draw the menu bar to select the mode. ■ **Auto** - Setup Auto negotiation. ■ **Full** - Force sets Full-Duplex mode. ■ **Half** - Force sets Half-Duplex mode.
• **Flow Control**	When Auto Speed is selected for a port, this section indicates the flow control capability that is advertised to the link partner. When a fixed-speed setting is selected, that is what is used. Current Rx column indicates whether pause frames on the port are obeyed. Current Tx column indicates whether pause frames on the port are transmitted. The Rx and Tx settings are determined by the result of the last Auto-Negotiation. Check the configured column to use flow control. This setting is related to the setting for Configured Link Speed.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Port	Description	Enable State	Link Status	Speed	Duplex	FlowCtrl Config	FlowCtrl Status
GE1	Edit	Enabled	UP	A-1000M	A-Full	Disabled	Disabled
GE2	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE3	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE4	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE5	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE6	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE7	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE8	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE9	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
GE10	Edit	Enabled	DOWN	Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled

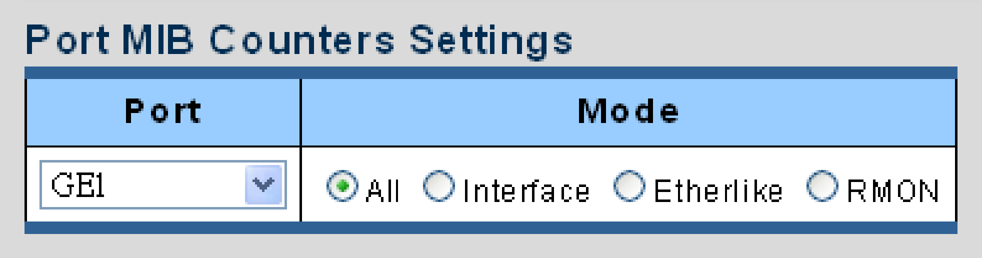
Figure 4-3-2 Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	This is the logical port number for this row
• **Description**	Click Edit to indicate the port name
• **Enable State**	Display the current port state
• **Link Status**	Display the current link status
• **Speed**	Display the current speed status of the port
• **Duplex**	Display the current duplex status of the port
• **Flow Control Configuration**	Display the current flow control configuration of the port
• **Flow Control Status**	Display the current flow control status of the port

4.3.2 Port Counters

This page provides an overview of traffic and trunk statistics for all switch ports. The Port Statistics screens in Figure 4-3-3, Figure 4-3-4, Figure 4-3-5 & Figure 4-3-6 appear.



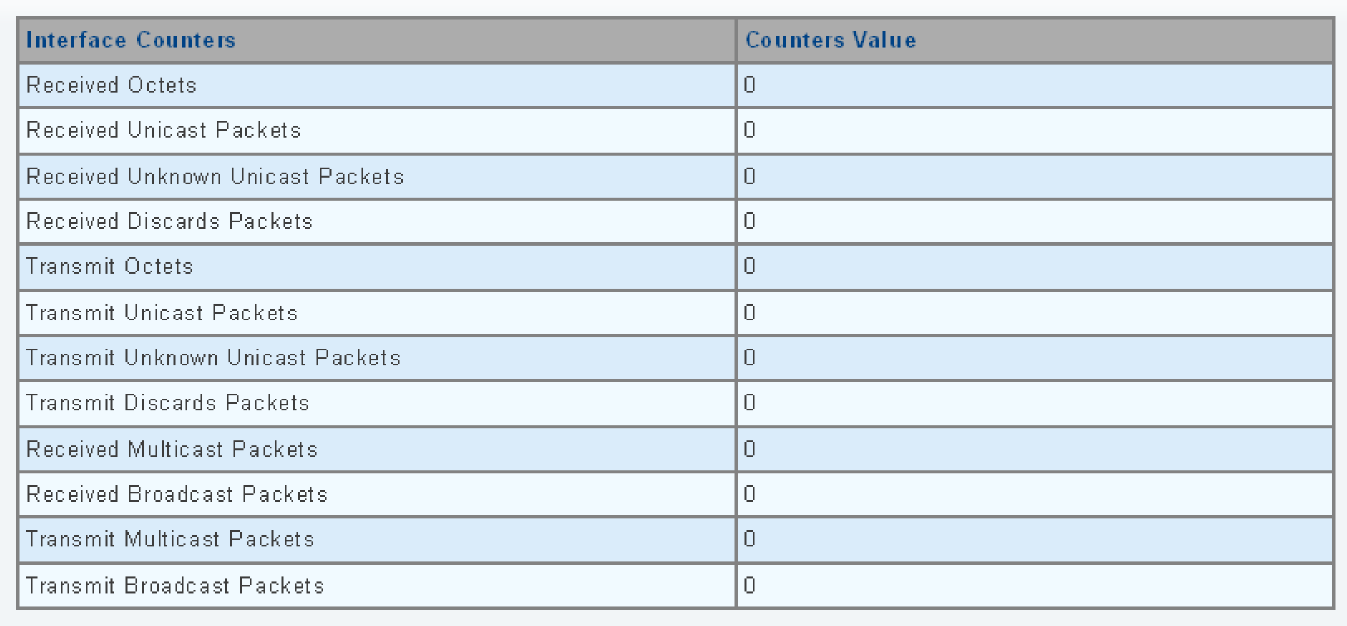
Port MIB Counters Settings

Port	Mode
GE1	● All ○ Interface ○ Etherlike ○ RMON

Figure 4-3-3 Port MIB Counters Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

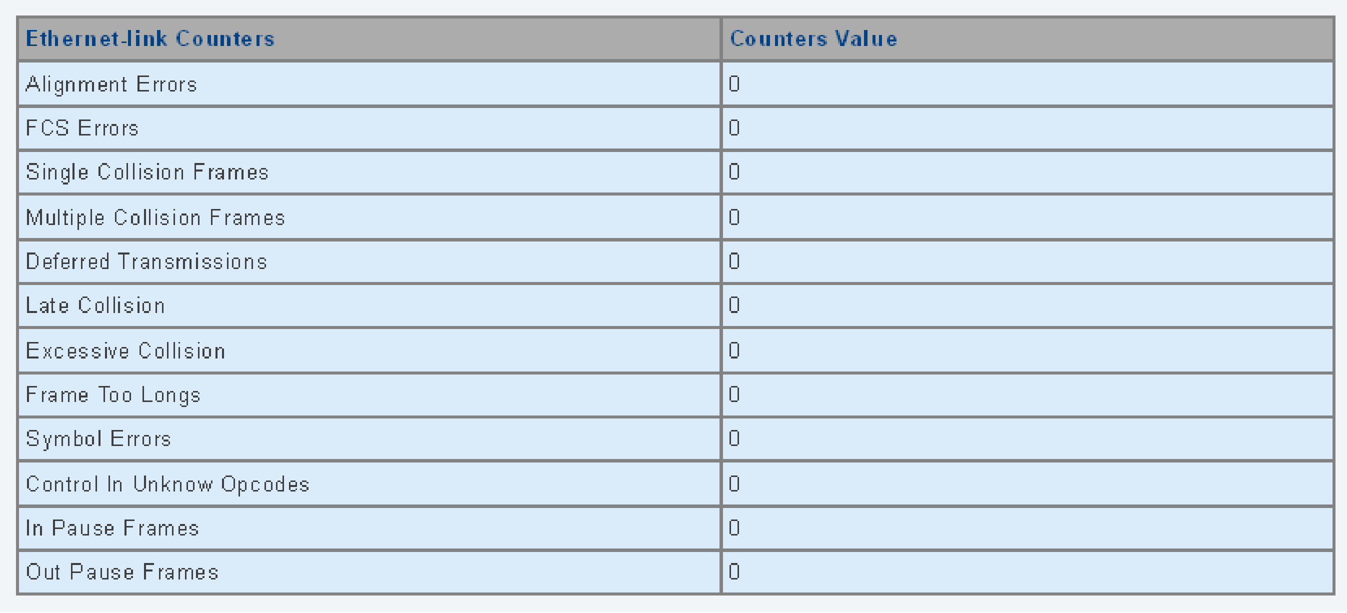
Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list.
• **Mode**	Select port counters mode. Option: ● All ● Interface ● Ether-link ● RMON



Interface Counters	Counters Value
Received Octets	0
Received Unicast Packets	0
Received Unknown Unicast Packets	0
Received Discards Packets	0
Transmit Octets	0
Transmit Unicast Packets	0
Transmit Unknown Unicast Packets	0
Transmit Discards Packets	0
Received Multicast Packets	0
Received Broadcast Packets	0
Transmit Multicast Packets	0
Transmit Broadcast Packets	0

Figure 4-3-4 Interface Counters Page Screenshot

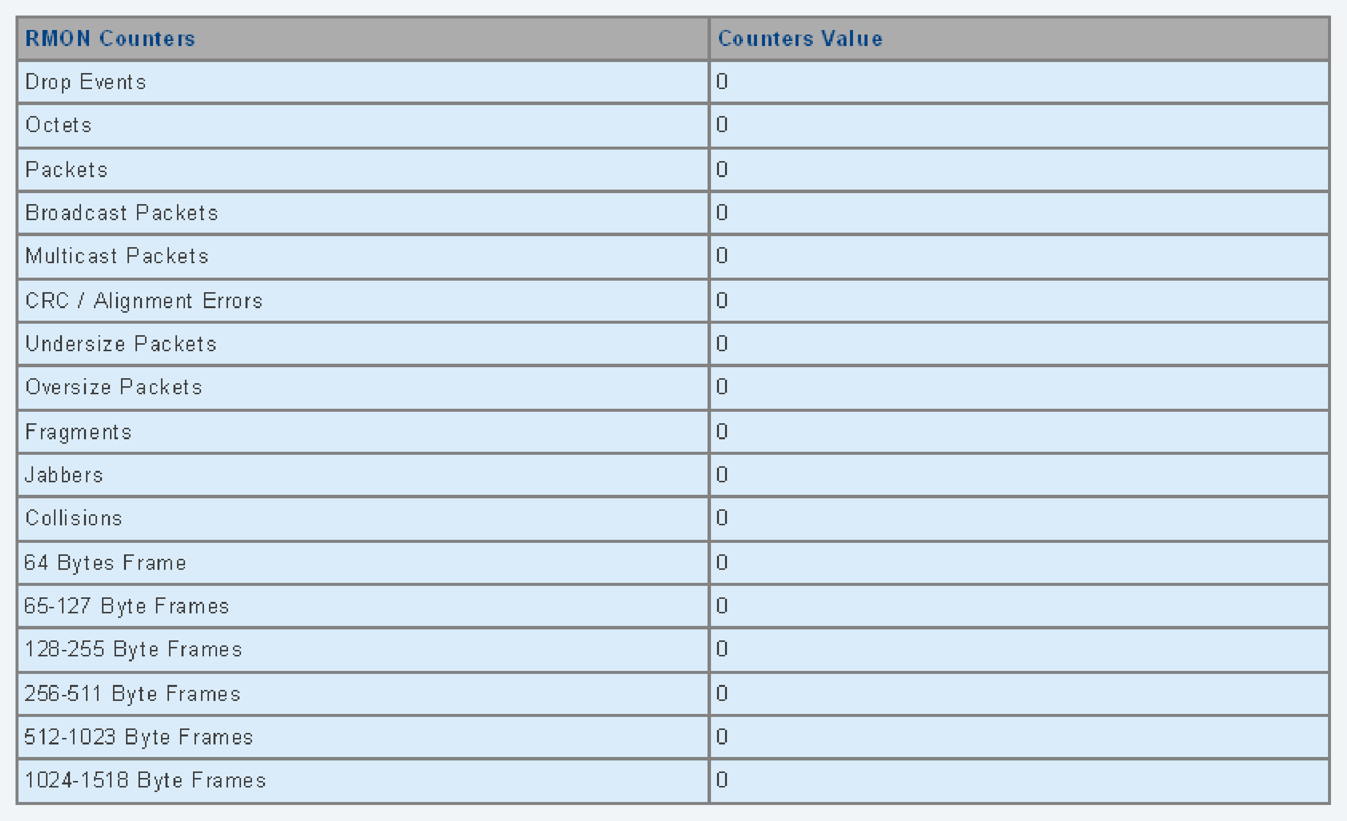
Object	Description
- **Received Octets**	The total number of octets received on the interface, including framing characters.
- **Received Unicast Packets**	The number of subnetwork-unicast packets delivered to a higher-layer protocol.
- **Received Unknown Unicast Packets**	The number of packets received via the interface which is discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol.
- **Received Discards Packets**	The number of inbound packets which were chosen to be discarded even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space.
- **Transmit Octets**	The total number of octets transmitted out of the interface, including framing characters.
- **Transmit Unicast Packets**	The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested is transmitted to a subnetwork-unicast address, including those that were discarded or not sent.
- **Transmit Unknown Unicast Packets**	The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested is transmitted to a subnetwork-unicast address, including those that were discarded or not sent.
- **Transmit Discards Packets**	The number of inbound packets which is chosen to be discarded even though no errors have been detected to prevent from being delivered to a higher-layer protocol. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space.
- **Received Multicast Packets**	The number of packets, delivered by this sub-layer to a higher (sub-) layer, is addressed to a multicast address at this sub-layer.
- **Received Broadcast Packets**	The number of packets, delivered by this sub-layer to a higher (sub-) layer, addressed to a broadcast address at this sub-layer.
- **Transmit Multicast Packets**	The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested is transmitted and is addressed to a multicast address at this sub-layer, including those that were discarded or not sent.
- **Transmit Broadcast Packets**	The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested is transmitted, and addressed to a broadcast address at this sub-layer, including those that were discarded or not sent.



Ethernet-link Counters	Counters Value
Alignment Errors	0
FCS Errors	0
Single Collision Frames	0
Multiple Collision Frames	0
Deferred Transmissions	0
Late Collision	0
Excessive Collision	0
Frame Too Longs	0
Symbol Errors	0
Control In Unknow Opcodes	0
In Pause Frames	0
Out Pause Frames	0

Figure 4-3-5 Ethernet link Counters Page Screenshot

Object	Description
• **Alignment Errors**	The number of alignment errors (missynchronized data packets).
• **FCS Errors**	A count of frames received on a particular interface that are an integral number of octets in length but do not pass the FCS check. This count does not include frames received with frame-too-long or frame-too-short error.
• **Single Collision Frames**	The number of successfully transmitted frames for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
• **Multiple Collision Frames**	A count of successfully transmitted frames for which transmission is inhibited by more than one collision.
• **Deferred Transmissions**	A count of frames for which the first transmission attempt on a particular interface is delayed because the medium was busy.
• **Late Collision**	The number of times that a collision is detected later than 512 bit-times into the transmission of a packet.
• **Excessive Collision**	A count of frames for which transmission on a particular interface fails due to excessive collisions. This counter does not increase when the interface is operating in full-duplex mode.
• **Frame Too Long**	A count of frames received on a particular interface that exceeds the maximum permitted frame size.
• **Symbol Errors**	The number of received and transmitted symbol errors
• **Control In Unknown Opcodes**	The number of received control unknown opcodes
• **In Pause Frames**	The number of received pause frames
• **Out Pause Frames**	The number of transmitted pause frames



RMON Counters	Counters Value
Drop Events	0
Octets	0
Packets	0
Broadcast Packets	0
Multicast Packets	0
CRC / Alignment Errors	0
Undersize Packets	0
Oversize Packets	0
Fragments	0
Jabbers	0
Collisions	0
64 Bytes Frame	0
65-127 Byte Frames	0
128-255 Byte Frames	0
256-511 Byte Frames	0
512-1023 Byte Frames	0
1024-1518 Byte Frames	0

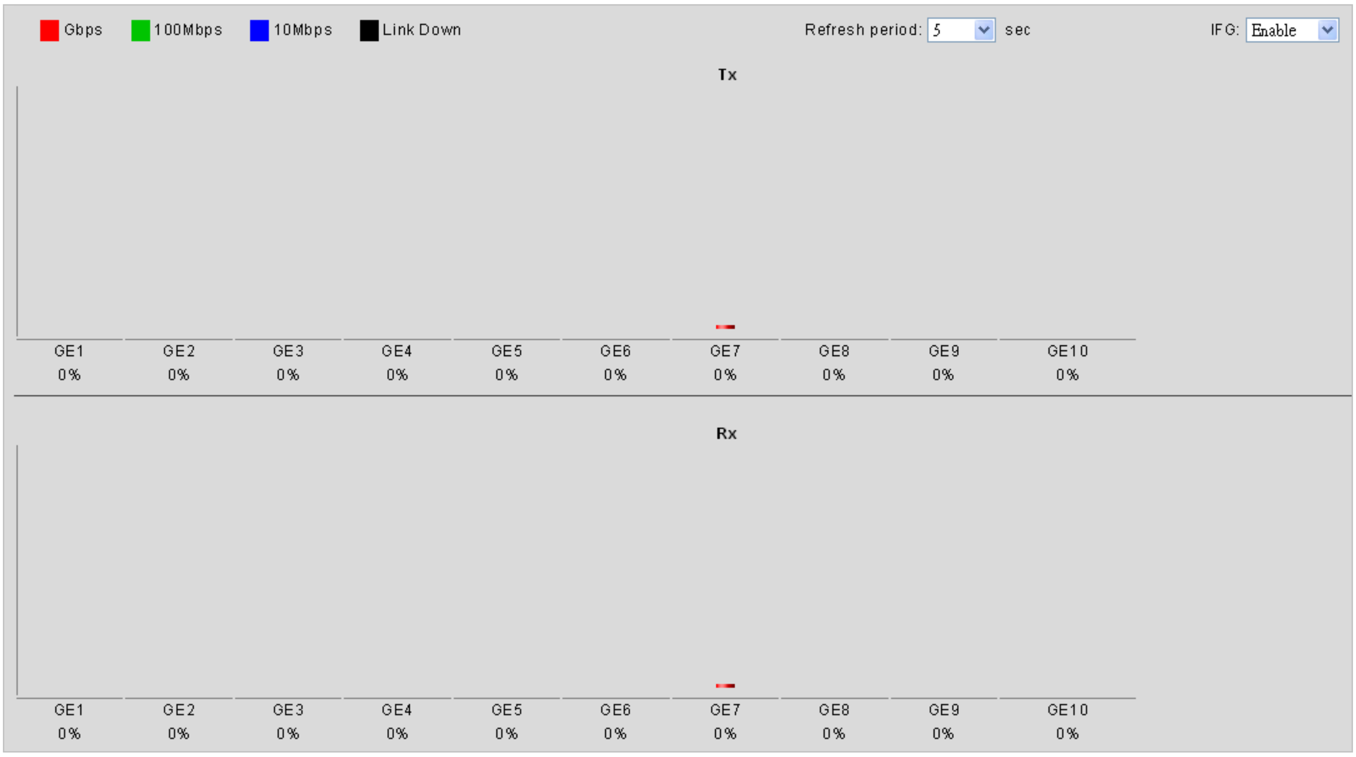
Figure 4-3-6 RMON Counters Page Screenshot

Object	Description
• **Drop Events**	The total number of events in which packets were dropped due to lack of resources.
• **Octets**	The total number of octets received and transmitted on the interface, including framing characters.
• **Packets**	The total number of packets received and transmitted on the interface.
• **Broadcast Packets**	The total number of good frames received that were directed to the broadcast address. Note that this does not include multicast packets.
• **Multicast Packets**	The total number of good frames received that were directed to this multicast address.
• **CRC / Alignment Errors**	The number of CRC/alignment errors (FCS or alignment errors).
• **Undersize Packets**	The total number of frames received that were less than 64 octets long(excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and were otherwise well formed.
• **Oversize Packets**	The total number of frames received that were longer than 1518 octets(excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and were otherwise well formed.
• **Fragments**	The total number of frames received that were less than 64 octets in length (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and had either an FCS or alignment error.
• **Jabbers**	The total number of frames received that were longer than 1518 octets (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets), and had either an FCS or alignment error.
• **Collisions**	The best estimate of the total number of collisions on this Ethernet segment.
• **64 Bytes Frames**	The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted that were 64 octets in length (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
• **65-127 Byte Frames** **128-255 Byte Frames** **256-511 Byte Frames** **512-1023 Byte Frames** **1024-1518 Byte Frames**	The total number of frames (including bad packets) received and transmitted where the number of octets falls within the specified range (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).

4.3.3 Bandwidth Utilization

The **Bandwidth Utilization** page displays the percentage of the total available bandwidth being used on the ports. Bandwidth utilization statistics can be viewed using a line graph. The Bandwidth Utilization screen in Figure 4-3-7 appears.

To view the port utilization, click on the **Port Management** folder and then the **Bandwidth Utilization** link:


🟥 Gbps
🟩 100Mbps
🟦 10Mbps
⬛ Link Down
Tx
GE1 0%
GE2 0%
GE3 0%
GE4 0%
GE5 0%
GE6 0%
GE7 0%
GE8 0%
GE9 0%
GE10 0%
Rx
GE1 0%
GE2 0%
GE3 0%
GE4 0%
GE5 0%
GE6 0%
GE7 0%
GE8 0%
GE9 0%
GE10 0%

Refresh period: 5 sec

IFG: Enable

Figure 4-3-7 Port Bandwidth Utilization Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Refresh Period**	This shows the period interval between last and next refresh. Options: ■ 2 sec ■ 5 sec ■ 10 sec
• **IFG**	Allow user to **enable** or **disable** this function

4.3.4 Port Mirroring

Configure port Mirroring on this page. This function provides monitoring of network traffic that forwards a copy of each incoming or outgoing packet from one port of a network switch to another port where the packet can be studied. It enables the manager to keep close track of switch performance and alter it if necessary.

- To debug network problems, selected traffic can be copied, or mirrored, to a mirror port where a frame analyzer can be attached to analyze the frame flow.
- The Managed Switch can unobtrusively mirror traffic from any port to a monitor port. You can then attach a protocol analyzer or RMON probe to this port to perform traffic analysis and verify connection integrity.

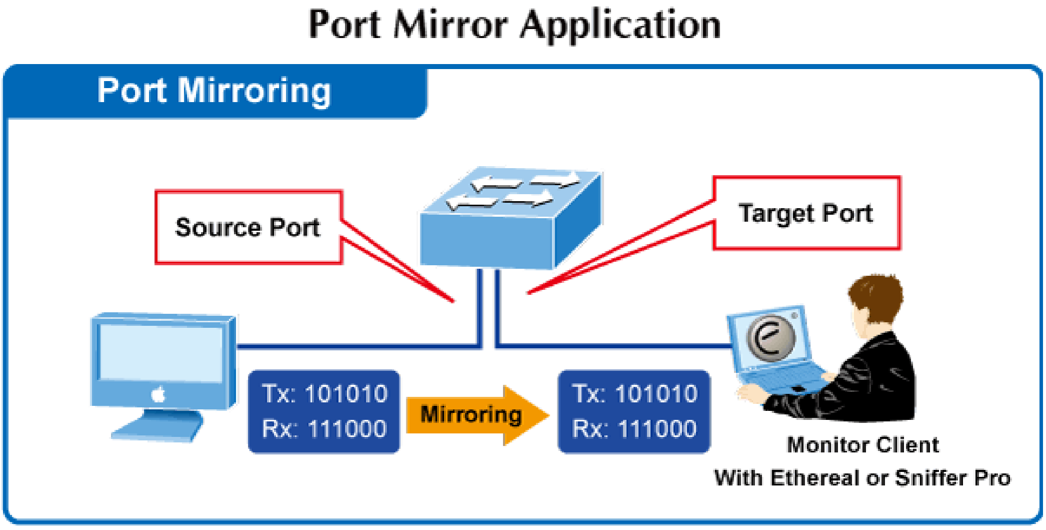

Port Mirror Application
Port Mirroring
Source Port
Target Port
Tx: 101010
Rx: 111000
Mirroring
Tx: 101010
Rx: 111000
Monitor Client
With Ethereal or Sniffer Pro

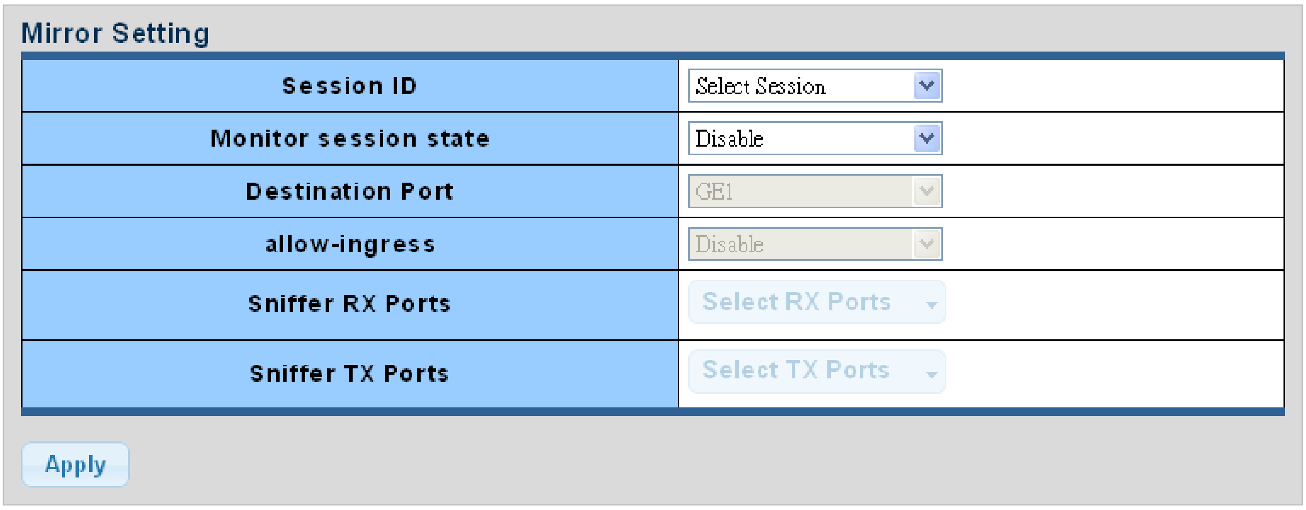
Figure 4-3-8 Port Mirror Application

The traffic to be copied to the mirror port is selected as follows:

- All frames received on a given port (also known as ingress or source mirroring).
- All frames transmitted on a given port (also known as egress or destination mirroring).

Mirror Port Configuration

The Port Mirror Configuration screens in Figure 4-3-9 & Figure 4-3-10 appear.



Mirror Setting

Session ID	Select Session
Monitor session state	Disable
Destination Port	GE1
allow-ingress	Disable
Sniffer RX Ports	Select RX Ports
Sniffer TX Ports	Select TX Ports

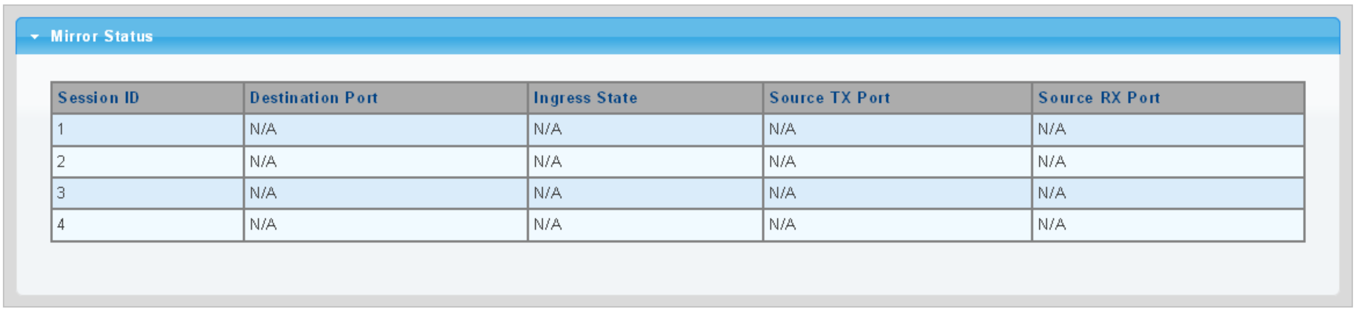
Figure 4-3-9 Port Mirroring Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Session ID**	Set the port mirror session ID. Possible ID are: **1** to **4**.
• **Monitor Session State**	Enable or disable the port mirroring function.
• **Destination Port**	Select the port to mirror destination port.
• **Allow-ingress**	Frames from ports that have either source (rx) or destination (tx) mirroring enabled are mirrored to this port.
• **Sniffer TX Ports**	Frames transmitted from these ports are mirrored to the mirroring port. Frames received are not mirrored.
• **Sniffer RX Ports**	Frames received at these ports are mirrored to the mirroring port. Frames transmitted are not mirrored.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Session ID	Destination Port	Ingress State	Source TX Port	Source RX Port
1	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
2	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
4	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

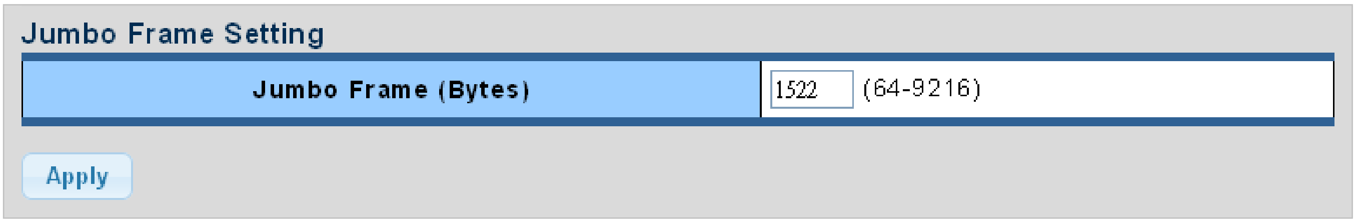
Figure 4-3-10 Mirroring Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Session ID**	Display the session ID
• **Destination Port**	This is the mirroring port entry
• **Ingress State**	Display the ingress state
• **Source TX Port**	Display the current TX ports
• **Source RX Port**	Display the current RX ports

4.3.5 Jumbo Frame

This page provides to select the **maximum frame size** allowed for the switch port. The Jumbo Frame screen in Figure 4-3-11 & Figure 4-3-12 appear.



Jumbo Frame Setting

Jumbo Frame (Bytes)	1522 (64-9216)

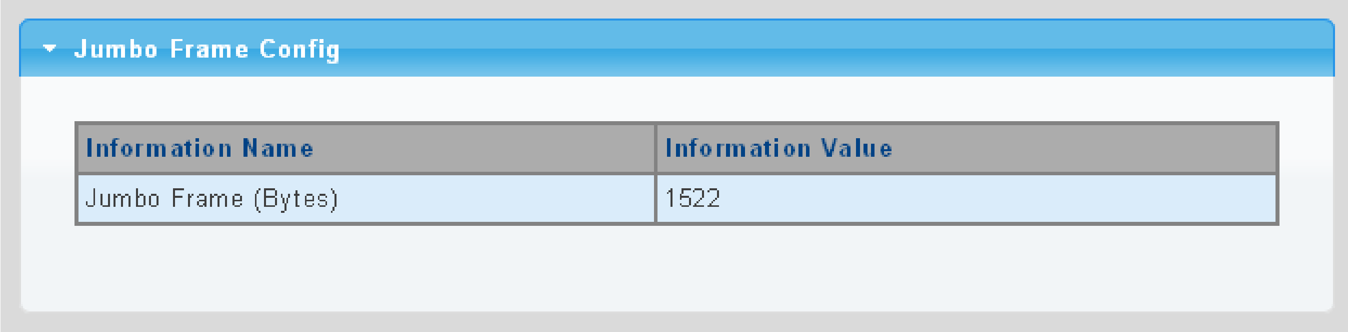
Figure 4-3-11 Jumbo Frame Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Jumbo Frame (Bytes)**	Enter the maximum frame size allowed for the switch port, including FCS. The allowed range is 64 bytes to 9216 bytes.

Buttons

: Click to apply changes.



Jumbo Frame Config

Information Name	Information Value
Jumbo Frame (Bytes)	1522

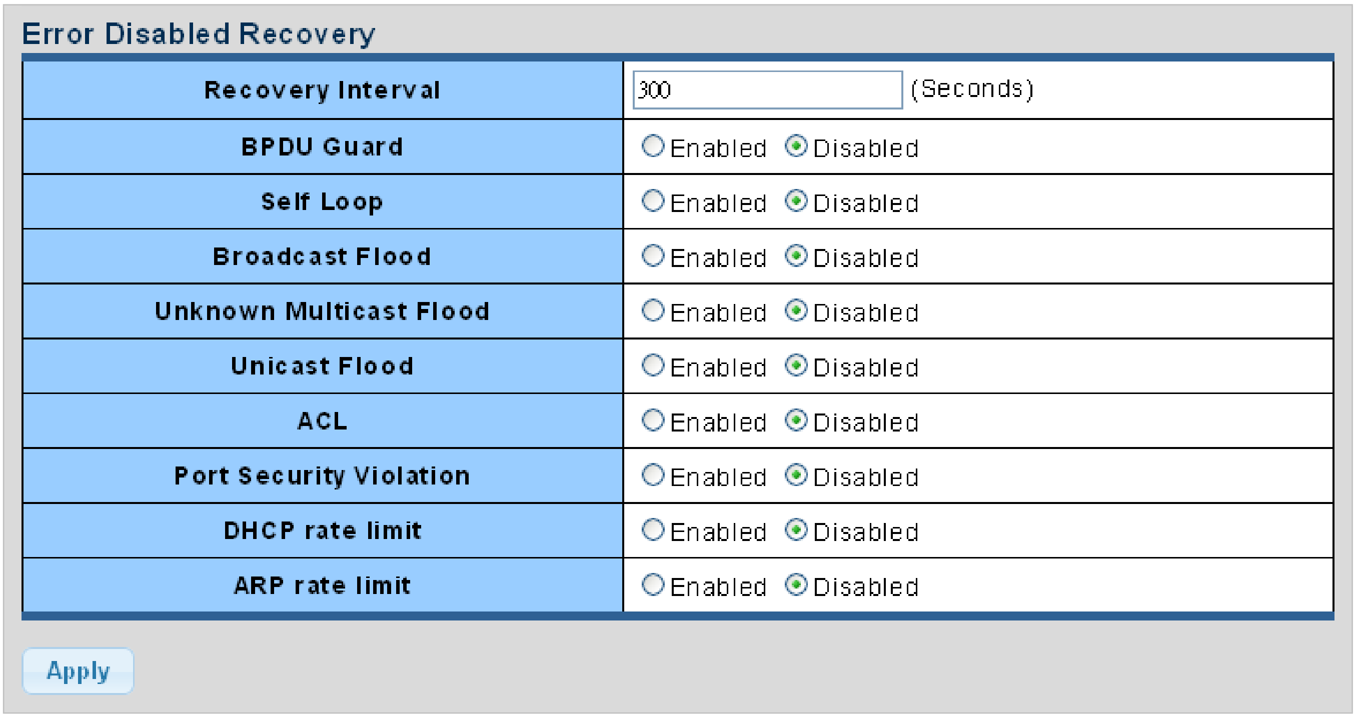
Figure 4-3-12 Jumbo Frame Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Jumbo**	Display the current maximum frame size

4.3.6 Port Error Disabled Configuration

This page provides to set port error disable function. The Port Error Disable Configuration screens in Figure 4-3-13 & Figure 4-3-14 appear.



Error Disabled Recovery

Recovery Interval	300 (Seconds)
BPDU Guard	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Self Loop	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Broadcast Flood	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Unknown Multicast Flood	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Unicast Flood	○ Enabled ● Disabled
ACL	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Port Security Violation	○ Enabled ● Disabled
DHCP rate limit	○ Enabled ● Disabled
ARP rate limit	○ Enabled ● Disabled

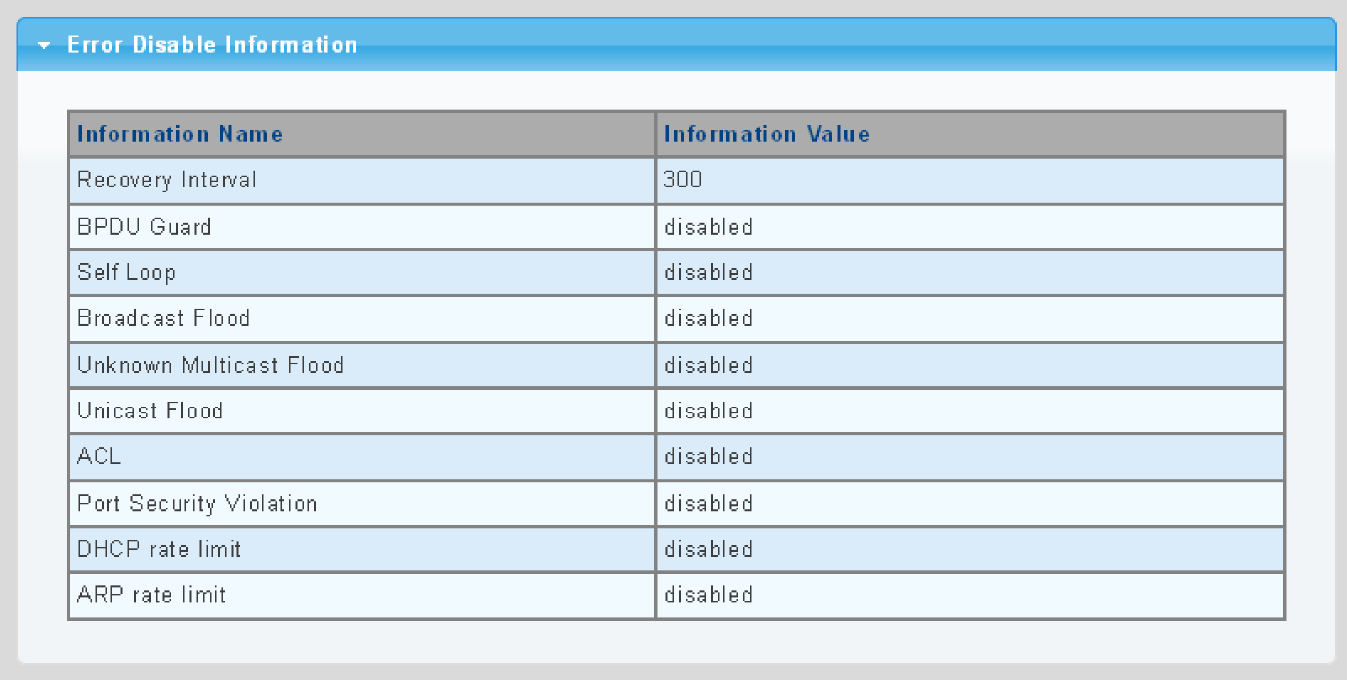
Figure 4-3-13 Error Disabled Recovery Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Recovery Interval**	The period (in seconds) for which a port will be kept disabled in the event of a port error is detected (and the port action shuts down the port).
- **BPDU Guard**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by BPDU guard.
- **Self Loop**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by self loop.
- **Broadcast Flood**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by broadcast flood.
- **Unknown Multicast Flood**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by unknown multicast flood.
- **Unicast Flood**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by unicast flood.
- **ACL**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by ACL.
- **Port Security Violation**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by port security violation.
- **DHCP Rate Limit**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by DHCP rate limit
- **ARP Rate Limit**	Enable or disable the port error disabled function to check status by ARP rate limit

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
Recovery Interval	300
BPDU Guard	disabled
Self Loop	disabled
Broadcast Flood	disabled
Unknown Multicast Flood	disabled
Unicast Flood	disabled
ACL	disabled
Port Security Violation	disabled
DHCP rate limit	disabled
ARP rate limit	disabled

Figure 4-3-14 Error Disabled Information Page Screenshot

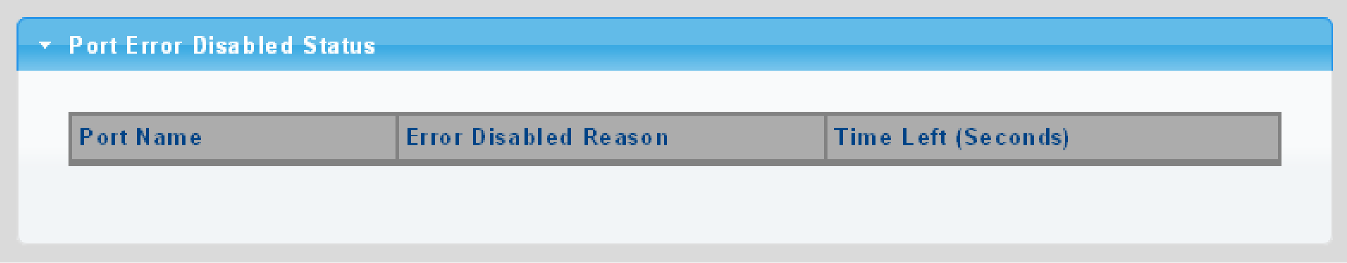
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Recovery Interval**	Display the current recovery interval time
• **BPDU Guard**	Display the current BPDU guard status
• **Self Loop**	Display the current self loop status
• **Broadcast Flood**	Display the current broadcast flood status
• **Unknown Multicast Flood**	Display the current unknown multicast flood status
• **Unicast Flood**	Display the current unicast flood status
• **ACL**	Display the current ACL status
• **Port Security Violation**	Display the current port security violation status
• **DHCP Rate Limit**	Display the current DHCP rate limit status
• **ARP Rate Limit**	Display the current ARP rate limit status

4.3.7 Port Error Disabled Status

This page provides disable that transitions a port into error disable and the recovery options.

The ports were disabled by some protocols such as **BPDU Guard**, **Loopback** and **UDLD**. The Port Error Disable screen in Figure 4-3-15 appears.



Port Name	Error Disabled Reason	Time Left (Seconds)

Figure 4-3-15 Port Error Disable Page Screenshot

The displayed counters are:

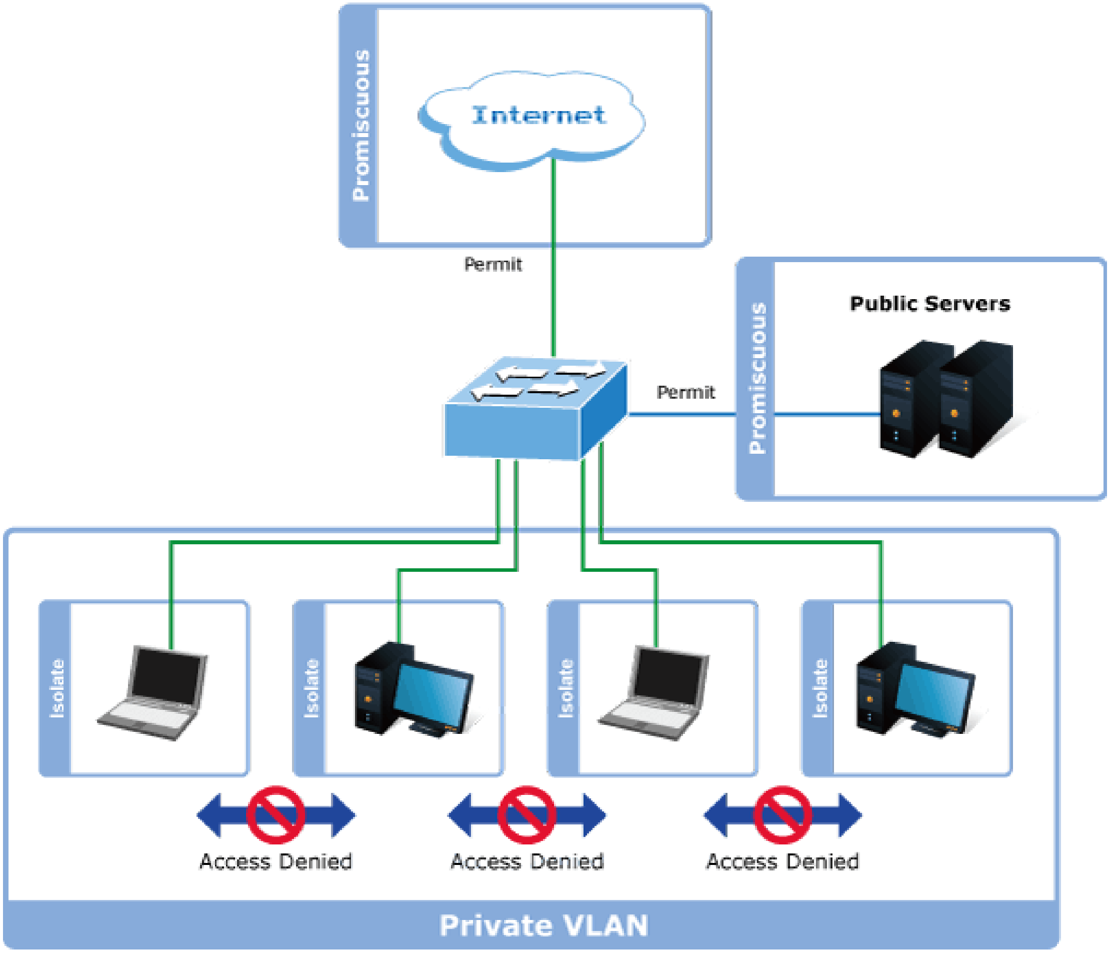
Object	Description
• **Port Name**	Display the port for error disable
• **Error Disable Reason**	Display the error disabled reason of the port
• **Time Left (Seconds)**	Display the time left

4.3.8 Protected Ports

Overview

When a switch port is configured to be a member of **protected group** (also called **Private VLAN**), communication between protected ports within that group can be prevented. Two application examples are provided in this section:

- Customers connected to an ISP can be members of the protected group, but they are not allowed to communicate with each other within that VLAN.
- Servers in a farm of web servers in a Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) are allowed to communicate with the outside world and with database servers on the inside segment, but are not allowed to communicate with each other.

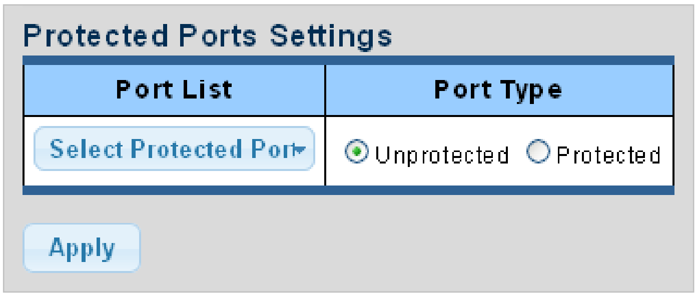

Promiscuous
Internet
Permit
Public Servers
Permit
Promiscuous
Isolate
Isolate
Isolate
Isolate
Access Denied
Access Denied
Access Denied
Private VLAN

For protected port group to be applied, the Managed switch must first be configured for standard VLAN operation. Ports in a protected port group fall into one of these two groups:

- **Promiscuous (Unprotected) ports**
  - — Ports from which traffic can be forwarded to all ports in the private VLAN
  - — Ports which can receive traffic from all ports in the private VLAN
- **Isolated (Protected) ports**
  - — Ports from which traffic can only be forwarded to promiscuous ports in the private VLAN
  - — Ports which can receive traffic from only promiscuous ports in the private VLAN

The configuration of promiscuous and isolated ports applies to all private VLANs. When traffic comes in on a promiscuous port in a private VLAN, the VLAN mask from the VLAN table is applied. When traffic comes in on an isolated port, the private VLAN mask is applied in addition to the VLAN mask from the VLAN table. This reduces the ports to which forwarding can be done to just the promiscuous ports within the private VLAN.

The port settings relate to the currently unit, as reflected by the page header. The Port Isolation Configuration screens in Figure 4-3-16 & Figure 4-3-17 appear.



Protected Ports Settings

Port List	Port Type
Select Protected Port ▾	● Unprotected ○ Protected

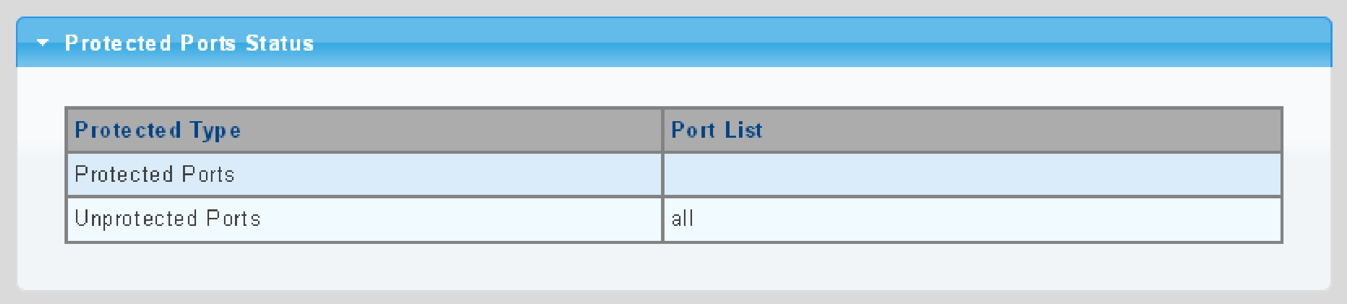
Figure 4-3-16 Protected Ports Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port List**	Select port number from this drop-down list.
• **Port Type**	Displays protected port types. - **Protected**: A single stand-alone VLAN that contains one promiscuous port and one or more isolated (or host) ports. This VLAN conveys traffic between the isolated ports and a lone promiscuous port. - **Unprotected**: A promiscuous port can communicate with all the interfaces within a private VLAN. This is the default setting.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Protected Ports Status

Protected Type	Port List
Protected Ports	
Unprotected Ports	all

Figure 4-3-17 Port Isolation Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Protected Ports**	Display the current protected ports
• **Unprotected Ports**	Display the current unprotected ports

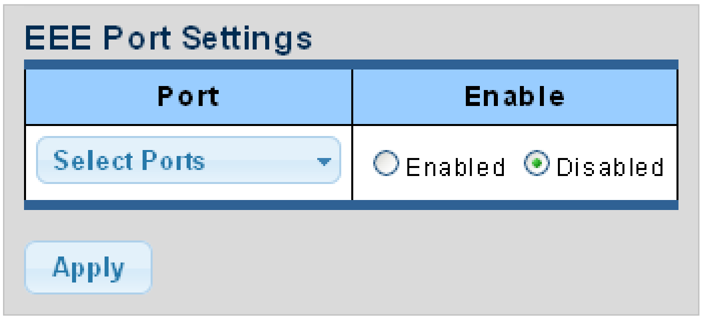
4.3.9 EEE

What is EEE

EEE is a power saving option that reduces the power usage when there is low or no traffic utilization. EEE works by powering down circuits when there is no traffic. When a port gets data to be transmitted all circuits are powered up. The time it takes to power up the circuits is named wakeup time. The default wakeup time is 17 us for 1Gbit links and 30 us for other link speeds. EEE devices must agree upon the value of the wakeup time in order to make sure that both the receiving and transmitting device has all circuits powered up when traffic is transmitted. The devices can exchange wakeup time information using the LLDP protocol. EEE works for ports in auto-negotiation mode, where the port is negotiated to either 1G or 100 Mbit full duplex mode. For ports that are not EEE-capable the corresponding EEE checkboxes are grayed out and thus impossible to enable EEE for. The EEE port settings relate to the currently unit, as reflected by the page header.

When a port is powered down for saving power, outgoing traffic is stored in a buffer until the port is powered up again. Because there are some overhead in turning the port down and up, more power can be saved if the traffic can be buffered up until a large burst of traffic can be transmitted. Buffering traffic will give some latency in the traffic.

The EEE Port Settings screen in Figure 4-3-18 & Figure 4-3-19 appears.



EEE Port Settings

Port	Enable
Select Ports	○ Enabled ● Disabled

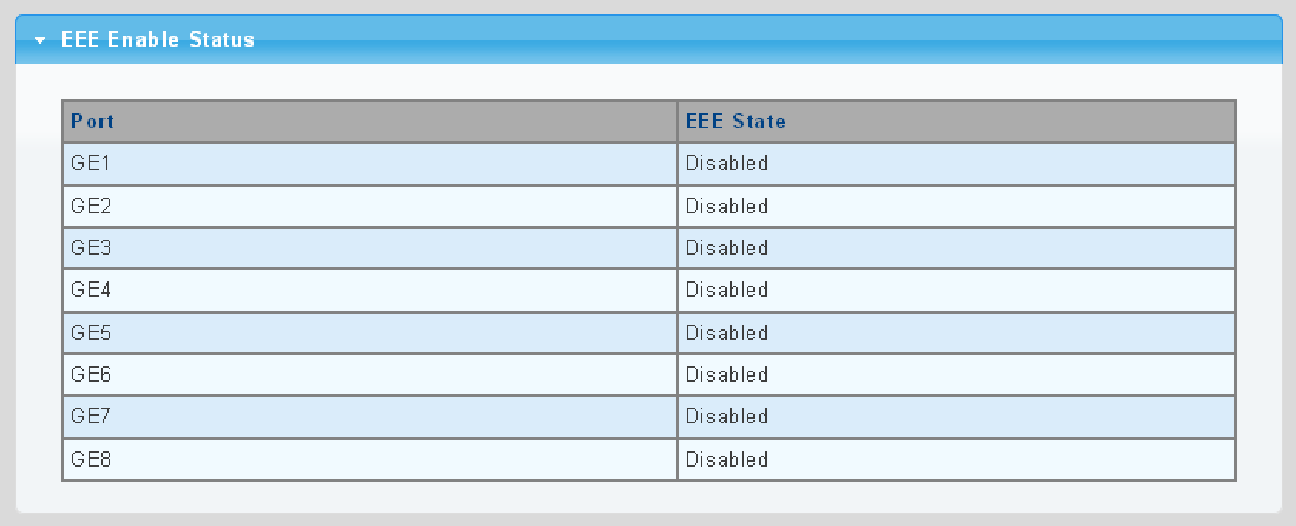
Figure 4-3-18 EEE Port Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **Enable**	Enable or disable the EEE function

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



EEE Enable Status

Port	EEE State
GE1	Disabled
GE2	Disabled
GE3	Disabled
GE4	Disabled
GE5	Disabled
GE6	Disabled
GE7	Disabled
GE8	Disabled

Figure 4-3-19 EEE Enable Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

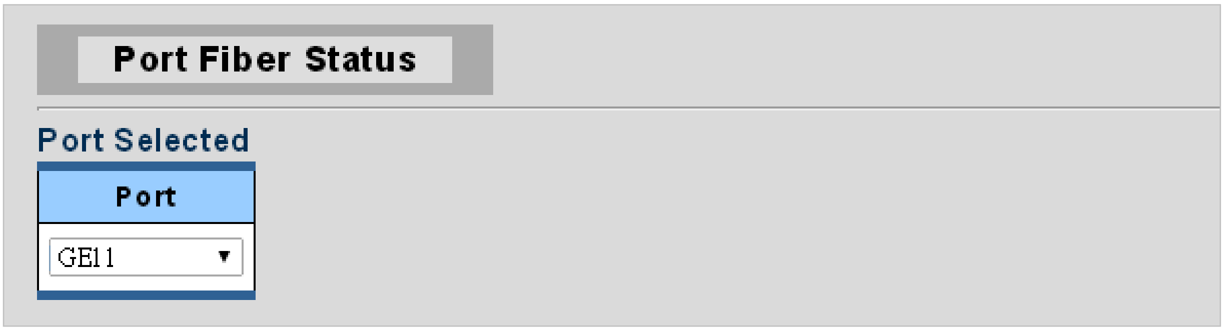
Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **EEE State**	Display the current EEE state

4.3.10 SFP Module Information

Managed switch has supported the SFP module with **digital diagnostics monitoring** (**DDM**) function, this feature is also known as digital optical monitoring (DOM). You can check the physical or operational status of an SFP module via the SFP Module Information Page. This Page shows the operational status, such as the transceiver type, speed, wavelength, optical output power, optical input power, temperature, laser bias current and transceiver supply voltage in real time. You can also use the hyperlink of port no. to check the statistics on a specific interface.

4.3.10.1 SFP Module Status

The SFP Module Status screens in Figure 4-3-20 & Figure 4-3-21 appear.



Port Fiber Status

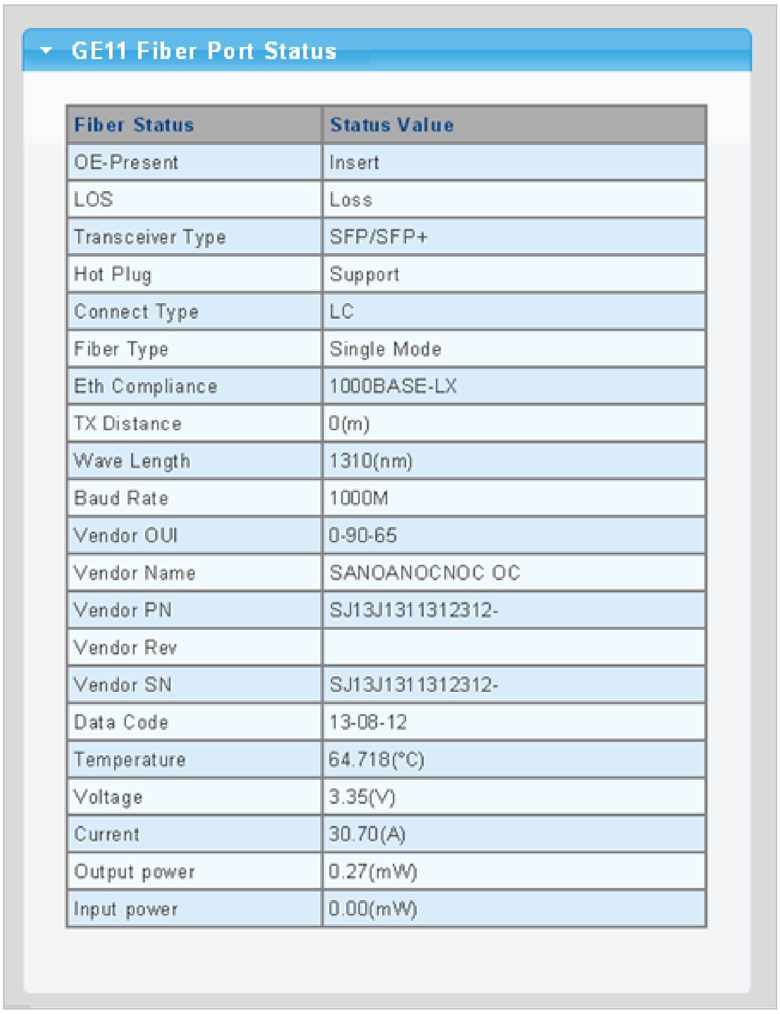
Port Selected

Port: GE11

Figure 4-3-20 Port Selected Page Screenshot with Sample Switch

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list



GE11 Fiber Port Status

Fiber Status	Status Value
OE-Present	Insert
LOS	Loss
Transceiver Type	SFP/SFP+
Hot Plug	Support
Connect Type	LC
Fiber Type	Single Mode
Eth Compliance	1000BASE-LX
TX Distance	0(m)
Wave Length	1310(nm)
Baud Rate	1000M
Vendor OUI	0-90-65
Vendor Name	SANOANOCNOC OC
Vendor PN	SJ13J1311312312-
Vendor Rev	
Vendor SN	SJ13J1311312312-
Data Code	13-08-12
Temperature	64.718(°C)
Voltage	3.35(V)
Current	30.70(A)
Output power	0.27(mW)
Input power	0.00(mW)

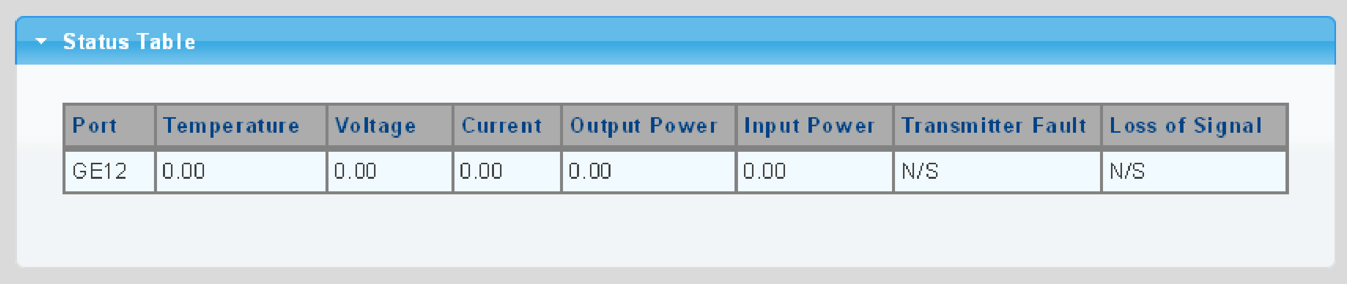
Figure 4-3-21 Fiber Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **OE-Present**	Display the current SFP OE-present
• **LOS**	Display the current SFP LOS

4.3.10.2 SFP Module Detail Status

The SFP Module Detail Status screen in Figure 4-3-22 appears.



Port	Temperature	Voltage	Current	Output Power	Input Power	Transmitter Fault	Loss of Signal
GE12	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	N/S	N/S

Figure 4-3-22 SFP Module Detail Status Page Screenshot with Sample Switch

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The logical port for the settings contained in the same row
• **Temperature**	Display the current SFP temperature
• **Voltage**	Display the current SFP voltage
• **Current**	Display the current SFP current
• **Output Power**	Display the current SFP output power
• **Input Power**	Display the current SFP input power
• **Transmit Fault**	Display the current SFP transmits fault
• **Loss of Signal**	Display the current SFP loss of signal.
• **Rate Ready**	Display the current SFP rate ready.

4.4 Link Aggregation

Port Aggregation optimizes port usage by linking a group of ports together to form a single Link Aggregated Groups (LAGs). Port Aggregation multiplies the bandwidth between the devices, increases port flexibility, and provides link redundancy.

Each LAG is composed of ports of the same speed, set to full-duplex operations. Ports in a LAG can be of different media types (UTP/Fiber, or different fiber types) provided they operate at the same speed.

Aggregated Links can be assigned manually (**Port Trunk**) or automatically by enabling Link Aggregation Control Protocol (**LACP**) on the relevant links.

Aggregated Links are treated by the system as a single logical port. Specifically, the Aggregated Link has similar port attributes to a non-aggregated port, including auto-negotiation, speed, suplex setting, etc.

The device supports the following Aggregation links :

- **Static LAGs** (**Port Trunk**) – Force aggregated selected ports to be a trunk group.
- **Link Aggregation Control Protocol** (**LACP**) LAGs - LACP LAG negotiate Aggregated Port links with other LACP ports located on a different device. If the other device ports are also LACP ports, the devices establish a LAG between them.

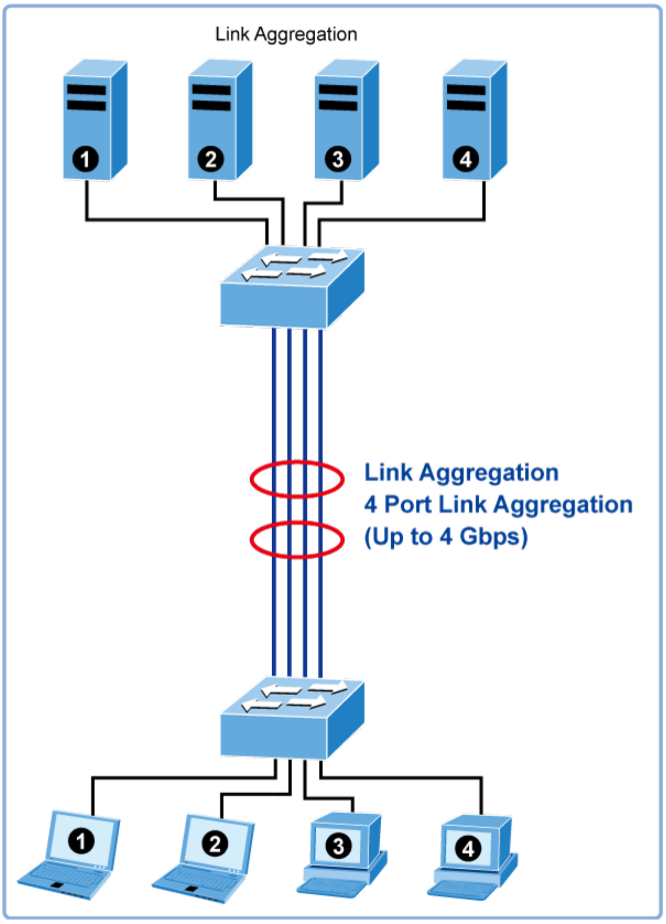


Figure 4-4-1 Link Aggregation

The **Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)** provides a standardized means for exchanging information between Partner Systems that require high-speed redundant links. Link aggregation lets you group up to eight consecutive ports into a single dedicated connection. This feature can expand bandwidth to a device on the network. LACP operation requires full-duplex mode. For more detailed information, refer to the IEEE 802.3ad standard.

Port link aggregations can be used to increase the bandwidth of a network connection or to ensure fault recovery. Link aggregation lets you group up to 8 consecutive ports into a single dedicated connection between any two the Switch or other Layer 2 switches. However, before making any physical connections between devices, use the Link Aggregation Configuration menu to specify the link aggregation on the devices at both ends. When using a port link aggregation, note that:

- The ports used in a link aggregation must all be of the same media type (RJ45, 100 Mbps fiber).
- The ports that can be assigned to the same link aggregation have certain other restrictions (see below).
- Ports can only be assigned to one link aggregation.
- The ports at both ends of a connection must be configured as link aggregation ports.
- None of the ports in a link aggregation can be configured as a mirror source port or a mirror target port.
- All of the ports in a link aggregation have to be treated as a whole when moved from/to, added or deleted from a VLAN.
- The Spanning Tree Protocol will treat all the ports in a link aggregation as a whole.
- Enable the link aggregation prior to connecting any cable between the switches to avoid creating a data loop.
- Disconnect all link aggregation port cables or disable the link aggregation ports before removing a port link aggregation to avoid creating a data loop.

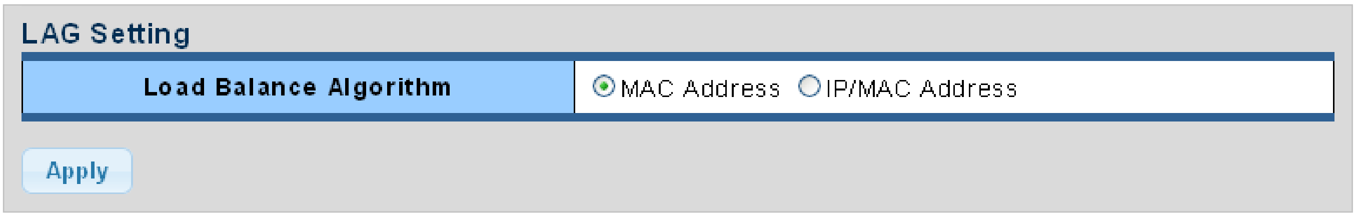
It allows a maximum of 8 ports to be aggregated at the same time. The Managed Switch supports Gigabit Ethernet ports (up to 8 groups). If the group is defined as an LACP static link aggregation group, then any extra ports selected are placed in a standby mode for redundancy if one of the other ports fails. If the group is defined as a local static link aggregation group, then the number of ports must be the same as the group member ports.

Use the Link Aggregation Menu to display or configure the Trunk function. This section has the following items:

■ **LAG Setting**	Configures load balance algorithm configuration settings
■ **LAG Management**	Configures LAG configuration settings
■ **LAG Port Setting**	Configures LAG port settings
■ **LACP Setting**	Configures LACP priority settings
■ **LACP Port Setting**	Configure LACP configuration settings
■ **LAG Status**	Display LAG status / LACP information

4.4.1 LAG Setting

This page allows configuring load balance algorithm configuration settings. The LAG Setting screens in Figure 4-4-2 & Figure 4-4-3 appear.



Load Balance Algorithm: ● MAC Address ○ IP/MAC Address

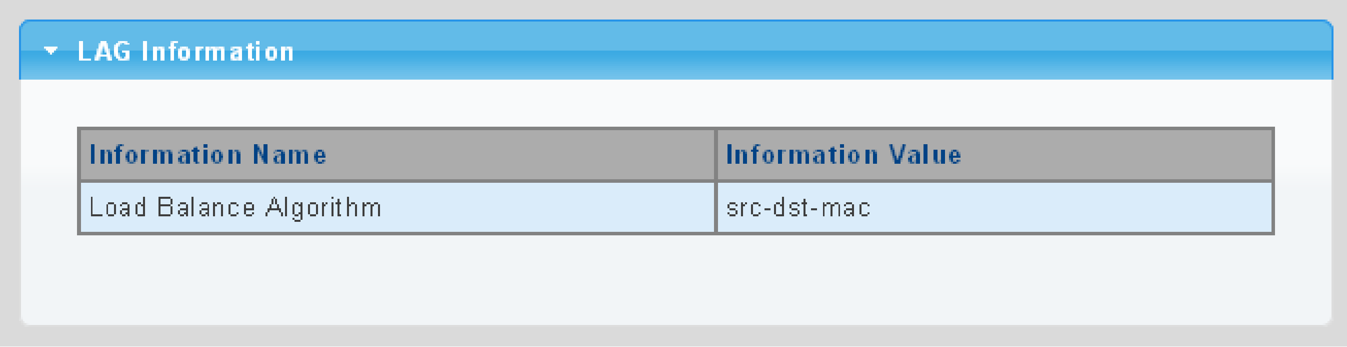
Figure 4-4-2 LAG Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Load Balance Algorithm**	Select load balance algorithm mode: ■ **MAC Address**: The MAC address can be used to calculate the port for the frame. ■ **IP/MAC Address**: The IP and MAC address can be used to calculate the port for the frame.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
Load Balance Algorithm	src-dst-mac

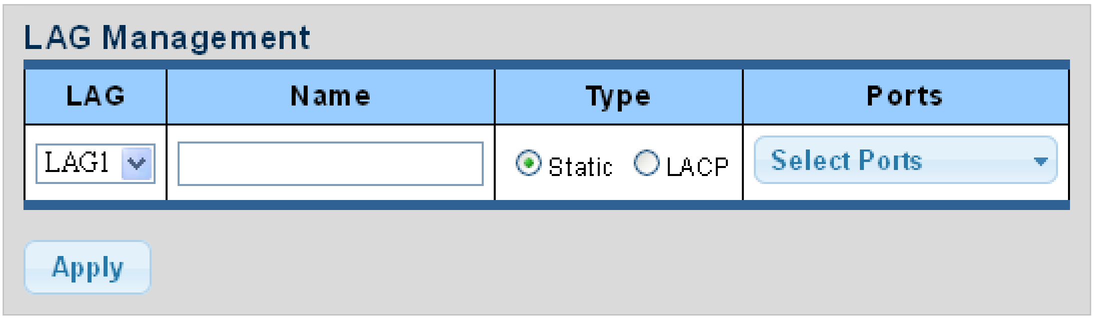
Figure 4-4-3 LAG Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Load Balance Algorithm**	Display the current load balance algorithm

4.4.2 LAG Management

This page is used to configure the LAG management. The LAG Management screens in Figure 4-4-4 & Figure 4-4-5 appear.



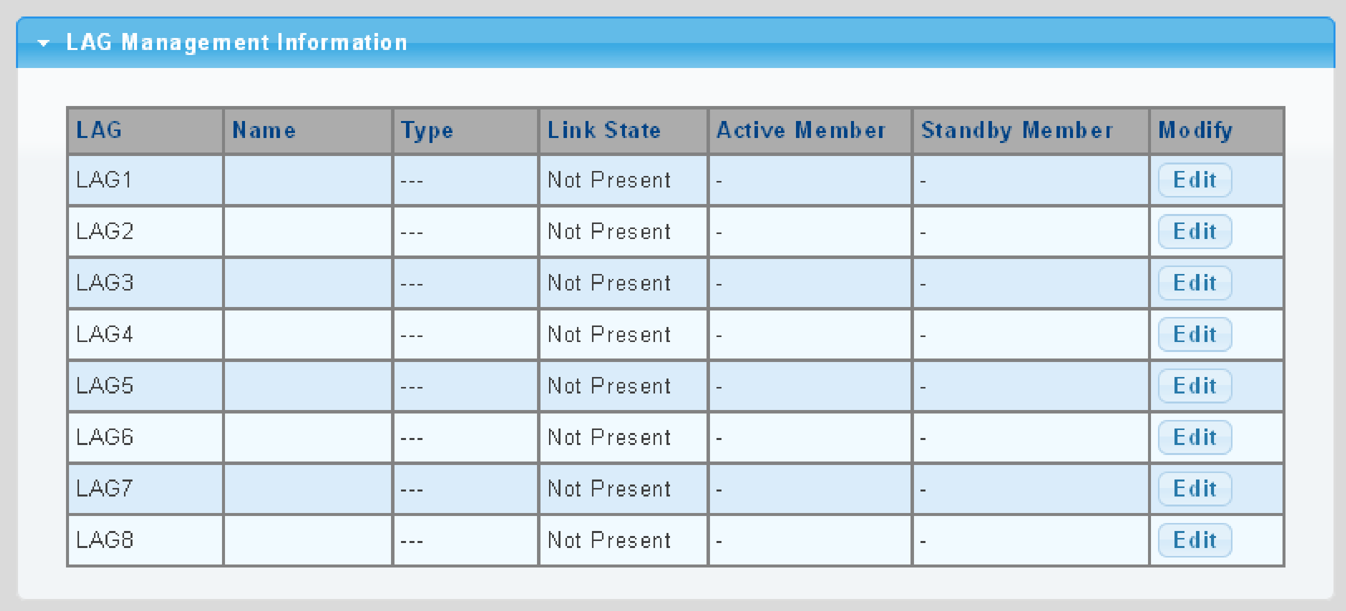
LAG Management

LAG	Name	Type	Ports
LAG1		● Static ○ LACP	Select Ports

Figure 4-4-4 LAG Management Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **LAG**	Select LAG number from this drop-down list
• **Name**	Indicates each LAG name
• **Type**	Indicates the trunk type **Static**: Force aggregated selected ports to be a trunk group. **LACP**: LACP LAG negotiate Aggregated Port links with other LACP ports located on a different device. If the other device ports are also LACP ports, the devices establish a LAG between them.
• **Ports**	Select port number from this drop-down list to establish Link Aggregation



LAG Management Information

LAG	Name	Type	Link State	Active Member	Standby Member	Modify
LAG1		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit
LAG2		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit
LAG3		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit
LAG4		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit
LAG5		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit
LAG6		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit
LAG7		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit
LAG8		---	Not Present	-	-	Edit

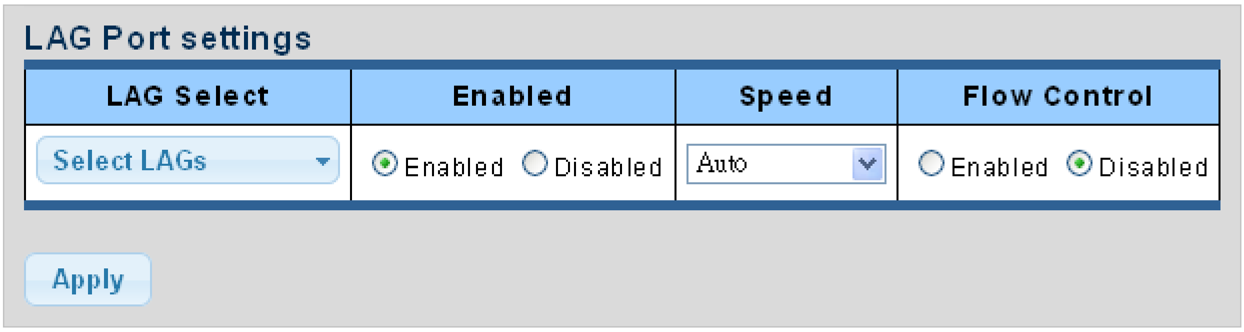
Figure 4-4-5 LAG Management Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **LAG**	The LAG for the settings contained in the same row
• **Name**	Display the current name
• **Type**	Display the current type
• **Link State**	Display the link state
• **Active Member**	Display the active member
• **Standby Member**	Display the standby member
• **Modify**	Click Edit to modify LAG configuration

4.4.3 LAG Port Setting

This page allows setting configuration for each LAG. The LAG Port setting screens in Figure 4-4-6 & Figure 4-4-7 appear.



LAG Port settings

LAG Select	Enabled	Speed	Flow Control
Select LAGs	● Enabled ○ Disabled	Auto	○ Enabled ● Disabled

Figure 4-4-6 LAG Port Setting Information Page Screenshot

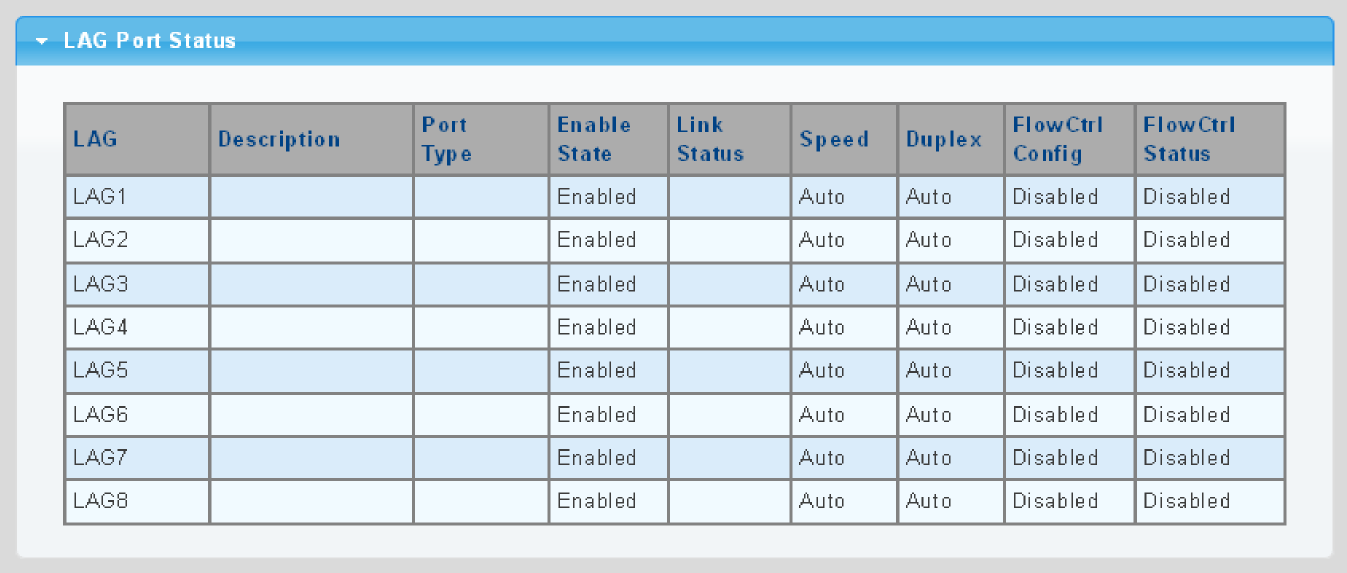
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **LAG Select**	Select LAG number from this drop-down list.
• **Enable**	Indicates the LAG state operation. Possible states are: **Enabled** - Start up the LAG manually. **Disabled** – Shut down the LAG manually.
• **Speed**	Select any available link speed for the given switch port. Draw the menu bar to select the mode. ■ **Auto** – Set up Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-10M** – Set up 10M Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-100M** – Set up 100M Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-1000M** - Set up 1000M Auto negotiation. ■ **Auto-10/100M** – Set up 10/100M Auto negotiation. ■ **10M** – Set up 10M Force mode.

	■ **100M** – Set up 100M Force mode. ■ **1000M** – Set up 1000M Force mode.
• **Flow Control**	When Auto Speed is selected for a port, this section indicates the flow control capability that is advertised to the link partner. When a fixed-speed setting is selected, that is what is used. The current Rx column indicates whether pause frames on the port are obeyed. The current Tx column indicates whether pause frames on the port are transmitted. The Rx and Tx settings are determined by the result of the last Auto-Negotiation. Check the configured column to use flow control. This setting is related to the setting for Configured Link Speed.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



LAG	Description	Port Type	Enable State	Link Status	Speed	Duplex	FlowCtrl Config	FlowCtrl Status
LAG1			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
LAG2			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
LAG3			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
LAG4			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
LAG5			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
LAG6			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
LAG7			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled
LAG8			Enabled		Auto	Auto	Disabled	Disabled

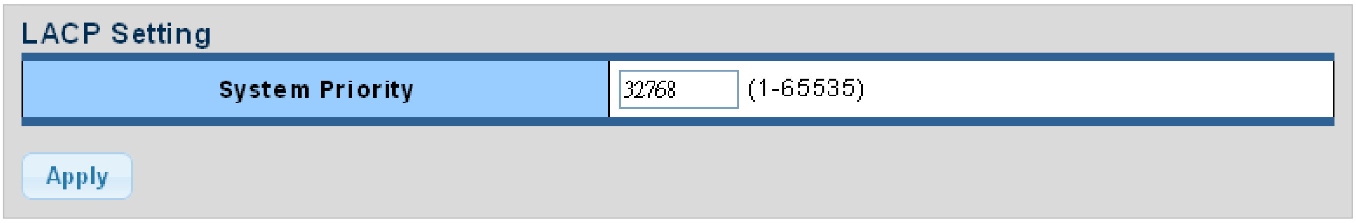
Figure 4-4-7 LAG Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **LAG**	The LAG for the settings contained in the same row
• **Description**	Display the current description
• **Port Type**	Display the current port type
• **Enable State**	Display the current enable state
• **Speed**	Display the current speed
• **Duplex**	Display the current duplex mode
• **Flow Control Config**	Display the current flow control configuration
• **Flow Control Status**	Display the current flow control status

4.4.4 LACP Setting

This page is used to configure the LACP system priority setting. The LACP Setting screens in Figure 4-4-8 & Figure 4-4-9 appear.



LACP Setting

System Priority	32768 (1-65535)

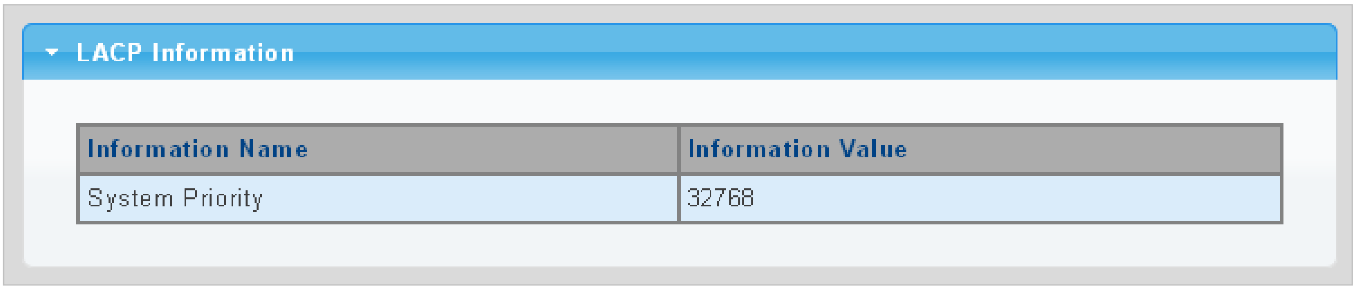
Figure 4-4-8 LACP Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **System Priority**	A value which is used to identify the active LACP. The Managed Switch with the lowest value has the highest priority and is selected as the active LACP peer of the trunk group.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



LACP Information

Information Name	Information Value
System Priority	32768

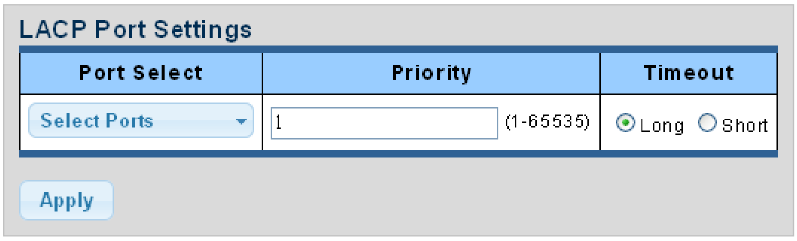
Figure 4-4-9 LACP Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **System Priority**	Display the current system priority.

4.4.5 LACP Port Setting

This page is used to configure the LACP port setting. The LACP Port Setting screens in Figure 4-4-10 & Figure 4-4-11 appear.



LACP Port Settings

Port Select	Priority	Timeout
Select Ports	1 (1-65535)	● Long ○ Short

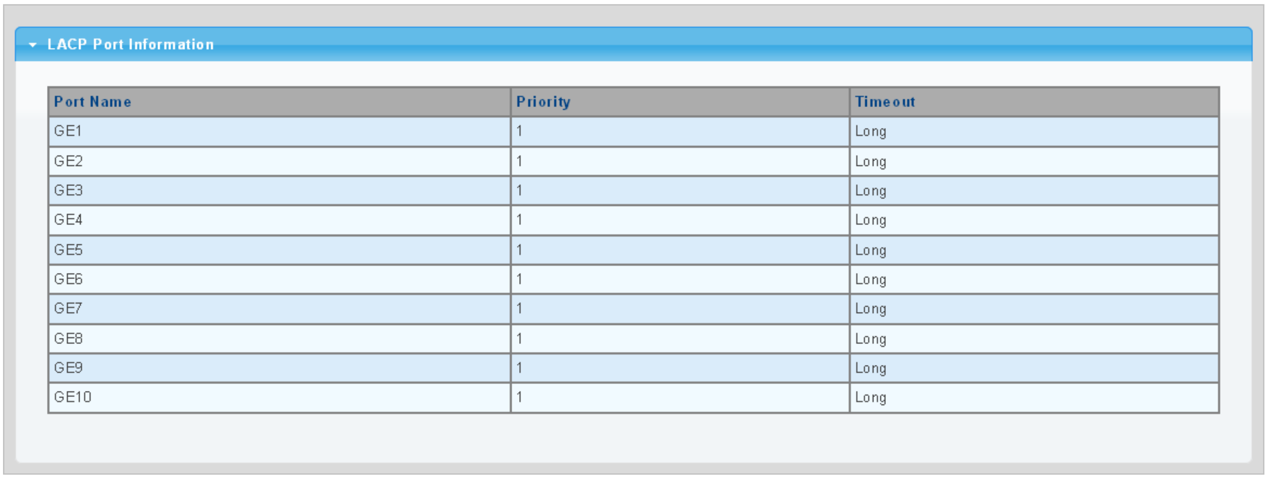
Figure 4-4-10 LACP Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list to set LACP port setting.
• **Priority**	The Priority controls the priority of the port. If the LACP partner wants to form a larger group than is supported by this device, then this parameter will control which ports will be active and which ports will be in a backup role. **Lower number means greater priority.**
• **Timeout**	The Timeout controls the period between BPDU transmissions. Short will transmit LACP packets each second, while Long will wait for 30 seconds before sending an LACP packet.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



LACP Port Information

Port Name	Priority	Timeout
GE1	1	Long
GE2	1	Long
GE3	1	Long
GE4	1	Long
GE5	1	Long
GE6	1	Long
GE7	1	Long
GE8	1	Long
GE9	1	Long
GE10	1	Long

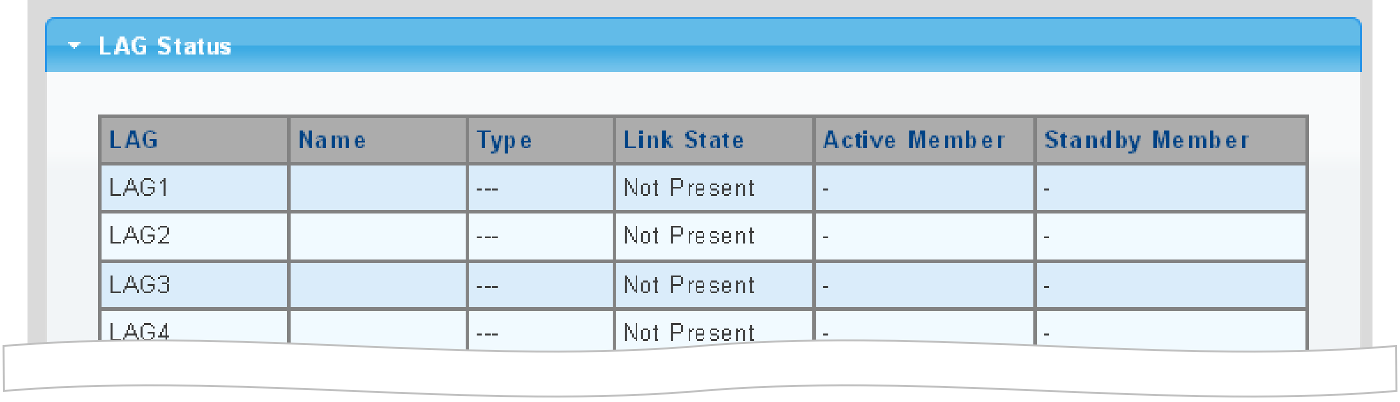
Figure 4-4-11 LACP Port Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Name**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Priority**	Display the current LACP priority parameter
• **Timeout**	Display the current timeout parameter

4.4.6 LAG Status

This page displays LAG status. The LAG Status screens in Figure 4-4-12 & Figure 4-4-13 appear.



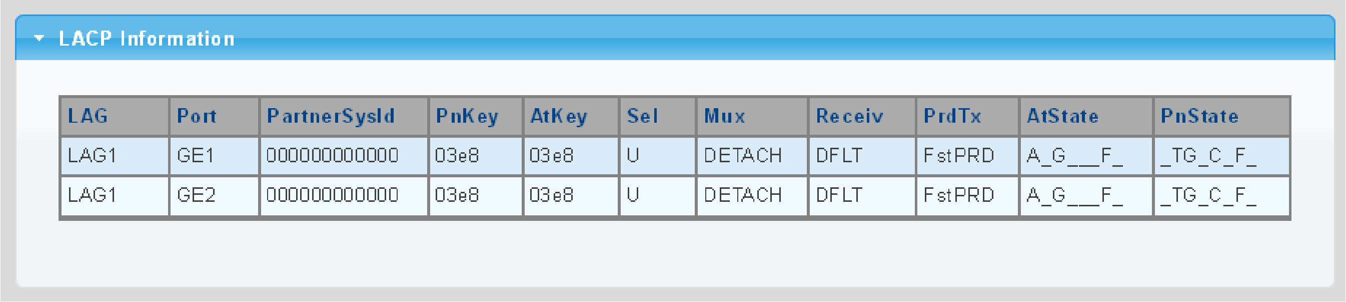
LAG Status

LAG	Name	Type	Link State	Active Member	Standby Member
LAG1		---	Not Present	-	-
LAG2		---	Not Present	-	-
LAG3		---	Not Present	-	-
LAG4		---	Not Present	-	-

Figure 4-4-12 LAG Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **LAG**	Display the current trunk entry
- **Name**	Display the current LAG name
- **Type**	Display the current trunk type
- **Link State**	Display the current link state
- **Active Member**	Display the current active member
- **Standby Member**	Display the current standby member



LACP Information

LAG	Port	PartnerSysId	PnKey	AtKey	Sel	Mux	Receiv	PrdTx	AtState	PnState
LAG1	GE1	000000000000	03e8	03e8	U	DETACH	DFLT	FstPRD	A_G___F_	_TG_C_F_
LAG1	GE2	000000000000	03e8	03e8	U	DETACH	DFLT	FstPRD	A_G___F_	_TG_C_F_

Figure 4-4-13 LACP Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Trunk**	Display the current trunk ID
- **Port**	Display the current port number
- **PartnerSysId**	The system ID of link partner. This field would be updated when the port receives LACP PDU from link partner

• **PnKey**	Port key of partner. This field would be updated when the port receives LACP PDU from link partner
• **AtKey**	Port key of actor. The key is designed to be the same as trunk ID.
• **Sel**	LACP selection logic status of the port ■ "**S**" means selected ■ "**U**" means unselected ■ "**D**" means standby
• **Mux**	LACP mux state machine status of the port ■ "DETACH" means the port is in detached state ■ "WAIT" means waiting state ■ "ATTACH" means attach state ■ "CLLCT" means collecting state ■ "DSTRBT" means distributing state
• **Receiv**	LACP receive state machine status of the port ■ "INIT" means the port is in initialize state ■ "PORTds" means port disabled state ■ "EXPR" means expired state ■ "LACPds" means LACP disabled state ■ "DFLT" means defaulted state ■ "CRRNT" means current state
• **PrdTx**	LACP periodic transmission state machine status of the port ■ "no PRD" means the port is in no periodic state ■ "FstPRD" means fast periodic state ■ "SlwPRD" means slow periodic state ■ "PrdTX" means periodic TX state
• **AtState**	The actor state field of LACP PDU description. The field from left to right describes: "LACP_Activity", "LACP_Timeout", "Aggregation", "Synchronization", "Collecting", "Distributing", "Defaulted", and "Expired". The contents could be true or false. If the contents are false, the web shows "_"; if the contents are true, the web shows "A", "T", "G", "S", "C", "D", "F" and "E" for each content respectively.
• **PnState**	The partner state field of LACP PDU description. The field from left to right describes: "LACP_Activity", "LACP_Timeout", "Aggregation", "Synchronization", "Collecting", "Distributing", "Defaulted", and "Expired". The contents could be true or false. If the contents are false, the web will show "_"; if the contents are true, the Web shows "A", "T", "G", "S", "C", "D", "F" and "E" for each content respectively.

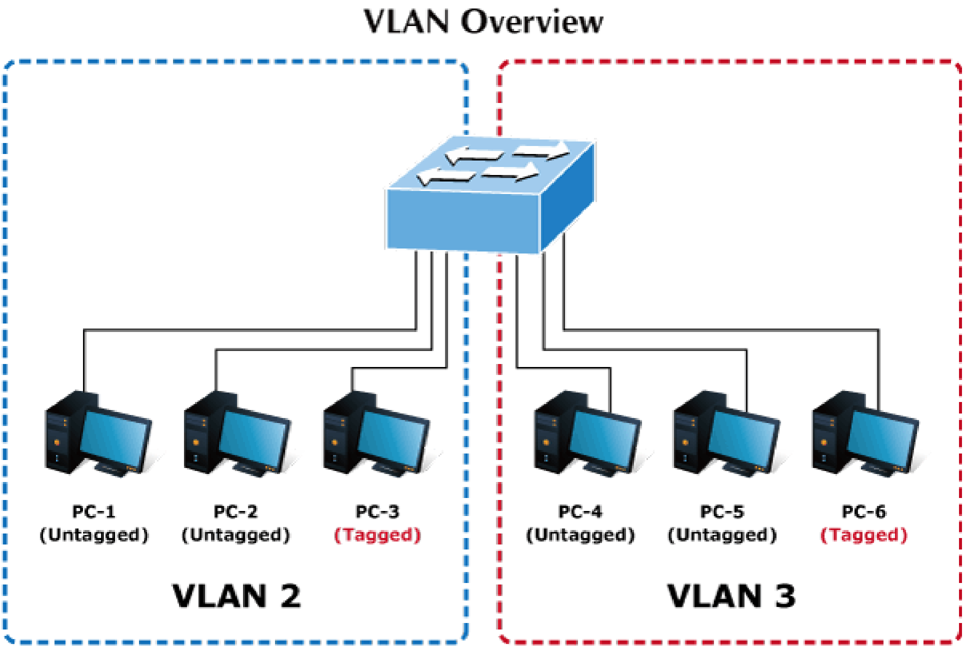
4.5 VLAN

4.5.1 VLAN Overview

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a network topology configured according to a logical scheme rather than the physical layout. VLAN can be used to combine any collection of LAN segments into an autonomous user group that appears as a single LAN. VLAN also logically segment the network into different broadcast domains so that packets are forwarded only between ports within the VLAN. Typically, a VLAN corresponds to a particular subnet, although not necessarily.

VLAN can enhance performance by conserving bandwidth, and improve security by limiting traffic to specific domains.

A VLAN is a collection of end nodes grouped by logic instead of physical location. End nodes that frequently communicate with each other are assigned to the same VLAN, regardless of where they are physically on the network. Logically, a VLAN can be equated to a broadcast domain, because broadcast packets are forwarded to only members of the VLAN on which the broadcast was initiated.



Note

1. No matter what basis is used to uniquely identify end nodes and assign these nodes VLAN membership, packets cannot cross VLAN without a network device performing a routing function between the VLAN.
2. The Managed Switch supports IEEE 802.1Q VLAN. The port untagging function can be used to remove the 802.1 tag from packet headers to maintain compatibility with devices that are tag-unaware.

Note

The Managed Switch's default is to assign all ports to a single 802.1Q VLAN named **DEFAULT_VLAN**. As new VLAN is created, the member ports assigned to the new VLAN will be removed from the DEFAULT_ VLAN port member list. **The DEFAULT_VLAN has a VID = 1**.

This section has the following items:

Management VLAN	Configures the management VLAN
Create VLAN	Creates the VLAN group
Interface Settings	Configures mode and PVID on the VLAN port
Port to VLAN	Configures the VLAN membership
Port VLAN Membership	Display the VLAN membership
Protocol VLAN Group Setting	Configures the protocol VLAN group
Protocol VLAN Port Setting	Configures the protocol VLAN port setting
GVRP Setting	Configures GVRP global setting
GVRP Port Setting	Configures GVRP port setting
GVRP VLAN	Display the GVRP VLAN database
GVRP Statistics	Display the GVRP port statistics

4.5.2 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN

In large networks, routers are used to isolate broadcast traffic for each subnet into separate domains. This Managed Switch provides a similar service at Layer 2 by using VLANs to organize any group of network nodes into separate broadcast domains. VLANs confine broadcast traffic to the originating group, and can eliminate broadcast storms in large networks. This also provides a more secure and cleaner network environment.

An IEEE 802.1Q VLAN is a group of ports that can be located anywhere in the network, but communicate as though they belong to the same physical segment.

VLANs help to simplify network management by allowing you to move devices to a new VLAN without having to change any physical connections. VLANs can be easily organized to reflect departmental groups (such as Marketing or R&D), usage groups (such as e-mail), or multicast groups (used for multimedia applications such as videoconferencing).

VLANs provide greater network efficiency by reducing broadcast traffic, and allow you to make network changes without having to update IP addresses or IP subnets. VLANs inherently provide a high level of network security since traffic must pass through a configured Layer 3 link to reach a different VLAN.

This Managed Switch supports the following VLAN features:

- Up to 255 VLANs based on the IEEE 802.1Q standard
- Port overlapping, allowing a port to participate in multiple VLANs
- End stations can belong to multiple VLANs
- Passing traffic between VLAN-aware and VLAN-unaware devices

IEEE 802.1Q Standard

IEEE 802.1Q (tagged) VLAN are implemented on the Switch. 802.1Q VLAN require tagging, which enables them to span the entire network (assuming all switches on the network are IEEE 802.1Q-compliant).

VLAN allow a network to be segmented in order to reduce the size of broadcast domains. All packets entering a VLAN will only be forwarded to the stations (over IEEE 802.1Q enabled switches) that are members of that VLAN, and this includes broadcast, multicast and unicast packets from unknown sources.

VLAN can also provide a level of security to your network. IEEE 802.1Q VLAN will only deliver packets between stations that are members of the VLAN. Any port can be configured as either **tagging** or **untagging**.:

- The untagging feature of IEEE 802.1Q VLAN allows VLAN to work with legacy switches that don't recognize VLAN tags in packet headers.
- The tagging feature allows VLAN to span multiple 802.1Q-compliant switches through a single physical connection and allows Spanning Tree to be enabled on all ports and work normally.

Some relevant terms:

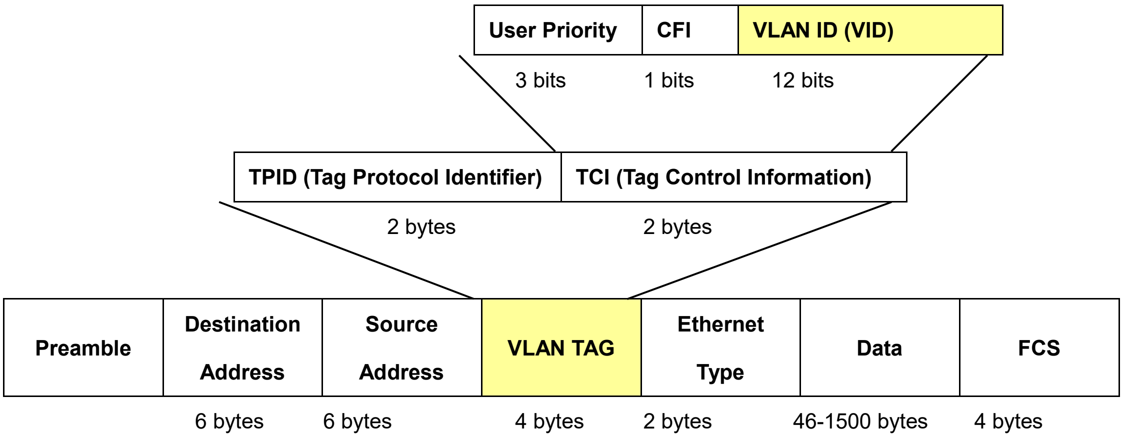
- **Tagging** - The act of putting 802.1Q VLAN information into the header of a packet.
- **Untagging** - The act of stripping 802.1Q VLAN information out of the packet header.

802.1Q VLAN Tags

The figure below shows the 802.1Q VLAN tag. There are four additional octets inserted after the source MAC address. Their presence is indicated by a value of **0x8100** in the Ether Type field. When a packet's Ether Type field is equal to 0x8100, the packet carries the IEEE 802.1Q/802.1p tag. The tag is contained in the following two octets and consists of 3 bits of user priority, 1 bit of Canonical Format Identifier (CFI - used for encapsulating Token Ring packets so they can be carried across Ethernet backbones), and 12 bits of **VLAN ID (VID)**. The 3 bits of user priority are used by 802.1p. The VID is the VLAN identifier and is used by the 802.1Q standard. Because the VID is 12 bits long, 4094 unique VLAN can be identified.

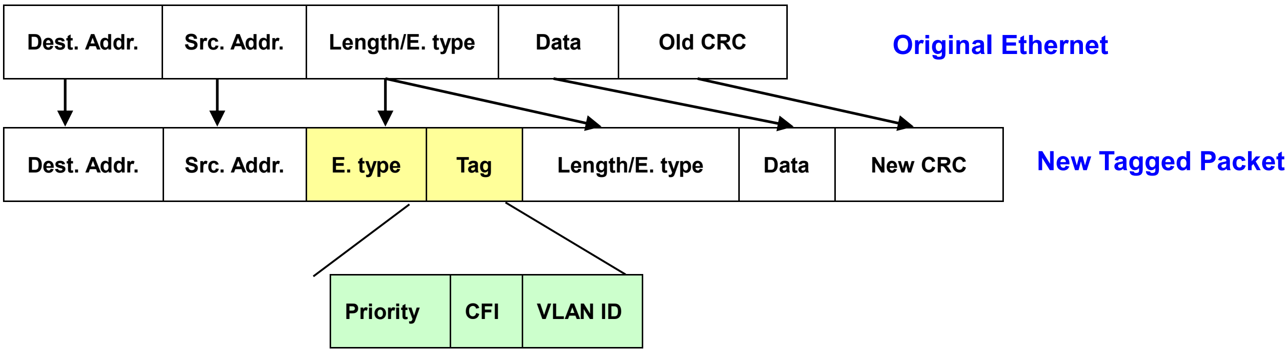
The tag is inserted into the packet header making the entire packet longer by 4 octets. All of the information originally contained in the packet is retained.

802.1Q Tag


User Priority
CFI
VLAN ID (VID)
3 bits
1 bits
12 bits
TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier)
TCI (Tag Control Information)
2 bytes
2 bytes
Preamble
Destination Address
Source Address
VLAN TAG
Ethernet Type
Data
FCS
6 bytes
6 bytes
4 bytes
2 bytes
46-1500 bytes
4 bytes

The Ether Type and VLAN ID are inserted after the MAC source address, but before the original Ether Type/Length or Logical Link Control. Because the packet is now a bit longer than it was originally, the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) must be recalculated.

Adding an IEEE802.1Q Tag



■ Port VLAN ID

Packets that are tagged (are carrying the 802.1Q VID information) can be transmitted from one 802.1Q compliant network device to another with the VLAN information intact. This allows 802.1Q VLAN to span network devices (and indeed, the entire network – if all network devices are 802.1Q compliant).

Every physical port on a switch has a PVID. 802.1Q ports are also assigned a PVID, for use within the switch. If no VLAN are defined on the switch, all ports are then assigned to a default VLAN with a PVID equal to 1. Untagged packets are assigned the PVID of the port on which they were received. Forwarding decisions are based upon this PVID, in so far as VLAN are concerned. Tagged packets are forwarded according to the VID contained within the tag. Tagged packets are also assigned a PVID, but the PVID is not used to make packet forwarding decisions, the VID is.

Tag-aware switches must keep a table to relate PVID within the switch to VID on the network. The switch will compare the VID of a packet to be transmitted to the VID of the port that is to transmit the packet. If the two VID are different the switch will drop the packet. Because of the existence of the PVID for untagged packets and the VID for tagged packets, tag-aware and tag-unaware network devices can coexist on the same network.

A switch port can have only one PVID, but can have as many VID as the switch has memory in its VLAN table to store them.

Because some devices on a network may be tag-unaware, a decision must be made at each port on a tag-aware device before packets are transmitted – should the packet to be transmitted have a tag or not? If the transmitting port is connected to a tag-unaware device, the packet should be untagged. If the transmitting port is connected to a tag-aware device, the packet should be tagged.

■ Default VLANs

The Switch initially configures one VLAN, VID = 1, called **"default."** The factory default setting assigns all ports on the Switch to the **"default"**. As new VLAN are configured in Port-based mode, their respective member ports are removed from the "default."

■ Assigning Ports to VLANs

Before enabling VLANs for the switch, you must first assign each port to the VLAN group(s) in which it will participate. By default all ports are assigned to VLAN 1 as untagged ports. Add a port as a tagged port if you want it to carry traffic for one or more VLANs, and any intermediate network devices or the host at the other end of the connection supports VLANs. Then assign ports on the other VLAN-aware network devices along the path that will carry this traffic to the same VLAN(s), either manually or dynamically using GVRP. However, if you want a port on this switch to participate in one or more VLANs, but none of the intermediate network devices nor the host at the other end of the connection supports VLANs, then you should add this port to the VLAN as an untagged port.

Note

VLAN-tagged frames can pass through VLAN-aware or VLAN-unaware network interconnection devices, but the VLAN tags should be stripped off before passing it on to any end-node host that does not support VLAN tagging.

■ VLAN Classification

When the switch receives a frame, it classifies the frame in one of two ways. If the frame is untagged, the switch assigns the frame to an associated VLAN (based on the default VLAN ID of the receiving port). But if the frame is tagged, the switch uses the tagged VLAN ID to identify the port broadcast domain of the frame.

■ Port Overlapping

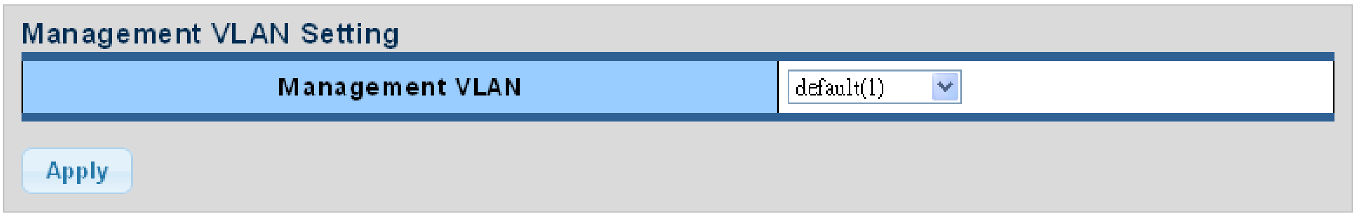
Port overlapping can be used to allow access to commonly shared network resources among different VLAN groups, such as file servers or printers. Note that if you implement VLANs which do not overlap, but still need to communicate, you can connect them by enabled routing on this switch.

■ Untagged VLANs

Untagged (or static) VLANs are typically used to reduce broadcast traffic and to increase security. A group of network users assigned to a VLAN form a broadcast domain that is separate from other VLANs configured on the switch. Packets are forwarded only between ports that are designated for the same VLAN. Untagged VLANs can be used to manually isolate user groups or subnets.

4.5.3 Management VLAN

Configure Management VLAN on this page. The screens in Figure 4-5-1 & Figure 4-5-2 appear.



Management VLAN Setting

Management VLAN	default(1)

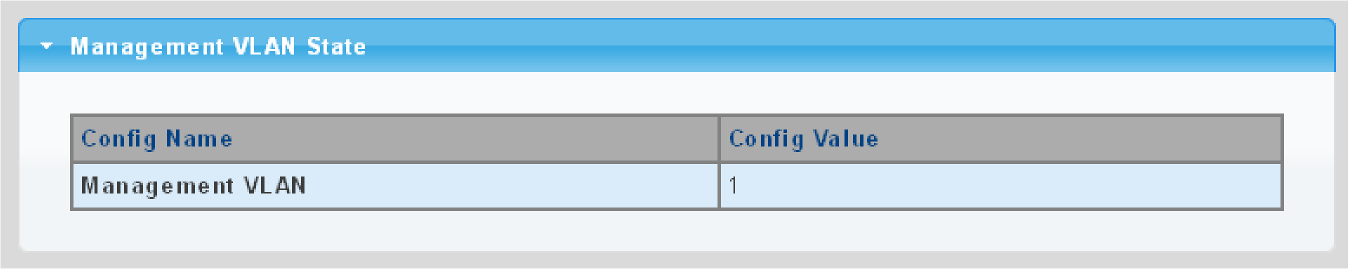
Figure 4-5-1 Management VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Management VLAN**	Provide the managed VLAN ID

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Management VLAN State

Config Name	Config Value
Management VLAN	1

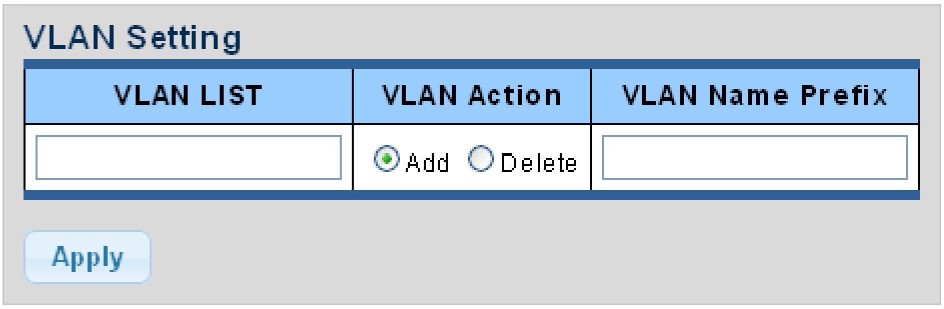
Figure 4-5-2 Management VLAN State Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Management VLAN**	Display the current management VLAN.

4.5.4 Create VLAN

Create/delete VLAN on this page. The screens in Figure 4-5-3 & Figure 4-5-4 appear.



VLAN Setting

VLAN LIST	VLAN Action	VLAN Name Prefix
	● Add ○ Delete	

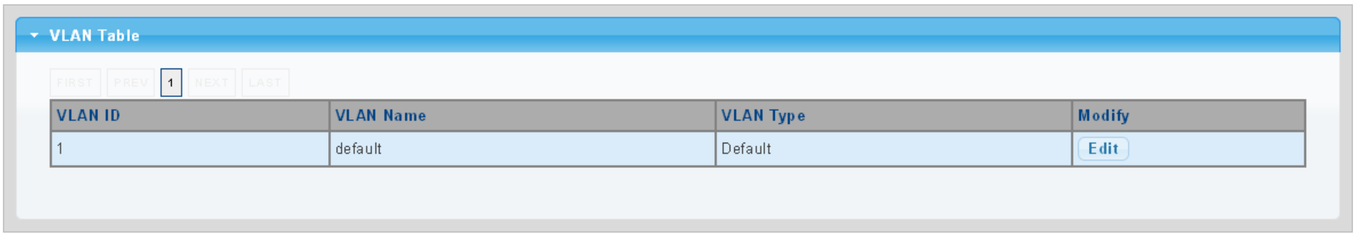
Figure 4-5-3 VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN List**	Indicates the ID of this particular VLAN.
• **VLAN Action**	This column allows users to add or delete VLAN s.
• **VLAN Name Prefix**	Indicates the name of this particular VLAN.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



VLAN Table

VLAN ID	VLAN Name	VLAN Type	Modify
1	default	Default	Edit

Figure 4-5-4 VLAN Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID entry
• **VLAN Name**	Display the current VLAN ID name
• **VLAN Type**	Display the current VLAN ID type
• **Modify**	Click Edit to modify VLAN configuration

4.5.5 Interface Settings

This page is used for configuring the Managed Switch port VLAN. The VLAN per Port Configuration Page contains fields for managing ports that are part of a VLAN. The port **default VLAN ID** (**PVID**) is configured on the VLAN Port Configuration Page. All untagged packets arriving to the device are tagged by the ports PVID.

Understand nomenclature of the Switch

■ IEEE 802.1Q Tagged and Untagged

Every port on an 802.1Q compliant switch can be configured as tagged or untagged.

- **Tagged:** Ports with tagging enabled will put the VID number, priority and other VLAN information into the header of all packets that flow into those ports. If a packet has previously been tagged, the port will not alter the packet, thus keeping the VLAN information intact. The VLAN information in the tag can then be used by other 802.1Q compliant devices on the network to make packet-forwarding decisions.
- **Untagged:** Ports with untagging enabled will strip the 802.1Q tag from all packets that flow into those ports. If the packet doesn't have an 802.1Q VLAN tag, the port will not alter the packet. Thus, all packets received by and forwarded by an untagging port will have no 802.1Q VLAN information. (Remember that the PVID is only used internally within the Switch). Untagging is used to send packets from an 802.1Q-compliant network device to a non-compliant network device.

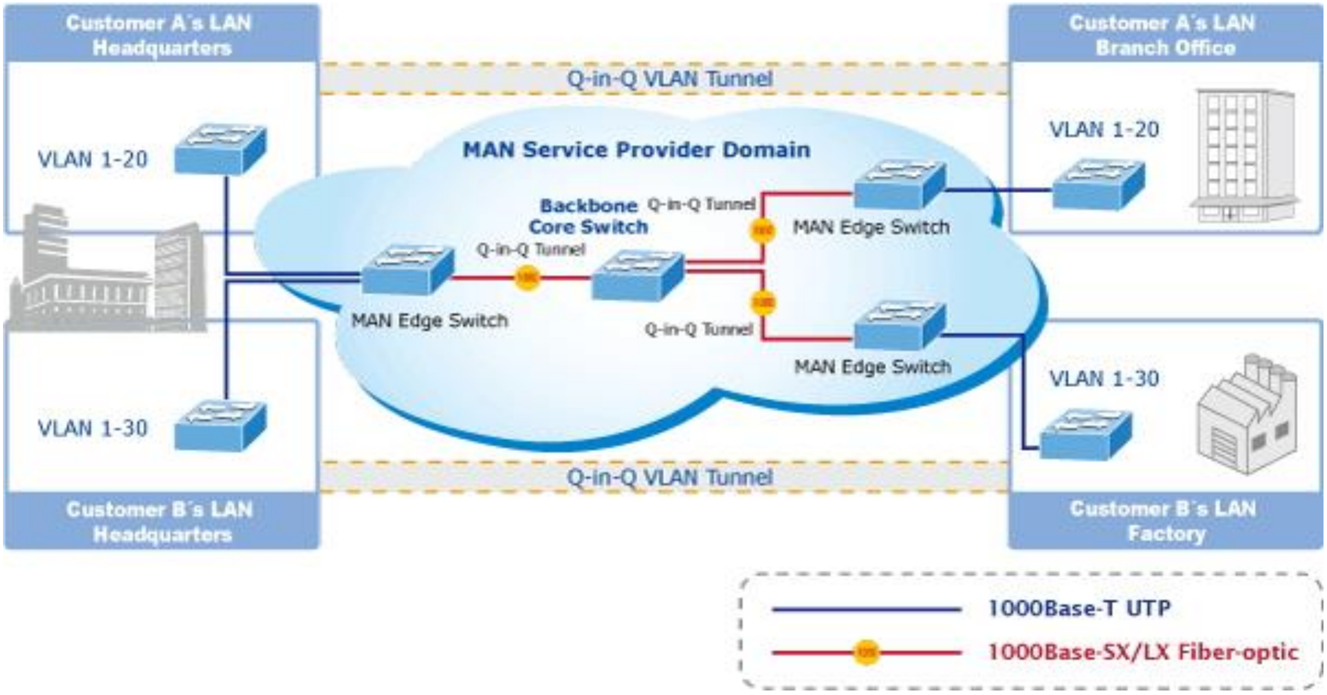
Frame Income Frame Leave	Income Frame is **tagged**	Income Frame is **untagged**
Leave port is tagged	Frame remains tagged	Tag is inserted
Leave port is untagged	Tag is removed	Frame remain untagged

Table 4-5-1: Ingress / Egress Port with VLAN VID Tag / Untag Table

■ IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling (Q-in-Q)

IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling (Q-in-Q) is designed for service providers carrying traffic for multiple customers across their networks. Q-in-Q tunneling is used to maintain customer-specific VLAN and Layer 2 protocol configurations even when different customers use the same internal VLAN IDs. This is accomplished by inserting **Service Provider VLAN (SPVLAN)** tags into the customer's frames when they enter the service provider's network, and then stripping the tags when the frames leave the network.

A service provider's customers may have specific requirements for their internal VLAN IDs and number of VLANs supported. VLAN ranges required by different customers in the same service-provider network might easily overlap, and traffic passing through the infrastructure might be mixed. Assigning a unique range of VLAN IDs to each customer would restrict customer configurations, require intensive processing of VLAN mapping tables, and could easily exceed the maximum VLAN limit of 4096.


Customer A's LAN Headquarters
Customer A's LAN Branch Office
Q-in-Q VLAN Tunnel
MAN Service Provider Domain
VLAN 1-20
VLAN 1-20
Backbone Core Switch
Q-in-Q Tunnel
Q-in-Q Tunnel
MAN Edge Switch
MAN Edge Switch
Q-in-Q Tunnel
MAN Edge Switch
VLAN 1-30
VLAN 1-30
Q-in-Q VLAN Tunnel
Customer B's LAN Headquarters
Customer B's LAN Factory
1000Base-T UTP
1000Base-SX/LX Fiber-optic

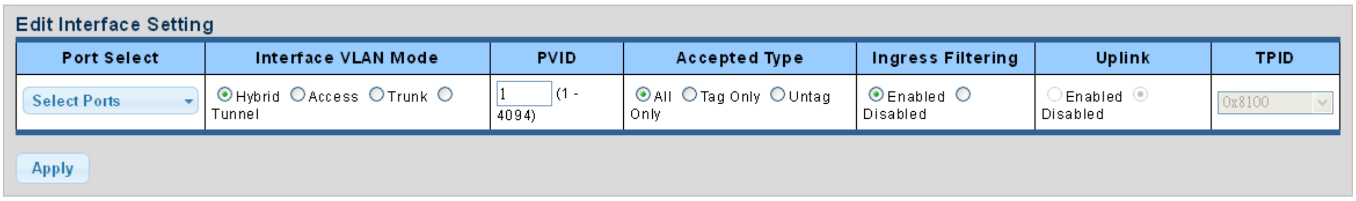
The Managed Switch supports multiple VLAN tags and can therefore be used in MAN applications as a provider bridge, aggregating traffic from numerous independent customer LANs into the **MAN (Metro Access Network)** space. One of the purposes of the provider bridge is to recognize and use VLAN tags so that the VLANs in the MAN space can be used independent of the customers' VLANs. This is accomplished by adding a VLAN tag with a MAN-related VID for frames entering the MAN. When leaving the MAN, the tag is stripped and the original VLAN tag with the customer-related VID is again available.

This provides a tunneling mechanism to connect remote costumer VLANs through a common MAN space without interfering with the VLAN tags. All tags use EtherType **0x8100** or **0x88A8**, where 0x8100 is used for customer tags and 0x88A8 are used for service provider tags.

In cases where a given service VLAN only has two member ports on the switch, the learning can be disabled for the particular VLAN and can therefore rely on flooding as the forwarding mechanism between the two ports. This way, the MAC table requirements is reduced.

Edit Interface Setting

The Edit Interface Setting/Status screens in Figure 4-5-5 & Figure 4-5-6 appear.



Edit Interface Setting

Port Select	Interface VLAN Mode	PVID	Accepted Type	Ingress Filtering	Uplink	TPID
Select Ports	● Hybrid ○ Access ○ Trunk ○ Tunnel	1 (1 - 4094)	● All ○ Tag Only ○ Untag Only	● Enabled ○ Disabled	○ Enabled ● Disabled	0x8100

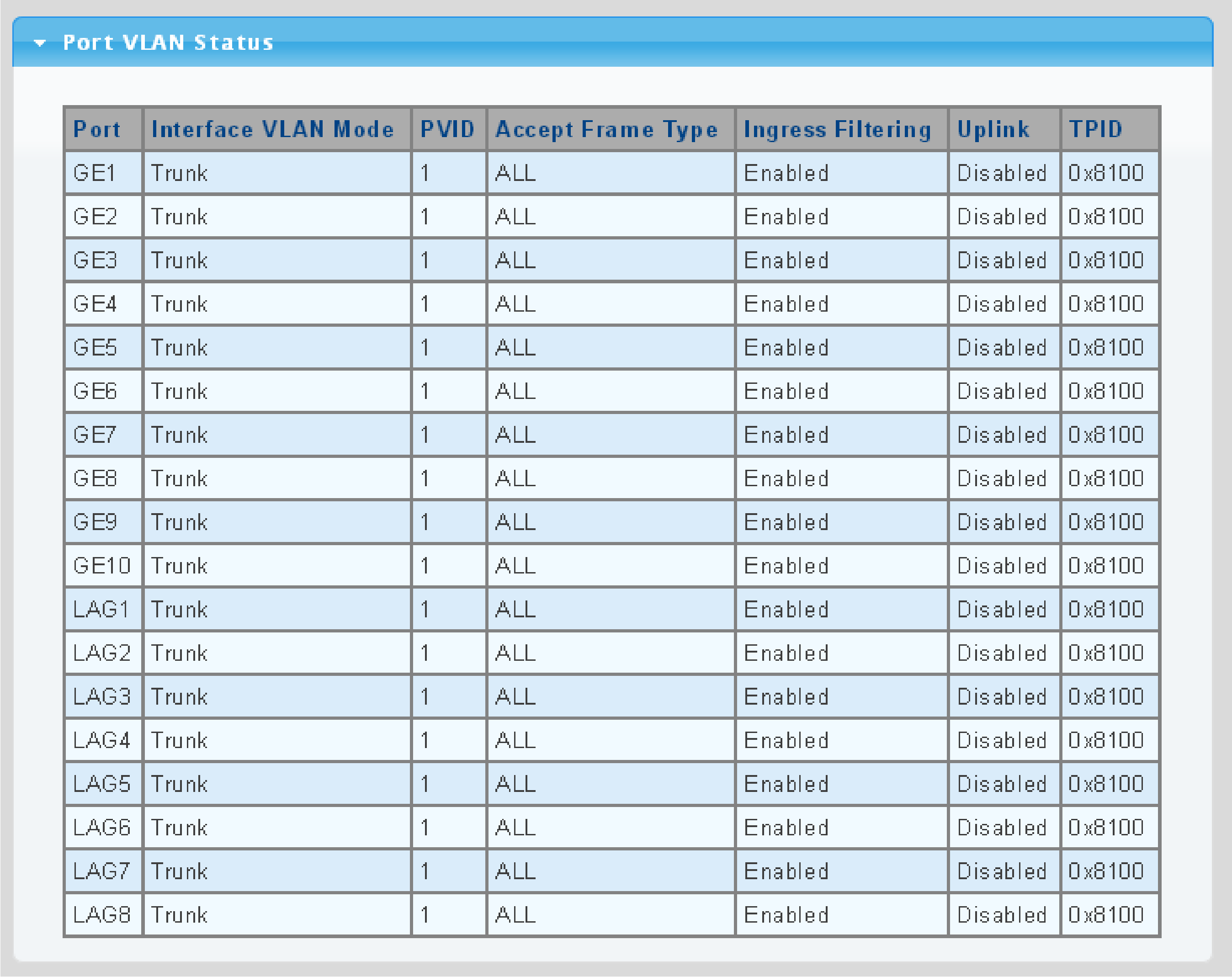
Figure 4-5-5 Edit Interface Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list to set VLAN port setting.
• **Interface VLAN Mode**	Set the port in access, trunk, hybrid and tunnel mode. ■ **Trunk** means the port allows traffic of multiple VLANs. ■ **Access** indicates the port belongs to one VLAN only. ■ **Hybrid** means the port allows the traffic of multi-VLANs to pass in tag or untag mode. ■ **Tunnel** configures IEEE 802.1Q tunneling for a downlink port to another device within the customer network.
• **PVID**	Allows you to assign PVID to selected port. The PVID will be inserted into all untagged frames entering the ingress port. The PVID must be the same as the VLAN ID that the port belongs to VLAN group, or the untagged traffic will be dropped. The range for the PVID is **1-4094.**
• **Accepted Type**	Determines whether the port accepts all frames or only tagged frames. This parameter affects VLAN ingress processing. If the port only accepts tagged frames, untagged frames received on the port are discarded. Options: ■ **All** ■ **Tag Only** ■ **Untag Only** By default, the field is set to **All**.
• **Ingress Filtering**	• If ingress filtering is enabled (checkbox is checked), frames classified to a VLAN that the port is not a member of get discarded. • If ingress filtering is disabled, frames classified to a VLAN that the port is not a member of are accepted and forwarded to the switch engine. However, the port will never transmit frames classified to VLANs that it is not a member of.
• **Uplink**	Enable/disable uplink function in trunk port.
• **TPID**	Configure the type (TPID) of the protocol of switch trunk port.

Buttons

: Click to apply changes.



Port	Interface VLAN Mode	PVID	Accept Frame Type	Ingress Filtering	Uplink	TPID
GE1	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE2	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE3	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE4	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE5	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE6	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE7	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE8	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE9	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
GE10	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG1	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG2	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG3	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG4	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG5	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG6	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG7	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100
LAG8	Trunk	1	ALL	Enabled	Disabled	0x8100

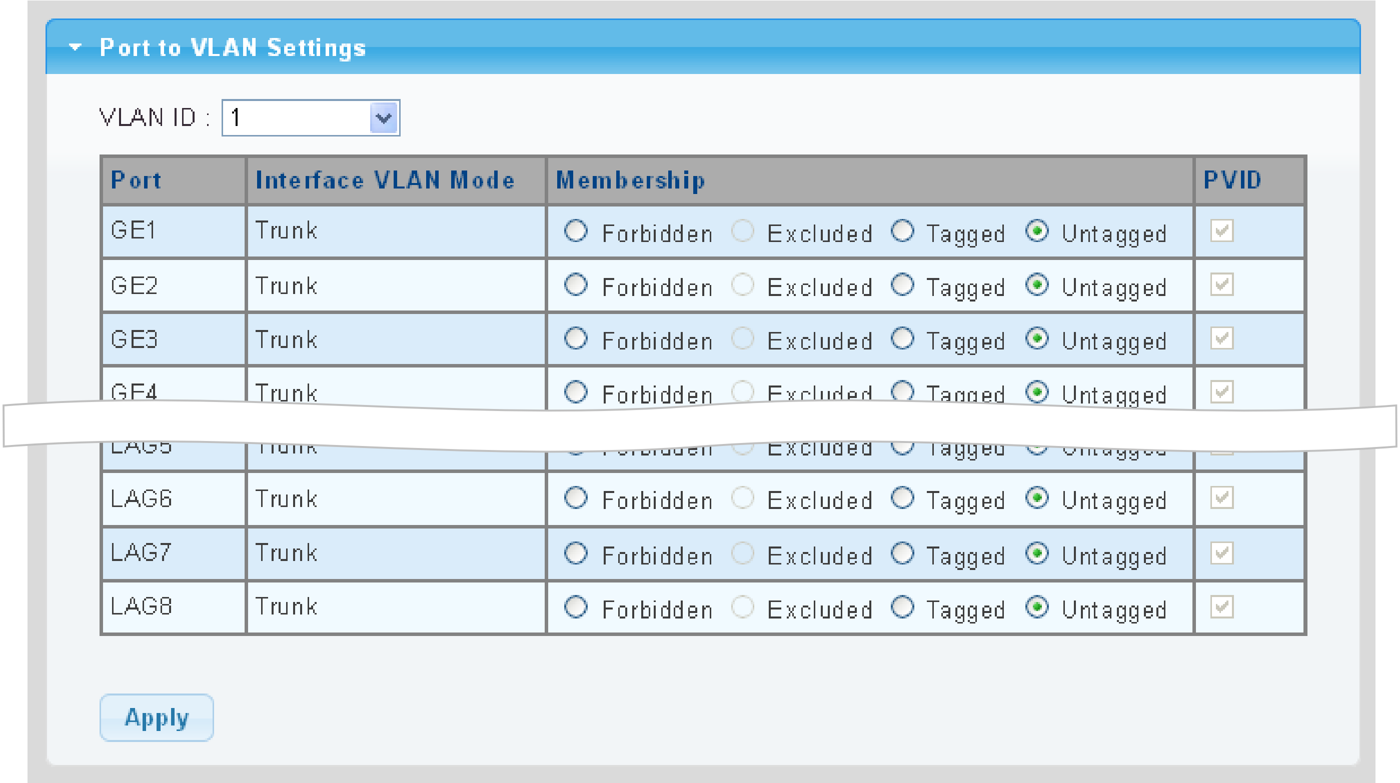
Figure 4-5-6 Edit Interface Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Interface VLAN Mode**	Display the current interface VLAN mode
- **PVID**	Display the current PVID
- **Accepted Frame Type**	Display the current access frame type
- **Ingress Filtering**	Display the current ingress filtering
- **Uplink**	Display the current uplink mode
- **TPID**	Display the current TPID

4.5.6 Port to VLAN

Use the VLAN Static Table to configure port members for the selected VLAN index. This page allows you to add and delete port members of each VLAN. The screen in Figure 4-5-7 appears.



VLAN ID : 1

Port	Interface VLAN Mode	Membership	PVID
GE1	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE2	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE3	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE4	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
LAG5	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
LAG6	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
LAG7	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
LAG8	Trunk	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑

Figure 4-5-7 Port to VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

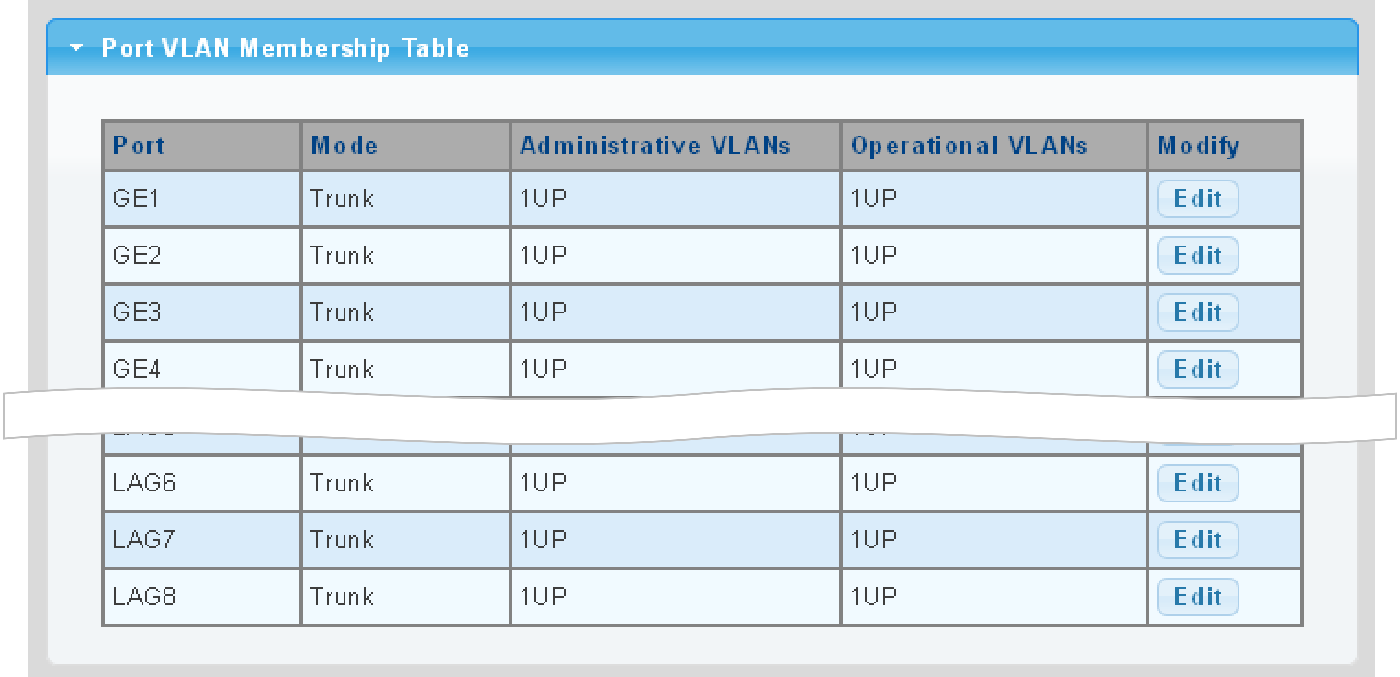
Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Select VLAN ID from this drop-down list to assign VLAN membership.
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port.
• **Interface VLAN Mode**	Display the current interface VLAN mode.
• **Membership**	Select VLAN membership for each interface by marking the appropriate radio button for a port or trunk: **Forbidden:** Interface is forbidden from automatically joining the VLAN via GVRP. **Excluded:** Interface is not a member of the VLAN. Packets associated with this VLAN will not be transmitted by the interface. **Tagged:** Interface is a member of the VLAN. All packets transmitted by the port will be tagged, that is, carry a tag and therefore carry VLAN or CoS information. **Untagged:** Interface is a member of the VLAN. All packets transmitted by the port will be untagged, that is, not carry a tag and therefore not carry VLAN or CoS information. Note that an interface must be assigned to at least one group as an untagged port.
• **PVID**	Display the current PVID

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

4.5.7 Port VLAN Membership

This page provides an overview of membership status for VLAN users. The VLAN Membership Status screen in Figure 4-5-8 appears.



Port VLAN Membership Table

Port	Mode	Administrative VLANs	Operational VLANs	Modify
GE1	Trunk	1UP	1UP	Edit
GE2	Trunk	1UP	1UP	Edit
GE3	Trunk	1UP	1UP	Edit
GE4	Trunk	1UP	1UP	Edit
LAG6	Trunk	1UP	1UP	Edit
LAG7	Trunk	1UP	1UP	Edit
LAG8	Trunk	1UP	1UP	Edit

Figure 4-5-8 Port VLAN Membership Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Mode**	Display the current VLAN mode
• **Administrative VLANs**	Display the current administrative VLANs
• **Operational VLANs**	Display the current operational VLANs
• **Modify**	Click Edit to modify VLAN membership

4.5.8 Protocol VLAN Group Setting

The network devices required to support multiple protocols cannot be easily grouped into a common VLAN. This may require non-standard devices to pass traffic between different VLANs in order to encompass all the devices participating in a specific protocol. This kind of configuration deprives users of the basic benefits of VLANs, including security and easy accessibility.

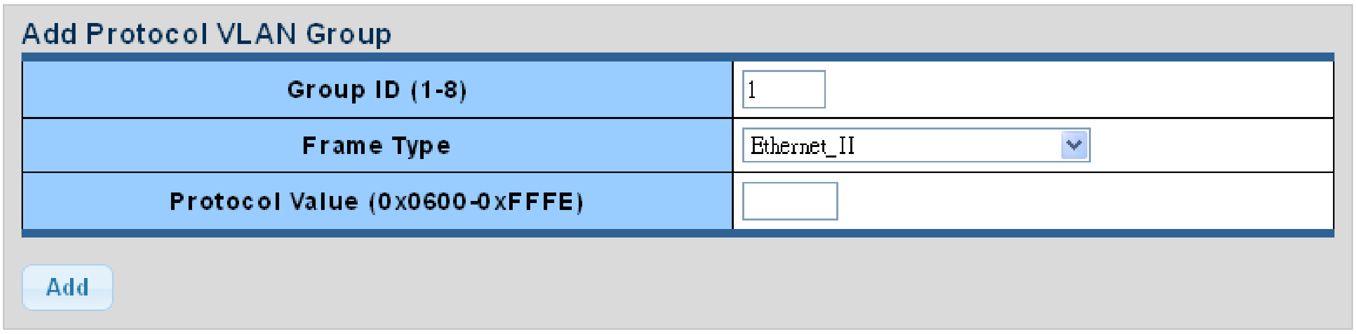
To avoid these problems, you can configure this Managed Switch with protocol-based VLANs that divide the physical network into logical VLAN groups for each required protocol. When a frame is received at a port, its VLAN membership can then be determined based on the protocol type being used by the inbound packets.

Command Usage

To configure protocol-based VLANs, follow these steps:

1. First configure **VLAN groups for the protocols** you want to use. Although not mandatory, we suggest configuring a separate VLAN for each major protocol running on your network. Do not add port members at this time.
2. Create a **protocol group** for each of the protocols you want to assign to a VLAN using the Protocol VLAN Configuration page.
3. Then map the protocol for each interface to the appropriate VLAN using the Protocol VLAN Port Configuration page.

This page allows you to configure protocol-based VLAN Group Setting. The protocol-based VLAN screens in Figure 4-5-9 & Figure 4-5-10 appear.



Add Protocol VLAN Group

Group ID (1-8)	1
Frame Type	Ethernet_II
Protocol Value (0x0600-0xFFFE)	

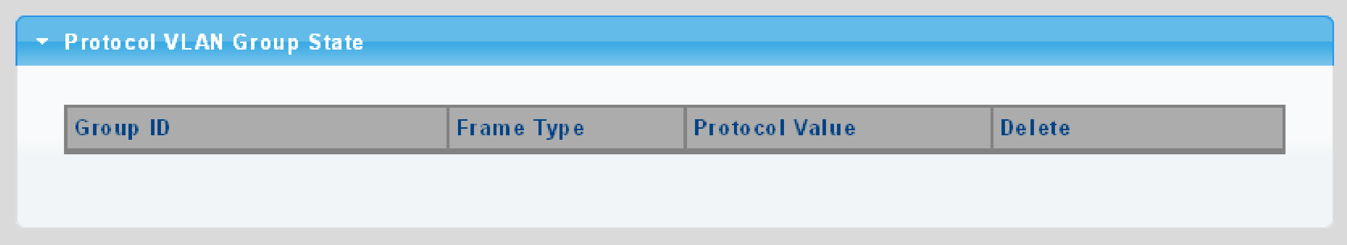
Figure 4-5-9 Add Protocol VLAN Group Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Group ID**	Protocol Group ID assigned to the Special Protocol VLAN Group.
• **Frame Type**	Frame Type can have one of the following values: ■ **Ethernet II** ■ **IEEE802.3_LLC_Other** ■ **RFC_1042** **Note:** On changing the Frame type field, valid value of the following text field will vary depending on the new frame type you selected.
• **Protocol Value (0x0600-0xFFFE)**	Valid value that can be entered in this text field depends on the option selected from the preceding Frame Type selection menu. Valid values for frame type ranges from 0x0600-0xfffe

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Protocol VLAN Group State

Group ID	Frame Type	Protocol Value	Delete

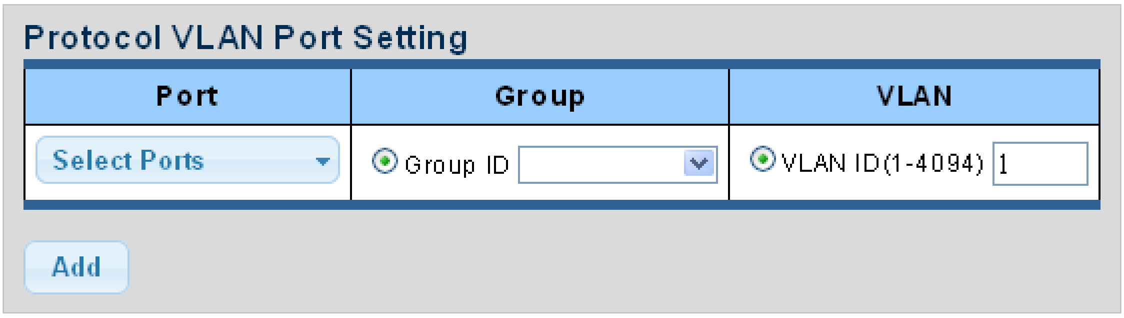
Figure 4-5-10 Protocol VLAN Group State Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Group ID**	Display the current group ID
• **Frame Type**	Display the current frame type
• **Protocol Value**	Display the current protocol value
• **Delete**	Click Delete to delete the group ID entry

4.5.9 Protocol VLAN Port Setting

This page allows you to map an already configured Group Name to a VLAN/port for the switch. The Protocol VLAN Port Setting/State screens in Figure 4-5-11 & Figure 4-5-12 appear.



Protocol VLAN Port Setting

Port	Group	VLAN
Select Ports	● Group ID	● VLAN ID(1-4094) 1

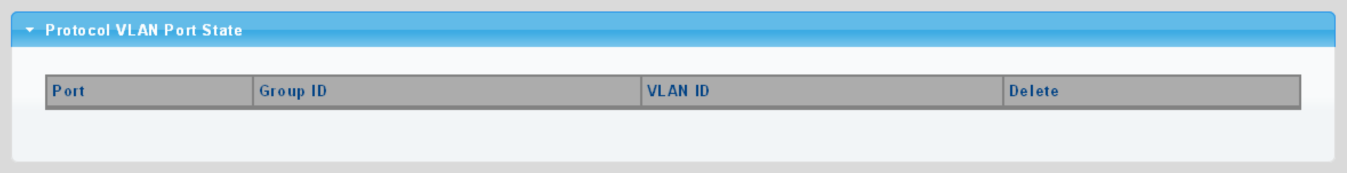
Figure 4-5-11 Protocol VLAN Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list to assign protocol VLAN port
• **Group**	Select group ID from this drop-down list to protocol VLAN group
• **VLAN**	VLAN ID assigned to the Special Protocol VLAN Group

Buttons

Add : Click to add protocol VLAN port entry.



Protocol VLAN Port State

Port	Group ID	VLAN ID	Delete

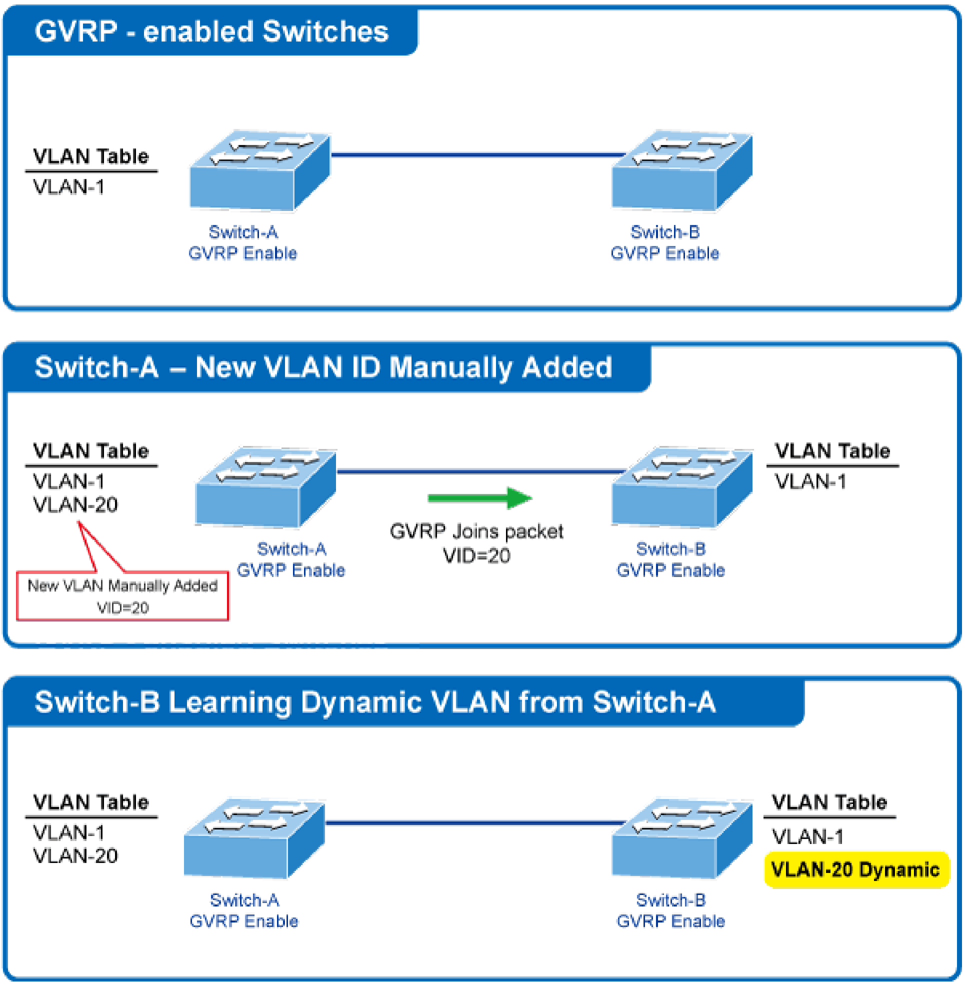
Figure 4-5-12 Protocol VLAN Port State Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Display the current port
• **Group ID**	Display the current group ID
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Delete**	Click Delete to delete the group ID entry

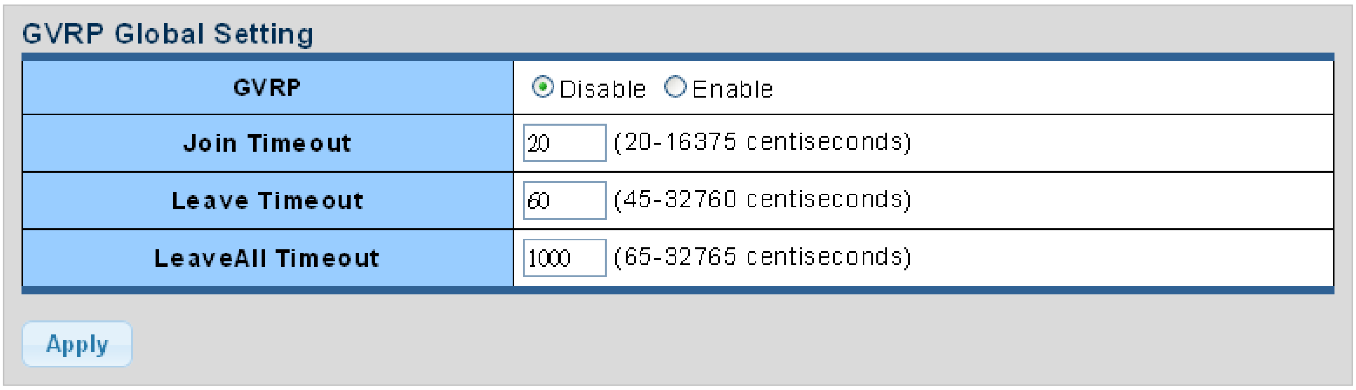
4.5.10 GVRP Setting

GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP) defines a way for switches to exchange VLAN information in order to register VLAN members on ports across the network.


GVRP - enabled Switches
VLAN Table
VLAN-1
Switch-A
GVRP Enable
Switch-B
GVRP Enable
Switch-A – New VLAN ID Manually Added
VLAN Table
VLAN-1
VLAN-20
New VLAN Manually Added
VID=20
Switch-A
GVRP Enable
GVRP Joins packet
VID=20
Switch-B
GVRP Enable
VLAN Table
VLAN-1
Switch-B Learning Dynamic VLAN from Switch-A
VLAN Table
VLAN-1
VLAN-20
Switch-A
GVRP Enable
Switch-B
GVRP Enable
VLAN Table
VLAN-1
VLAN-20 Dynamic

VLANs are **dynamically** configured based on **join messages** issued by host devices and propagated throughout the network. GVRP must be enabled to permit automatic VLAN registration, and to support VLANs which extend beyond the local switch.

The GVRP Global Setting/Information screens in Figure 4-5-13 & Figure 4-5-14 appear.


GVRP Global Setting

GVRP	● Disable ○ Enable
Join Timeout	20 (20-16375 centiseconds)
Leave Timeout	60 (45-32760 centiseconds)
LeaveAll Timeout	1000 (65-32765 centiseconds)

Figure 4-5-13 GVRP Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **GVRP**	Controls whether GVRP is enabled or disabled on this switch.
• **Join Timeout**	The interval between transmitting requests/queries to participate in a VLAN group. Range: 20-16375 centiseconds Default: **20** centiseconds
• **Leave Timeout**	The interval a port waits before leaving a VLAN group. This time should be set to more than twice the join time. This ensures that after a Leave or LeaveAll message has been issued, the applicants can rejoin before the port actually leaves the group. Range: 45-32760 centiseconds Default: **60** centiseconds
• **LeaveAll Timeout**	The interval between sending out a LeaveAll query message for VLAN group participants and the port leaving the group. This interval should be considerably larger than the Leave Time to minimize the amount of traffic generated by nodes rejoining the group. Range: 65-32765 centiseconds; Default: **1000** centiseconds

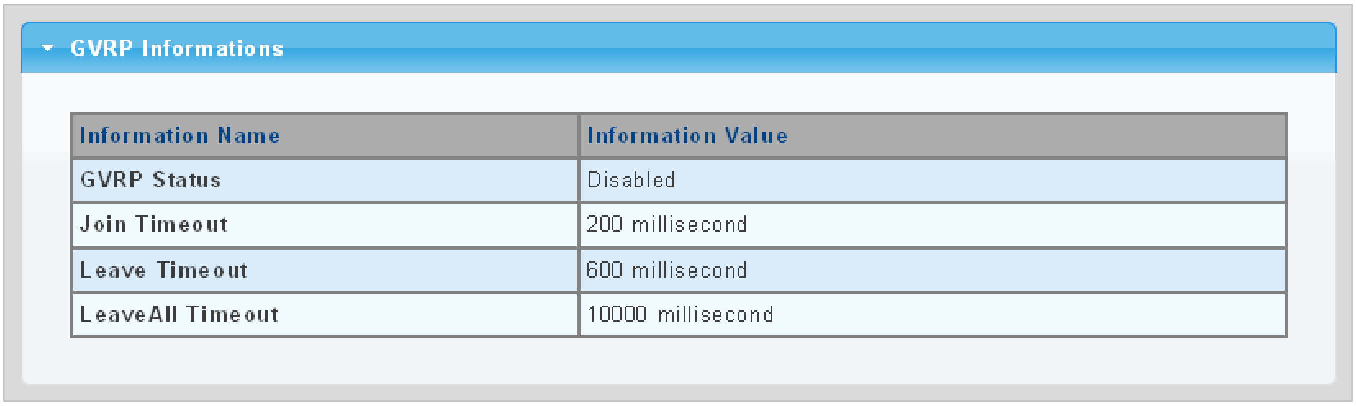
Note

Timer settings must follow this rule:

2 x (join timer) < leave timer < leaveAll timer

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
GVRP Status	Disabled
Join Timeout	200 millisecond
Leave Timeout	600 millisecond
LeaveAll Timeout	10000 millisecond

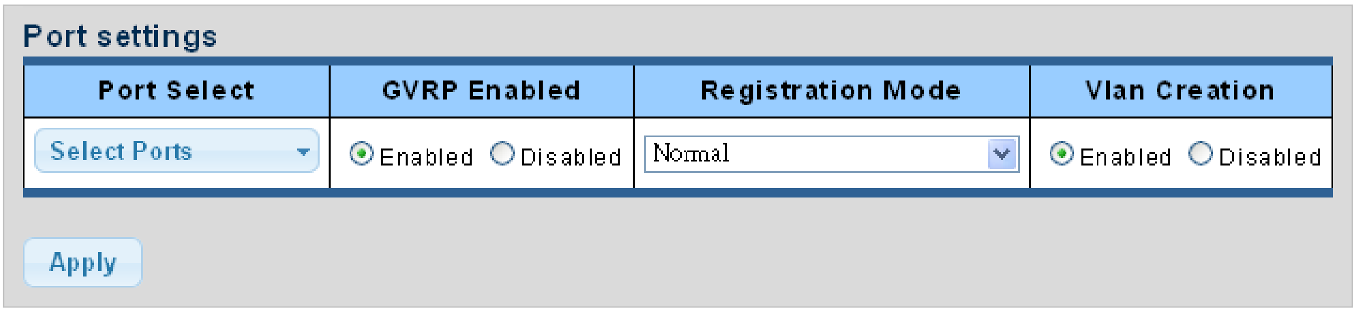
Figure 4-5-14 GVRP Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **GVRP Status**	Display the current GVRP status
• **Join Timeout**	Display the current join timeout parameter
• **Leave Timeout**	Display the current leave timeout parameter
• **LeaveAll Timeout**	Display the current leaveall timeout parameter

4.5.11 GVRP Port Setting

The GVRP Port Setting/Status screens in Figure 4-5-15 & Figure 4-5-16 appear.



Port settings

Port Select	GVRP Enabled	Registration Mode	Vlan Creation
Select Ports	● Enabled ○ Disabled	Normal	● Enabled ○ Disabled

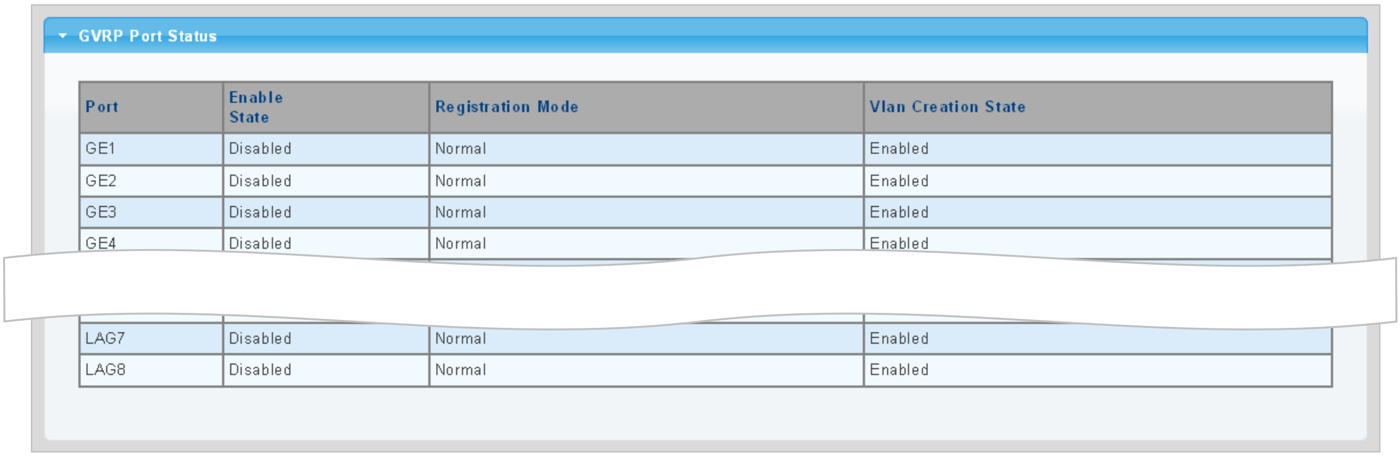
Figure 4-5-15 GVRP Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port from this drop-down list to assign protocol VLAN port
• **GVRP Enabled**	Controls whether GVRP is enabled or disabled on port
• **Registration Mode**	By default GVRP ports are in **normal** registration mode. These ports use GVRP join messages from neighboring switches to prune the VLANs running across the 802.1Q trunk link. If the device on the other side is not capable of sending GVRP messages, or if you do not want to allow the switch to prune any of the VLANs, use the **fixed** mode. Fixed mode ports will forward for all VLANs that exist in the switch database. Ports in **forbidden** mode forward only for VLAN 1.
• **VLAN Creation**	GVRP can dynamically create VLANs on switches for trunking purposes. By enabling GVRP dynamic VLAN creation, a switch will add VLANs to its database when it receives GVRP join messages about VLANs it does not have.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Port	Enable State	Registration Mode	Vlan Creation State
GE1	Disabled	Normal	Enabled
GE2	Disabled	Normal	Enabled
GE3	Disabled	Normal	Enabled
GE4	Disabled	Normal	Enabled
LAG7	Disabled	Normal	Enabled
LAG8	Disabled	Normal	Enabled

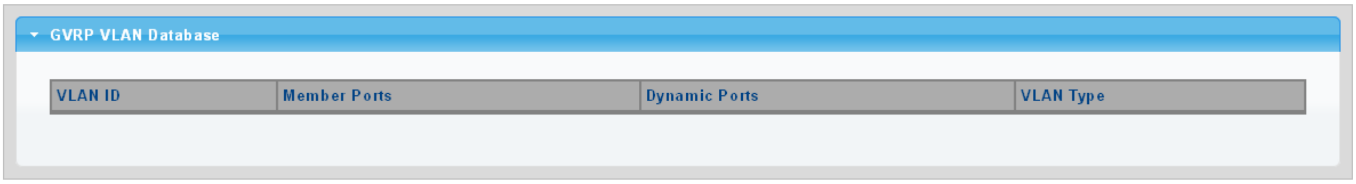
Figure 4-5-16 GVRP Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Enable Status**	Display the current GVRP port state
- **Registration Mode**	Display the current registration mode
- **VLAN Creation Status**	Display the current VLAN creation status

4.5.12 GVRP VLAN

The GVRP VLAN Database screen in Figure 4-5-17 appears.



VLAN ID	Member Ports	Dynamic Ports	VLAN Type

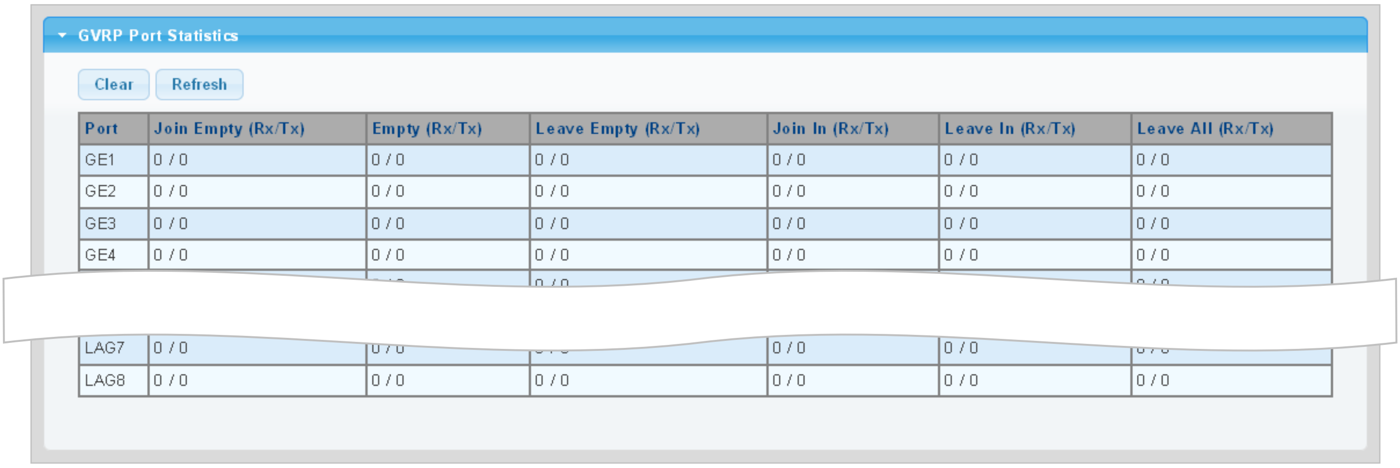
Figure 4-5-17 GVRP VLAN Database Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
- **Member Ports**	Display the current member ports
- **Dynamic Ports**	Display the current dynamic ports
- **VLAN Type**	Display the current VLAN type

4.5.13 GVRP Statistics

The GVRP Port Statistics and Error Statistics screens in Figure 4-5-18 & Figure 4-5-19 appear.

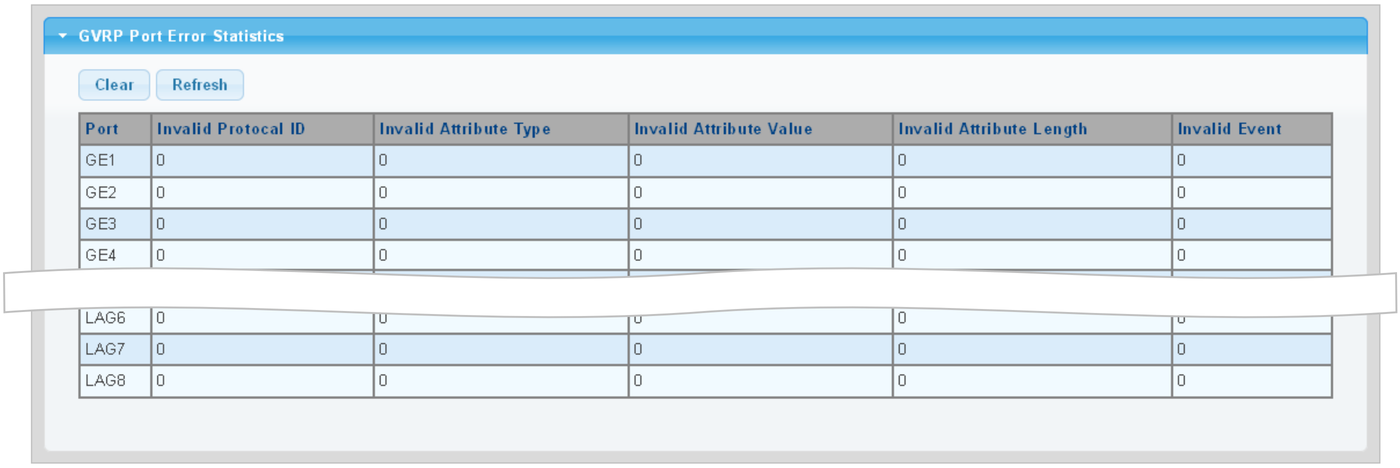


Port	Join Empty (Rx/Tx)	Empty (Rx/Tx)	Leave Empty (Rx/Tx)	Join In (Rx/Tx)	Leave In (Rx/Tx)	Leave All (Rx/Tx)
GE1	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0
GE2	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0
GE3	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0
GE4	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0
LAG7	0 / 0			0 / 0	0 / 0	
LAG8	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0	0 / 0

Figure 4-5-18 GVRP Port Statistics Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Join Empty (Rx/Tx)**	Display the current join empty (TX/RX) packets
• **Empty (Rx/Tx)**	Display the current empty (TX/RX) packets
• **Leave Empty (Rx/Tx)**	Display the current leave empty (TX/RX) packets
• **Join In (Rx/Tx)**	Display the current join in (TX/RX) packets
• **Leave In (Rx/Tx)**	Display the current leave in (TX/RX) packets
• **LeaveAll (Rx/Tx)**	Display the current leaveall (TX/RX) packets



Port	Invalid Protocal ID	Invalid Attribute Type	Invalid Attribute Value	Invalid Attribute Length	Invalid Event
GE1	0	0	0	0	0
GE2	0	0	0	0	0
GE3	0	0	0	0	0
GE4	0	0	0	0	0
LAG6	0			0	
LAG7	0	0	0	0	0
LAG8	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 4-5-19 GVRP Port Error Statistics Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port.
- **Invalid Protocol ID**	Display the current invalid protocol ID
- **Invalid Attribute Type**	Display the current invalid attribute type
- **Invalid Attribute Value**	Display the current invalid attribute value
- **Invalid Attribute Length**	Display the current invalid attribute length
- **Invalid Event**	Display the current invalid event.

Buttons

Clear: Click to clear the GVRP Error Statistics.

Refresh: Click to refresh the GVRP Error Statistics.

4.5.14 VLAN setting example:

- Separate VLANs

- 802.1Q VLAN Trunk

4.5.14.1 Two separate 802.1Q VLANs

The diagram shows how the Managed Switch handles Tagged and Untagged traffic flow for two VLANs. VLAN Group 2 and VLAN Group 3 are separated VLANs. Each VLAN isolates network traffic so only members of the VLAN receive traffic from the same VLAN members. The screen in Figure 4-5-20 appears and Table 4-5-2 describes the port configuration of the Managed Switches.

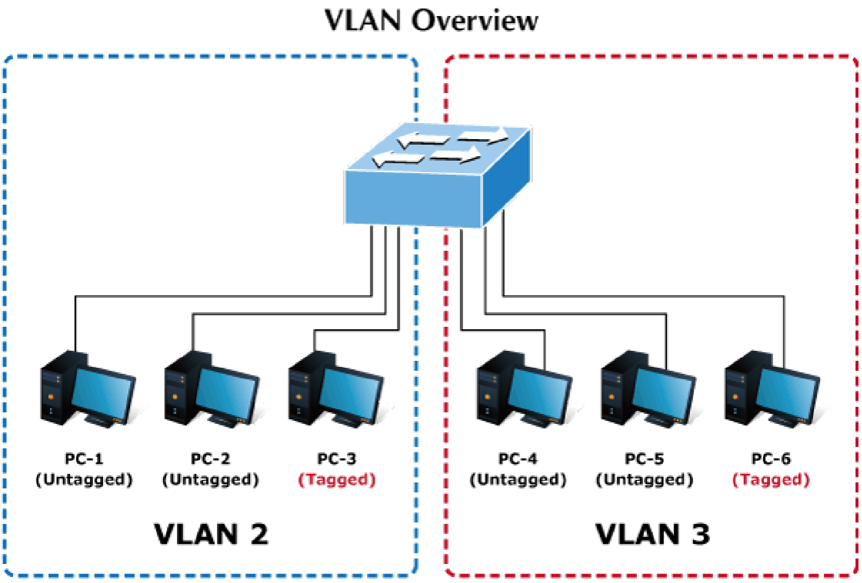


Figure 4-5-20 Two Separate VLAN Diagrams

VLAN Group	VID	Untagged Members	Tagged Members
VLAN Group 1	1	Port-7~Port-8	N/A
VLAN Group 2	2	Port-1,Port-2	Port-3
VLAN Group 3	3	Port-4,Port-5	Port-6

Table 4-5-2 VLAN and Port Configuration

The scenario described as follows:

■ Untagged packet entering VLAN 2

1. While **[PC-1]** transmits an **untagged** packet enters **Port-1**, the Managed Switch will tag it with a **VLAN Tag=2**. **[PC-2]** and **[PC-3]** will received the packet through **Port-2** and **Port-3**.
2. [PC-4], [PC-5] and [PC-6] received no packet.
3. While the packet leaves **Port-2**, it will be stripped away its tag becoming an **untagged** packet.
4. While the packet leaves **Port-3**, it will keep as a **tagged** packet with **VLAN Tag=2**.

■ Tagged packet entering VLAN 2

1. While **[PC-3]** transmits a **tagged** packet with **VLAN Tag=2** enters **Port-3**, **[PC-1]** and **[PC-2]** will receive the packet through **Port-1** and **Port-2**.
2. While the packet leaves **Port-1** and **Port-2**, it will be stripped away its tag becoming an **untagged** packet.

■ Untagged packet entering VLAN 3

1. While **[PC-4]** transmits an **untagged** packet enters **Port-4**, the switch will tag it with a **VLAN Tag=3**. **[PC-5]** and **[PC-6]** will receive the packet through **Port-5** and **Port-6**.
2. While the packet leaves **Port-5**, it will be stripped away its tag becoming an **untagged** packet.
3. While the packet leaves **Port-6**, it will keep as a **tagged** packet with **VLAN Tag=3**.

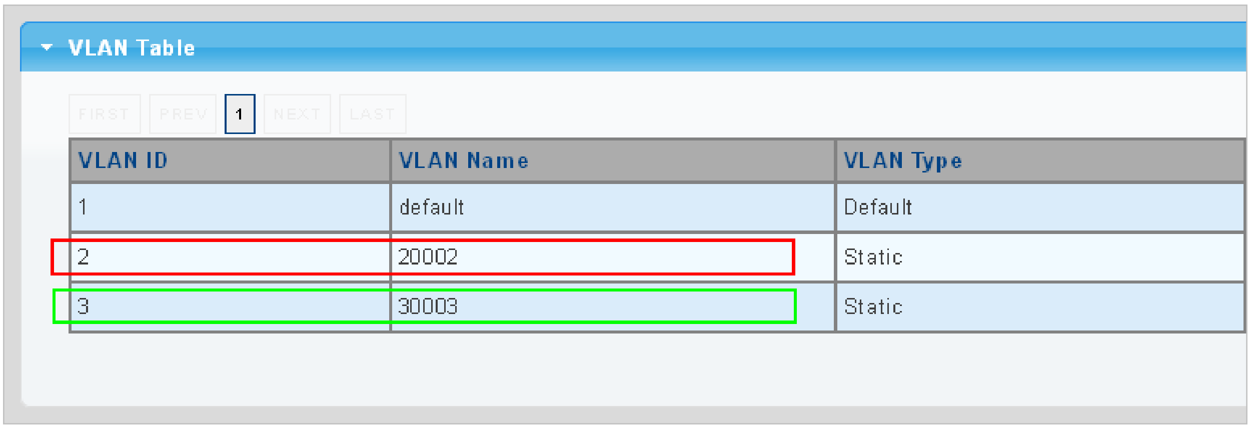
Note

In this example, VLAN Group 1 is set as default VLAN, but only focuses on VLAN 2 and VLAN 3 traffic flow.

Setup Steps

1. Create VLAN Group 2 and 3

Add VLAN group 2 and group 3

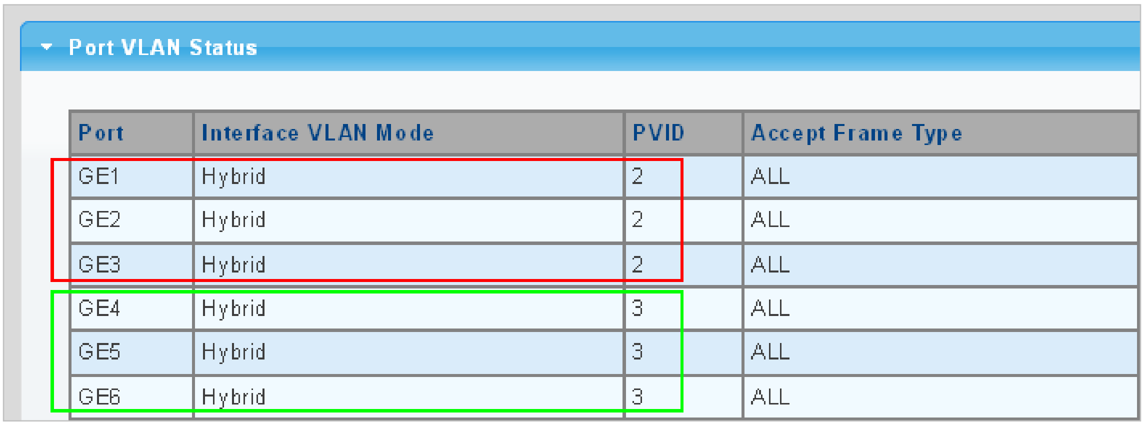


VLAN ID	VLAN Name	VLAN Type
1	default	Default
2	20002	Static
3	30003	Static

2. Assign VLAN mode and PVID to each port:

Port-1,Port-2 and Port-3 : VLAN Mode = Hybrid, PVID=*2*

Port-4,Port-5 and Port-6 : VLAN Mode = Hybrid, PVID=*3*



Port	Interface VLAN Mode	PVID	Accept Frame Type
GE1	Hybrid	2	ALL
GE2	Hybrid	2	ALL
GE3	Hybrid	2	ALL
GE4	Hybrid	3	ALL
GE5	Hybrid	3	ALL
GE6	Hybrid	3	ALL

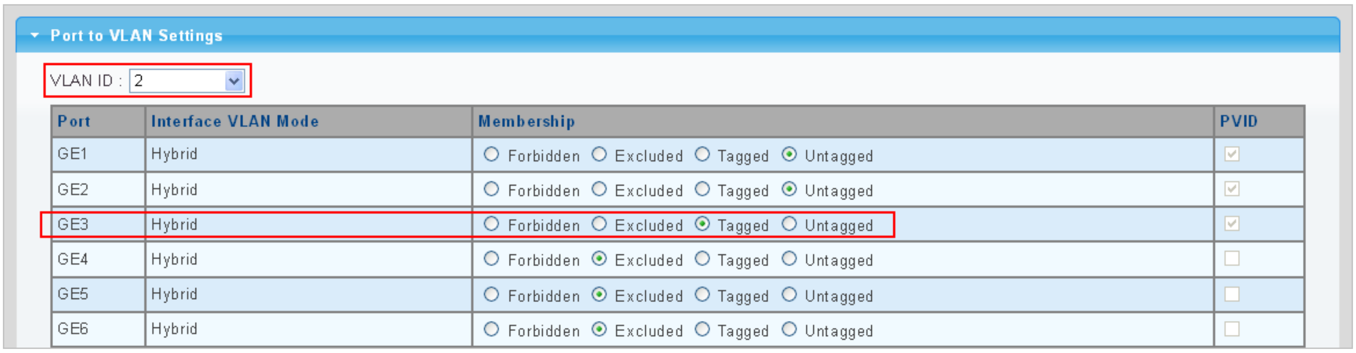
3. Assign Tagged/Untagged to each port:

VLAN ID = 2:

Port-1 & 2 = Untagged,

Port-3 = Tagged,

Port -4~6 = Excluded.



Port to VLAN Settings

VLAN ID : 2

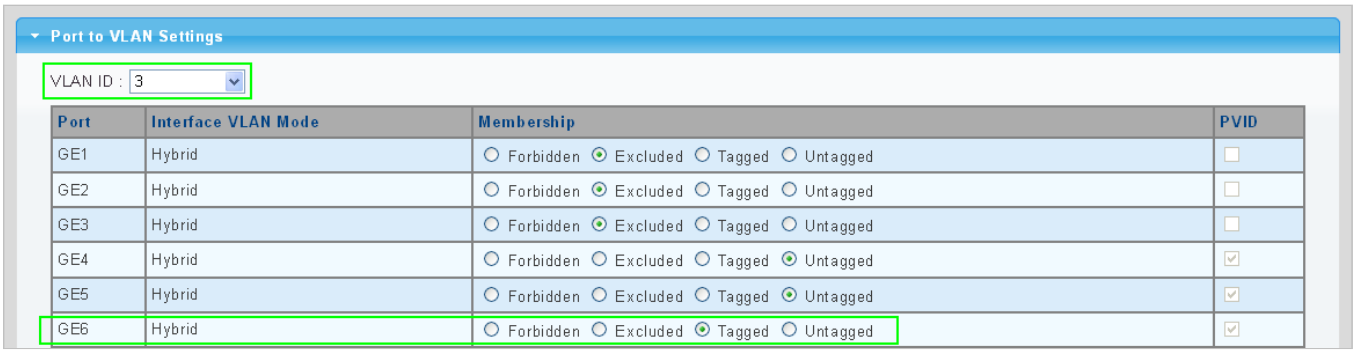
Port	Interface VLAN Mode	Membership	PVID
GE1	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE2	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE3	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ● Tagged ○ Untagged	☑
GE4	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE5	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE6	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐

VLAN ID = 3:

Port-4 & 5 = Untagged,

Port -6 = Tagged,

Port-1~3 = Excluded.



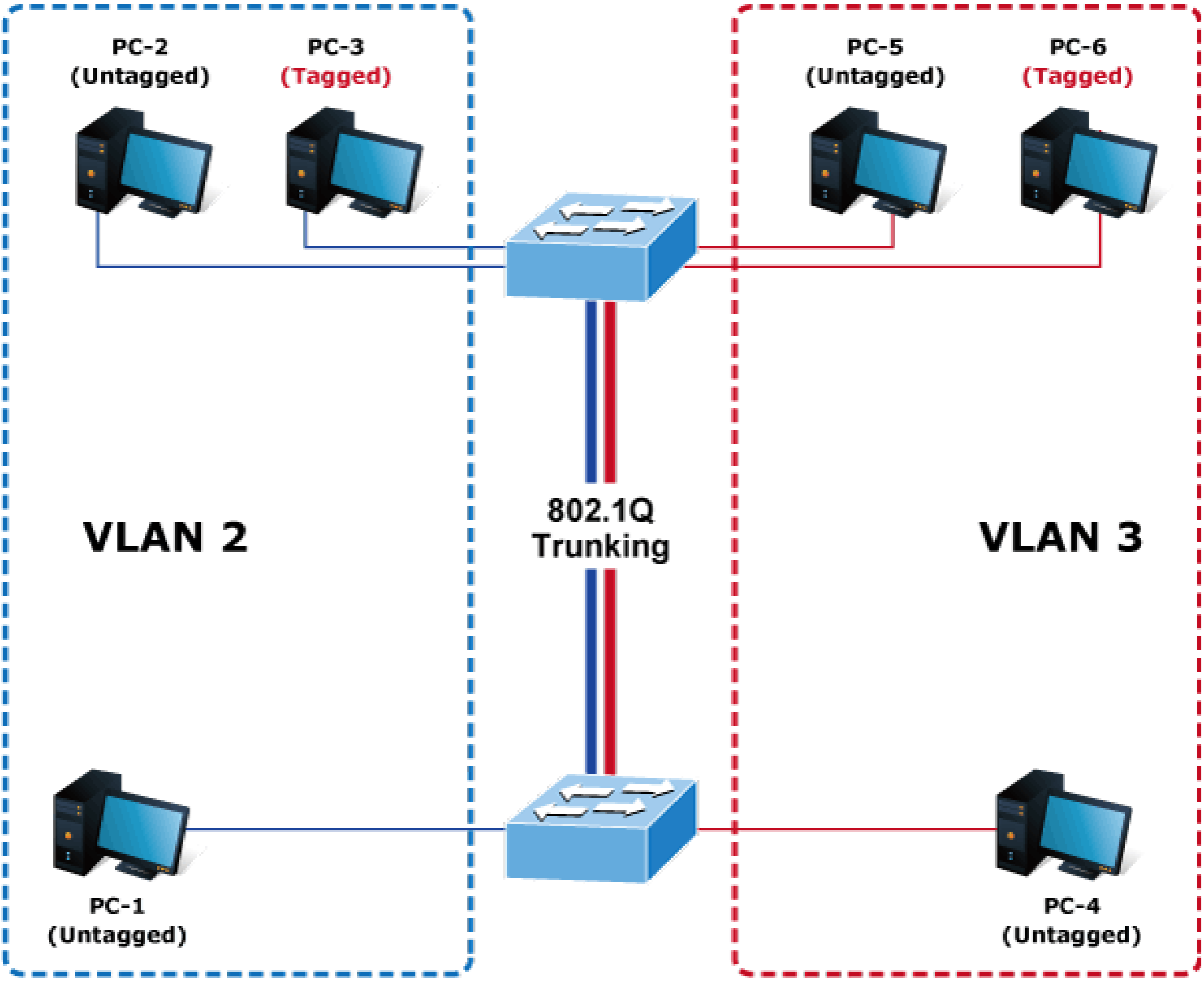
Port to VLAN Settings

VLAN ID : 3

Port	Interface VLAN Mode	Membership	PVID
GE1	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE2	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE3	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE4	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE5	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE6	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ● Tagged ○ Untagged	☑

4.5.14.2 VLAN Trunking between two 802.1Q aware switches

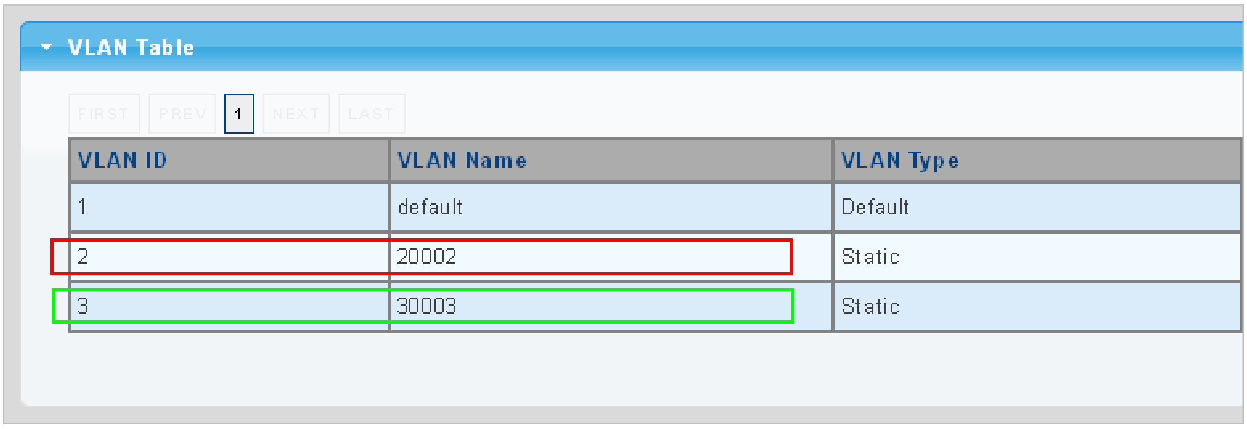
In most cases, they are used for "**Uplink**" to other switches. VLANs are separated at different switches, but they need to access other switches within the same VLAN group.


PC-2
(Untagged)
PC-3
(Tagged)
PC-5
(Untagged)
PC-6
(Tagged)
VLAN 2
802.1Q
Trunking
VLAN 3
PC-1
(Untagged)
PC-4
(Untagged)

Setup steps

1. Create VLAN Group 2 and 3

Add VLAN group 2 and group 3



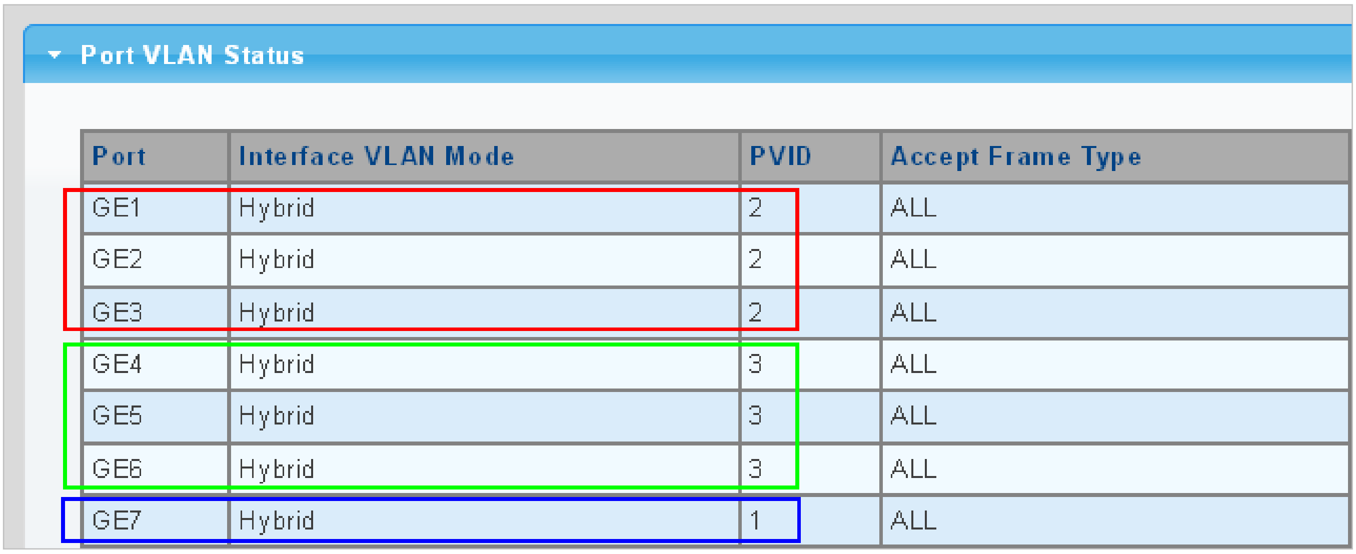
VLAN ID	VLAN Name	VLAN Type
1	default	Default
2	20002	Static
3	30003	Static

2. Assign VLAN mode and PVID to each port:

Port-1,Port-2 and Port-3 : VLAN Mode = Hybrid, PVID=*2*

Port-4,Port-5 and Port-6 : VLAN Mode = Hybrid, PVID=*3*

Port-7 : VLAN Mode = Hybrid, PVID=1



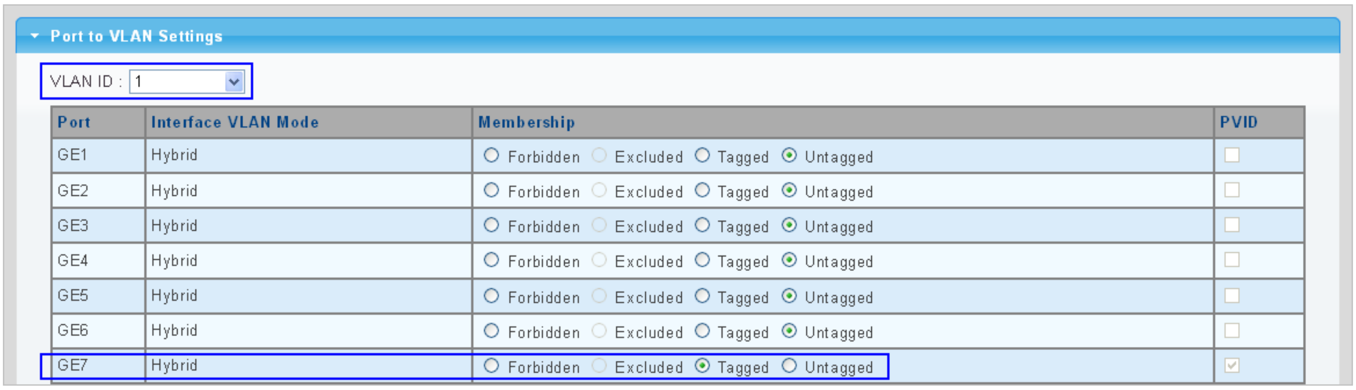
Port	Interface VLAN Mode	PVID	Accept Frame Type
GE1	Hybrid	2	ALL
GE2	Hybrid	2	ALL
GE3	Hybrid	2	ALL
GE4	Hybrid	3	ALL
GE5	Hybrid	3	ALL
GE6	Hybrid	3	ALL
GE7	Hybrid	1	ALL

3. Assign Tagged/Untagged to each port:

VLAN ID = 1:

Port-1~6 = Untagged,

Port -7 = Excluded.



Port to VLAN Settings

VLAN ID : 1

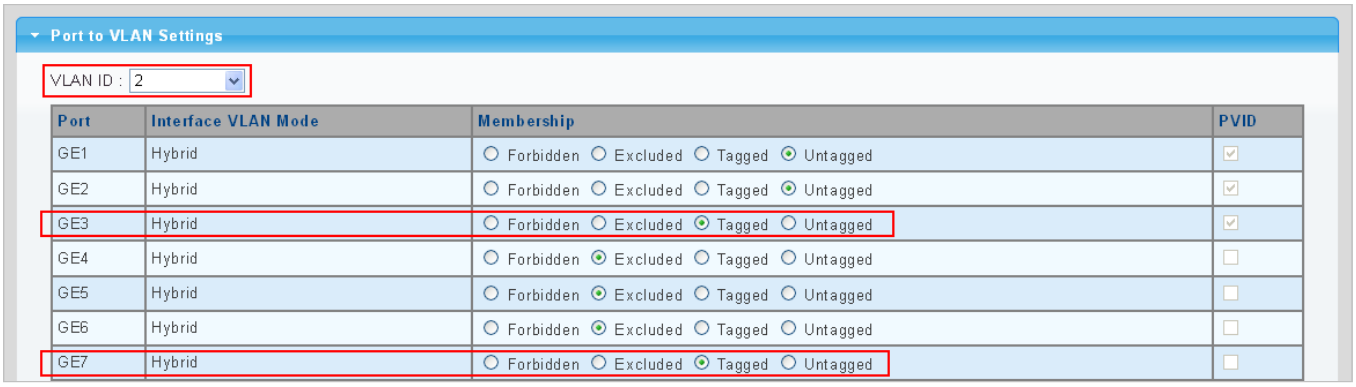
Port	Interface VLAN Mode	Membership	PVID
GE1	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☐
GE2	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☐
GE3	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☐
GE4	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☐
GE5	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☐
GE6	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☐
GE7	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ● Tagged ○ Untagged	☑

VLAN ID = 2:

Port-1 & 2 = Untagged,

Port-3 & 7 = Tagged,

Port -4~6 = Excluded.



Port to VLAN Settings

VLAN ID : 2

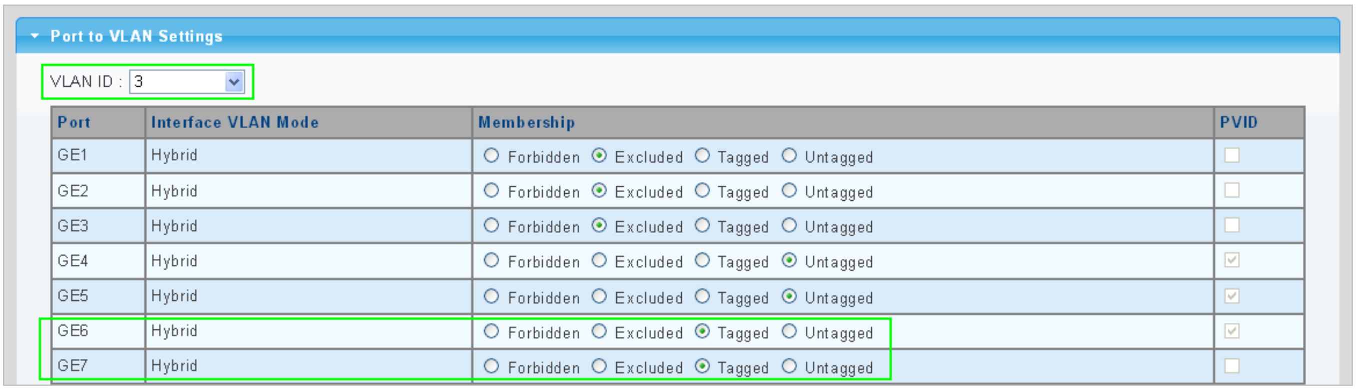
Port	Interface VLAN Mode	Membership	PVID
GE1	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE2	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE3	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ● Tagged ○ Untagged	☑
GE4	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE5	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE6	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE7	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ● Tagged ○ Untagged	☐

VLAN ID = 3:

Port-4 & 5 = Untagged,

Port -6 & 7= Tagged,

Port-1~3 = Excluded.



Port to VLAN Settings

VLAN ID : 3

Port	Interface VLAN Mode	Membership	PVID
GE1	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE2	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE3	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ● Excluded ○ Tagged ○ Untagged	☐
GE4	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE5	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ○ Tagged ● Untagged	☑
GE6	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ● Tagged ○ Untagged	☑
GE7	Hybrid	○ Forbidden ○ Excluded ● Tagged ○ Untagged	☐

4.6 Spanning Tree Protocol

4.6.1 Theory

The Spanning Tree Protocol can be used to detect and disable network loops, and to provide backup links between switches, bridges or routers. This allows the switch to interact with other bridging devices in your network to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network, and provide backup links which automatically take over when a primary link goes down. The spanning tree algorithms supported by this switch include these versions:

- **STP – Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1D)**
- **RSTP – Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1w)**
- **MSTP – Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s)**

The **IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree** Protocol and **IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree** Protocol allow for the blocking of links between switches that form loops within the network. When multiple links between switches are detected, a primary link is established. Duplicated links are blocked from use and become standby links. The protocol allows for the duplicate links to be used in the event of a failure of the primary link. Once the Spanning Tree Protocol is configured and enabled, primary links are established and duplicated links are blocked automatically. The reactivation of the blocked links (at the time of a primary link failure) is also accomplished automatically without operator intervention.

This automatic network reconfiguration provides maximum uptime to network users. However, the concepts of the Spanning Tree Algorithm and protocol are a complicated and complex subject and must be fully researched and understood. It is possible to cause serious degradation of the performance of the network if the Spanning Tree is incorrectly configured. Please read the following before making any changes from the default values.

The Switch STP performs the following functions:

- Creates a single spanning tree from any combination of switching or bridging elements.
- Creates multiple spanning trees – from any combination of ports contained within a single switch, in user specified groups.
- Automatically reconfigures the spanning tree to compensate for the failure, addition, or removal of any element in the tree.
- Reconfigures the spanning tree without operator intervention.

Bridge Protocol Data Units

For STP to arrive at a stable network topology, the following information is used:

- The unique switch identifier
- The path cost to the root associated with each switch port
- The port identifier

STP communicates between switches on the network using Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs). Each BPDU contains the following information:

- The unique identifier of the switch that the transmitting switch currently believes is the root switch
- The path cost to the root from the transmitting port
- The port identifier of the transmitting port

The switch sends BPDUs to communicate and construct the spanning-tree topology. All switches connected to the LAN on which the packet is transmitted will receive the BPDU. BPDUs are not directly forwarded by the switch, but the receiving switch uses the information in the frame to calculate a BPDU, and, if the topology changes, initiates a BPDU transmission.
The communication between switches via BPDUs results in the following:

- One switch is elected as the root switch
- The shortest distance to the root switch is calculated for each switch
- A designated switch is selected. This is the switch closest to the root switch through which packets will be forwarded to the root.
- A port for each switch is selected. This is the port providing the best path from the switch to the root switch.
- Ports included in the STP are selected.

Creating a Stable STP Topology
It is to make the root port a fastest link. If all switches have STP enabled with default settings, the switch with the lowest MAC address in the network will become the root switch. By increasing the priority (lowering the priority number) of the best switch, STP can be forced to select the best switch as the root switch.

When STP is enabled using the default parameters, the path between source and destination stations in a switched network might not be ideal. For instance, connecting higher-speed links to a port that has a higher number than the current root port can cause a root-port change.

STP Port States
The BPDUs take some time to pass through a network. This propagation delay can result in topology changes where a port that transitioned directly from a Blocking state to a Forwarding state could create temporary data loops. Ports must wait for new network topology information to propagate throughout the network before starting to forward packets. They must also wait for the packet lifetime to expire for BPDU packets that were forwarded based on the old topology. The forward delay timer is used to allow the network topology to stabilize after a topology change. In addition, STP specifies a series of states a port must transition through to further ensure that a stable network topology is created after a topology change.

Each port on a switch using STP exists is in one of the following five states:

- **Blocking** – the port is blocked from forwarding or receiving packets
- **Listening** – the port is waiting to receive BPDU packets that may tell the port to go back to the blocking state
- **Learning** – the port is adding addresses to its forwarding database, but not yet forwarding packets
- **Forwarding** – the port is forwarding packets
- **Disabled** – the port only responds to network management messages and must return to the blocking state first

A port transitions from one state to another as follows:

- From initialization (switch boot) to blocking
- From blocking to listening or to disabled
- From listening to learning or to disabled
- From learning to forwarding or to disabled
- From forwarding to disabled
- From disabled to blocking

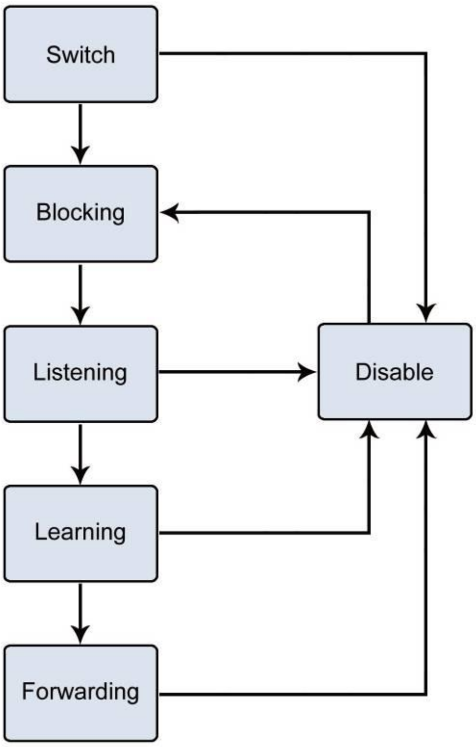


Figure 4-6-1 STP Port State Transitions

You can modify each port state by using management software. When you enable STP, every port on every switch in the network goes through the blocking state and then transitions through the states of listening and learning at power up. If properly configured, each port stabilizes to the forwarding or blocking state. No packets (except BPDUs) are forwarded from, or received by, STP enabled ports until the forwarding state is enabled for that port.

2. STP Parameters

STP Operation Levels

The Switch allows for two levels of operation: the switch level and the port level. The switch level forms a spanning tree consisting of links between one or more switches. The port level constructs a spanning tree consisting of groups of one or more ports. The STP operates in much the same way for both levels.

Note

On the switch level, STP calculates the Bridge Identifier for each switch and then sets the Root Bridge and the Designated Bridges. On the port level, STP sets the Root Port and the Designated Ports.

The following are the user-configurable STP parameters for the switch level:

Parameter	Description	Default Value
Bridge Identifier(Not user configurable except by setting priority below)	A combination of the User-set priority and the switch's MAC address. The Bridge Identifier consists of two parts: a 16-bit priority and a 48-bit Ethernet MAC address 32768 + MAC	32768 + MAC
Priority	A relative priority for each switch – lower numbers give a higher priority and a greater chance of a given switch being elected as the root bridge	32768
Hello Time	The length of time between broadcasts of the hello message by the switch	2 seconds
Maximum Age Timer	Measures the age of a received BPDU for a port and ensures that the BPDU is discarded when its age exceeds the value of the maximum age timer.	20 seconds
Forward Delay Timer	The amount time spent by a port in the learning and listening states waiting for a BPDU that may return the port to the blocking state.	15 seconds

The following are the user-configurable STP parameters for the port or port group level:

Variable	Description	Default Value
Port Priority	A relative priority for each port –lower numbers give a higher priority and a greater chance of a given port being elected as the root port	128
Port Cost	A value used by STP to evaluate paths – STP calculates path costs and selects the path with the minimum cost as the active path	200,000-100Mbps Fast Ethernet ports 20,000-1000Mbps Gigabit Ethernet ports 0 - Auto

Default Spanning-Tree Configuration

Feature	Default Value
Enable state	STP disabled for all ports
Port priority	128
Port cost	0
Bridge Priority	32,768

User-Changeable STA Parameters

The Switch's factory default setting should cover the majority of installations. However, it is advisable to keep the default settings as set at the factory; unless, it is absolutely necessary. The user changeable parameters in the Switch are as follows:

Priority – A Priority for the switch can be set from 0 to 65535. 0 is equal to the highest Priority.

Hello Time – The Hello Time can be from 1 to 10 seconds. This is the interval between two transmissions of BPDU packets sent by the Root Bridge to tell all other Switches that it is indeed the Root Bridge. If you set a Hello Time for your Switch, and it is not the Root Bridge, the set Hello Time will be used if and when your Switch becomes the Root Bridge.

> Note
>
> The Hello Time cannot be longer than the Max. Age. Otherwise, a configuration error will occur.

Max. Age – The Max Age can be from 6 to 40 seconds. At the end of the Max Age, if a BPDU has still not been received from the Root Bridge, your Switch will start sending its own BPDU to all other Switches for permission to become the Root Bridge. If it turns out that your Switch has the lowest Bridge Identifier, it will become the Root Bridge.

Forward Delay Timer – The Forward Delay can be from 4 to 30 seconds. This is the time any port on the

Switch spends in the listening state while moving from the blocking state to the forwarding state.

> Note
>
> Observe the following formulas when setting the above parameters:
>
> **Max. Age _ 2 x (Forward Delay - 1 second)**
>
> **Max. Age _ 2 x (Hello Time + 1 second)**

Port Priority – A Port Priority can be from 0 to 240. The lower the number, the greater the probability the port will be chosen as the Root Port.

Port Cost – A Port Cost can be set from 0 to 200000000. The lower the number, the greater the probability the port will be chosen to forward packets.

3. Illustration of STP

A simple illustration of three switches connected in a loop is depicted in the below diagram. In this example, you can anticipate some major network problems if the STP assistance is not applied.

If switch A broadcasts a packet to switch B, switch B will broadcast it to switch C, and switch C will broadcast it to back to switch A and so on. The broadcast packet will be passed indefinitely in a loop, potentially causing a network failure. In this example, STP breaks the loop by blocking the connection between switch B and C. The decision to block a particular connection is based on the STP calculation of the most current Bridge and Port settings.

Now, if switch A broadcasts a packet to switch C, then switch C will drop the packet at port 2 and the broadcast will end there. Setting-up STP using values other than the defaults, can be complex. Therefore, you are advised to keep the default factory settings and STP will automatically assign root bridges/ports and block loop connections. Influencing STP to choose a particular switch as the root bridge using the Priority setting, or influencing STP to choose a particular port to block using the Port Priority and Port Cost settings is, however, relatively straight forward.

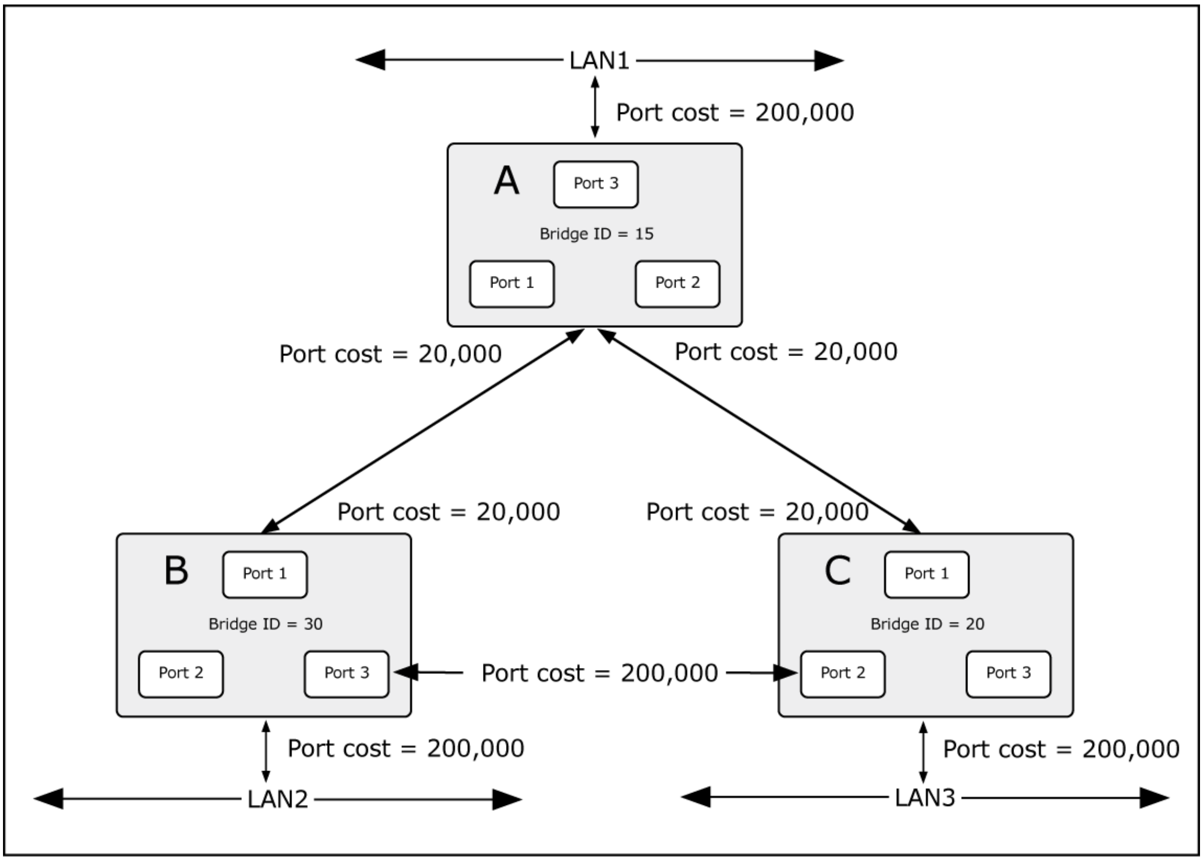

LAN1
Port cost = 200,000
A
Port 3
Bridge ID = 15
Port 1
Port 2
Port cost = 20,000
Port cost = 20,000
Port cost = 20,000
Port cost = 20,000
B
Port 1
Bridge ID = 30
Port 2
Port 3
Port cost = 200,000
C
Port 1
Bridge ID = 20
Port 2
Port 3
Port cost = 200,000
Port cost = 200,000
LAN2
LAN3

Figure 4-6-2 Before Applying the STA Rules

In this example, only the default STP values are used.

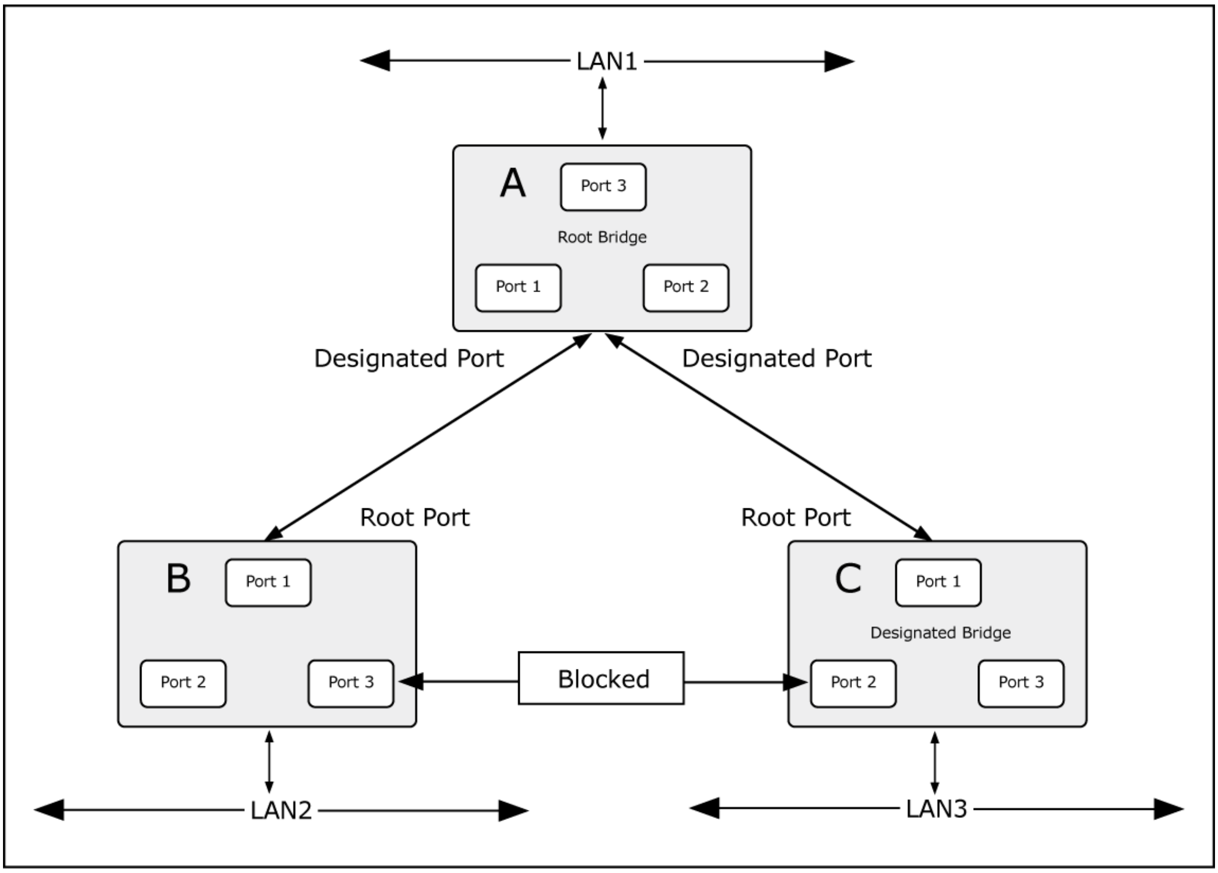

LAN1
A
Port 3
Root Bridge
Port 1
Port 2
Designated Port
Designated Port
Root Port
Root Port
B
Port 1
Port 2
Port 3
Blocked
C
Port 1
Designated Bridge
Port 2
Port 3
LAN2
LAN3

Figure 4-6-3 After Applying the STA Rules

The switch with the lowest Bridge ID (switch C) was elected the root bridge, and the ports were selected to give a high port cost between switches B and C. The two (optional) Gigabit ports (default port cost = 20,000) on switch A are connected to one (optional) Gigabit port on both switch B and C. The redundant link between switch B and C is deliberately chosen as a 100 Mbps Fast Ethernet link (default port cost = 200,000). Gigabit ports could be used, but the port cost should be increased from the default to ensure that the link between switch B and switch C is the blocked link.

This section has the following items:

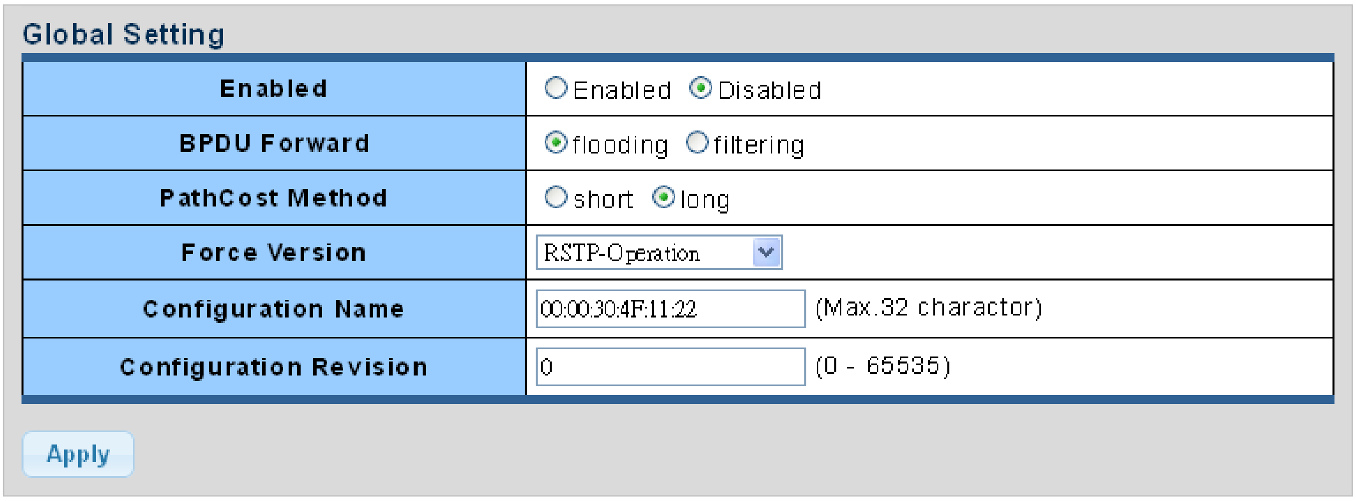
■ **STP Global Setting**	Configures STP system settings
■ **STP Port Setting**	Configuration per port STP setting
■ **CIST Instance Setting**	Configure system configuration
■ **CIST Port Setting**	Configure CIST port setting
■ **MST Instance Setting**	Configuration each MST instance setting
■ **MST Port Setting**	Configuration per port MST setting
■ **STP Statistics**	Display the STP statistics

4.6.2 STP Global Settings

This page allows you to configure STP system settings. The settings are used by all STP Bridge instances in the Switch. The Managed Switch support the following Spanning Tree protocols:

- **Compatiable -- Spanning Tree Protocol (STP):**Provides a single path between end stations, avoiding and eliminating loops.
- **Normal -- Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP):** Detects and uses of network topologies that provide faster spanning tree convergence, without creating forwarding loops.
- **Extension – Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP):** Defines an extension to RSTP to further develop the usefulness of virtual LANs (VLANs). This "Per-VLAN" Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol configures a separate Spanning Tree for each VLAN group and blocks all but one of the possible alternate paths within each Spanning Tree.

The STP Global Settings screens in Figure 4-6-4 & Figure 4-6-5 appear.


Global Setting

Enabled	○ Enabled ● Disabled
BPDU Forward	● flooding ○ filtering
PathCost Method	○ short ● long
Force Version	RSTP-Operation
Configuration Name	00:00:30:4F:11:22 (Max.32 charactor)
Configuration Revision	0 (0 - 65535)

Figure 4-6-4 Global Settings Page Screenshot

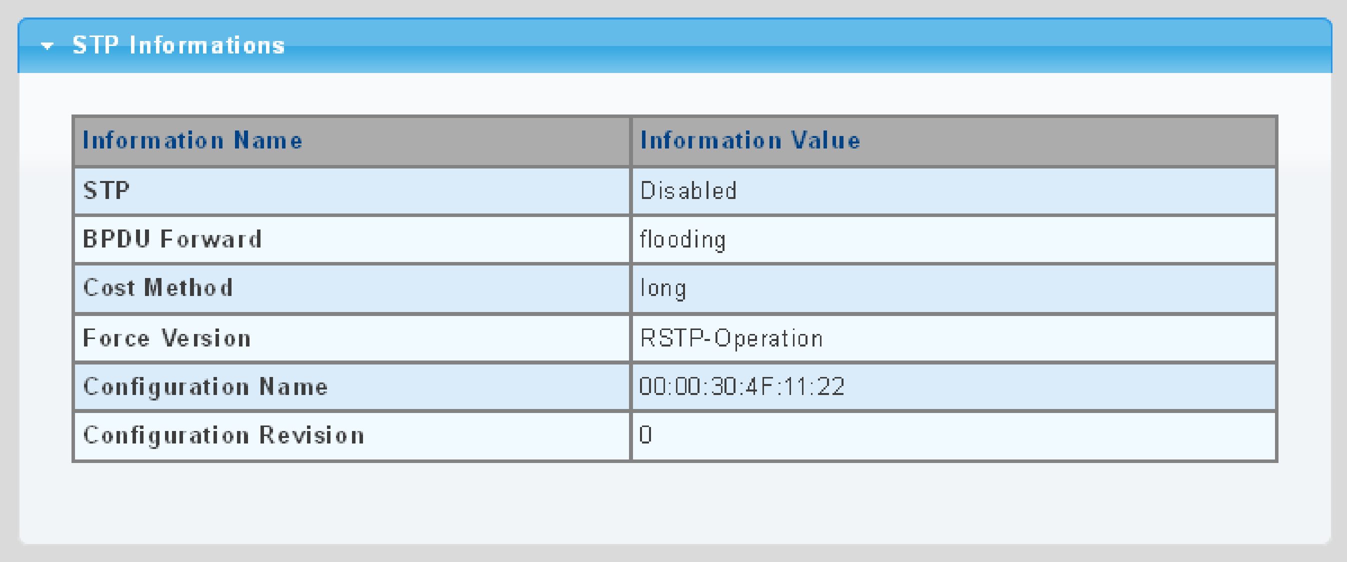
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Enable**	Enable or disable the STP function. The default value is "Disabled".
• **BPDU Forward**	Set the BPDU forward method.
• **PathCost Method**	The path cost method is used to determine the best path between devices. Therefore, lower values should be assigned to ports attached to faster media, and higher values assigned to ports with slower media.
• **Force Version**	The STP protocol version setting. Valid values are **STP-Compatible**, **RSTP-**

	Operation and **MSTP-Operation**.
- **Configuration Name**	Identifier used to identify the configuration currently being used.
- **Configuration Revision**	Identifier used to identify the configuration currently being used. The values allowed are between 0 and 65535. The default value is **0**.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.


STP Informations

Information Name	Information Value
STP	Disabled
BPDU Forward	flooding
Cost Method	long
Force Version	RSTP-Operation
Configuration Name	00:00:30:4F:11:22
Configuration Revision	0

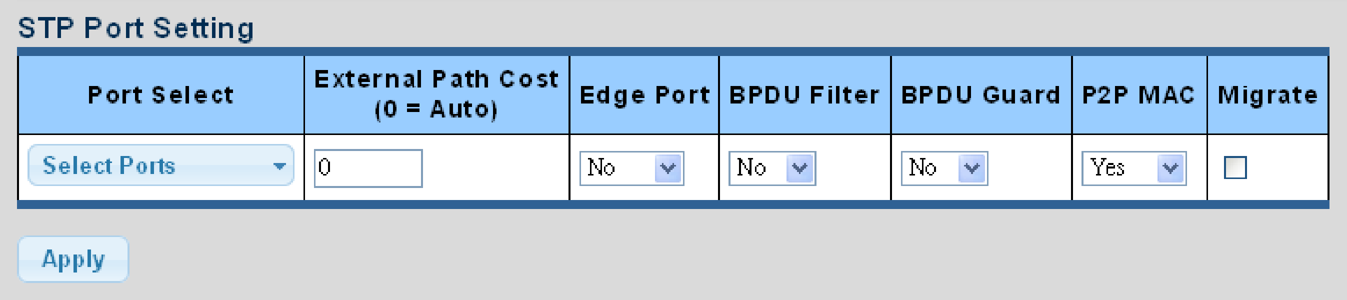
Figure 4-6-5 STP Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **STP**	Display the current STP state
- **BPDU Forward**	Display the current BPDU forward mode
- **Cost Method**	Display the current cost method
- **Force Version**	Display the current force version
- **Configuration Name**	Display the current configuration name
- **Configuration Revision**	Display the current configuration revision

4.6.3 STP Port Setting

This page allows you to configure per port STP settings. The STP Port Setting screens in Figure 4-6-6 & Figure 4-6-7 appear.



STP Port Setting

Port Select	External Path Cost (0 = Auto)	Edge Port	BPDU Filter	BPDU Guard	P2P MAC	Migrate
Select Ports	0	No	No	No	Yes	☐

Figure 4-6-6 STP Port Configuration Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list.
• **External Cost (0 = Auto)**	Controls the path cost incurred by the port. The Auto setting will set the path cost as appropriate by the physical link speed, using the 802.1D recommended values. Using the Specific setting, a user-defined value can be entered. The path cost is used when establishing the active topology of the network. Lower path cost ports are chosen as forwarding ports in favor of higher path cost ports. Valid values are in the range 1 to 200000000.
• **Edge Port**	Controls whether the operEdge flag should start as being set or cleared. (The initial operEdge state when a port is initialized).
• **BPDU Filter**	Control whether a port explicitly configured as Edge will transmit and receive BPDUs.
• **BPDU Guard**	Control whether a port explicitly configured as Edge will disable itself upon reception of a BPDU. The port will enter the error-disabled state, and will be removed from the active topology.
• **P2P MAC**	Controls whether the port connects to a point-to-point LAN rather than a shared medium. This can be automatically determined, or forced either true or false. Transition to the forwarding state is faster for point-to-point LANs than for shared media. (This applies to physical ports only. Aggregations are always *forced Point2Point*).

• **Migrate**	If at any time the switch detects STP BPDUs, including Configuration or **Topology Change Notification** BPDUs, it will automatically set the selected interface to forced STP-compatible mode. However, you can also use the Protocol Migration button to manually re-check the appropriate BPDU format (RSTP or STP-compatible) to send on the selected interfaces. (Default: **Disabled**)

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

By default, the system automatically detects the speed and duplex mode used on each port, and configures the path cost according to the values shown below. Path cost "0" is used to indicate auto-configuration mode. When the short path cost method is selected and the default path cost recommended by the IEEE 8021w standard exceeds 65,535, the default is set to 65,535.

Port Type	IEEE 802.1D-1998	IEEE 802.1w-2001
Ethernet	50-600	200,000-20,000,000
Fast Ethernet	10-60	20,000-2,000,000
Gigabit Ethernet	3-10	2,000-200,000

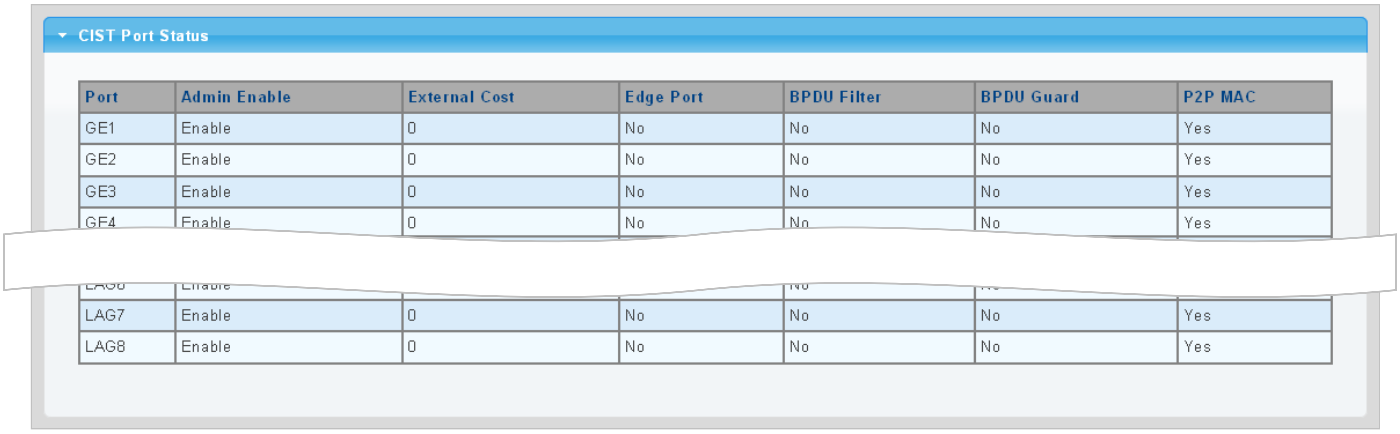
Table 4-6-1 Recommended STP Path Cost Range

Port Type	Link Type	IEEE 802.1D-1998	IEEE 802.1w-2001
Ethernet	Half Duplex	100	2,000,000
	Full Duplex	95	1,999,999
	Trunk	90	1,000,000
Fast Ethernet	Half Duplex	19	200,000
	Full Duplex	18	100,000
	Trunk	15	50,000
Gigabit Ethernet	Full Duplex	4	10,000
	Trunk	3	5,000

Table 4-6-2 Recommended STP Path Costs

Port Type	Link Type	IEEE 802.1w-2001
Ethernet	Half Duplex	2,000,000
	Full Duplex	1,000,000
	Trunk	500,000
Fast Ethernet	Half Duplex	200,000
	Full Duplex	100,000
	Trunk	50,000
Gigabit Ethernet	Full Duplex	10,000
	Trunk	5,000

Table 4-6-3 Default STP Path Costs



Port	Admin Enable	External Cost	Edge Port	BPDU Filter	BPDU Guard	P2P MAC
GE1	Enable	0	No	No	No	Yes
GE2	Enable	0	No	No	No	Yes
GE3	Enable	0	No	No	No	Yes
GE4	Enable	0	No	No	No	Yes
LAG7	Enable	0	No	No	No	Yes
LAG8	Enable	0	No	No	No	Yes

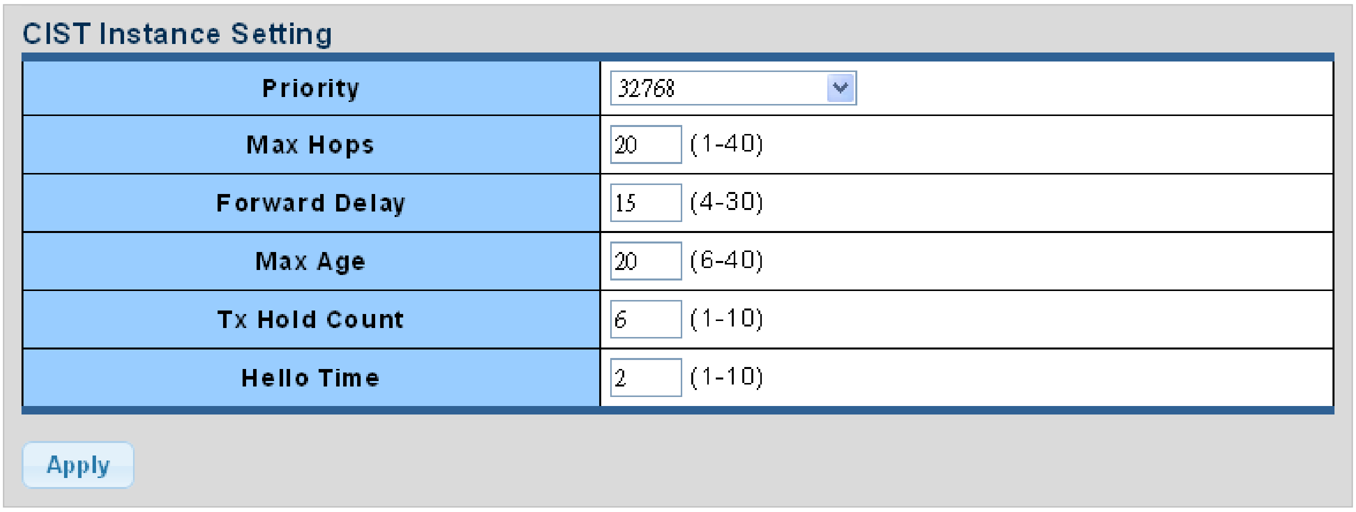
Figure 4-6-7 STP Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical STP port.
• **Admin Enable**	Display the current STP port mode status
• **External Cost**	Display the current external cost.
• **Edge Port**	Display the current edge port status.
• **BPDU Filter**	Display the current BPDU filter configuration.
• **BPDU Guard**	Display the current BPDU guard configuration.
• **P2P MAC**	Display the current P2P MAC status.

4.6.4 CIST Instance Setting

This Page allows you to configure CIST instance settings. The CIST Instance Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-6-8 & Figure 4-6-9 appear.



CIST Instance Setting

Priority	32768
Max Hops	20 (1-40)
Forward Delay	15 (4-30)
Max Age	20 (6-40)
Tx Hold Count	6 (1-10)
Hello Time	2 (1-10)

Figure 4-6-8: CIST Instance Setting Page Screenshot

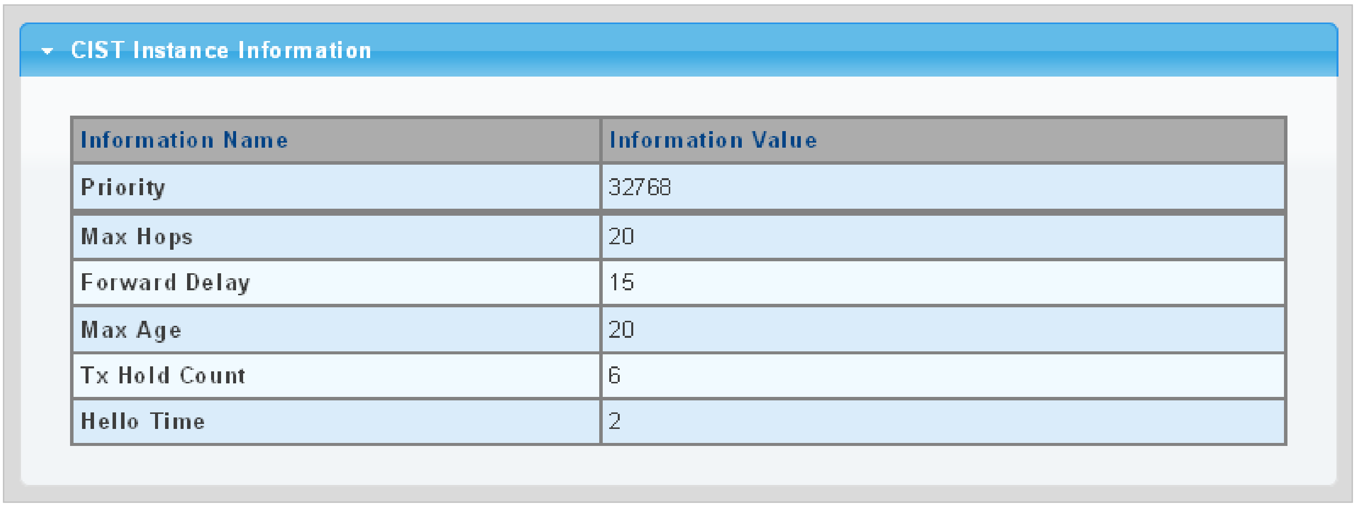
The Page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **priority**	Controls the bridge priority. Lower numeric values have better priority. The bridge priority plus the MSTI instance number, concatenated with the 6-byte MAC address of the switch forms a Bridge Identifier. For MSTP operation, this is the priority of the CIST. Otherwise, this is the priority of the STP/RSTP bridge.
• **Max Hops**	This defines the initial value of remaining Hops for MSTI information generated at the boundary of an MSTI region. It defines how many bridges a root bridge can distribute its BPDU information. Valid values are in the range 6 to 40 hops.
• **Forward Delay**	The delay used by STP Bridges to transition Root and Designated Ports to Forwarding (used in STP compatible mode). Valid values are in the range 4 to 30 seconds -Default: 15 -Minimum: The higher of 4 or [(Max. Message Age / 2) + 1] -Maximum: 30
• **Max Age**	The maximum age of the information transmitted by the Bridge when it is the Root Bridge. Valid values are in the range 6 to 40 seconds. -Default: 20 -Minimum: The higher of 6 or [2 x (Hello Time + 1)]. -Maximum: The lower of 40 or [2 x (Forward Delay -1)]

- **Tx Hold Count**	The number of BPDU's a bridge port can send per second. When exceeded, transmission of the next BPDU will be delayed. Valid values are in the range 1 to 10 BPDU's per second.
- **Hello Time**	The time that controls the switch to send out the BPDU packet to check STP current status. Enter a value between 1 through 10.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



CIST Instance Information

Information Name	Information Value
Priority	32768
Max Hops	20
Forward Delay	15
Max Age	20
Tx Hold Count	6
Hello Time	2

Figure 4-6-9 CIST Instance Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Priority**	Display the current CIST priority
- **Max Hop**	Display the current Max. hop
- **Forward Delay**	Display the current forward delay
- **Max. Age**	Display the current Max. Age
- **Tx Hold Count**	Display the current Tx hold count
- **Hello Time**	Display the current hello time

4.6.5 CIST Port Setting

This page allows you to configure per port CIST priority and cost. The CIST Port Setting and Status screens in Figure 4-6-10 & Figure 4-6-11 appear.

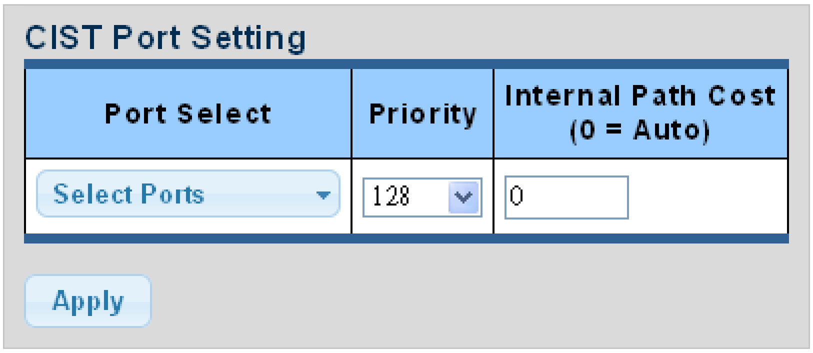


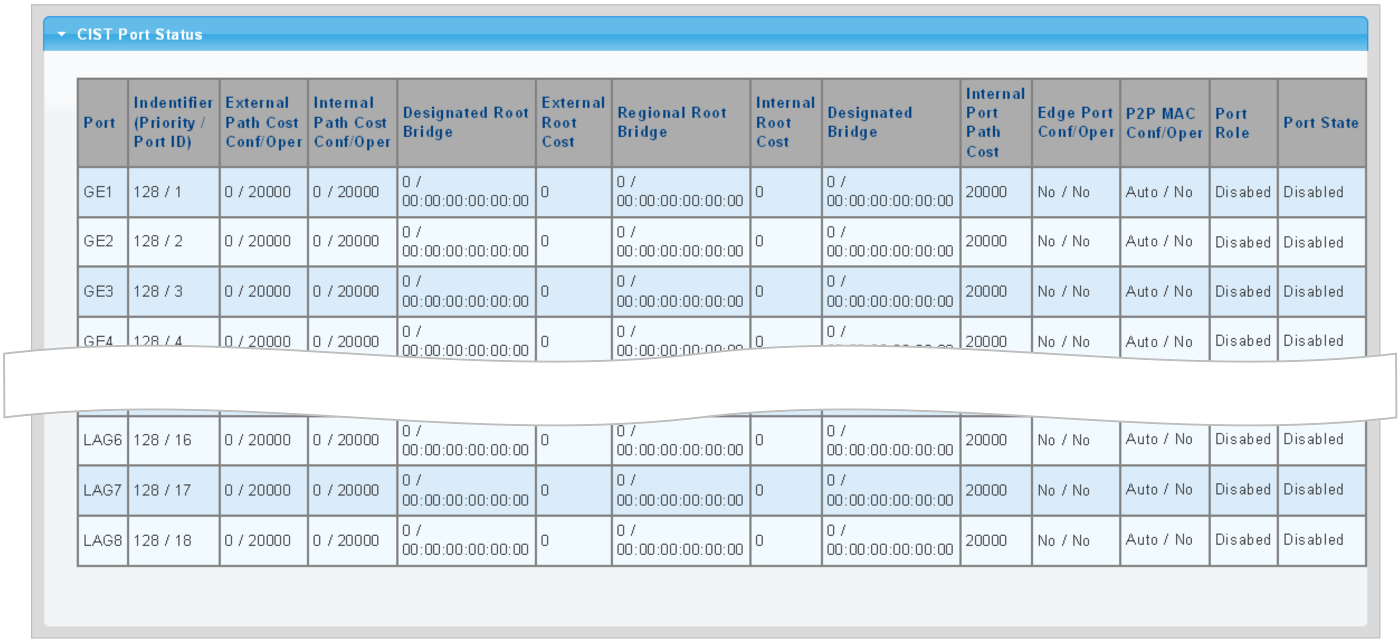
Figure 4-6-10 CIST Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list.
• **Priority**	Controls the port priority. This can be used to control priority of ports having identical port cost. (See above). Default: **128** Range: 0-240, in steps of 16
• **Internal Path Cost (0 = Auto)**	Controls the path cost incurred by the port. The **Auto** setting will set the path cost as appropriate by the physical link speed, using the 802.1D recommended values. Using the **Specific** setting, a user-defined value can be entered. The path cost is used when establishing the active topology of the network. Lower path cost ports are chosen as forwarding ports in favor of higher path cost ports. Valid values are in the range 1 to 200000000.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



CIST Port Status

Port	Indentifier (Priority / Port ID)	External Path Cost Conf/Oper	Internal Path Cost Conf/Oper	Designated Root Bridge	External Root Cost	Regional Root Bridge	Internal Root Cost	Designated Bridge	Internal Port Path Cost	Edge Port Conf/Oper	P2P MAC Conf/Oper	Port Role	Port State
GE1	128 / 1	0 / 20000	0 / 20000	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	20000	No / No	Auto / No	Disabed	Disabled
GE2	128 / 2	0 / 20000	0 / 20000	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	20000	No / No	Auto / No	Disabed	Disabled
GE3	128 / 3	0 / 20000	0 / 20000	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	20000	No / No	Auto / No	Disabed	Disabled
GE4	128 / 4	0 / 20000	0 / 20000	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 /	20000	No / No	Auto / No	Disabed	Disabled
LAG6	128 / 16	0 / 20000	0 / 20000	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	20000	No / No	Auto / No	Disabed	Disabled
LAG7	128 / 17	0 / 20000	0 / 20000	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	20000	No / No	Auto / No	Disabed	Disabled
LAG8	128 / 18	0 / 20000	0 / 20000	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	0	0 / 00:00:00:00:00:00	20000	No / No	Auto / No	Disabed	Disabled

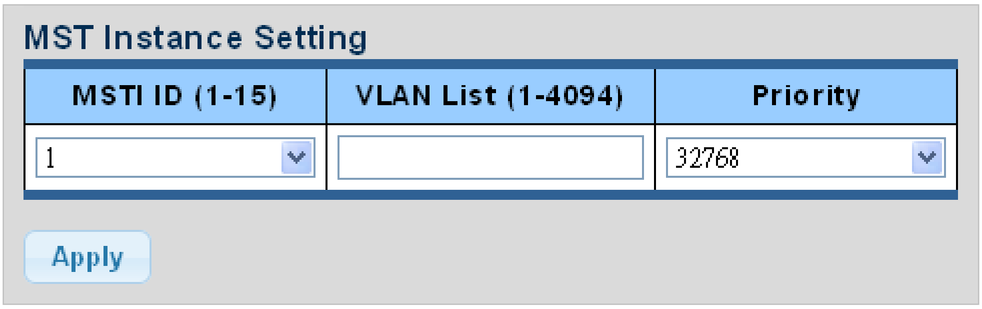
Figure 4-6-11 CIST Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical STP port
• **Identifier (Priority / Port ID)**	Display the current identifier (Priority / Port ID)
• **External Path Cost Conf/Oper**	Display the current external path cost conf/oper
• **Internal Path Cost Conf/Oper**	Display the current internal path cost/oper
• **Designated Root Bridge**	Display the current designated root bridge
• **External Root Cost**	Display the current external root cost
• **Regional Root Bridge**	Display the current regional root bridge
• **Internal Root Cost**	Display the current internal root cost
• **Designated Bridge**	Display the current designated bridge
• **Internal Port Path Cost**	Display the current internal port path cost
• **Edge Port Conf/Oper**	Display the current edge port conf/oper
• **P2P MAC Conf/Oper**	Display the current P2P MAC conf/oper
• **Port Role**	Display the current port role
• **Port State**	Display the current port state

4.6.6 MST Instance Setting

This page allows the user to configure MST Instance Configuration. The MST Instance Setting, Information and Status screens in Figure 4-6-12, Figure 4-6-13 & Figure 4-6-14 appear.



MST Instance Setting

MSTI ID (1-15)	VLAN List (1-4094)	Priority
1		32768

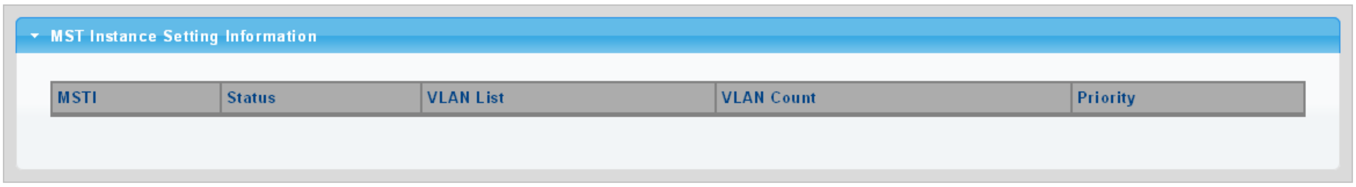
Figure 4-6-12 MST Instance Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **MSTI ID**	Allow to assign MSTI ID. The range for the MSTI ID is 1-15.
• **VLAN List (1-4096)**	Allow to assign VLAN list to special MSTI ID. The range for the VLAN list is 1-4094.
• **Priority**	Controls the bridge priority. Lower numerical values have better priority. The bridge priority plus the MSTI instance number, concatenated with the 6-byte MAC address of the switch forms a Bridge Identifier.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



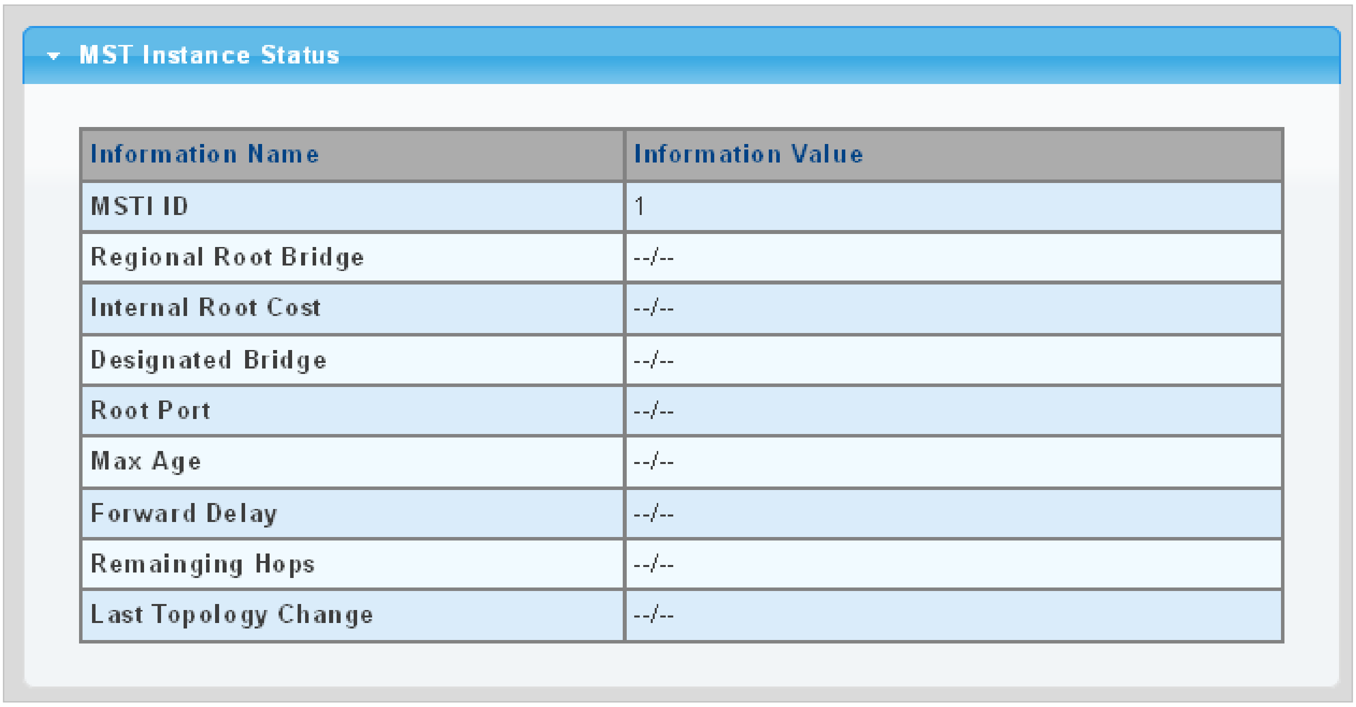
MST Instance Setting Information

MSTI	Status	VLAN List	VLAN Count	Priority

Figure 4-6-13 MSTI Instance Setting Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **MSTI**	Display the current MSTI entry
• **Status**	Display the current MSTI status
• **VLAN List**	Display the current VLAN list
• **VLAN Count**	Display the current VLAN count
• **Priority**	Display the current MSTI priority



Information Name	Information Value
MSTI ID	1
Regional Root Bridge	--/--
Internal Root Cost	--/--
Designated Bridge	--/--
Root Port	--/--
Max Age	--/--
Forward Delay	--/--
Remainging Hops	--/--
Last Topology Change	--/--

Figure 4-6-14 MST Instance Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

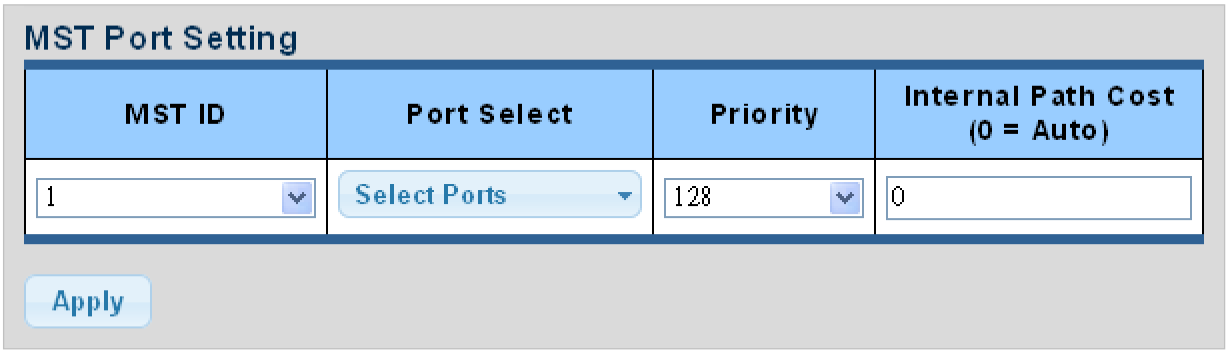
Object	Description
• **MSTI ID**	Display the MSTI ID.
• **Regional Root Bridge**	Display the current designated root bridge
• **Internal Root Cost**	Display the current internal root cost
• **Designated Bridge**	Display the current designated bridge
• **Root Port**	Display the current root port.
• **Max Age**	Display the current max. age.
• **Forward Delay**	Display the current forward delay.
• **Remaining Hops**	Display the current remaining hops.
• **Last Topology Change**	Display the current last topology change.

4.6.7 MST Port Setting

This page allows the user to inspect the current STP MSTI port configurations, and possibly change them as well.

A MSTI port is a virtual port, which is instantiated separately for each active CIST (physical) port for each MSTI instance configured and applicable for the port. The MSTI instance must be selected before displaying actual MSTI port configuration options.

This page contains MSTI port settings for physical and aggregated ports. The aggregation settings are global. The MSTI Ports Setting screens in Figure 4-6-15 & Figure 4-6-16 appear.


MST Port Setting

MST ID	Port Select	Priority	Internal Path Cost (0 = Auto)
1	Select Ports	128	0

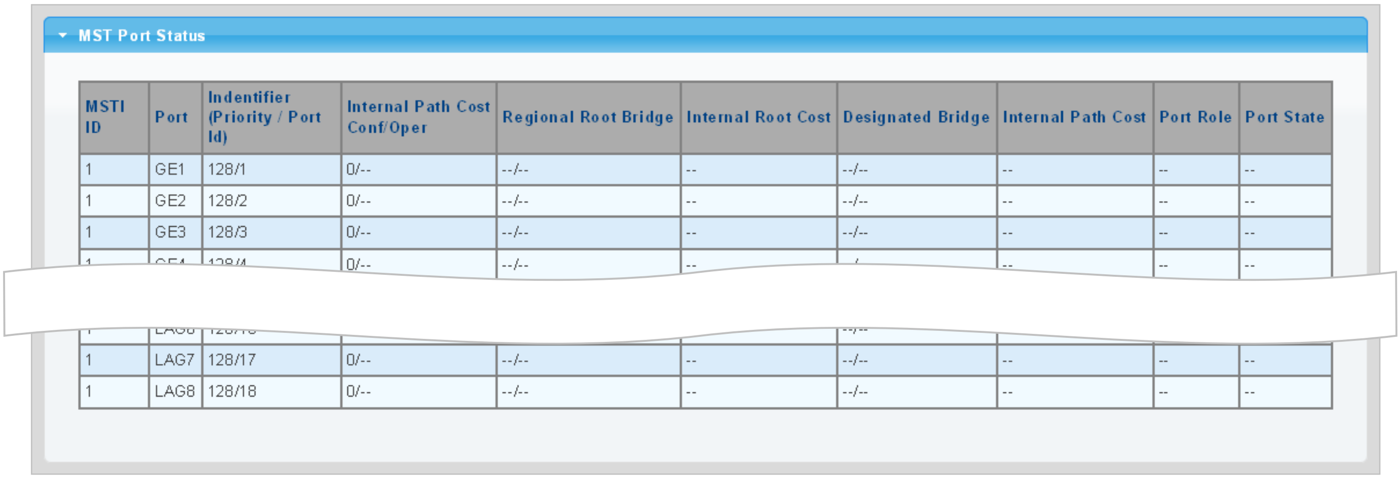
Figure 4-6-15 MST Port Configuration Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **MST ID**	Enter the special MST ID to configure path cost & priority.
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list.
• **Priority**	Controls the port priority. This can be used to control priority of ports having identical port cost.
• **Internal Path Cost (0 = Auto)**	Controls the path cost incurred by the port. The **Auto** setting will set the path cost as appropriate by the physical link speed, using the 802.1D recommended values. Using the Specific setting, a user-defined value can be entered. The path cost is used when establishing the active topology of the network. Lower path cost ports are chosen as forwarding ports in favor of higher path cost ports. Valid values are in the range 1 to 200000000.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



MST Port Status

MSTI ID	Port	Indentifier (Priority / Port Id)	Internal Path Cost Conf/Oper	Regional Root Bridge	Internal Root Cost	Designated Bridge	Internal Path Cost	Port Role	Port State
1	GE1	128/1	0/--	--/--	--	--/--	--	--	--
1	GE2	128/2	0/--	--/--	--	--/--	--	--	--
1	GE3	128/3	0/--	--/--	--	--/--	--	--	--
1	GE4	128/4	0/--	--/--	--	--/--	--	--	--
1	LAG7	128/17	0/--	--/--	--	--/--	--	--	--
1	LAG8	128/18	0/--	--/--	--	--/--	--	--	--

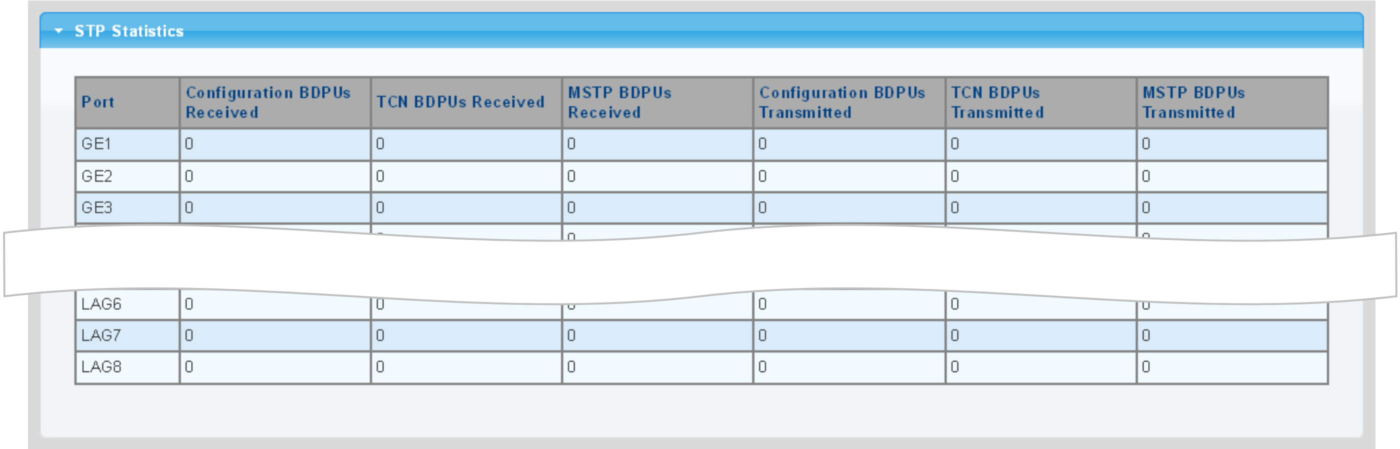
Figure 4-6-16 MST Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **MSTI ID**	Display the current MSTI ID
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical STP port
• **Identifier (Priority / Port ID)**	Display the current identifier (priority / port ID)
• **Internal Path Cost Conf/Oper**	Display the current internal path cost configuration / operation
• **Regional Root Bridge**	Display the current regional root bridget
• **Internal Root Cost**	Display the current internal root cost
• **Designated Bridge**	Display the current designated bridge
• **Internal Path Cost**	Display the current internal path cost
• **Port Role**	Display the current port role
• **Port State**	Display the current port state

4.6.8 STP Statistics

This page displays STP statistics. The STP statistics screen in Figure 4-6-17 appears.



STP Statistics

Port	Configuration BDPUs Received	TCN BDPUs Received	MSTP BDPUs Received	Configuration BDPUs Transmitted	TCN BDPUs Transmitted	MSTP BDPUs Transmitted
GE1	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE2	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE3	0	0	0	0	0	0
LAG6	0	0	0	0	0	0
LAG7	0	0	0	0	0	0
LAG8	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 4-6-17 STP Statistics Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

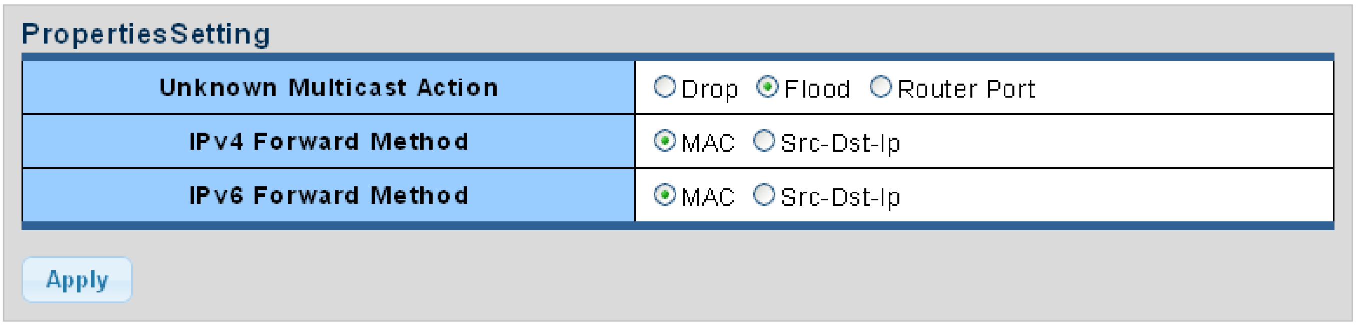
Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical STP port
• **Configuration BPDUs Received**	Display the current configuration BPDUs received
• **TCN BPDUs Received**	Display the current TCN BPDUs received
• **MSTP BPDUs Received**	Display the current MSTP BPDUs received
• **Configuration BPDUs Transmitted**	Display the configuration BPDUs transmitted
• **TCN BPDUs Transmitted**	Display the current TCN BPDUs transmitted
• **MSTP BPDUs Transmitted**	Display the current BPDUs transmitted

4.7 Multicast

4.7.1 Properties

This page provides multicast properties related configuration.

The multicast Properties and Information screen in Figure 4-7-1 & Figure 4-7-2 appear.



PropertiesSetting

Unknown Multicast Action	○ Drop ● Flood ○ Router Port
IPv4 Forward Method	● MAC ○ Src-Dst-Ip
IPv6 Forward Method	● MAC ○ Src-Dst-Ip

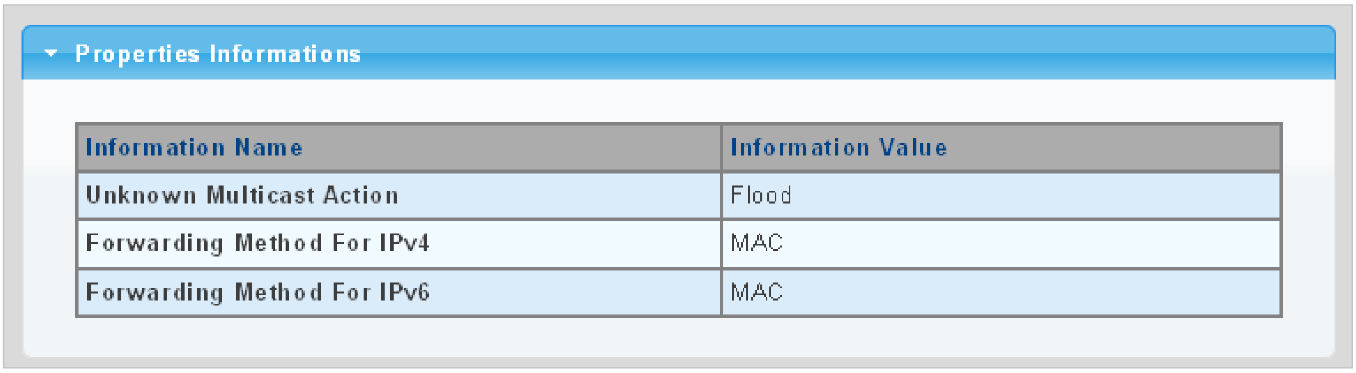
Figure 4-7-1 Properties Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Unknown Multicast Action**	Unknown multicast traffic method: **Drop**, **flood** or send to **router port**.
• **IPv4 Forward Method**	Configure the IPv4 multicast forward method
• **IPv6 Forward Method**	Configure the IPv6 multicast forward method

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Properties Informations

Information Name	Information Value
Unknown Multicast Action	Flood
Forwarding Method For IPv4	MAC
Forwarding Method For IPv6	MAC

Figure 4-7-2 Properties Information Page Screenshot

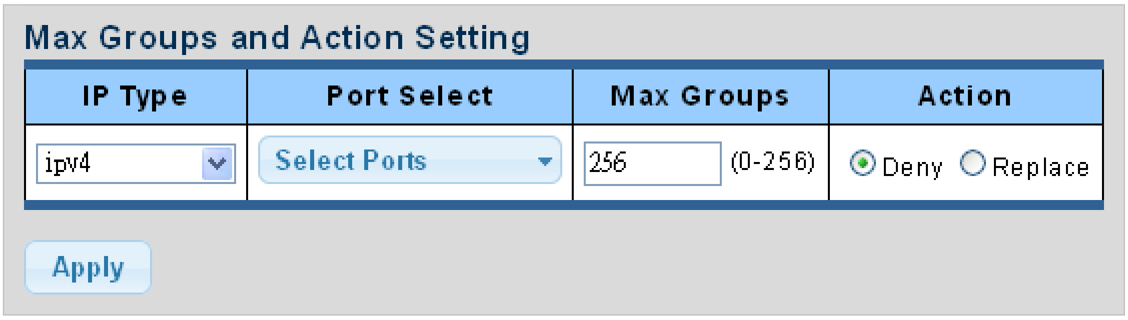
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Unknown Multicast Action**	Display the current unknown multicast action status
• **Forward Method For IPv4**	Display the current IPv4 multicast forward method
• **Forward Method For IPv6**	Display the current IPv6 multicast forward method

4.7.2 Multicast Throttling Setting

Multicast throttling sets a maximum number of multicast groups that a port can join at the same time. When the maximum number of groups is reached on a port, the switch can take one of two actions; either "deny" or "replace". If the action is set to deny, any new multicast join reports will be dropped. If the action is set to replace, the switch randomly removes an existing group and replaces it with the new multicast group.

Once you have configured multicast profiles, you can assign them to interfaces on the Managed Switch. Also you can set the multicast throttling number to limit the number of multicast groups an interface can join at the same time. The MAX Group and Information screens in Figure 4-7-3 & Figure 4-7-4 appear.



Max Groups and Action Setting

IP Type	Port Select	Max Groups	Action
ipv4	Select Ports	256 (0-256)	● Deny ○ Replace

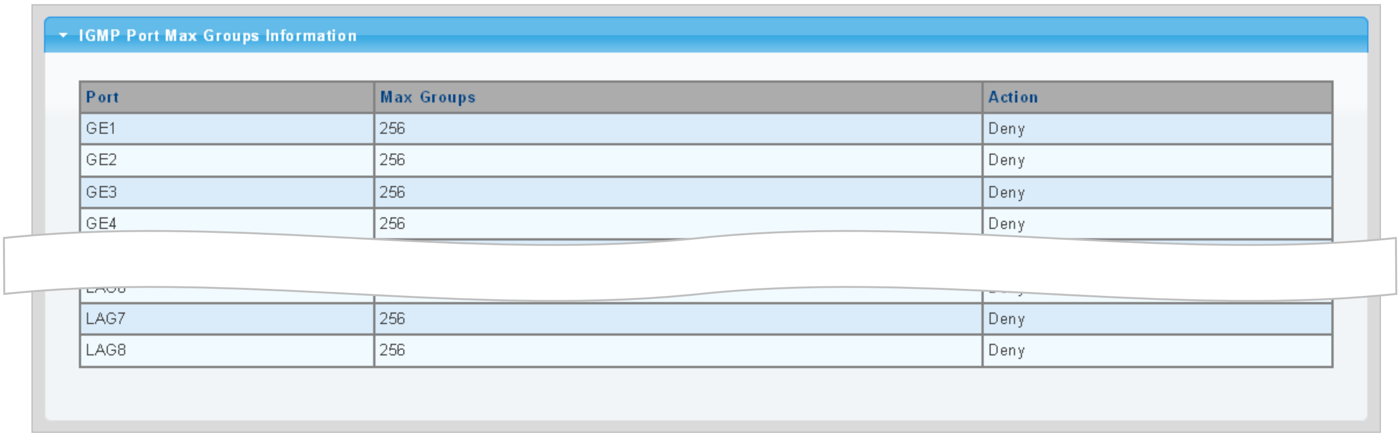
Figure 4-7-3 Max Groups and Action Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **IP Type**	Select IPv4 or IPv6 from this drop-down list
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **Max Groups**	Sets the maximum number of multicast groups an interface can join at the same time. Range: 0-256; Default: **256**
• **Action**	Sets the action to take when the maximum number of multicast groups for the interface has been exceeded. (Default: Deny) -**Deny** - The new multicast group join report is dropped -**Replace** - The new multicast group replaces an existing group

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



IGMP Port Max Groups Information

Port	Max Groups	Action
GE1	256	Deny
GE2	256	Deny
GE3	256	Deny
GE4	256	Deny
LAG7	256	Deny
LAG8	256	Deny

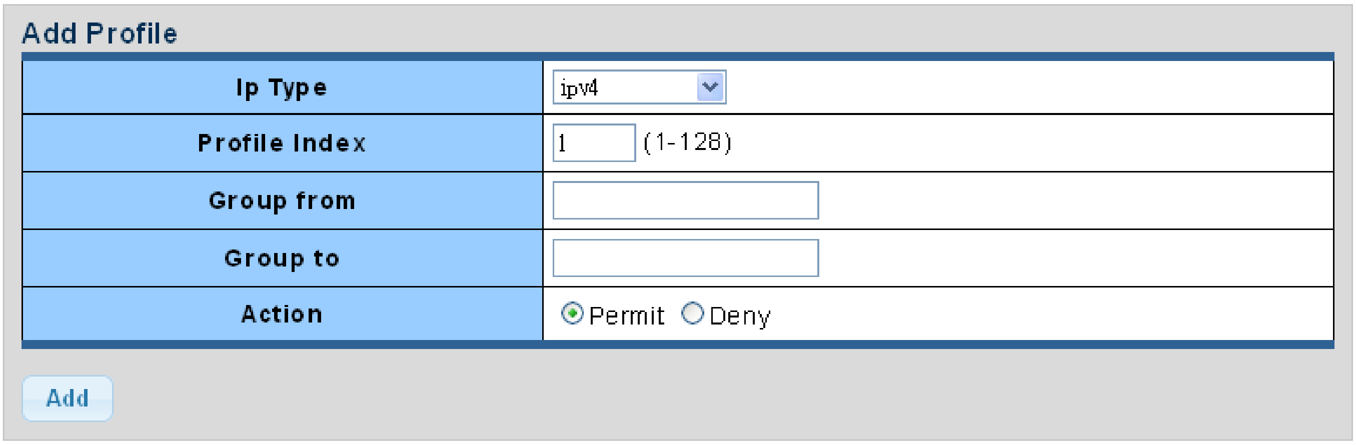
Figure 4-7-4 IGMP Port Max Groups Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Max Groups**	Display the current Max groups
- **Action**	Display the current action

4.7.3 Multicast Profile Setting

The Add Profile and Profile Status screens in Figure 4-7-5 & Figure 4-7-6 appear.



Add Profile

Ip Type	ipv4
Profile Index	1 (1-128)
Group from	
Group to	
Action	● Permit ○ Deny

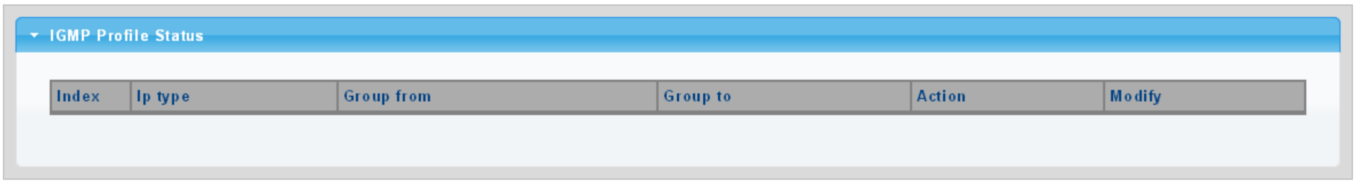
Figure 4-7-5 Add Profile Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
• **IP Type**	Select IPv4 or IPv6 from this drop-down list	
• **Profile Index**	Indicates the ID of this particular profile	
• **Group from**	Specifies multicast groups to include in the profile. Specify a multicast group range by entering a start IP address.	
• **Group to**	Specifies multicast groups to include in the profile. Specify a multicast group range by entering an end IP address.	
• **Action**	Sets the access mode of the profile; either **permit** or **deny**.	
	- Permit	Multicast join reports are processed when a multicast group falls within the controlled range.
	- Deny	When the access mode is set to, multicast join reports are only processed when the multicast group is not in the controlled range.

Buttons

Add: Click to add multicast profile entry.



IGMP Profile Status

Index	Ip type	Group from	Group to	Action	Modify

Figure 4-7-6 IGMP/MLD Profile Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Index**	Display the current index
• **IP Type**	Display the current IP Type
• **Group from**	Display the current group from
• **Group to**	Display the current group to
• **Action**	Display the current action
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit parameter. Click Delete to delete the MLD/IGMP profile entry.

4.8 IGMP Snooping

The **Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)** lets host and routers share information about multicast groups memberships. IGMP snooping is a switch feature that monitors the exchange of IGMP messages and copies them to the CPU for feature processing. The overall purpose of IGMP Snooping is to limit the forwarding of multicast frames to only ports that are a member of the multicast group.

About the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) Snooping

Computers and network devices that want to receive multicast transmissions need to inform nearby routers that they will become members of a multicast group. The **Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)** is used to communicate this information. IGMP is also used to periodically check the multicast group for members that are no longer active. In the case where there is more than one multicast router on a sub network, one router is elected as the 'queried'. This router then keeps track of the membership of the multicast groups that have active members. The information received from IGMP is then used to determine if multicast packets should be forwarded to a given sub network or not. The router can check, using IGMP, to see if there is at least one member of a multicast group on a given subnet work. If there are no members on a sub network, packets will not be forwarded to that sub network.

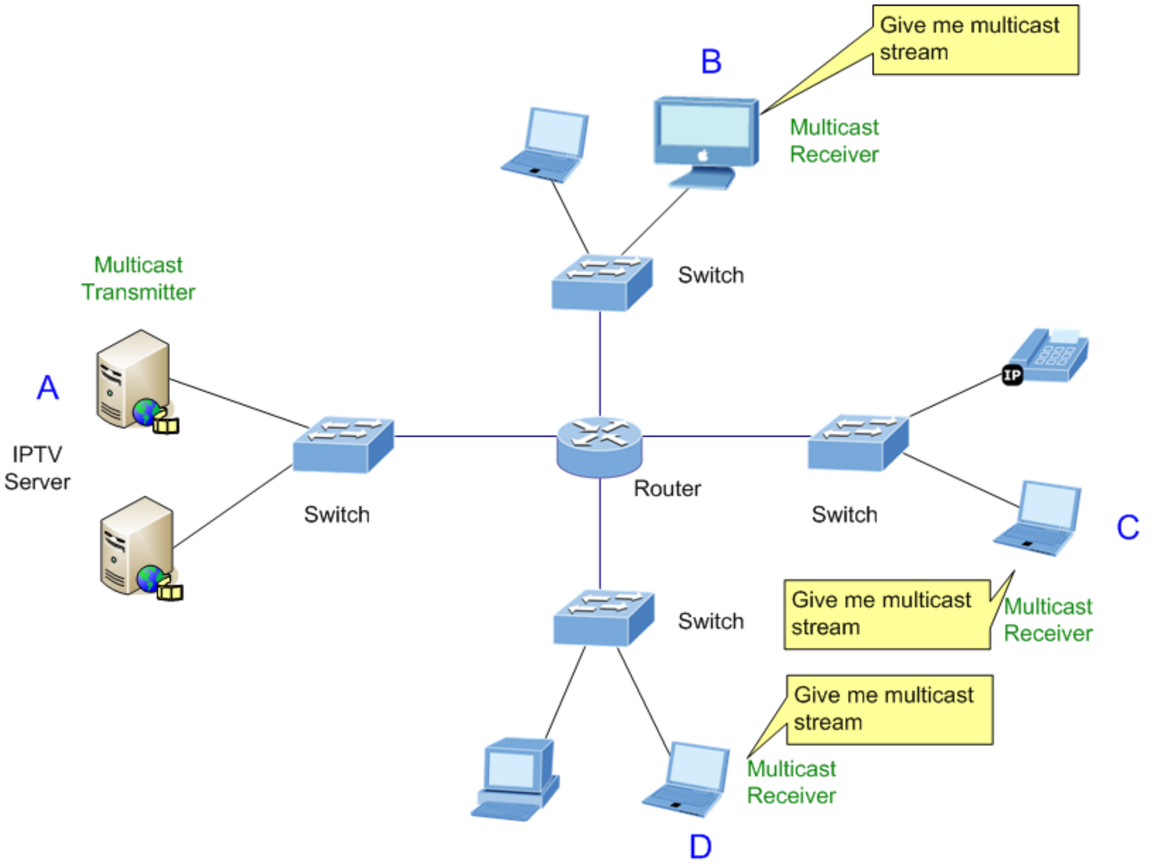

B
Give me multicast stream
Multicast Receiver
Switch
Multicast Transmitter
A
IPTV Server
Switch
Router
Switch
IP
C
Switch
Give me multicast stream
Multicast Receiver
Give me multicast stream
Multicast Receiver
D

Figure 4-8-1 Multicast Service

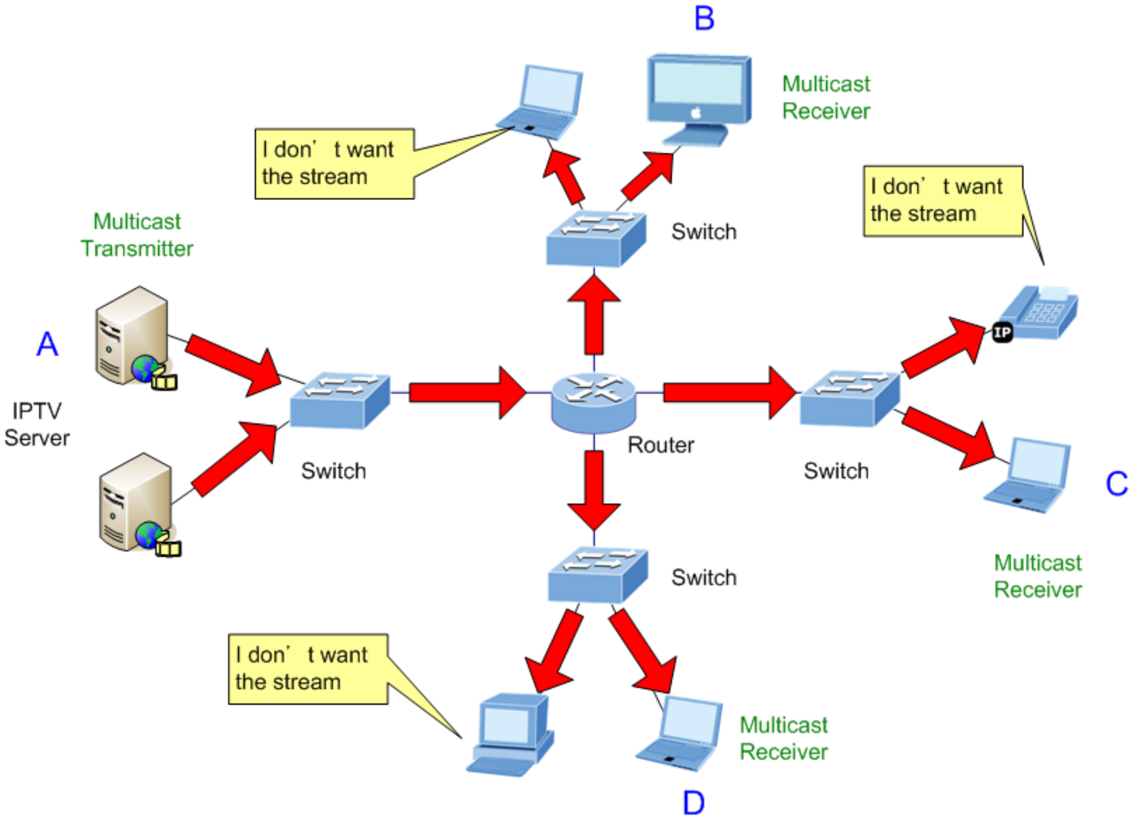

B
Multicast
Receiver
I don' t want
the stream
Switch
I don' t want
the stream
Multicast
Transmitter
A
IPTV
Server
Switch
Router
Switch
C
Multicast
Receiver
Switch
I don' t want
the stream
Multicast
Receiver
D

Figure 4-8-2 Multicast Flooding

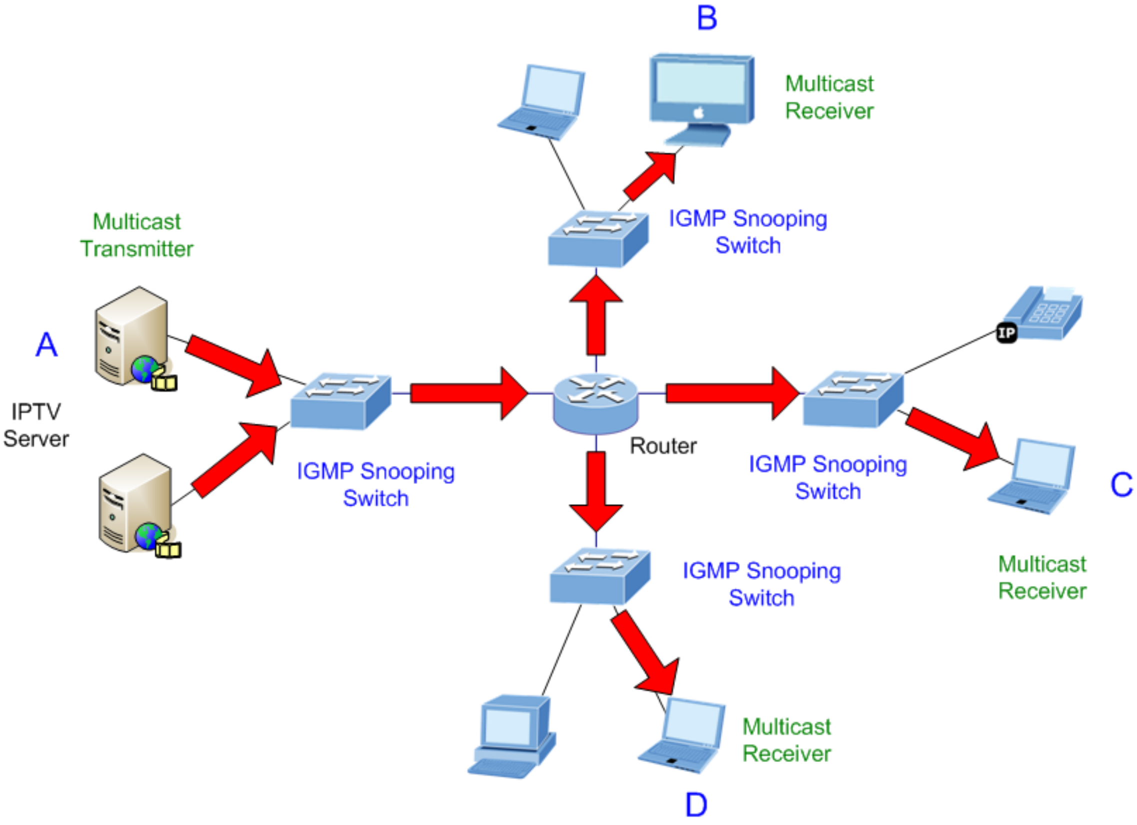

B
Multicast
Receiver
Multicast
Transmitter
IGMP Snooping
Switch
A
IPTV
Server
IGMP Snooping
Switch
Router
IGMP Snooping
Switch
C
IGMP Snooping
Switch
Multicast
Receiver
Multicast
Receiver
D

Figure 4-8-3 IGMP Snooping Multicast Stream Control

IGMP Versions 1 and 2

Multicast groups allow members to join or leave at any time. IGMP provides the method for members and multicast routers to communicate when joining or leaving a multicast group.

IGMP version 1 is defined in RFC 1112. It has a fixed packet size and no optional data.

The format of an IGMP packet is shown below:

IGMP Message Format

Octets

0 8 16 31

Type **Response Time** **Checksum**

Group Address (all zeros if this is a query)

The IGMP Type codes are shown below:

Type	Meaning
0x11	Membership Query (if Group Address is 0.0.0.0)
0x11	Specific Group Membership Query (if Group Address is Present)
0x16	**Membership Report (version 2)**
0x17	**Leave a Group (version 2)**
0x12	**Membership Report (version 1)**

IGMP packets enable multicast routers to keep track of the membership of multicast groups, on their respective sub networks. The following outlines what is communicated between a multicast router and a multicast group member using IGMP.

A host sends an IGMP **"report"** to join a group

A host will never send a report when it wants to leave a group (for version 1).

A host will send a **"leave"** report when it wants to leave a group (for version 2).

Multicast routers send IGMP queries (to the all-hosts group address: 224.0.0.1) periodically to see whether any group members exist on their sub networks. If there is no response from a particular group, the router assumes that there are no group members on the network.

The Time-to-Live (TTL) field of query messages is set to 1 so that the queries will not be forwarded to other sub networks.

IGMP version 2 introduces some enhancements such as a method to elect a multicast queried for each LAN, an explicit leave message, and query messages that are specific to a given group.

The states a computer will go through to join or to leave a multicast group are shown below:

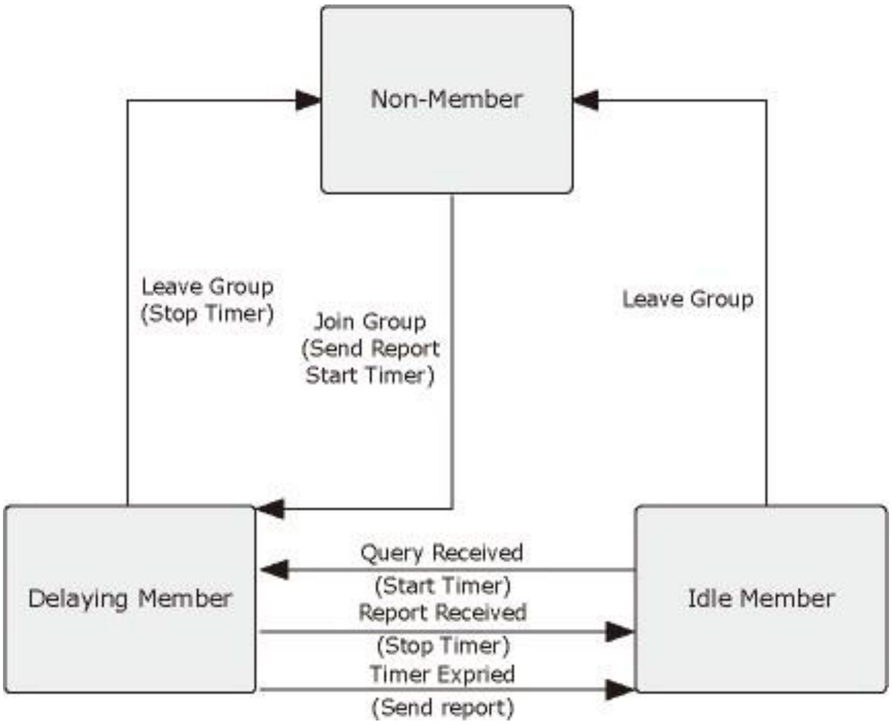

Non-Member
Leave Group
(Stop Timer)
Join Group
(Send Report
Start Timer)
Leave Group
Delaying Member
Query Received
(Start Timer)
Report Received
(Stop Timer)
Timer Expried
(Send report)
Idle Member

Figure 4-8-4 IGMP State Transitions

- **IGMP Querier –**

A router, or multicast-enabled switch, can periodically ask their hosts if they want to receive multicast traffic. If there is more than one router/switch on the LAN performing IP multicasting, one of these devices is elected "**querier**" and assumes the role of querying the LAN for group members. It then propagates the service requests on to any upstream multicast switch/router to ensure that it will continue to receive the multicast service.

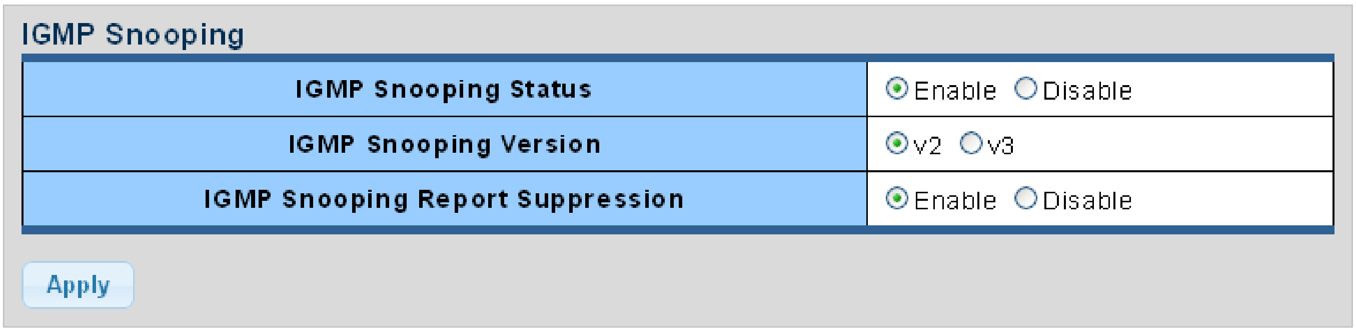
Note

Multicast routers use this information, along with a multicast routing protocol such as DVMRP or PIM, to support IP multicasting across the Internet.

4.8.1 IGMP Setting

This page provides IGMP Snooping related configuration.

Most of the settings are global, whereas the Router Port configuration is related to the current unit, as reflected by the page header. The IGMP Snooping Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-8-5, Figure 4-8-6 & Figure 4-8-7 appear.



IGMP Snooping

IGMP Snooping Status	● Enable ○ Disable
IGMP Snooping Version	● v2 ○ v3
IGMP Snooping Report Suppression	● Enable ○ Disable

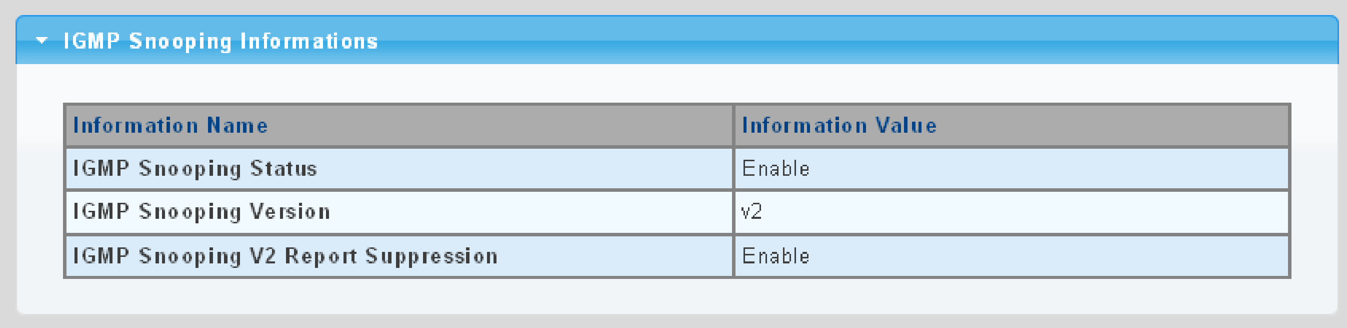
Figure 4-8-5 IGMP Snooping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **IGMP Snooping Status**	Enable or disable the IGMP snooping. The default value is "Disabled".
• **IGMP Snooping Version**	Sets the IGMP Snooping operation version. Possible versions are: ■ **v2**: Set IGMP Snooping supported IGMP version 2. ■ **v3**: Set IGMP Snooping supported IGMP version 3.
• **IGMP Snooping Report Suppression**	Limits the membership report traffic sent to multicast-capable routers. When you disable report suppression, all IGMP reports are sent as is to multicast-capable routers. The default is enabled.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



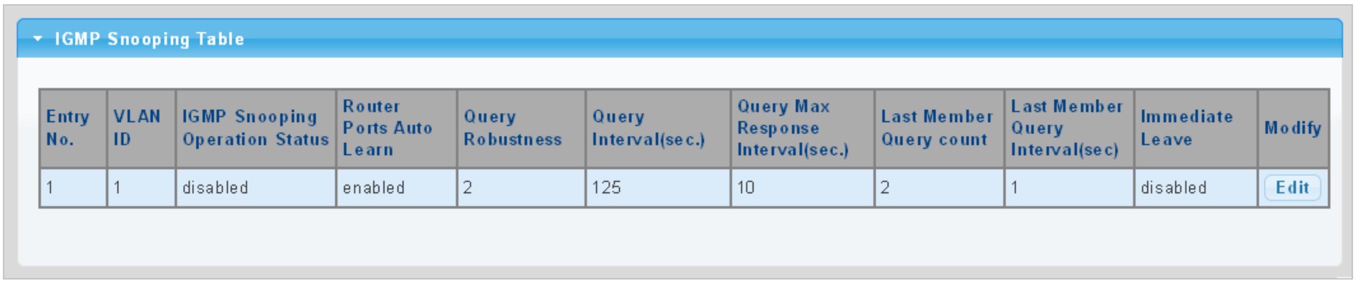
IGMP Snooping Informations

Information Name	Information Value
IGMP Snooping Status	Enable
IGMP Snooping Version	v2
IGMP Snooping V2 Report Suppression	Enable

Figure 4-8-6 IGMP Snooping Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **IGMP Snooping Status**	Display the current IGMP snooping status.
- **IGMP Snooping Version**	Display the current IGMP snooping version.
- **IGMP Snooping V2 Report Suppression**	Display the current IGMP snooping v2 report suppression.



Entry No.	VLAN ID	IGMP Snooping Operation Status	Router Ports Auto Learn	Query Robustness	Query Interval(sec.)	Query Max Response Interval(sec.)	Last Member Query count	Last Member Query Interval(sec)	Immediate Leave	Modify
1	1	disabled	enabled	2	125	10	2	1	disabled	Edit

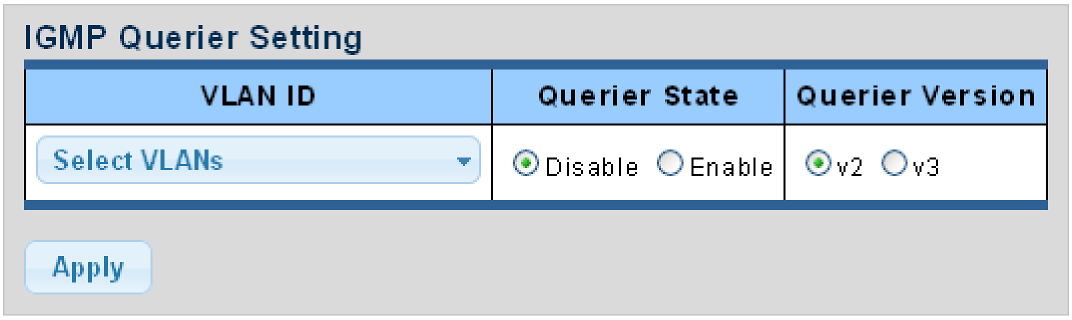
Figure 4-8-7 IGMP Snooping Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Entry No.**	Display the current entry number
- **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
- **IGMP Snooping Operation Status**	Display the current IGMP snooping operation status
- **Router Ports Auto Learn**	Display the current router ports auto learning
- **Query Robustness**	Display the current query robustness
- **Query Interval (sec.)**	Display the current query interval
- **Query Max Response Interval (sec.)**	Display the current query max response interval
- **Last Member Query count**	Display the current last member query count
- **Last Member Query Interval (sec)**	Display the current last member query interval
- **Immediate Leave**	Display the current immediate leave
- **Modify**	Click Edit to edit parameter

4.8.2 IGMP Querier Setting

This page provides IGMP Querier Setting. The IGMP Querier Setting screens in Figure 4-8-8 & Figure 4-8-9 appear.


IGMP Querier Setting

VLAN ID	Querier State	Querier Version
Select VLANs	● Disable ○ Enable	● v2 ○ v3

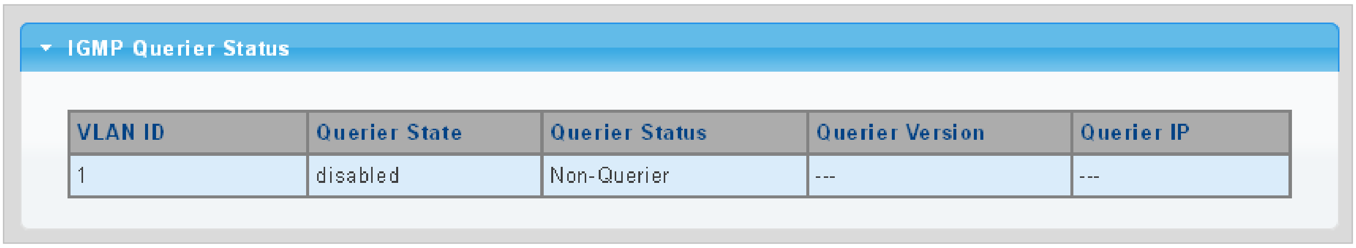
Figure 4-8-8 IGMP VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **VLAN ID**	Select VLAN ID from this drop-down list.
- **Querier State**	Enable or disable the querier state. The default value is "Disabled".
- **Querier Version**	Sets the querier version for compatibility with other devices on the network. Version: 2 or 3; Default: **2**

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.


IGMP Querier Status

VLAN ID	Querier State	Querier Status	Querier Version	Querier IP
1	disabled	Non-Querier	---	---

Figure 4-8-9 IGMP Querier Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

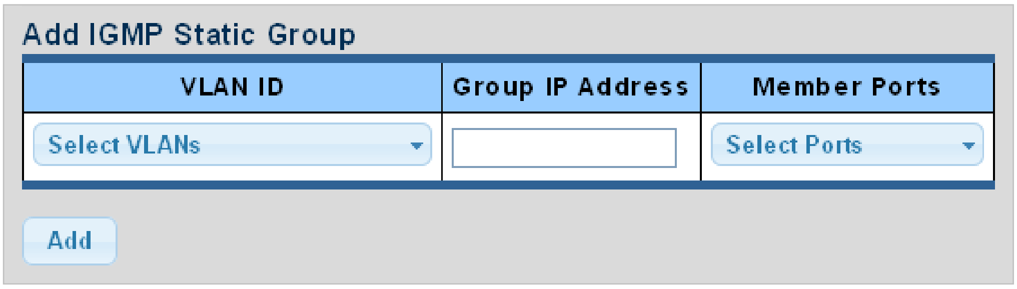
Object	Description
- **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
- **Querier State**	Display the current querier state
- **Querier Status**	Display the current querier status
- **Querier Version**	Display the current querier version
- **Querier IP**	Display the current querier IP

4.8.3 IGMP Static Group

Multicast filtering can be dynamically configured using IGMP Snooping and IGMP Query messages as described in above sections. For certain applications that require tighter control, you may need to statically configure a multicast service on the Managed Switch. First add all the ports attached to participating hosts to a common VLAN, and then assign the multicast service to that VLAN group.

- Static multicast addresses are never aged out.
- When a multicast address is assigned to an interface in a specific VLAN, the corresponding traffic can only be forwarded to ports within that VLAN.

The IGMP Static Group configuration screens in Figure 4-8-10 & Figure 4-8-11 appear.



Add IGMP Static Group

VLAN ID	Group IP Address	Member Ports
Select VLANs		Select Ports

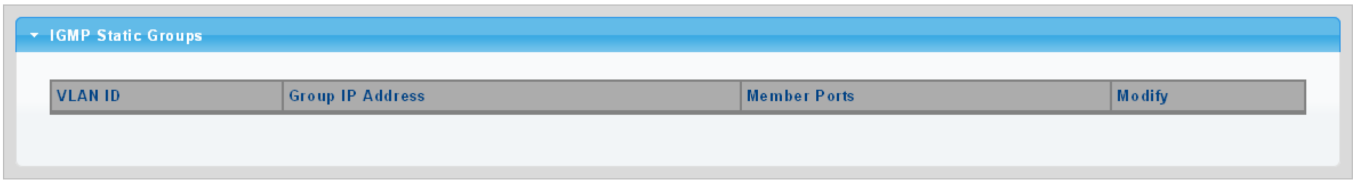
Figure 4-8-10 Add IGMP Static Group Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Select VLAN ID from this drop-down list
• **Group IP Address**	The IP address for a specific multicast service
• **Member Ports**	Select port number from this drop-down list

Buttons

Add: Click to add IGMP router port entry.



IGMP Static Groups

VLAN ID	Group IP Address	Member Ports	Modify

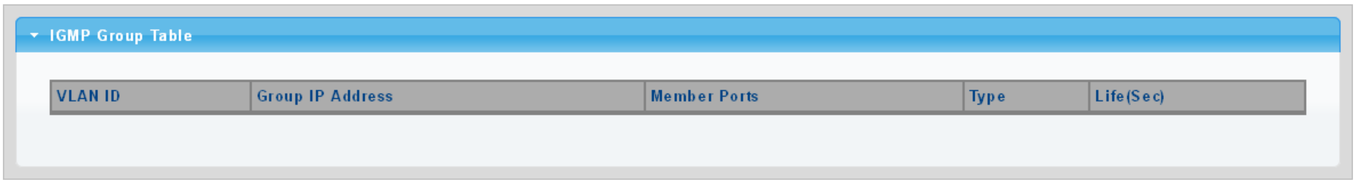
Figure 4-8-11 IGMP Static Groups Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Group IP Address**	Display the current group IP address
• **Member Ports**	Display the current member ports
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit parameter

4.8.4 IGMP Group Table

This page provides Multicast Database. The IGMP Group Table screen in Figure 4-8-12 appears.



VLAN ID	Group IP Address	Member Ports	Type	Life(Sec)

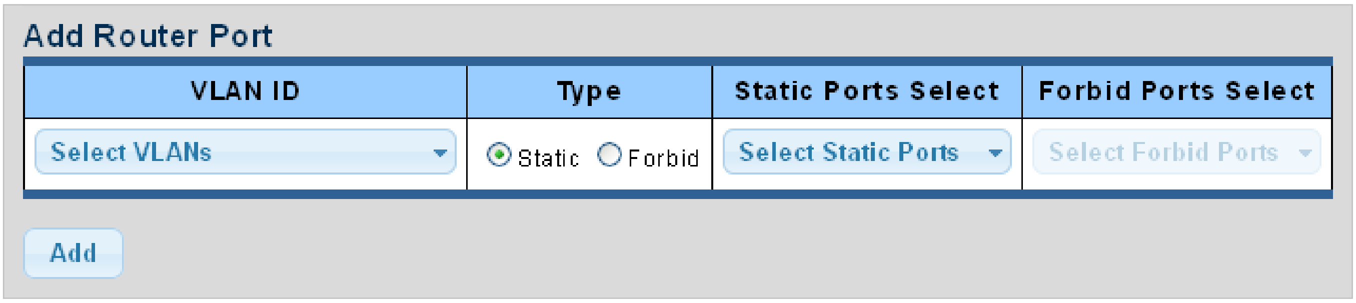
Figure 4-8-12 IGMP Group Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VID
• **Group IP Address**	Display multicast IP address for a specific multicast service
• **Member Port**	Display the current member port
• **Type**	Member types displayed include Static or Dynamic, depending on selected options
• **Life(Sec)**	Display the current life

4.8.5 IGMP Router Setting

Depending on your network connections, IGMP snooping may not always be able to locate the IGMP querier. Therefore, if the IGMP querier is a known multicast router/ switch connected over the network to an interface (port or trunk) on your Managed Switch, you can manually configure the interface (and a specified VLAN) to join all the current multicast groups supported by the attached router. This can ensure that multicast traffic is passed to all the appropriate interfaces within the Managed Switch. The IGMP Router Setting and Status screens in Figure 4-8-13 & Figure 4-8-14 appear.


Add Router Port

VLAN ID	Type	Static Ports Select	Forbid Ports Select
Select VLANs	● Static ○ Forbid	Select Static Ports	Select Forbid Ports

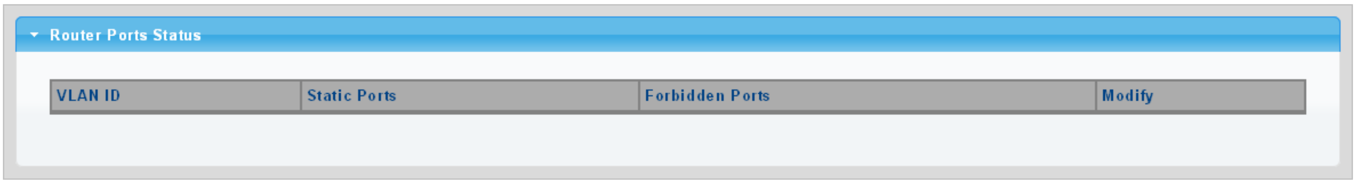
Figure 4-8-13 Add Router Port Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **VLAN ID**	Selects the VLAN to propagate all multicast traffic coming from the attached multicast router.
- **Type**	Sets the Router port type. The types of Router port as below: ■ **Static** ■ **Forbid**
- **Static Ports Select**	Specify which ports act as router ports. A router port is a port on the Ethernet switch that leads towards the Layer 3 multicast device or IGMP querier.
- **Forbid Port Select**	Specify which ports un-act as router ports

Buttons

Add: Click to add IGMP router port entry.



VLAN ID	Static Ports	Forbidden Ports	Modify

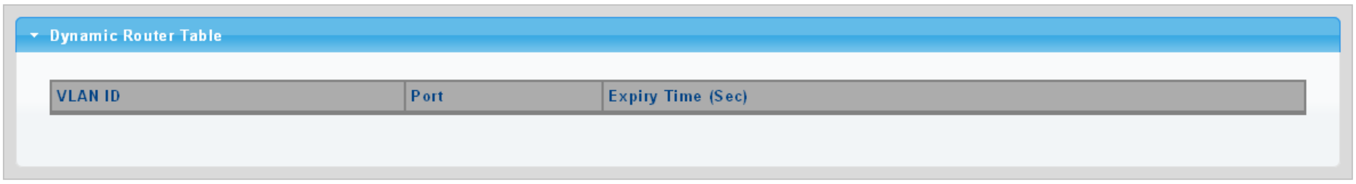
Figure 4-8-14 Router Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
- **Static Ports**	Display the current static ports
- **Forbidden Ports**	Display the current forbidden ports
- **Modify**	Click Edit to edit parameter Click Delete to delete the group ID entry

4.8.6 IGMP Router Table

This page provides Router Table. The Dynamic, Static and Forbidden Router Table screens in Figure 4-8-15, Figure 4-8-16 & Figure 4-8-17 appear.

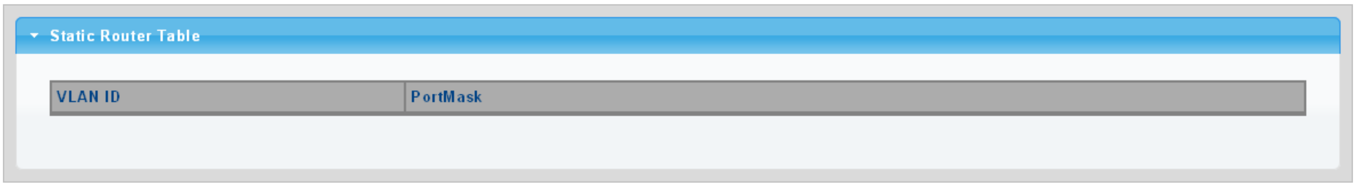


VLAN ID	Port	Expiry Time (Sec)

Figure 4-8-15 Dynamic Router Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Port**	Display the current dynamic router ports
• **Expiry Time (Sec)**	Display the current expiry time

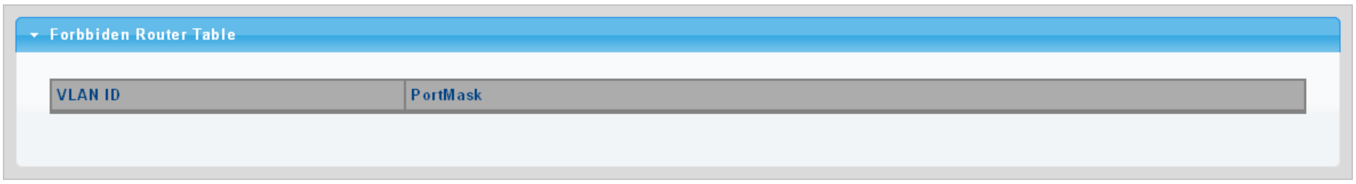


VLAN ID	PortMask

Figure 4-8-16 Static Router Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Port Mask**	Display the current port mask



VLAN ID	PortMask

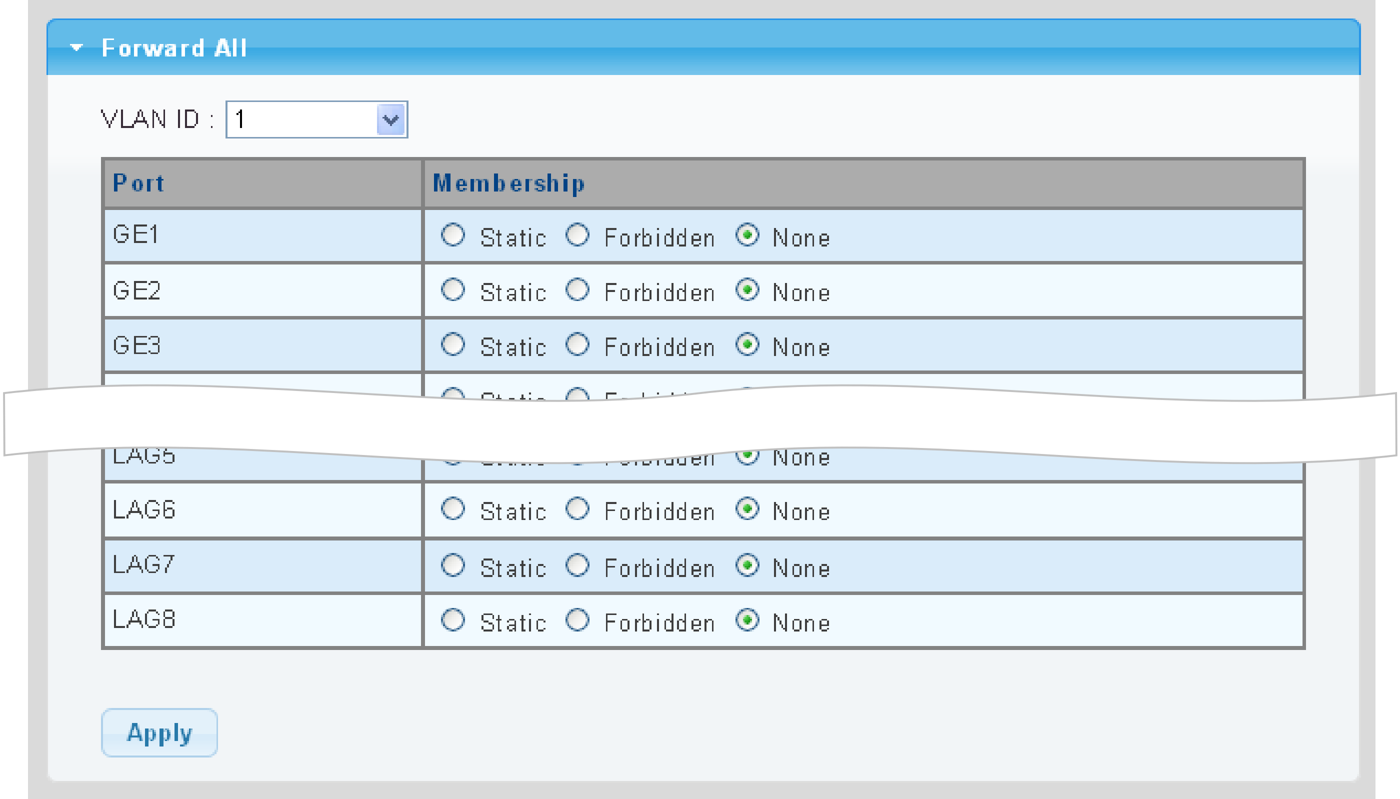
Figure 4-8-17 Forbidden Router Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Port Mask**	Display the current port mask

4.8.7 IGMP Forward All

This page provides IGMP Forward All. The Forward All screen in Figure 4-8-18 appears.



Forward All

VLAN ID : 1

Port	Membership
GE1	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
GE2	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
GE3	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
LAG5	● None
LAG6	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
LAG7	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
LAG8	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None

Figure 4-8-18 Forward All Setting Page ScreenshotThe page includes the following fields:

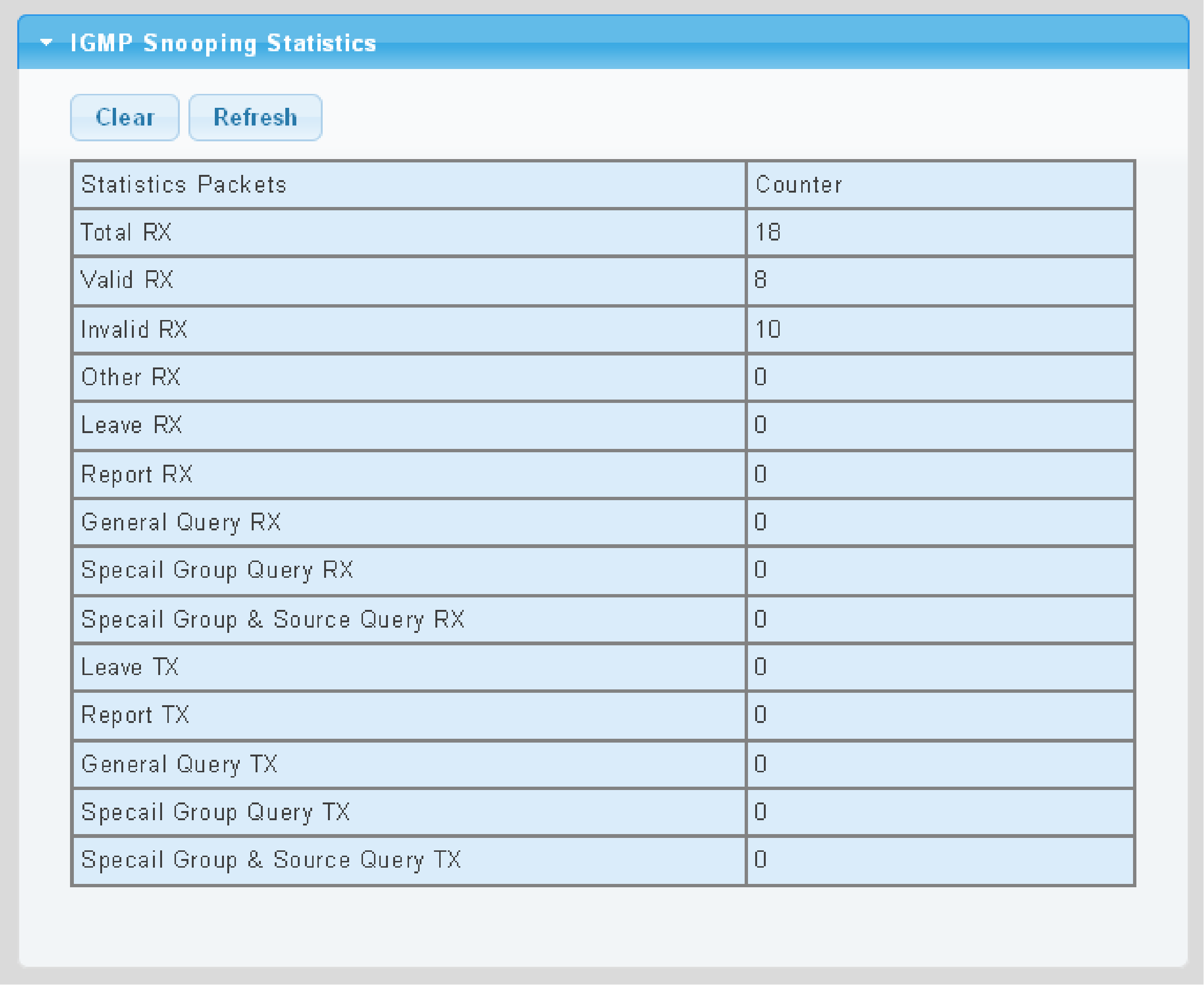
Object	Description	
• **VLAN ID**	Select VLAN ID from this drop-down list to assign IGMP membership	
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port	
• **Membership**	Select IGMP membership for each interface:	
	Forbidden:	Interface is forbidden from automatically joining the IGMP via MVR.
	None:	Interface is not a member of the VLAN. Packets associated with this VLAN will not be transmitted by the interface.
	Static:	Interface is a member of the IGMP.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

4.8.8 IGMP Snooping Statics

This page provides IGMP Snooping Statics. The IGMP Snooping Statics screen in Figure 4-8-19 appears.



Statistics Packets	Counter
Total RX	18
Valid RX	8
Invalid RX	10
Other RX	0
Leave RX	0
Report RX	0
General Query RX	0
Specail Group Query RX	0
Specail Group & Source Query RX	0
Leave TX	0
Report TX	0
General Query TX	0
Specail Group Query TX	0
Specail Group & Source Query TX	0

Figure 4-8-19 Forward All Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Total RX**	Display current total RX
• **Valid RX**	Display current valid RX
• **Invalid RX**	Display current invalid RX
• **Other RX**	Display current other RX
• **Leave RX**	Display current leave RX
• **Report RX**	Display current report RX
• **General Query RX**	Display current general query RX

- **Special Group Query RX**	Display current special group query RX
- **Special Group & Source Query RX**	Display current special group & source query RX
- **Leave TX**	Display current leave TX
- **Report TX**	Display current report TX
- **General Query TX**	Display current general query TX
- **Special Group Query TX**	Display current special group query TX
- **Special Group & Source Query TX**	Display current special group & source query TX

Buttons

Clear: Click to clear the IGMP Snooping Statistics.

Refresh: Click to refresh the IGMP Snooping Statistics.

4.8.9 IGMP Filter Setting

The Filter Setting and Status screens in Figure 4-8-20 & Figure 4-8-21 appear.

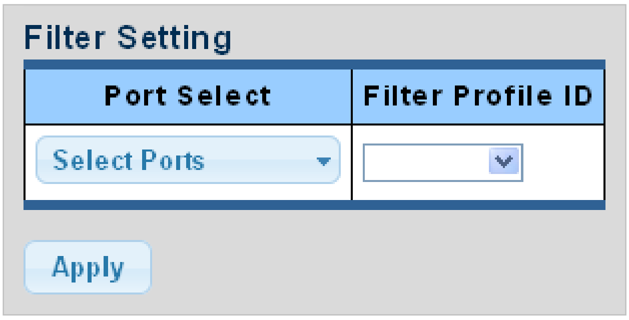

Filter Setting
Port Select
Filter Profile ID
Select Ports
Apply

Figure 4-8-20 Filter Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **Filter Profile ID**	Select filter profile ID from this drop-down list

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

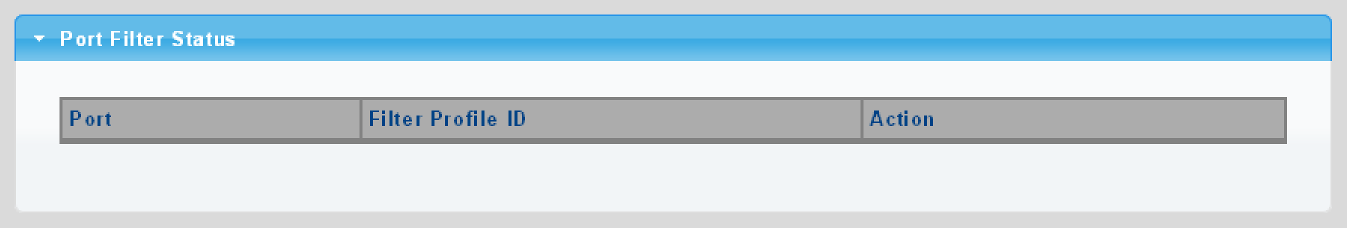

Port Filter Status
Port
Filter Profile ID
Action

Figure 4-8-21 Port Filter Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

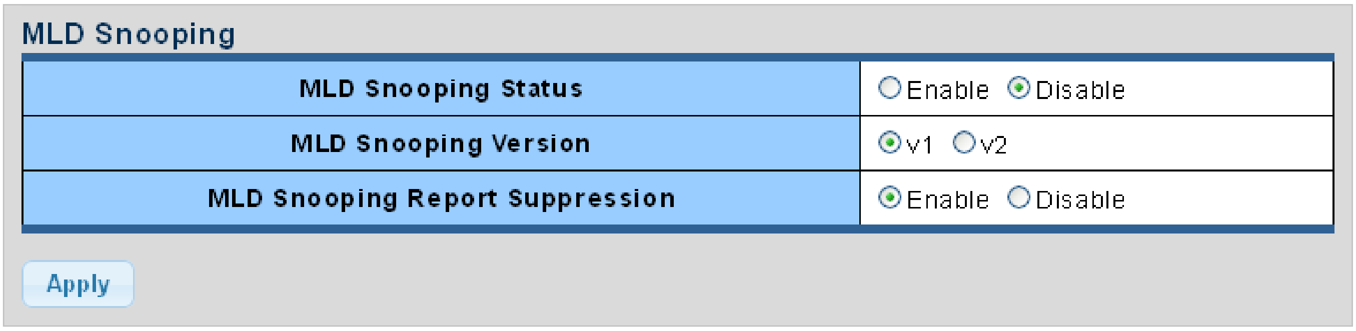
Object	Description
• **Port**	Display the current port
• **Filter Profile ID**	Display the current filter profile ID
• **Action**	Click Show to display detail profile parameter Click Delete to delete the IGMP filter profile entry

4.9 MLD Snooping

4.9.1 MLD Setting

This page provides MLD Snooping related configuration.

Most of the settings are global, whereas the Router Port configuration is related to the current unit, as reflected by the page header. The MLD Snooping Setting, Information and Table screens in Figure 4-9-1, Figure 4-9-2 & Figure 4-9-3 appear.



MLD Snooping

MLD Snooping Status	○ Enable ● Disable
MLD Snooping Version	● v1 ○ v2
MLD Snooping Report Suppression	● Enable ○ Disable

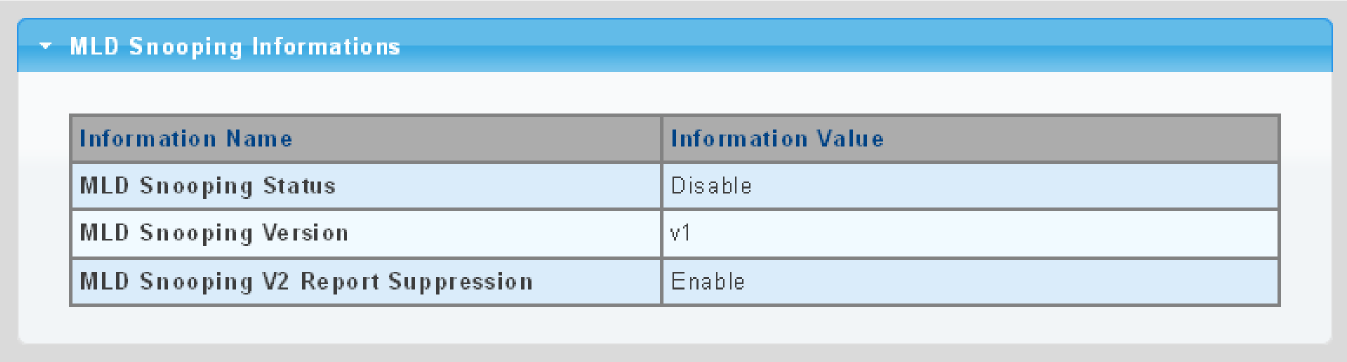
Figure 4-9-1 MLD Snooping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **MLD Snooping Status**	Enable or disable the MLD snooping. The default value is "Disabled".
- **MLD Snooping Version**	Sets the MLD Snooping operation version. Possible versions are: **v1**: Set MLD Snooping supported MLD version 1. **v2**: Set MLD Snooping supported MLD version 2.
- **MLD Snooping Report Suppression**	Limits the membership report traffic sent to multicast-capable routers. When you disable report suppression, all MLD reports are sent as is to multicast-capable routers. The default is enabled.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



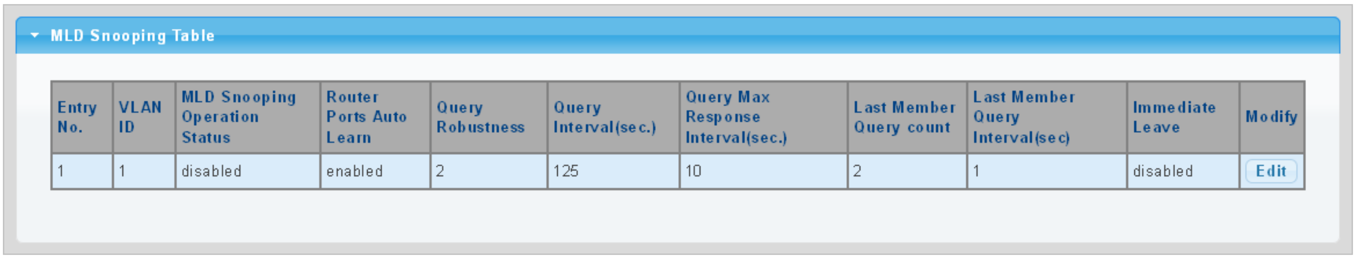
MLD Snooping Informations

Information Name	Information Value
MLD Snooping Status	Disable
MLD Snooping Version	v1
MLD Snooping V2 Report Suppression	Enable

Figure 4-9-2 MLD Snooping information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **MLD Snooping Status**	Display the current MLD snooping status
- **MLD Snooping Version**	Display the current MLD snooping version
- **MLD Snooping Report Suppression**	Display the current MLD snooping report suppression



Entry No.	VLAN ID	MLD Snooping Operation Status	Router Ports Auto Learn	Query Robustness	Query Interval(sec.)	Query Max Response Interval(sec.)	Last Member Query count	Last Member Query Interval(sec)	Immediate Leave	Modify
1	1	disabled	enabled	2	125	10	2	1	disabled	Edit

Figure 4-9-3 MLD Snooping Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Entry No.**	Display the current entry number
- **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
- **MLD Snooping Operation Status**	Display the current MLD snooping operation status
- **Router Ports Auto Learn**	Display the current router ports auto learning
- **Query Robustness**	Display the current query robustness
- **Query Interval (sec.)**	Display the current query interval
- **Query Max Response Interval (sec.)**	Display the current query max response interval
- **Last Member Query count**	Display the current last member query count
- **Last Member Query Interval (sec)**	Display the current last member query interval
- **Immediate Leave**	Display the current immediate leave
- **Modify**	Click Edit to edit parameter

4.9.2 MLD Static Group

The MLD Static Group configuration screens in Figure 4-9-4 & Figure 4-9-5 appear.

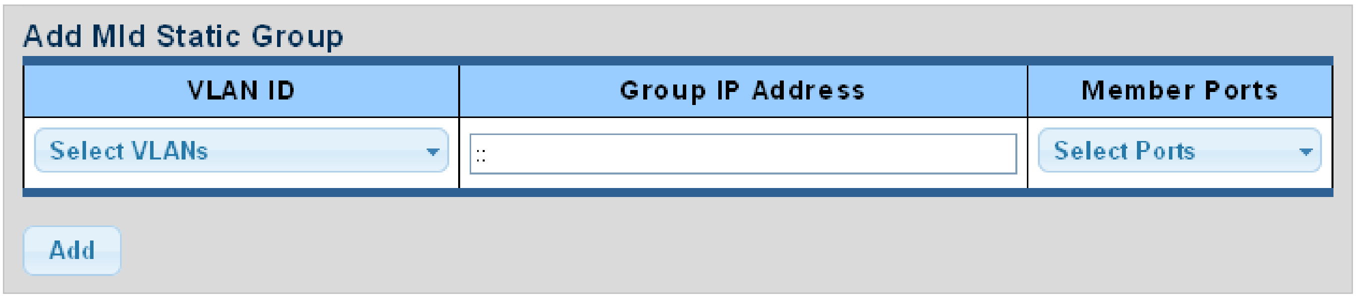

Add Mld Static Group
VLAN ID
Group IP Address
Member Ports
Select VLANs
::
Select Ports
Add

Figure 4-9-4 Add MLD Static Group Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Select VLAN ID from this drop-down list
• **Group IP Address**	The IP address for a specific multicast service
• **Member Ports**	Select port number from this drop-down list

Buttons

Add : Click to add IGMP router port entry.

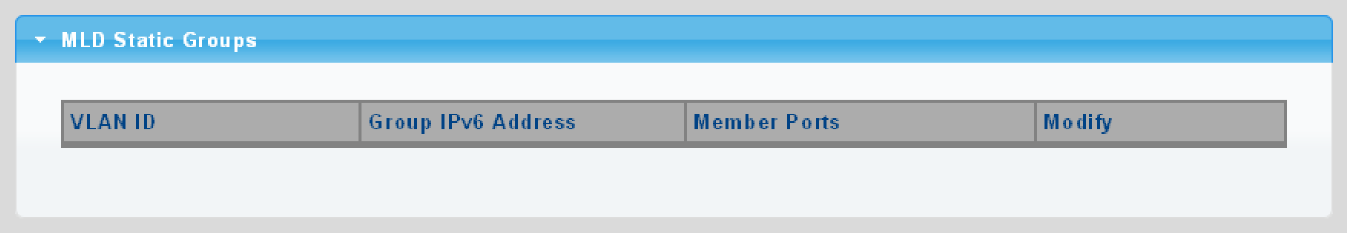

MLD Static Groups
VLAN ID
Group IPv6 Address
Member Ports
Modify

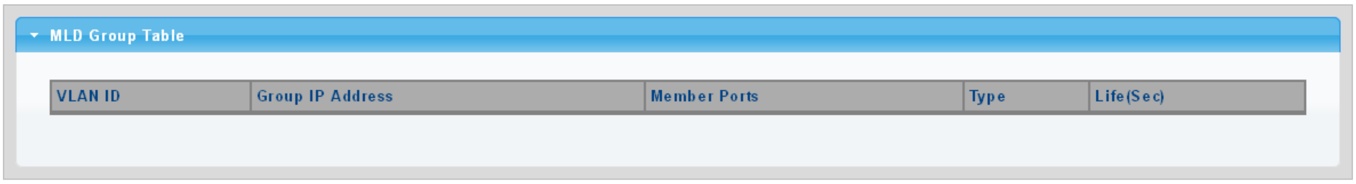
Figure 4-9-5 MLD Static Groups Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Group IPv6 Address**	Display the current group IPv6 address
• **Member Ports**	Display the current member ports
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit parameter.

4.9.3 MLD Group Table

This page provides MLD Group Table. The MLD Group Table screen in Figure 4-9-6 appears.



MLD Group Table

VLAN ID	Group IP Address	Member Ports	Type	Life(Sec)

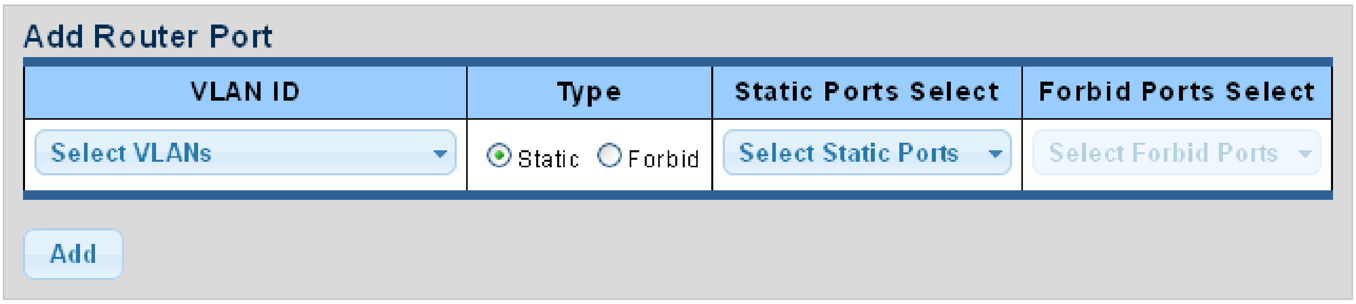
Figure 4-9-6 MLD Group Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VID
• **Group IP Address**	Display multicast IP address for a specific multicast service
• **Member Port**	Display the current member port
• **Type**	Member types displayed include Static or Dynamic, depending on selected options
• **Life(Sec)**	Display the current life

4.9.4 MLD Router Setting

Depending on your network connections, MLD snooping may not always be able to locate the MLD querier. Therefore, if the MLD querier is a known multicast router/ switch connected over the network to an interface (port or trunk) on your Managed Switch, you can manually configure the interface (and a specified VLAN) to join all the current multicast groups supported by the attached router. This can ensure that multicast traffic is passed to all the appropriate interfaces within the Managed Switch. The MLD Router Setting screens in Figure 4-9-7 & Figure 4-9-8 appear.



Add Router Port

VLAN ID	Type	Static Ports Select	Forbid Ports Select
Select VLANs	● Static ○ Forbid	Select Static Ports	Select Forbid Ports

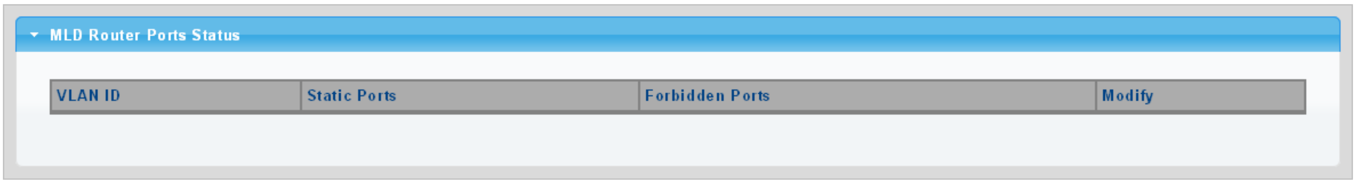
Figure 4-9-7 Add Router Port Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **VLAN ID**	Selects the VLAN to propagate all multicast traffic coming from the attached multicast router
- **Type**	Sets the Router port type. The types of Router port as below: **Static** **Forbid**
- **Static Ports Select**	Specify which ports act as router ports. A router port is a port on the Ethernet switch that leads towards the Layer 3 multicast device or MLD querier.
- **Forbid Port Select**	Specify which ports un-act as router ports

Buttons

Add : Click to add MLD router port entry.



MLD Router Ports Status

VLAN ID	Static Ports	Forbidden Ports	Modify

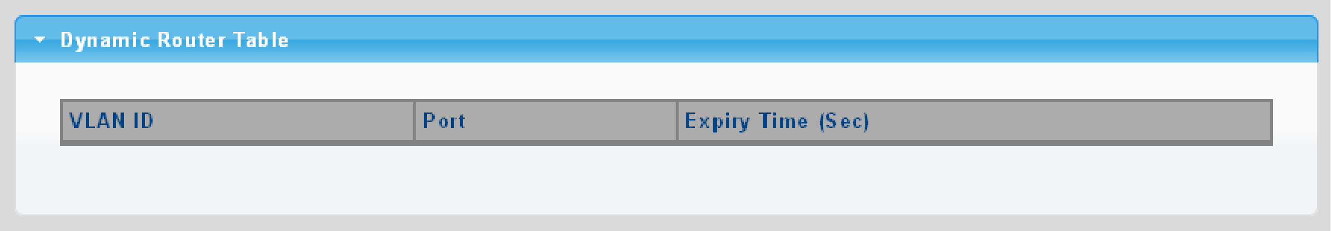
Figure 4-9-8 Router Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
- **Static Ports**	Display the current static ports
- **Forbidden Ports**	Display the current forbidden ports
- **Modify**	Click Edit to edit parameter Click Delete to delete the group ID entry

4.9.5 MLD Router Table

This page provides Router Table. The Dynamic, Static and Forbidden Router Table screens in Figure 4-9-9, Figure 4-9-10 & Figure 4-9-11 appear.



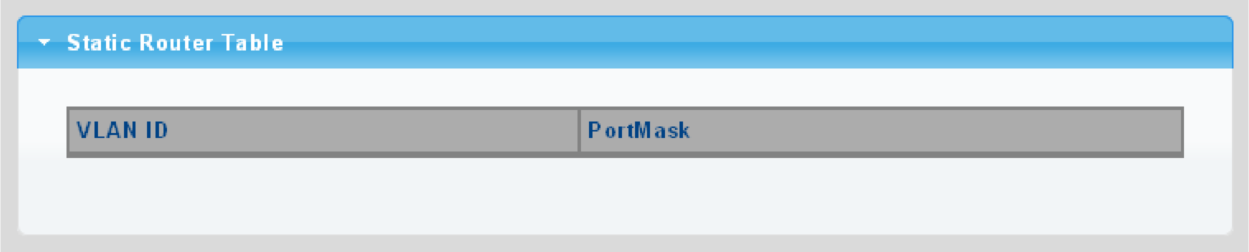
Dynamic Router Table

VLAN ID	Port	Expiry Time (Sec)

Figure 4-9-9 Dynamic Router Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Port**	Display the current dynamic router ports
• **Expiry Time (Sec)**	Display the current expiry time



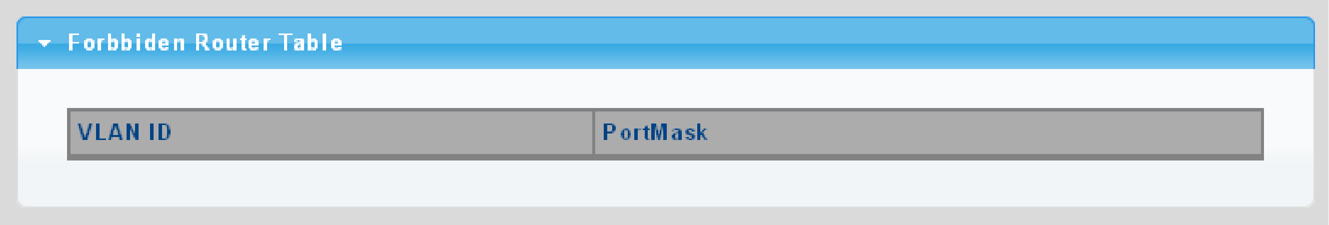
Static Router Table

VLAN ID	PortMask

Figure 4-9-10 Static Router Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Port Mask**	Display the current port mask



Forbbiden Router Table

VLAN ID	PortMask

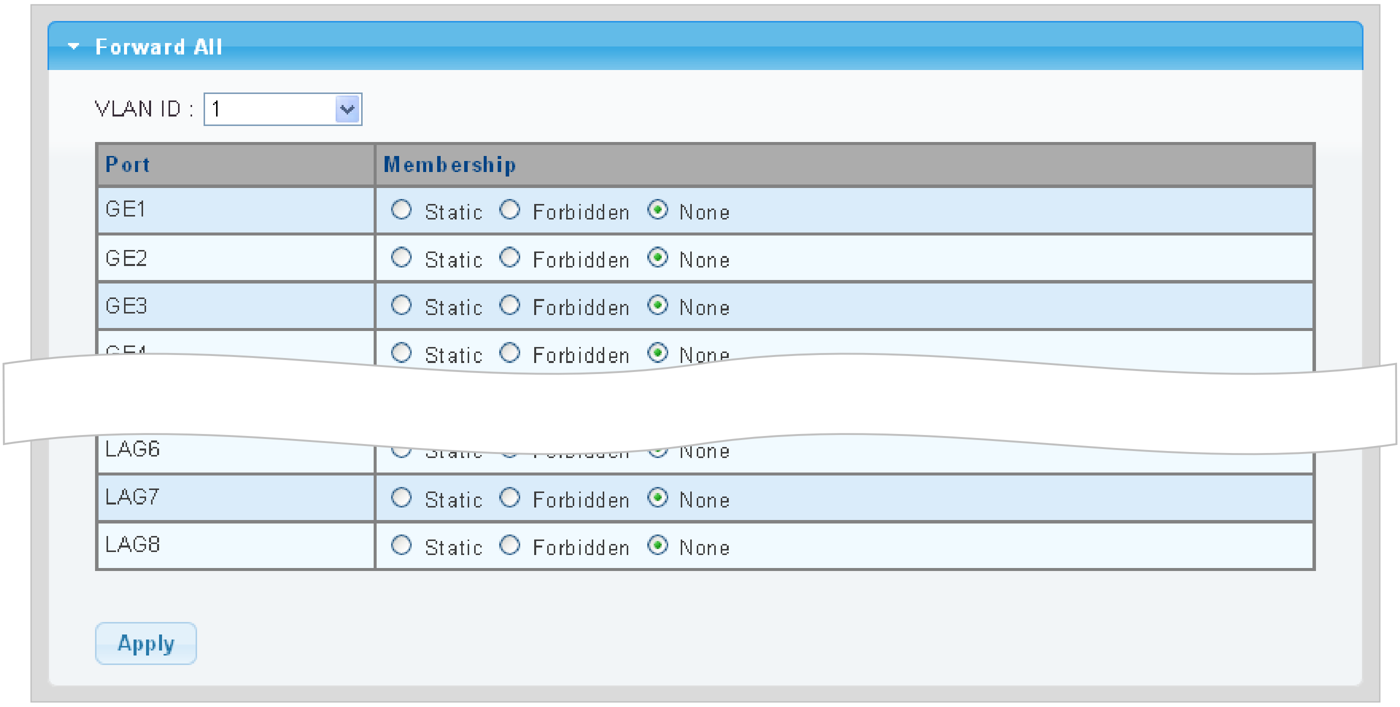
Figure 4-9-11 Forbidden Router Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **Port Mask**	Display the current port mask

4.9.6 MLD Forward All

This page provides MLD Forward All. The Forward All screen in Figure 4-9-12 appears.



Forward All

VLAN ID : 1

Port	Membership
GE1	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
GE2	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
GE3	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
GE4	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
LAG6	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
LAG7	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None
LAG8	○ Static ○ Forbidden ● None

Figure 4-9-12 Forward All Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

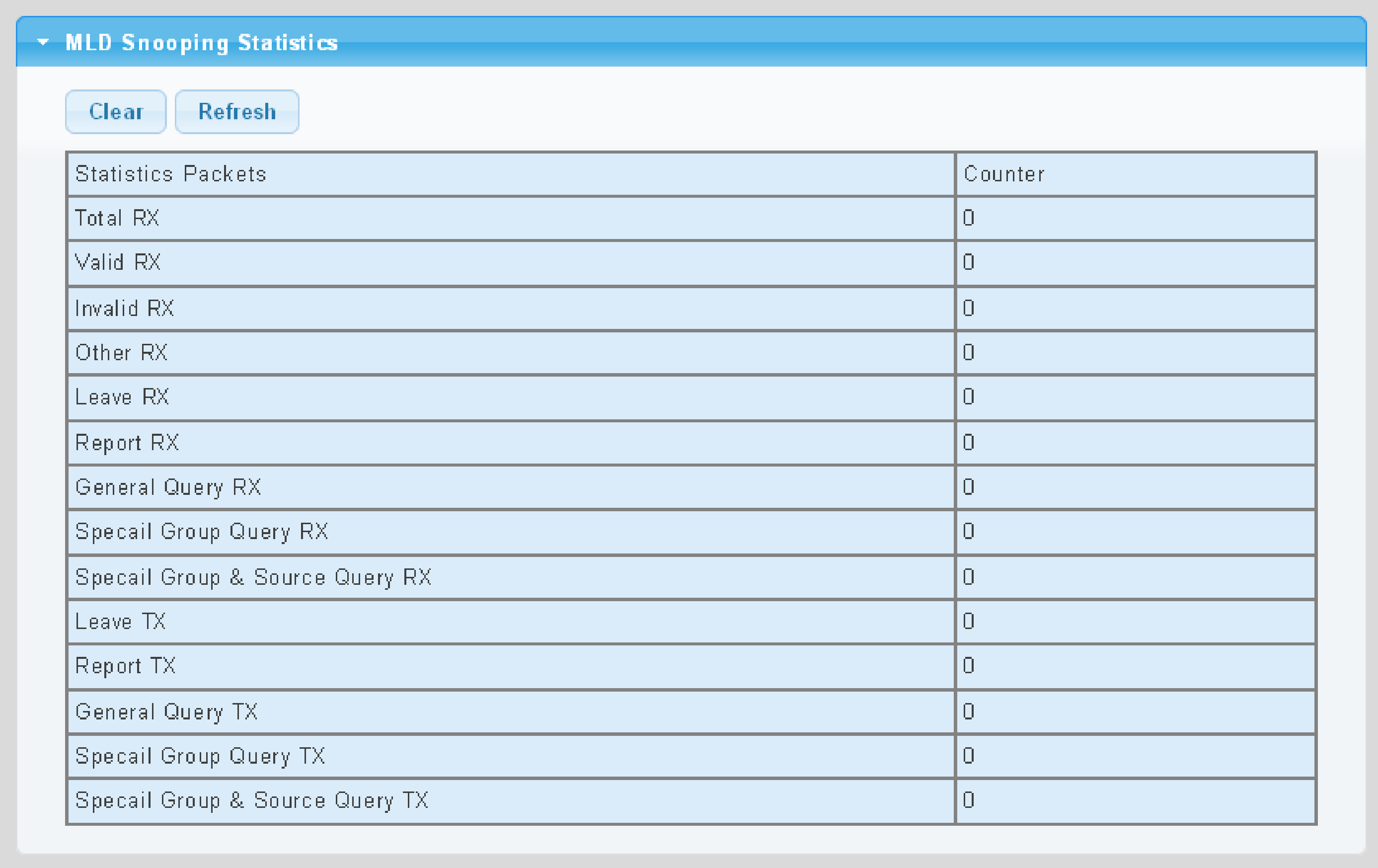
Object	Description	
• **VLAN ID**	Select VLAN ID from this drop-down list to assign MLD membership	
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port	
• **Membership**	Select MLD membership for each interface:	
	Forbidden:	Interface is forbidden from automatically joining the MLD via MVR.
	None:	Interface is not a member of the VLAN. Packets associated with this VLAN will not be transmitted by the interface.
	Static:	Interface is a member of the MLD.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

4.9.7 MLD Snooping Statics

This page provides MLD Snooping Statics. The MLD Snooping Statics screen in Figure 4-9-13 appears.



Statistics Packets	Counter
Total RX	0
Valid RX	0
Invalid RX	0
Other RX	0
Leave RX	0
Report RX	0
General Query RX	0
Specail Group Query RX	0
Specail Group & Source Query RX	0
Leave TX	0
Report TX	0
General Query TX	0
Specail Group Query TX	0
Specail Group & Source Query TX	0

Figure 4-9-13 Forward All Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Total RX**	Display current total RX
• **Valid RX**	Display current valid RX
• **Invalid RX**	Display current invalid RX
• **Other RX**	Display current other RX
• **Leave RX**	Display current leave RX
• **Report RX**	Display current report RX
• **General Query RX**	Display current general query RX
• **Special Group Query RX**	Display current special group query RX
• **Special Group & Source Query RX**	Display current special group & source query RX

• **Leave TX**	Display current leave TX
• **Report TX**	Display current report TX
• **General Query TX**	Display current general query TX
• **Special Group Query TX**	Display current special group query TX
• **Special Group & Source Query TX**	Display current special group & source query TX

Buttons

Clear: Click to clear the MLD Snooping Statistics.

Refresh: Click to refresh the MLD Snooping Statistics.

4.9.8 MLD Filter Setting

The Filter Setting and Status screens in Figure 4-9-14 & Figure 4-9-15 appear.

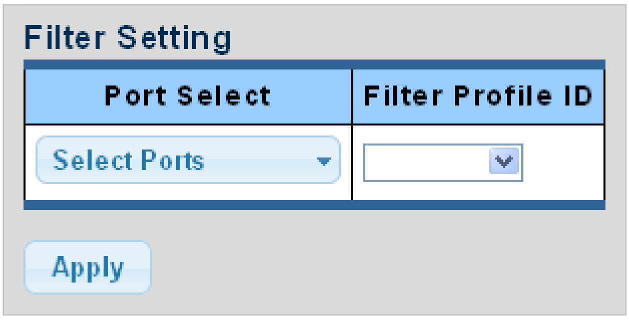

Filter Setting
Port Select
Filter Profile ID
Select Ports
Apply

Figure 4-9-14 Filter Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **Filter Profile ID**	Select filter profile ID from this drop-down list

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

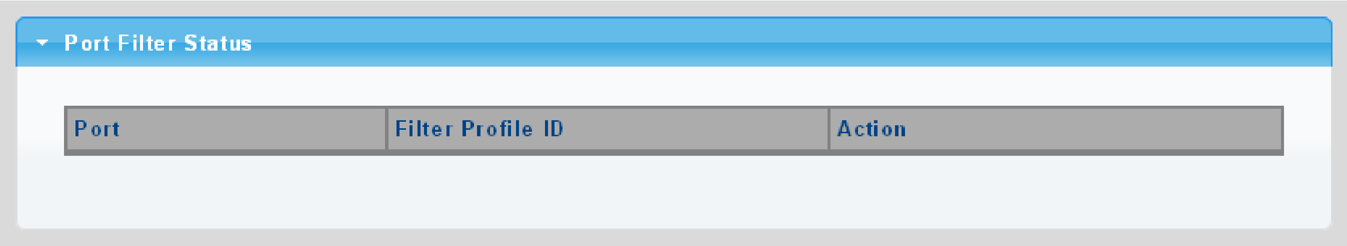

Port Filter Status
Port
Filter Profile ID
Action

Figure 4-9-15 Port Filter Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Display the current port
• **Filter Profile ID**	Display the current filter profile ID
• **Action**	Click Show to display detail profile parameter Click Delete to delete the MLD filter profile entry

4.10 LLDP

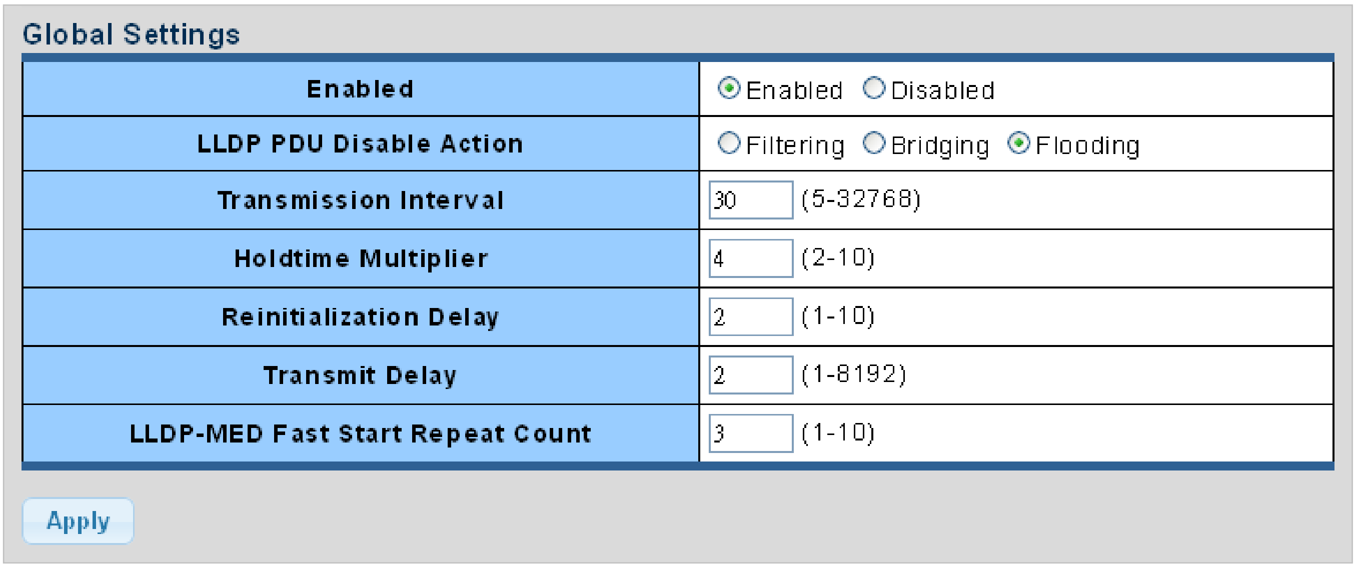
4.10.1 Link Layer Discovery Protocol

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is used to discover basic information about neighboring devices on the local broadcast domain. LLDP is a Layer 2 protocol that uses periodic broadcasts to advertise information about the sending device. Advertised information is represented in **Type Length Value (TLV)** format according to the IEEE 802.1ab standard, and can include details such as device identification, capabilities and configuration settings. LLDP also defines how to store and maintain information gathered about the neighboring network nodes it discovers.

Link Layer Discovery Protocol - Media Endpoint Discovery (LLDP-MED) is an extension of LLDP intended for managing endpoint devices such as Voice over IP phones and network switches. The LLDP-MED TLVs advertise information such as network policy, power, inventory, and device location details. LLDP and LLDP-MED information can be used by SNMP applications to simplify troubleshooting, enhance network management, and maintain an accurate network topology.

4.10.2 LLDP Global Setting

This Page allows the user to inspect and configure the current LLDP port settings. The LLDP Global Setting and Config screens in Figure 4-10-1 & Figure 4-10-2 appear.



Global Settings

Enabled	● Enabled ○ Disabled
LLDP PDU Disable Action	○ Filtering ○ Bridging ● Flooding
Transmission Interval	30 (5-32768)
Holdtime Multiplier	4 (2-10)
Reinitialization Delay	2 (1-10)
Transmit Delay	2 (1-8192)
LLDP-MED Fast Start Repeat Count	3 (1-10)

Figure 4-10-1 Global Setting Page Screenshot

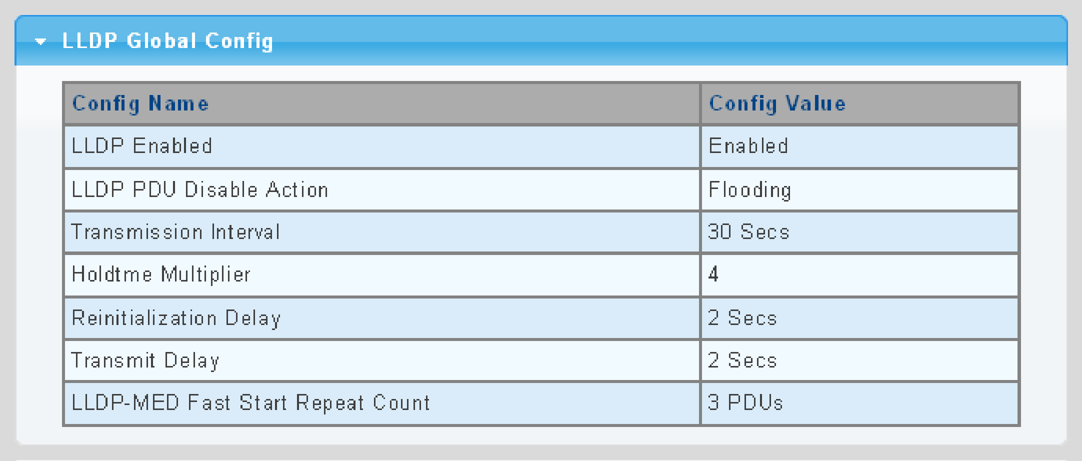
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Enable**	Globally enable or disable LLDP function
• **LLDP PDU Disable Action**	Set LLDP PDU disable action: include “Filtering”, “Bridging” and “Flooding”. ■ **Filtering**: discrad all LLDP PDU. ■ **Bridging**: transmit LLDP PDU in the same VLAN.

	■ **Flooding**: transmit LLDP PDU for all port.
• **Transmission Interval**	The switch is periodically transmitting LLDP frames to its neighbors for having the network discovery information up-to-date. The interval between each LLDP frame is determined by the **Transmission Interval** value. Valid values are restricted to 5 - 32768 seconds. Default: **30** seconds This attribute must comply with the following rule: (Transmission Interval * Hold Time Multiplier) ≤65536, and Transmission Interval >= (4 * Delay Interval)
• **Holdtime Multiplier**	Each LLDP frame contains information about how long the information in the LLDP frame shall be considered valid. The LLDP information valid period is set to **Holdtime** multiplied by **Transmission Interval** seconds. Valid values are restricted to 2 - 10 times. TTL in seconds is based on the following rule: (Transmission Interval * Holdtime Multiplier) ≤ 65536. Therefore, the default TTL is 4*30 = 120 seconds.
• **Reinitialization Delay**	When a port is disabled, LLDP is disabled or the switch is rebooted a LLDP shutdown frame is transmitted to the neighboring units, signaling that the LLDP information isn't valid anymore. **Tx Reinit** controls the amount of seconds between the shutdown frame and a new LLDP initialization. Valid values are restricted to 1 - 10 seconds.
• **Transmit Delay**	If some configuration is changed (e.g. the IP address) a new LLDP frame is transmitted, but the time between the LLDP frames will always be at least the value of **Transmit Delay** seconds. **Transmit Delay** cannot be larger than 1/4 of the **Transmission Interval** value. Valid values are restricted to 1 - 8192 seconds. This attribute must comply with the rule: (4 * Delay Interval) ≤Transmission Interval
• **LLDP-MED Fast Start Repeat Count**	Configures the amount of LLDP MED Fast Start LLDPDUs to transmit during the activation process of the LLDP-MED Fast Start mechanism. Range: 1-10 packets; Default: **3** packets The MED Fast Start Count parameter is part of the timer which ensures that the LLDP-MED Fast Start mechanism is active for the port. LLDP-MED Fast Start is critical to the timely startup of LLDP, and therefore integral to the rapid availability of Emergency Call Service.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Config Name	Config Value
LLDP Enabled	Enabled
LLDP PDU Disable Action	Flooding
Transmission Interval	30 Secs
Holdtme Multiplier	4
Reinitialization Delay	2 Secs
Transmit Delay	2 Secs
LLDP-MED Fast Start Repeat Count	3 PDUs

Figure 4-10-2 LLDP Global Config Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **LLDP Enable**	Display the current LLDP status
• **LLDP PDU Disable Action**	Display the current LLDP PDU disable action
• **Transmission Interval**	Display the current transmission interval
• **Holdtime Multiplier**	Display the current holdtime multiplier
• **Reinitialization Delay**	Display the current reinitialization delay
• **Transmit Delay**	Display the current transmit delay
• **LLDP-MED Fast Start Repeat Count**	Display the current LLDP-MED Fast Start Repeat Count

4.10.3 LLDP Port Setting

Use the LLDP Port Setting to specify the message attributes for individual interfaces, including whether messages are transmitted, received, or both transmitted and received. The LLDP Port Configuration and Status screens in Figure 4-10-3 & Figure 4-10-4 appear.

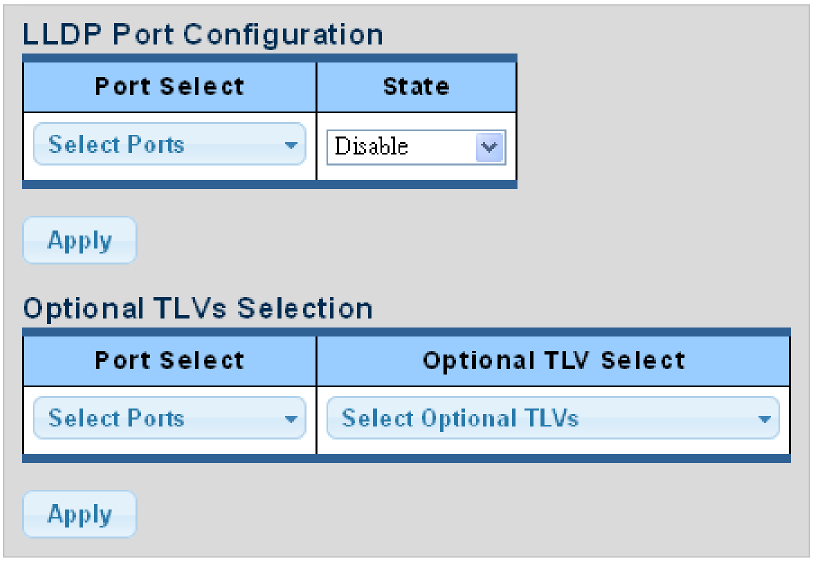

LLDP Port Configuration
Port Select
State
Select Ports
Disable
Apply
Optional TLVs Selection
Port Select
Optional TLV Select
Select Ports
Select Optional TLVs
Apply

Figure 4-10-3 LLDP Port Configuration and Optional TLVs Selection Page Screenshot

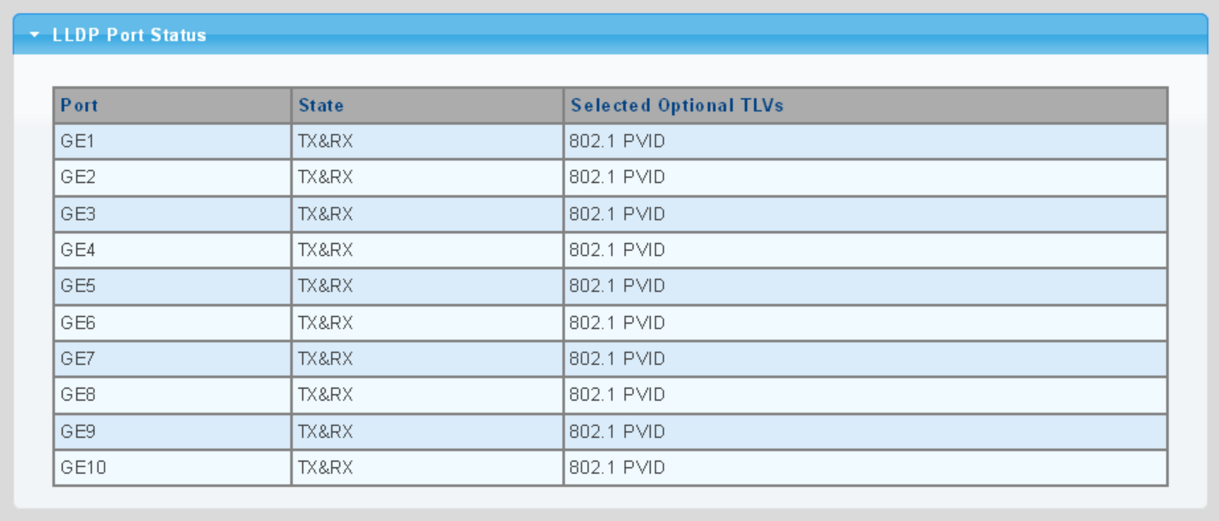
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **State**	Enables LLDP messages transmit and receive modes for LLDP Protocol Data Units. Options: ■ **Tx only** ■ **Rx only** ■ **TxRx** ■ **Disabled**
• **Port Select**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Optional TLV Select**	Configures the information included in the TLV field of advertised messages. ■ **System Name**: When checked the "System Name" is included in LLDP information transmitted. ■ **Port Description**: When checked the "Port Description" is included in LLDP information transmitted. ■ **System Description**: When checked the "System Description" is included in LLDP information transmitted. ■ **System Capability**: When checked the "System Capability" is included in LLDP information transmitted. ■ **802.3 MAC-PHY**: When checked the "802.3 MAC-PHY" is included in

	LLDP information transmitted. ■ **802.3 Link Aggregation**: When checked the "802.3 Link Aggregation" is included in LLDP information transmitted. ■ **802.3 Maximum Frame Size**: When checked the "802.3 Maximum Frame Size" is included in LLDP information transmitted. ■ **Management Address**: When checked the "Management Address" is included in LLDP information transmitted. ■ **802.1 PVID**: When checked the "802.1 PVID" is included in LLDP information transmitted.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes


LLDP Port Status

Port	State	Selected Optional TLVs
GE1	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE2	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE3	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE4	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE5	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE6	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE7	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE8	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE9	TX&RX	802.1 PVID
GE10	TX&RX	802.1 PVID

Figure 4-10-4 LLDP Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **State**	Display the current LLDP status
• **Selected Optional TLVs**	Display the current selected optional TLVs

The VLAN Name TLV VLAN Selection and LLDP Port VLAN TLV Status screens in Figure 4-10-5 & Figure 4-10-6 appear.

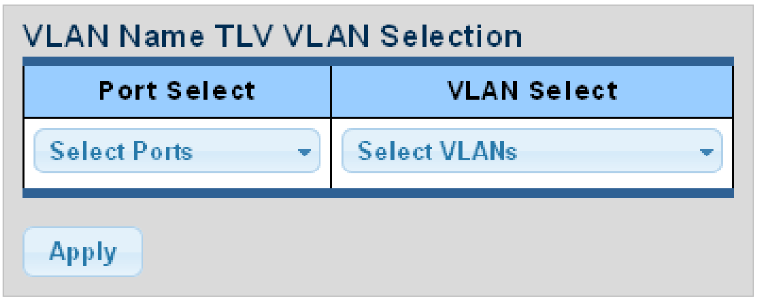

VLAN Name TLV VLAN Selection
Port Select
VLAN Select
Select Ports
Select VLANs
Apply

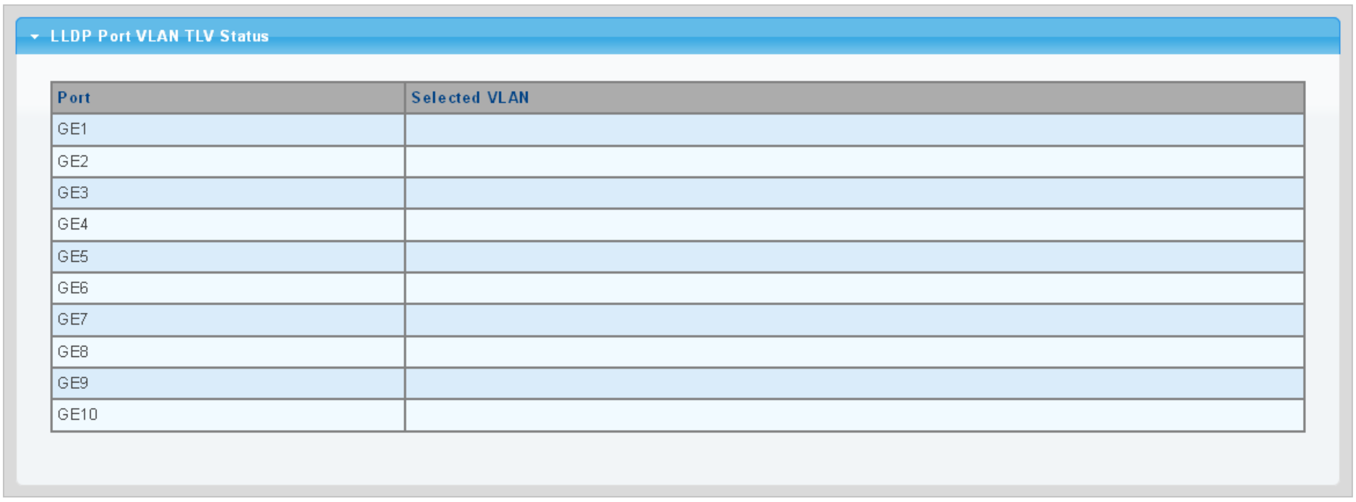
Figure 4-10-5 VLAN Name TLV Selection Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port Select**	Select port from this drop-down list.
- **VLAN Select**	Select VLAN from this drop-down list.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.


LLDP Port VLAN TLV Status

Port	Selected VLAN
GE1	
GE2	
GE3	
GE4	
GE5	
GE6	
GE7	
GE8	
GE9	
GE10	

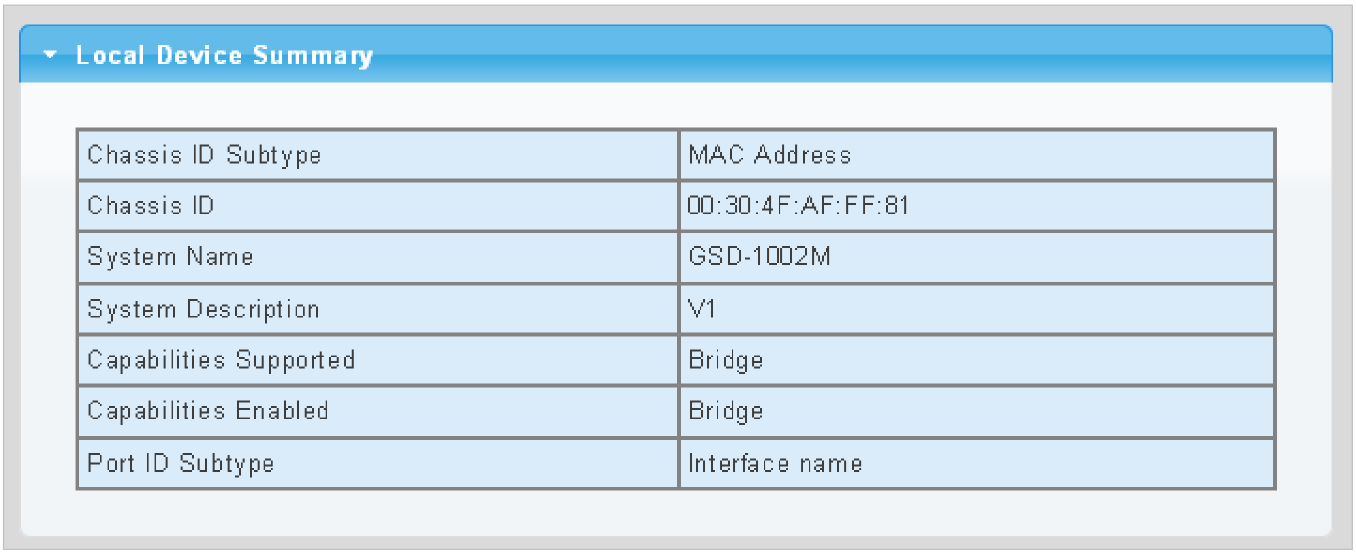
Figure 4-10-6 LLDP Port VLAN TLV Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Selected VLAN**	Display the current selected VLAN

4.10.4 LLDP Local Device

Use the LLDP Local Device Information screen to display information about the switch, such as its **MAC address**, **chassis ID**, **management IP address**, and **port information**. The Local Device Summary and Port Status screens in Figure 4-10-7 & Figure 4-10-8 appear.



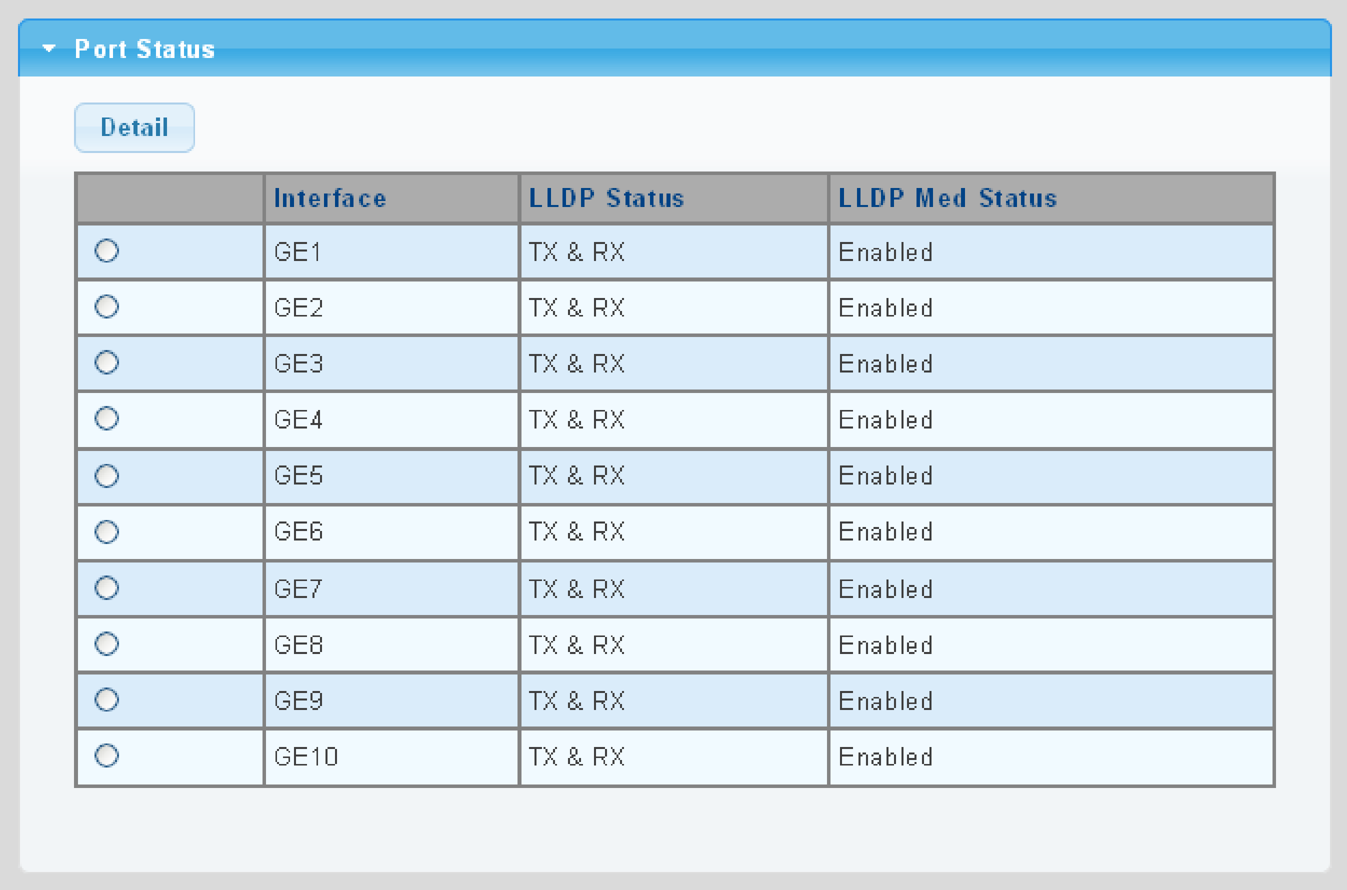
Local Device Summary

Chassis ID Subtype	MAC Address
Chassis ID	00:30:4F:AF:FF:81
System Name	GSD-1002M
System Description	V1
Capabilities Supported	Bridge
Capabilities Enabled	Bridge
Port ID Subtype	Interface name

Figure 4-10-7 Local Device Summary Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Chassis ID Subtype**	Display the current chassis ID subtype
• **Chassis ID**	Display the current chassis ID
• **System Name**	Display the current system name
• **System Description**	Display the current system description
• **Capabilities Supported**	Display the current capabilities supported
• **Capabilities Enabled**	Display the current capabilities enabled
• **Port ID Subtype**	Display the current port ID subtype



	Interface	LLDP Status	LLDP Med Status
○	GE1	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE2	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE3	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE4	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE5	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE6	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE7	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE8	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE9	TX & RX	Enabled
○	GE10	TX & RX	Enabled

Figure 4-10-8 Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Interface**	The switch port number of the logical port.
• **LLDP Status**	Display the current LLDP status
• **LLDP MED Status**	Display the current LLDP MED Status

4.10.5 LLDP Remote Device

This page provides a status overview for all LLDP remove devices. The displayed table contains a row for each port on which an LLDP neighbor is detected. The LLDP Remove Device screen in Figure 4-10-9 appears.

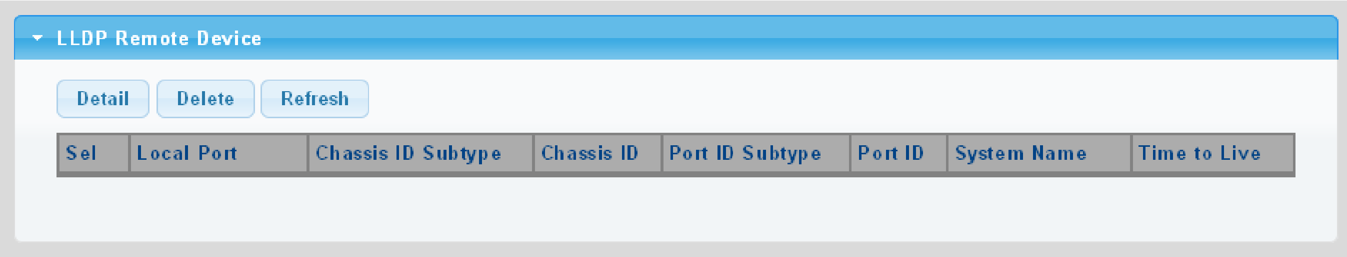

LLDP Remote Device
Detail
Delete
Refresh
Sel
Local Port
Chassis ID Subtype
Chassis ID
Port ID Subtype
Port ID
System Name
Time to Live

Figure 4-10-9 LLDP Remote Device Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Local Port**	Display the current local port
• **Chassis ID Subtype**	Display the current chassis ID subtype
• **Chassis ID**	The Chassis ID is the identification of the neighbor's LLDP frames
• **Port ID Subtype**	Display the current port ID subtype
• **Port ID**	The Remote Port ID is the identification of the neighbor port
• **System Name**	System Name is the name advertised by the neighbor unit
• **Time to Live**	Display the current time to live

Buttons

Delete: Click to delete LLDP remove device entry.

Refresh: Click to refresh LLDP remove device.

4.10.6 MED Network Policy

Network Policy Discovery enables the efficient discovery and diagnosis of mismatch issues with the VLAN configuration, along with the associated Layer 2 and Layer 3 attributes, which apply for a set of specific protocol applications on that port. Improper network policy configurations are a very significant issue in VoIP environments that frequently result in voice quality degradation or loss of service.

Policies are only intended for use with applications that have specific 'real-time' network policy requirements, such as interactive voice and/or video services.
The network policy attributes advertised are:

1. Layer 2 VLAN ID (IEEE 802.1Q-2003)
2. Layer 2 priority value (IEEE 802.1D-2004)
3. Layer 3 Diffserv code point (DSCP) value (IETF RFC 2474)

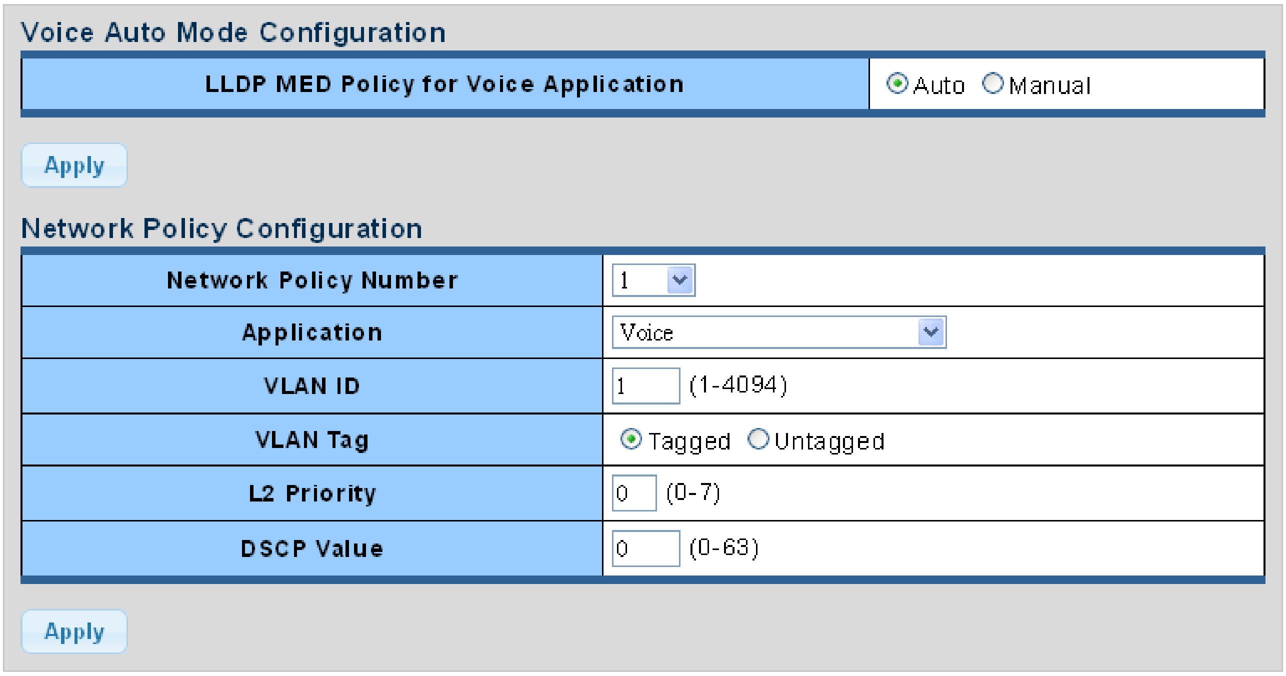
This network policy is potentially advertised and associated with multiple sets of application types supported on a given port. The application types specifically addressed are:

1. Voice
2. Guest Voice
3. Softphone Voice
4. Video Conferencing
5. Streaming Video
6. Control / Signaling (conditionally support a separate network policy for the media types above)

A large network may support multiple VoIP policies across the entire organization, and different policies per application type. LLDP-MED allows multiple policies to be advertised per port, each corresponding to a different application type. Different ports on the same Network Connectivity Device may advertise different sets of policies, based on the authenticated user identity or port configuration.

It should be noted that LLDP-MED is not intended to run on links other than between Network Connectivity Devices and Endpoints, and therefore does not need to advertise the multitude of network policies that frequently run on an aggregated link interior to the LAN.

The Voice Auto Mode Configuration, Network Policy Configuration and LLDP MED Network Policy Table screen in Figure 4-10-10 & Figure 4-10-11 appears.



Voice Auto Mode Configuration

LLDP MED Policy for Voice Application	● Auto ○ Manual

Network Policy Configuration

Network Policy Number	1
Application	Voice
VLAN ID	1 (1-4094)
VLAN Tag	● Tagged ○ Untagged
L2 Priority	0 (0-7)
DSCP Value	0 (0-63)

Figure 4-10-10 Voice Auto Mode Configuration and Network Policy Configuration Page Screenshot

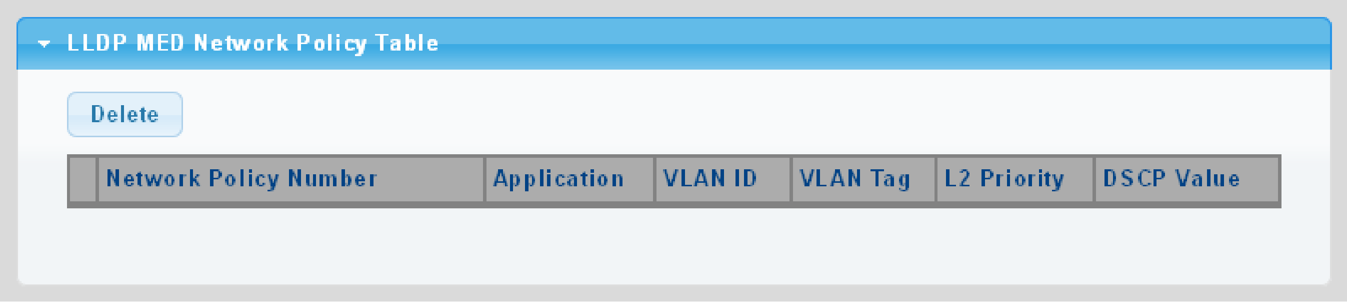
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **LLDP MED Policy for Voice Application**	Set the LLDP MED policy for voice application mode
- **Network Policy Number**	Select network policy number from this drop-down list
- **Application Type**	Intended use of the application types: **Voice** - for use by dedicated IP Telephony handsets and other similar appliances supporting interactive voice services. These devices are typically deployed on a separate VLAN for ease of deployment and enhanced security by isolation from data applications. **Voice Signaling** - for use in network topologies that require a different policy for the voice signaling than for the voice media. This application type should not be advertised if all the same network policies apply as those advertised in the Voice application policy. **Guest Voice** - support a separate 'limited feature-set' voice service for guest users and visitors with their own IP Telephony handsets and other similar appliances supporting interactive voice services. **Guest Voice Signaling** - for use in network topologies that require a different policy for the guest voice signaling than for the guest voice media. This application type should not be advertised if all the same network policies apply as those advertised in the Guest Voice application policy.

	Softphone Voice - for use by softphone applications on typical data centric devices, such as PCs or laptops. This class of endpoints frequently does not support multiple VLANs, if at all, and are typically configured to use an 'untagged' VLAN or a single 'tagged' data specific VLAN. When a network policy is defined for use with an 'untagged' VLAN (see Tagged flag below), then the L2 priority field is ignored and only the DSCP value has relevance. **Video Conferencing** - for use by dedicated Video Conferencing equipment and other similar appliances supporting real-time interactive video/audio services. **App Streaming Video** - for use by broadcast or multicast based video content distribution and other similar applications supporting streaming video services that require specific network policy treatment. Video applications relying on TCP with buffering would not be an intended use of this application type. **Video Signaling** - for use in network topologies that require a separate policy for the video signaling than for the video media. This application type should not be advertised if all the same network policies apply as those advertised in the Video Conferencing application policy.
• **VLAN ID**	VLAN identifier (VID) for the port as defined in IEEE 802.1Q-2003
• **Tag**	**Tag** indicating whether the specified application type is using a 'tagged' or an 'untagged' VLAN. **Untagged** indicates that the device is using an untagged frame format and as such does not include a tag header as defined by IEEE 802.1Q-2003. In this case, both the VLAN ID and the Layer 2 priority fields are ignored and only the DSCP value has relevance. **Tagged** indicates that the device is using the IEEE 802.1Q tagged frame format, and that both the VLAN ID and the Layer 2 priority values are being used, as well as the DSCP value. The tagged format includes an additional field, known as the tag header. The tagged frame format also includes priority tagged frames as defined by IEEE 802.1Q-2003.
• **L2 Priority**	L2 Priority is the Layer 2 priority to be used for the specified application type. L2 Priority may specify one of eight priority levels (0 through 7), as defined by IEEE 802.1D-2004. A value of 0 represents use of the default priority as defined in IEEE 802.1D-2004.
• **DSCP**	DSCP value to be used to provide Diffserv node behavior for the specified application type as defined in IETF RFC 2474. DSCP may contain one of 64 code point values (0 through 63). A value of 0 represents use of the default DSCP value as defined in RFC 2475.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



	Network Policy Number	Application	VLAN ID	VLAN Tag	L2 Priority	DSCP Value

Figure 4-10-11 LLDP MED Network Policy Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

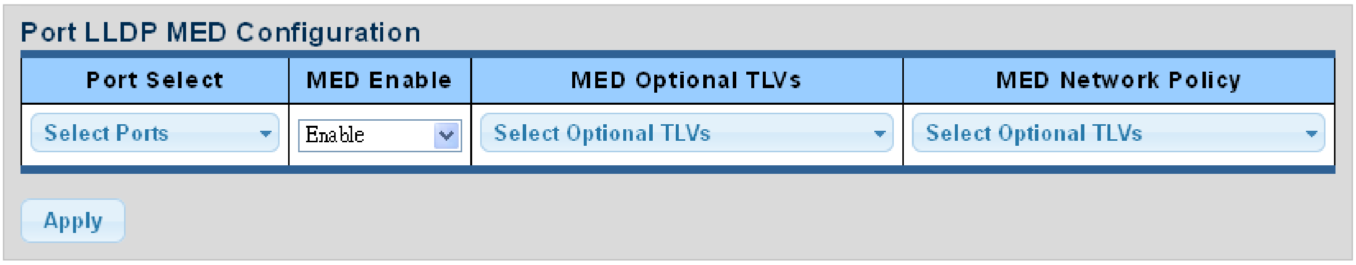
Object	Description
• **Network Policy Number**	Display the current network policy number
• **Application**	Display the current application
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **VLAN Tag**	Display the current VLAN tag status
• **L2 Priority**	Display the current L2 priority
• **DSCP Value**	Display the current DSCP value

Buttons

Delete: Click to delete LLDP MED network policy table entry.

4.10.7 MED Port Setting

The Port LLDP MED Configuration/Port Setting Table screens in Figure 4-10-12 & Figure 4-10-13 appear.


Port LLDP MED Configuration

Port Select	MED Enable	MED Optional TLVs	MED Network Policy
Select Ports	Enable	Select Optional TLVs	Select Optional TLVs

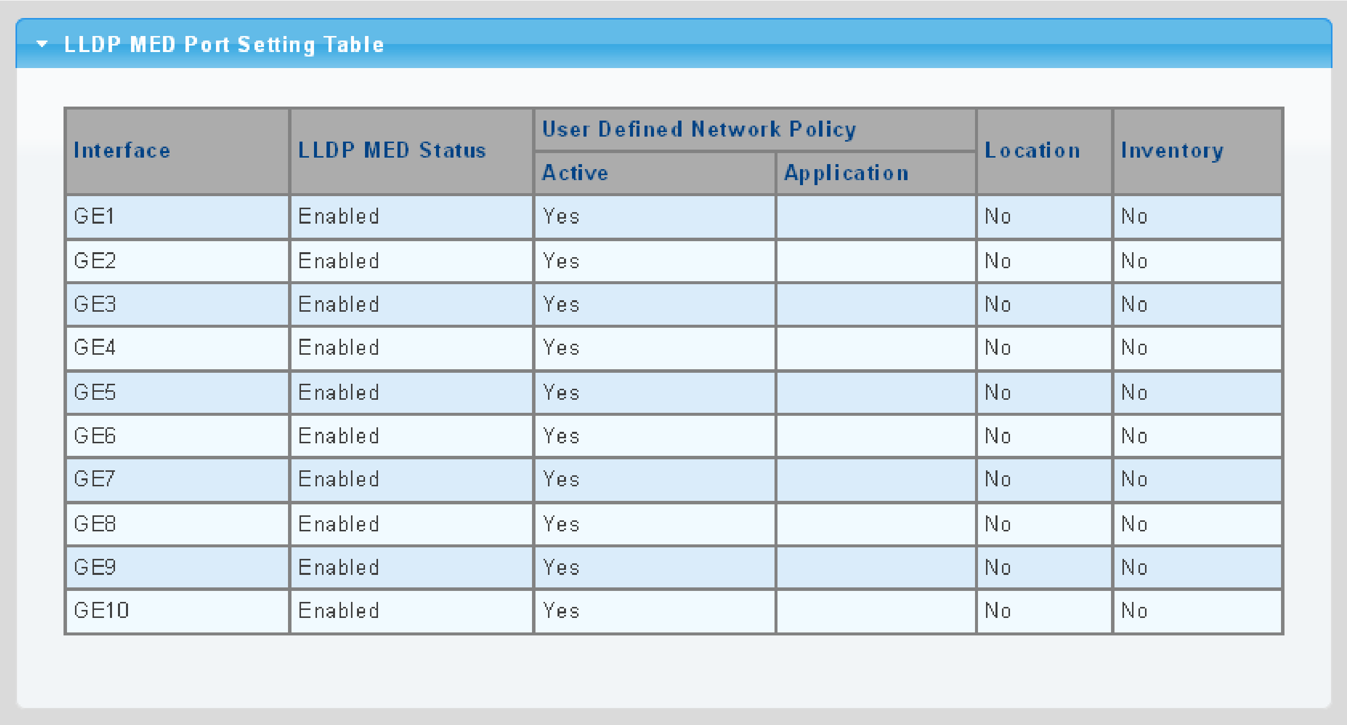
Figure 4-10-12 Port LLDP MED Configuration Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port Select**	Select port from this drop-down list
- **MED Enable**	Enable or disable MED configuration
- **MED Optional TVLs**	Configures the information included in the MED TLV field of advertised messages. **-Network Policy** – This option advertises network policy configuration information, aiding in the discovery and diagnosis of VLAN configuration mismatches on a port. Improper network policy configurations frequently result in voice quality degradation or complete service disruption. **-Location** – This option advertises location identification details. **-Inventory** – This option advertises device details useful for inventory management, such as manufacturer, model, software version and other pertinent information.
- **MED Network Policy**	Select MED network policy from this drop-down list

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



LLDP MED Port Setting Table

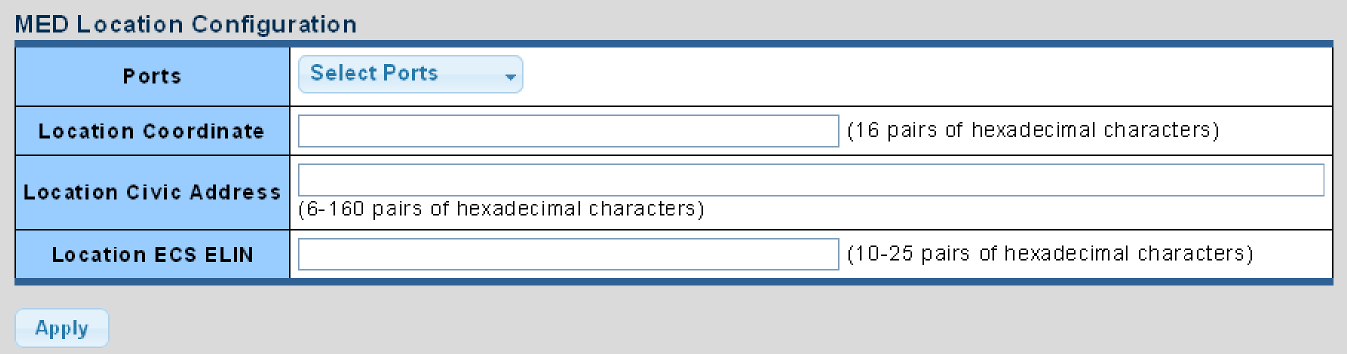
Interface	LLDP MED Status	User Defined Network Policy		Location	Inventory
		Active	Application		
GE1	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE2	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE3	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE4	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE5	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE6	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE7	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE8	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE9	Enabled	Yes		No	No
GE10	Enabled	Yes		No	No

Figure 4-10-13 Port LLDP MED Configuration Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Interface**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **LLDP MED Status**	Display the current LLDP MED status
• **Active**	Display the current active status
• **Application**	Display the current application
• **Location**	Display the current location
• **Inventory**	Display the current inventory

The MED Location Configuration and LLDP MED Port Location Table screens in Figure 4-10-14 & Figure 4-10-15 appear.



MED Location Configuration

Ports	Select Ports
Location Coordinate	(16 pairs of hexadecimal characters)
Location Civic Address	(6-160 pairs of hexadecimal characters)
Location ECS ELIN	(10-25 pairs of hexadecimal characters)

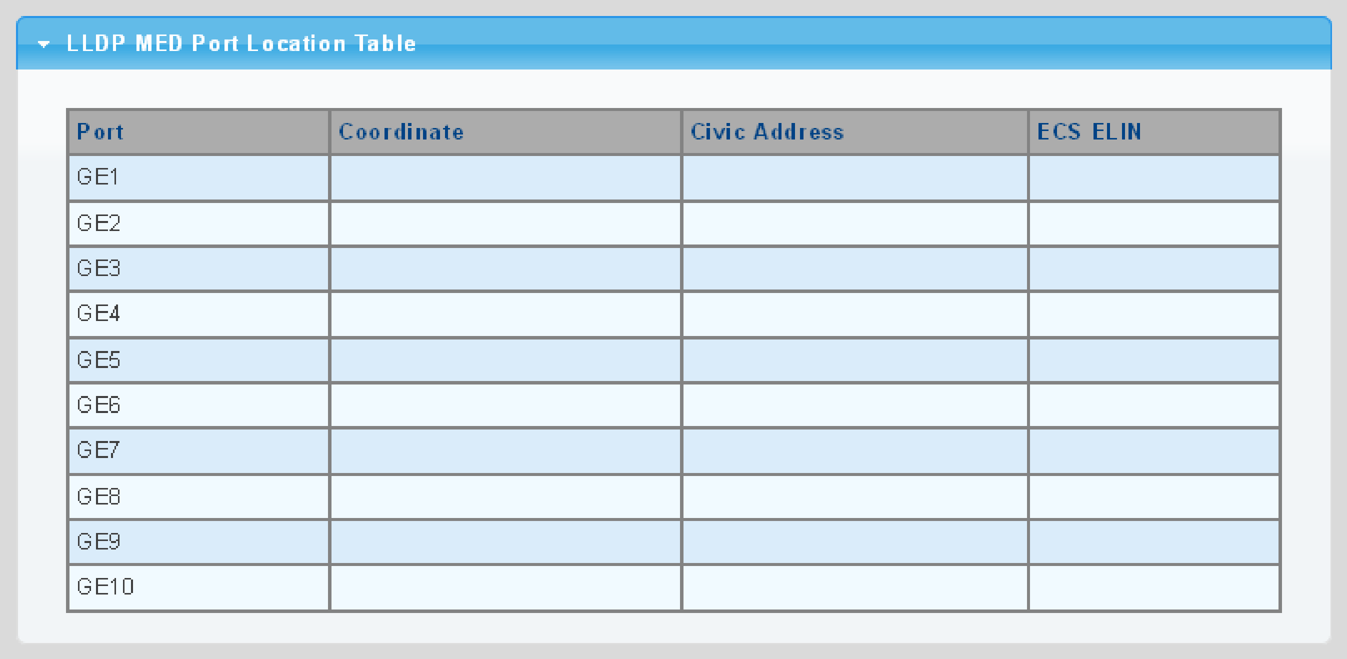
Figure 4-10-14 Port LLDP MED Configuration Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Location ESC ELIN**	A string identifying the Location ESC ELIN that this entry should belong to

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



▾ LLDP MED Port Location Table

Port	Coordinate	Civic Address	ECS ELIN
GE1			
GE2			
GE3			
GE4			
GE5			
GE6			
GE7			
GE8			
GE9			
GE10			

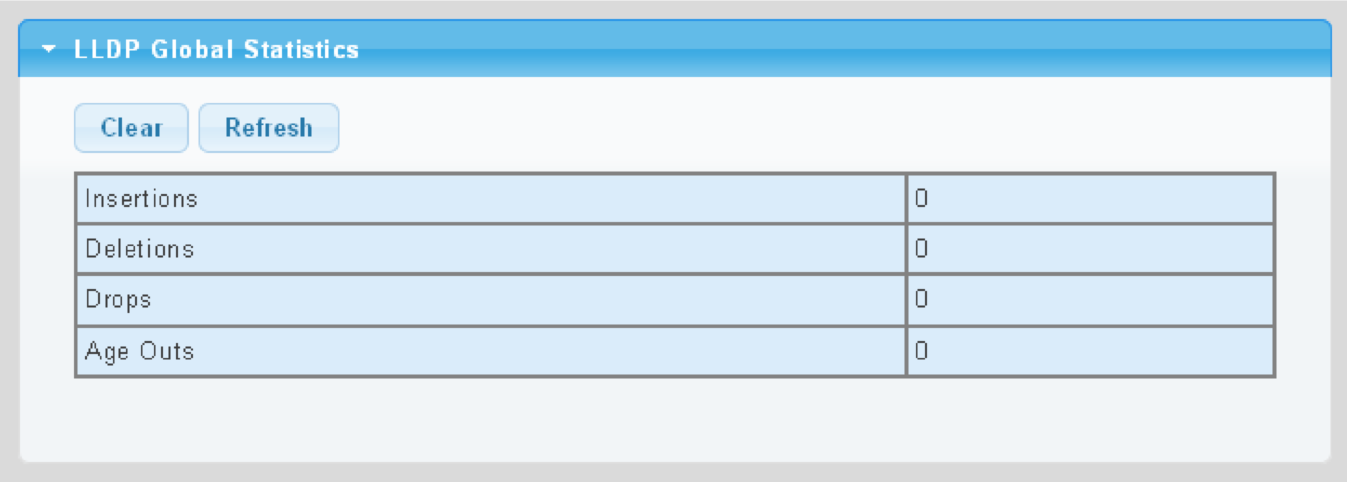
Figure 4-10-15 LLDP MED Port Location Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Coordinate**	Display the current coordinate
- **Civic Address**	Display the current civic address
- **ESC ELIN**	Display the current ESC ELIN

4.10.8 LLDP Statistics

Use the LLDP Device Statistics screen to general statistics for LLDP-capable devices attached to the switch, and for LLDP protocol messages transmitted or received on all local interfaces. The LLDP Global and Port Statistics screens in Figure 4-10-16 & Figure 4-10-17 appear.



LLDP Global Statistics

Insertions	0
Deletions	0
Drops	0
Age Outs	0

Figure 4-10-16 LLDP Global Statistics Page Screenshot

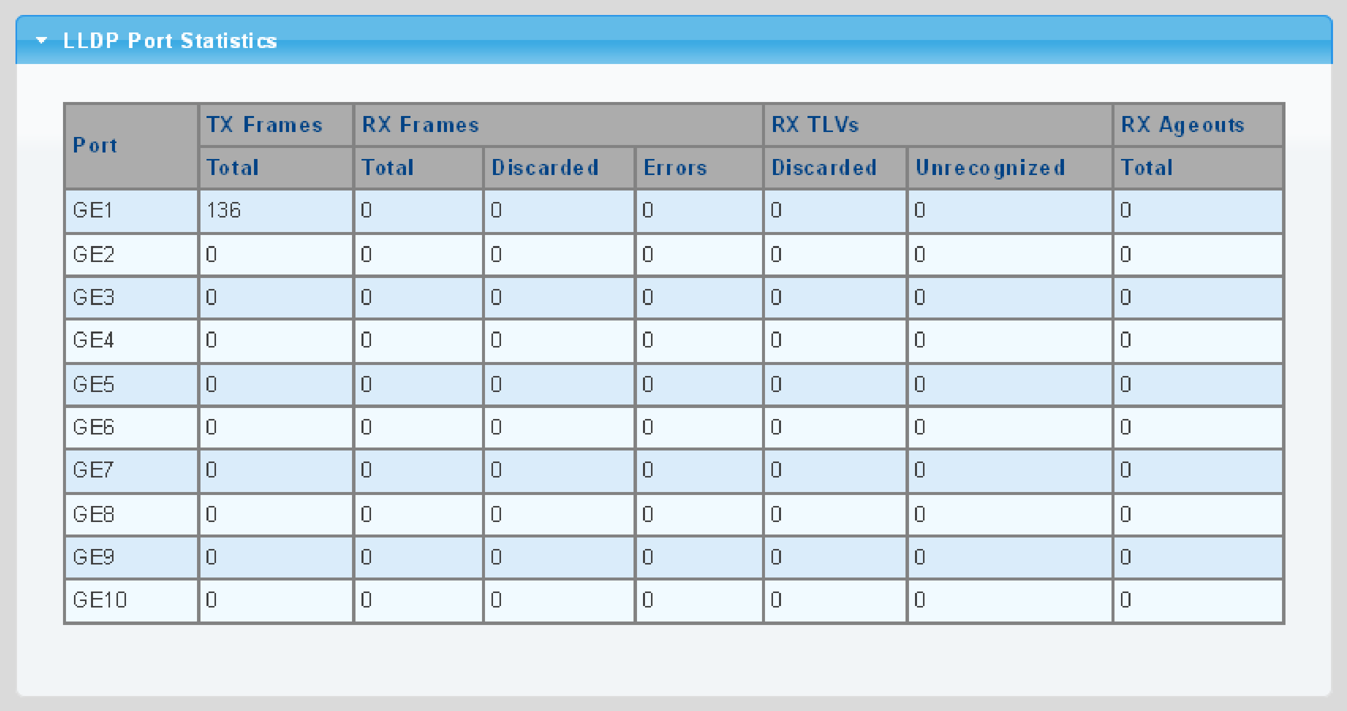
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Insertions**	Shows the number of new entries added since switch reboot.\
• **Deletions**	Shows the number of new entries deleted since switch reboot.\
• **Drops**	Shows the number of LLDP frames dropped due to that the entry table was full.\
• **Age Outs**	Shows the number of entries deleted due to Time-To-Live expiring.\

Buttons

Clear: Click to clear the statistics

Refresh: Click to refresh the statistics



LLDP Port Statistics

Port	TX Frames	RX Frames			RX TLVs		RX Ageouts
	Total	Total	Discarded	Errors	Discarded	Unrecognized	Total
GE1	136	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 4-10-17 LLDP Port Statistics Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The port on which LLDP frames are received or transmitted
• **TX Frame – Total**	The number of LLDP frames transmitted on the port
• **RX Frame – Total**	The number of LLDP frames received on the port
• **RX Frame – Discarded**	If an LLDP frame is received on a port, and the switch's internal table has run full, the LLDP frame is counted and discarded. This situation is known as "Too Many Neighbors" in the LLDP standard. LLDP frames require a new entry in the table when the Chassis ID or Remote Port ID is not already contained within the table. Entries are removed from the table when a given port links down, an LLDP shutdown frame is received, or when the entry ages out.
• **RX Frame – Error**	The number of received LLDP frames containing some kind of error.
• **RX TLVs – Discarded**	Each LLDP frame can contain multiple pieces of information, known as TLVs (TLV is short for "Type Length Value"). If a TLV is malformed, it is counted and discarded.
• **RX TLVs – Unrecognized**	The number of well-formed TLVs, but with an unknown type value
• **RX Ageout - Total**	The number of organizationally TLVs received

4.11 MAC Address Table

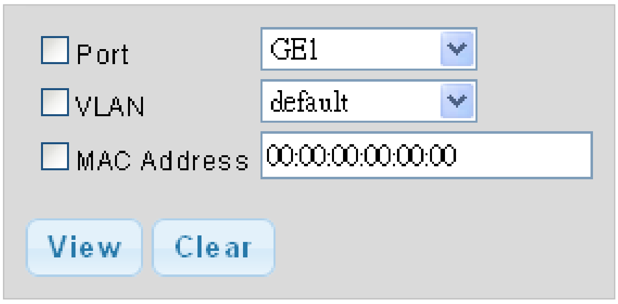
Switching of frames is based upon the DMAC address contained in the frame. The Managed Switch builds up a table that maps MAC addresses to switch ports for knowing which ports the frames should go to (based upon the DMAC address in the frame). This table contains both static and dynamic entries. The static entries are configured by the network administrator if the administrator wants to do a fixed mapping between the DMAC address and switch ports.

The frames also contain a MAC address (SMAC address), which shows the MAC address of the equipment sending the frame. The SMAC address is used by the switch to automatically update the MAC table with these dynamic MAC addresses. Dynamic entries are removed from the MAC table if no frame with the corresponding SMAC address has been seen after a configurable age time.

4.11.1 Dynamic Learned

Dynamic MAC Table

Dynamic Learned MAC Table is shown on this page. The MAC Table is sorted first by VLAN ID and then by MAC address. The Dynamic Learned screens in Figure 4-11-1 & Figure 4-11-2 appear.



☐ Port: GE1
☐ VLAN: default
☐ MAC Address: 00:00:00:00:00:00

Figure 4-11-1 Dynamic Learned Page Screenshot

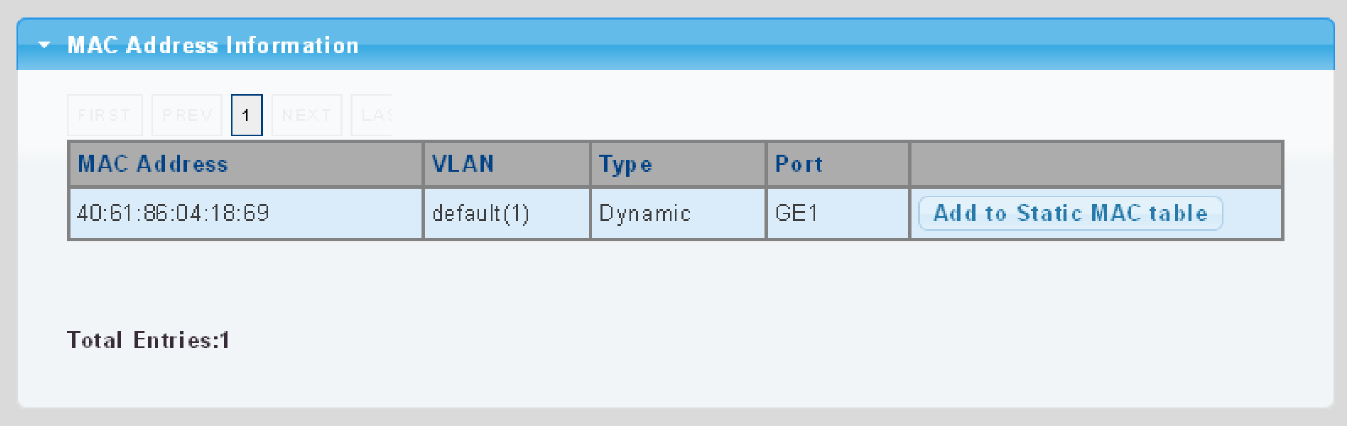
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **VLAN**	Select VLAN from this drop-down list
• **MAC Address**	Physical address associated with this interface

Buttons

View: Refreshes the displayed table starting from the "Start from MAC address" and "VLAN" input fields

Clear: Flushes all dynamic entries



MAC Address	VLAN	Type	Port	
40:61:86:04:18:69	default(1)	Dynamic	GE1	Add to Static MAC table

Total Entries:1

Figure 4-11-2 MAC Address Information Page Screenshot

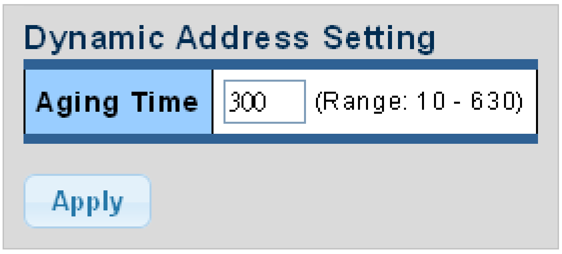
Object	Description
• **MAC Address**	The MAC address of the entry
• **VLAN**	The VLAN ID of the entry
• **Type**	Indicates whether the entry is a static or dynamic entry
• **Port**	The ports that are members of the entry

Buttons

Add to Static MAC table: Click to add dynamic MAC address to static MAC address.

4.11.2 Dynamic Address Setting

By default, dynamic entries are removed from the MAC table after 300 seconds. The Dynamic Address Setting/Status screens in Figure 4-11-3 & Figure 4-11-4 appear.



Aging Time 300 (Range: 10 - 630)

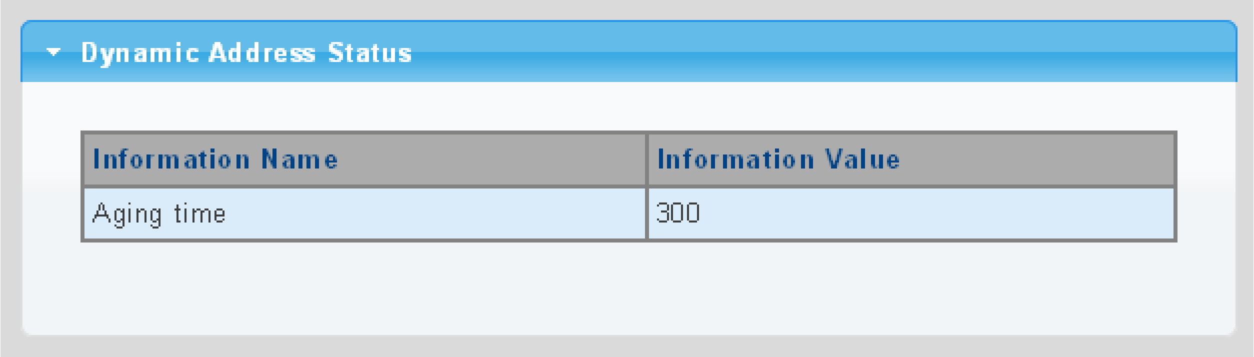
Figure 4-11-3 Dynamic Addresses Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Aging Time**	The time after which a learned entry is discarded Range: 10-630 seconds; Default: **300 seconds**

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
Aging time	300

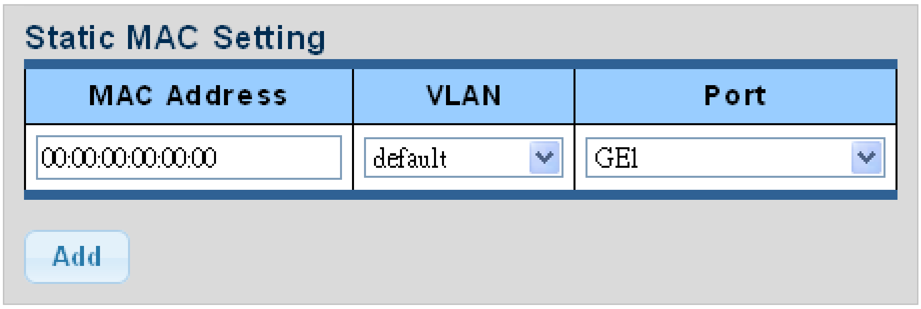
Figure 4-11-4 Dynamic Addresses Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Aging Time**	Display the current aging time

4.11.3 Static MAC Setting

The static entries in the MAC table are shown in this table. The MAC table is sorted first by VLAN ID and then by MAC address. The Static MAC Setting screens in Figure 4-11-5 & Figure 4-11-6 appear.



Static MAC Setting

MAC Address	VLAN	Port
00:00:00:00:00:00	default	GE1

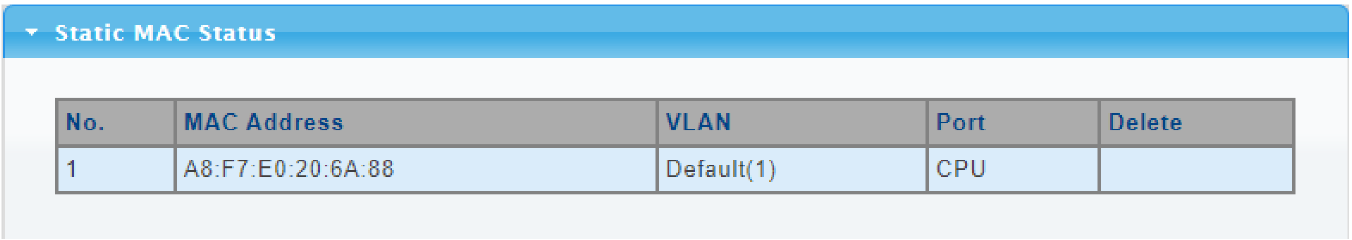
Figure 4-11-5 Statics MAC Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **MAC Address**	Physical address associated with this interface
• **VLAN**	Select VLAN from this drop-down list
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list

Buttons

Add: Click to add new static MAC address.



Static MAC Status

No.	MAC Address	VLAN	Port	Delete
1	A8:F7:E0:20:6A:88	Default(1)	CPU	

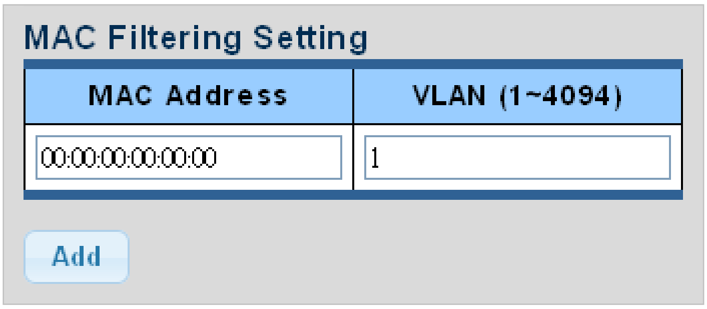
Figure 4-11-6 Statics MAC Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **No.**	This is the number for entries
• **MAC Address**	The MAC address for the entry
• **VLAN**	The VLAN ID for the entry
• **Port**	Display the current port
• **Delete**	Click Delete to delete static MAC status entry

4.11.4 MAC Filtering

By filtering MAC address, the switch can easily filter the per-configured MAC address and reduce the un-safety. The Static MAC Setting screens in Figure 4-11-7 & Figure 4-11-8 appear.



MAC Address	VLAN (1~4094)
00:00:00:00:00:00	1

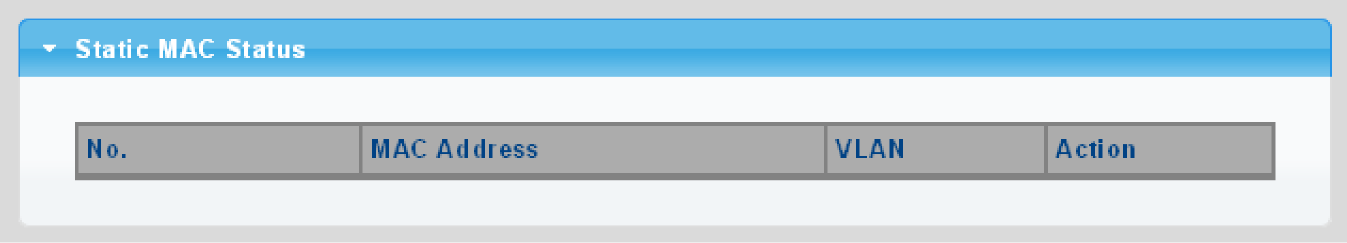
Figure 4-11-7 MAC Filtering Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **MAC Address**	Physical address associated with this interface
- **VLAN (1~4096)**	Indicates the ID of this particular VLAN

Buttons

Add: Click to add new MAC filtering setting.



No.	MAC Address	VLAN	Action

Figure 4-11-8 Statics MAC Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **No.**	This is the number for entries
- **MAC Address**	The MAC address for the entry
- **VLAN**	The VLAN ID for the entry
- **Delete**	Click Delete to delete static MAC status entry.

4.12 Quality of Service

4.12.1 Understanding QoS

Quality of Service (QoS) is an advanced traffic prioritization feature that allows you to establish control over network traffic. QoS enables you to assign various grades of network service to different types of traffic, such as multi-media, video, protocol-specific, time critical, and file-backup traffic.

QoS reduces bandwidth limitations, delay, loss, and jitter. It also provides increased reliability for delivery of your data and allows you to prioritize certain applications across your network. You can define exactly how you want the switch to treat selected applications and types of traffic.

You can use QoS on your system to:

- Control a wide variety of network traffic by:
- Classifying traffic based on packet attributes.
- Assigning priorities to traffic (for example, to set higher priorities to time-critical or business-critical applications).
- Applying security policy through traffic filtering.
- Provide predictable throughput for multimedia applications such as video conferencing or voice over IP by minimizing delay and jitter.
- Improve performance for specific types of traffic and preserve performance as the amount of traffic grows.
- Reduce the need to constantly add bandwidth to the network.
- Manage network congestion.

To implement QoS on your network, you need to carry out the following actions:

1. Define a service level to determine the priority that will be applied to traffic.
2. Apply a classifier to determine how the incoming traffic will be classified and thus treated by the Switch.
3. Create a QoS profile which associates a service level and a classifier.
4. Apply a QoS profile to a port(s).

The **QoS** page of the Managed Switch contains three types of QoS mode - the **802.1p** mode, **DSCP** mode or **Port-base** mode can be selected. Both the three mode rely on predefined fields within the packet to determine the output queue.

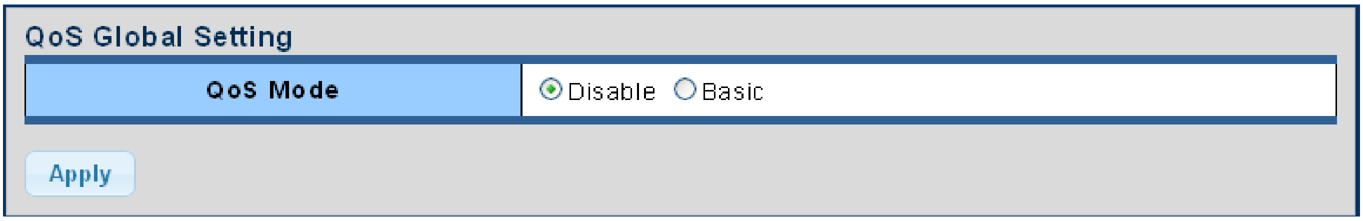
- **802.1p Tag Priority** Mode –The output queue assignment is determined by the IEEE 802.1p VLAN priority tag.
- **IP DSCP** Mode - The output queue assignment is determined by the TOS or DSCP field in the IP packets.
- **Port-Base Priority** Mode – Any packet received from the specify high priority port will treated as a high priority packet.

The Managed Switch supports **eight priority level** queue, the queue service rate is based on the **WRR**(**Weight Round Robin**) and **WFQ (Weighted Fair Queuing)** alorithm. The WRR ratio of high-priority and low-priority can be set to "**4:1** and **8:1.**

4.12.2 General

4.12.2.1 QoS Properties

The QoS Global Setting and Information screen in Figure 4-12-1 & Figure 4-12-2 appear.



QoS Global Setting

QoS Mode	● Disable ○ Basic

Figure 4-12-1 QoS Global Setting Page Screenshot

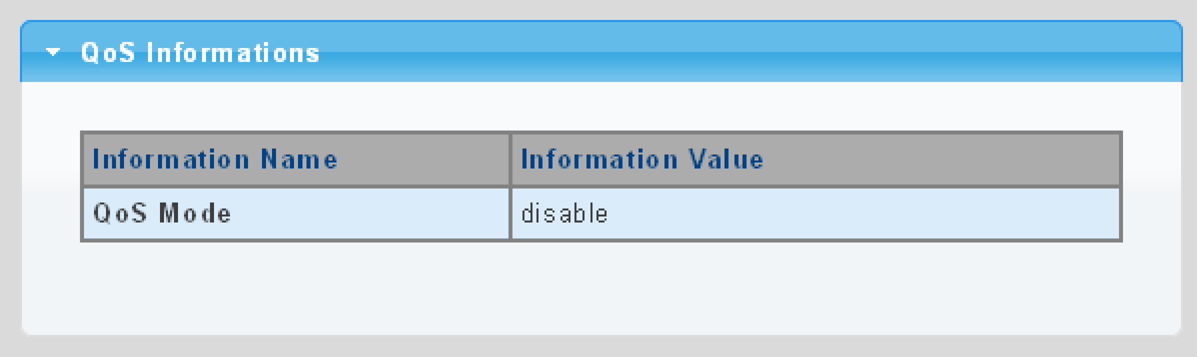
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **QoS Mode**	Enable or disable QoS mode

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

- **QoS Information**



QoS Informations

Information Name	Information Value
QoS Mode	disable

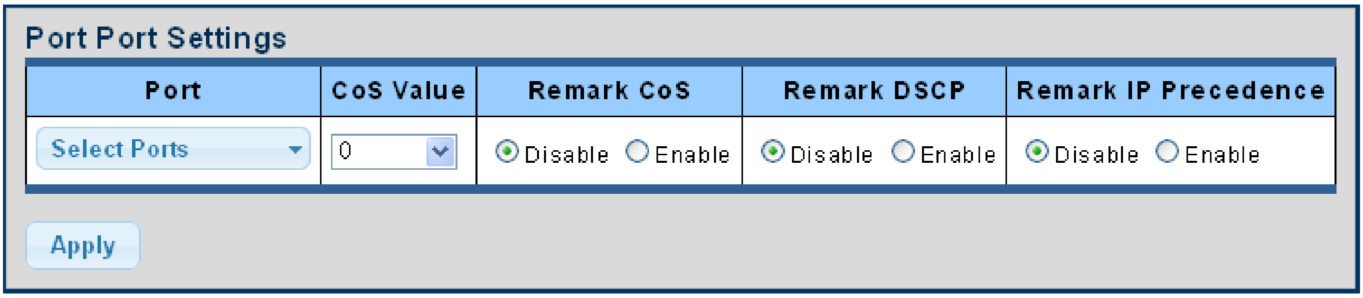
Figure 4-12-2 QoS Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **QoS Mode**	Display the current QoS mode

4.12.2.2 QoS Port Settings

The QoS Port Settings and Status screen in Figure 4-12-3 & Figure 4-12-4 appear.



Port Port Settings

Port	CoS Value	Remark CoS	Remark DSCP	Remark IP Precedence
Select Ports	0	● Disable ○ Enable	● Disable ○ Enable	● Disable ○ Enable

Figure 4-12-3 QoS Port Setting Page Screenshot

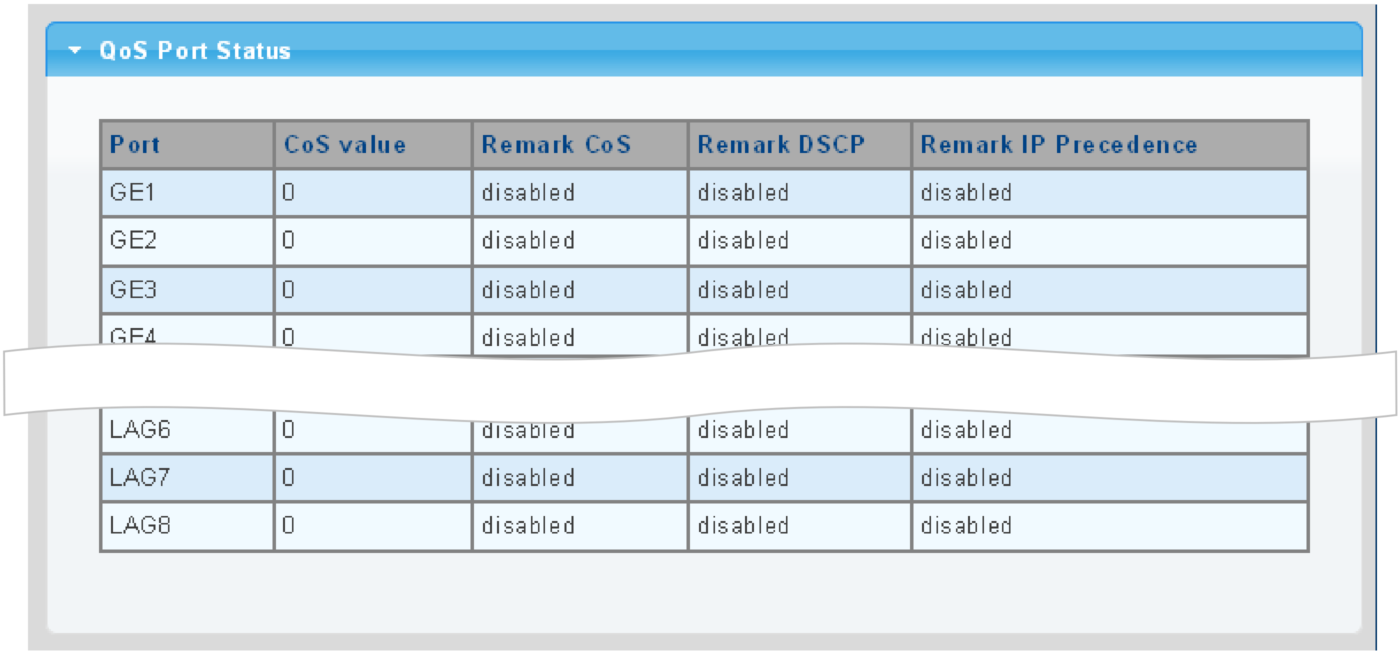
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **CoS Value**	Select CoS value from this drop-down list
• **Remark CoS**	Disable or enable remark CoS
• **Remark DSCP**	Disable or enable remark DSCP
• **Remark IP Precedence**	Disable or enable remark IP Precedence

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

- **QoS Port Status**



QoS Port Status

Port	CoS value	Remark CoS	Remark DSCP	Remark IP Precedence
GE1	0	disabled	disabled	disabled
GE2	0	disabled	disabled	disabled
GE3	0	disabled	disabled	disabled
GE4	0	disabled	disabled	disabled
LAG6	0	disabled	disabled	disabled
LAG7	0	disabled	disabled	disabled
LAG8	0	disabled	disabled	disabled

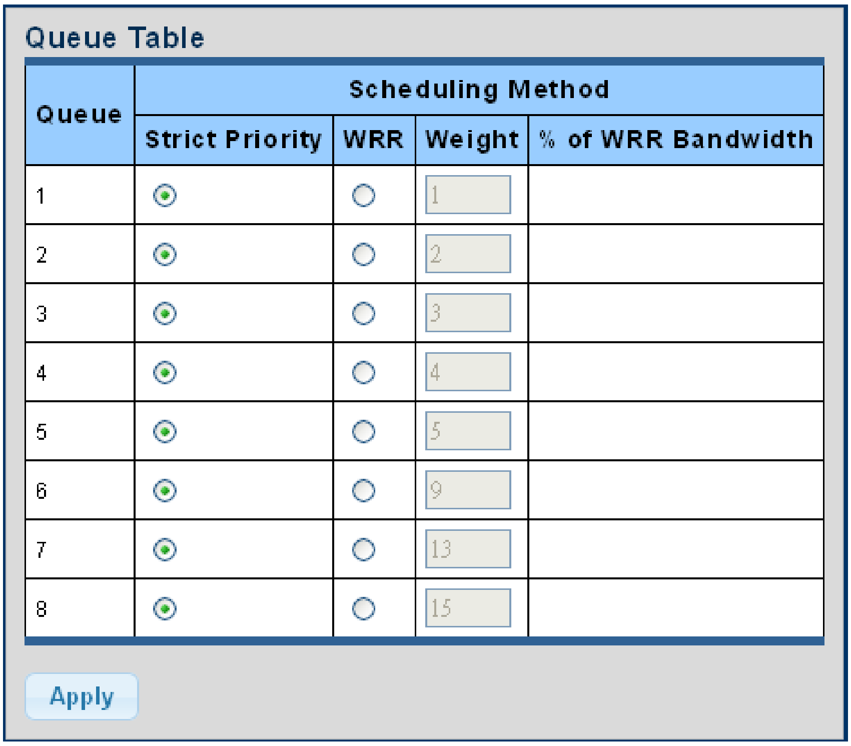
Figure 4-12-4 QoS Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **CoS Value**	Display the current CoS value
- **Remark CoS**	Display the current remark CoS
- **Remark DSCP**	Display the current remark DSCP
- **Remark IP Precedence**	Display the current remark IP precedence

4.12.2.3 Queue Settings

The Queue Table and Information screens in Figure 4-12-5 & Figure 4-12-6 appear.



Queue Table

Queue	Scheduling Method			
	Strict Priority	WRR	Weight	% of WRR Bandwidth
1	●	○	1	
2	●	○	2	
3	●	○	3	
4	●	○	4	
5	●	○	5	
6	●	○	9	
7	●	○	13	
8	●	○	15	

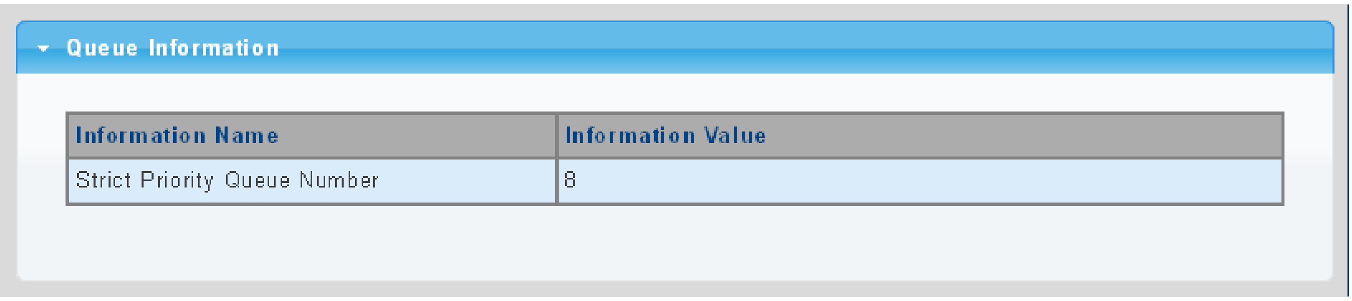
Figure 4-12-5 Queue Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Queue**	Display the current queue ID
- **Strict Priority**	Controls whether the scheduler mode is "Strict Priority" on this switch port
- **WRR**	Controls whether the scheduler mode is "Weighted" on this switch port
- **Weight**	Controls the weight for this queue. This value is restricted to 1-100. This parameter is only shown if "Scheduler Mode" is set to "Weighted".
- **% of WRR Bandwidth**	Display the current bandwidth for each queue

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
Strict Priority Queue Number	8

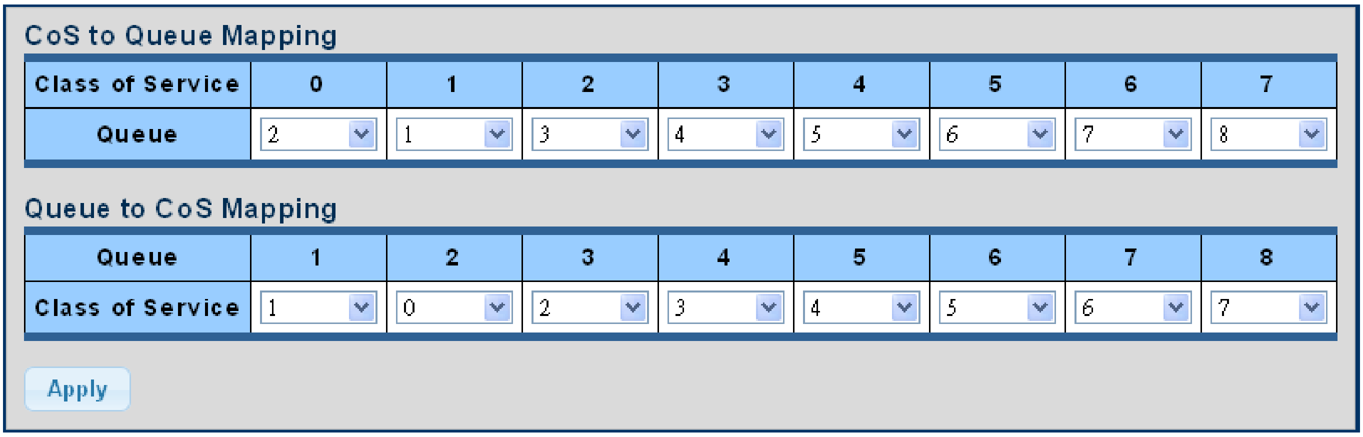
Figure 4-12-6 Queue Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Information Name**	Display the current queue method information
• **Information Value**	Display the current queue value information

4.12.2.4 CoS Mapping

The CoS to Queue and Queue to CoS Mapping screens in Figure 4-12-7 & Figure 4-12-8 appear.



Class of Service	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Queue	2	1	3	4	5	6	7	8

Queue	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Class of Service	1	0	2	3	4	5	6	7

Figure 4-12-7 CoS to Queue and Queue to CoS Mapping Page Screenshot

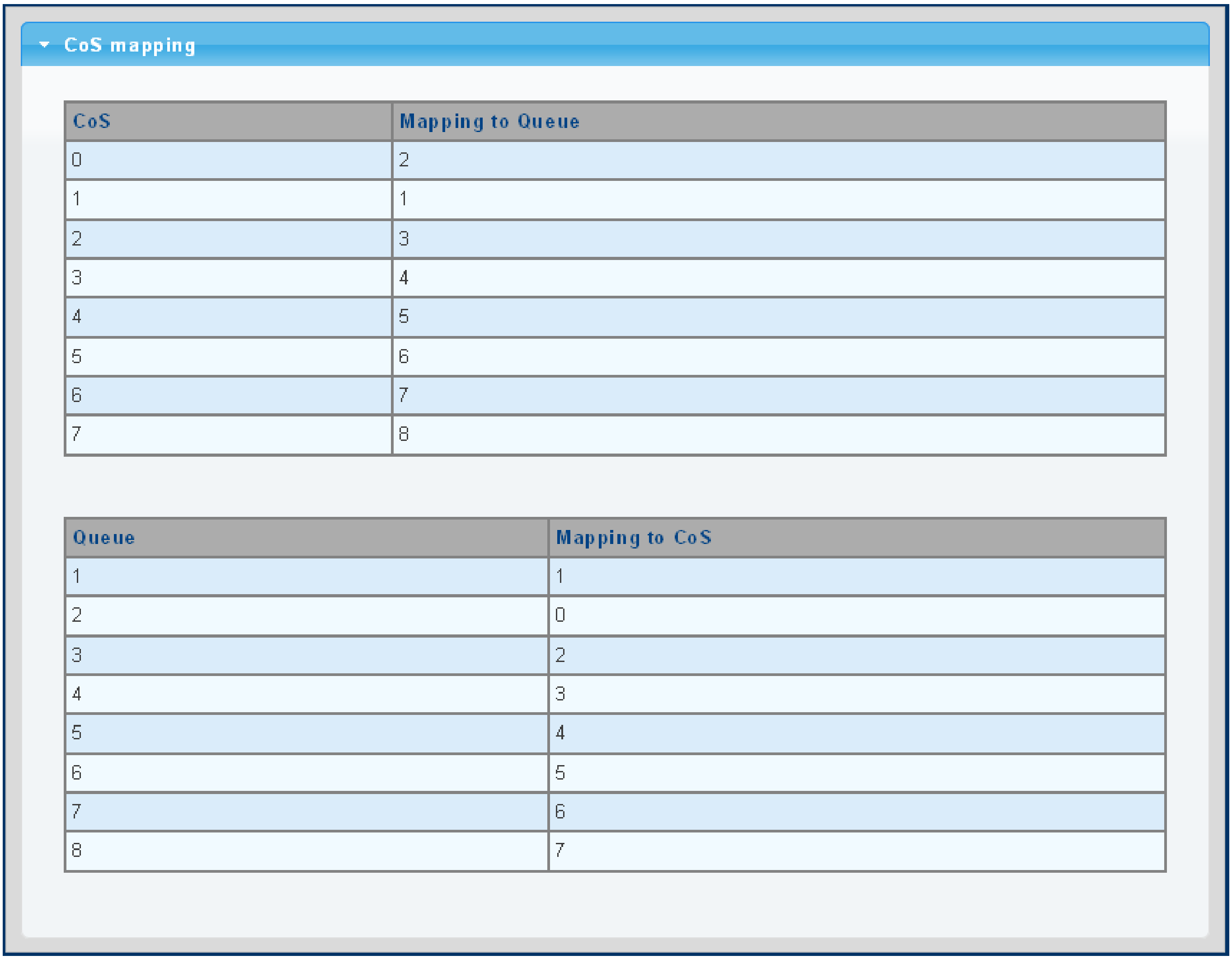
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Queue**	Select Queue value from this drop-down list
• **Class of Service**	Select CoS value from this drop-down list

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

CoS Mapping



CoS	Mapping to Queue
0	2
1	1
2	3
3	4
4	5
5	6
6	7
7	8

Queue	Mapping to CoS
1	1
2	0
3	2
4	3
5	4
6	5
7	6
8	7

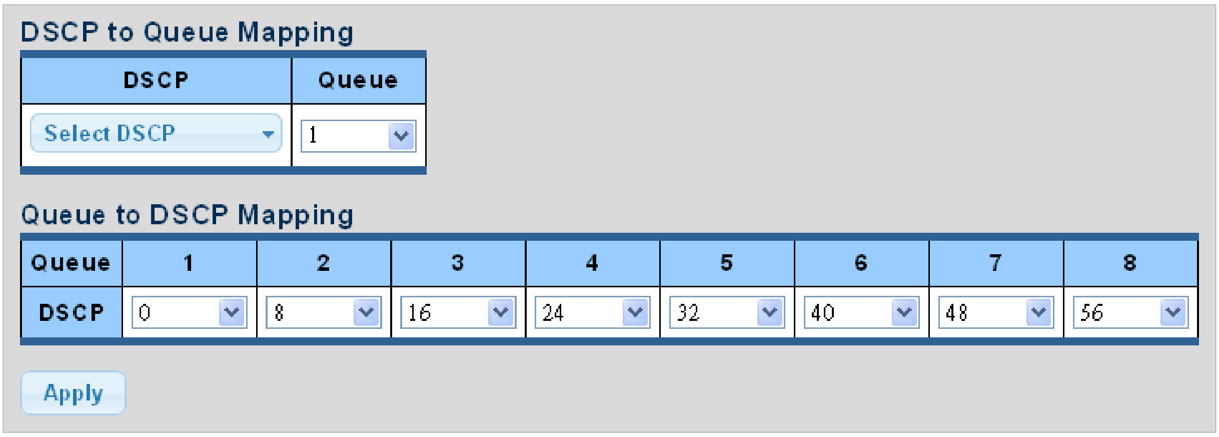
Figure 4-12-8 CoS Mapping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **CoS**	Display the current CoS value
• **Mapping to Queue**	Display the current mapping to queue
• **Queue**	Display the current queue value
• **Mapping to CoS**	Display the current mapping to CoS

4.12.2.5 DSCP Mapping

The DSCP to Queue and Queue to DSCP Mapping screens in Figure 4-12-9 & Figure 4-12-10 appear.



DSCP to Queue Mapping

DSCP	Queue
Select DSCP	1

Queue to DSCP Mapping

Queue	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
DSCP	0	8	16	24	32	40	48	56

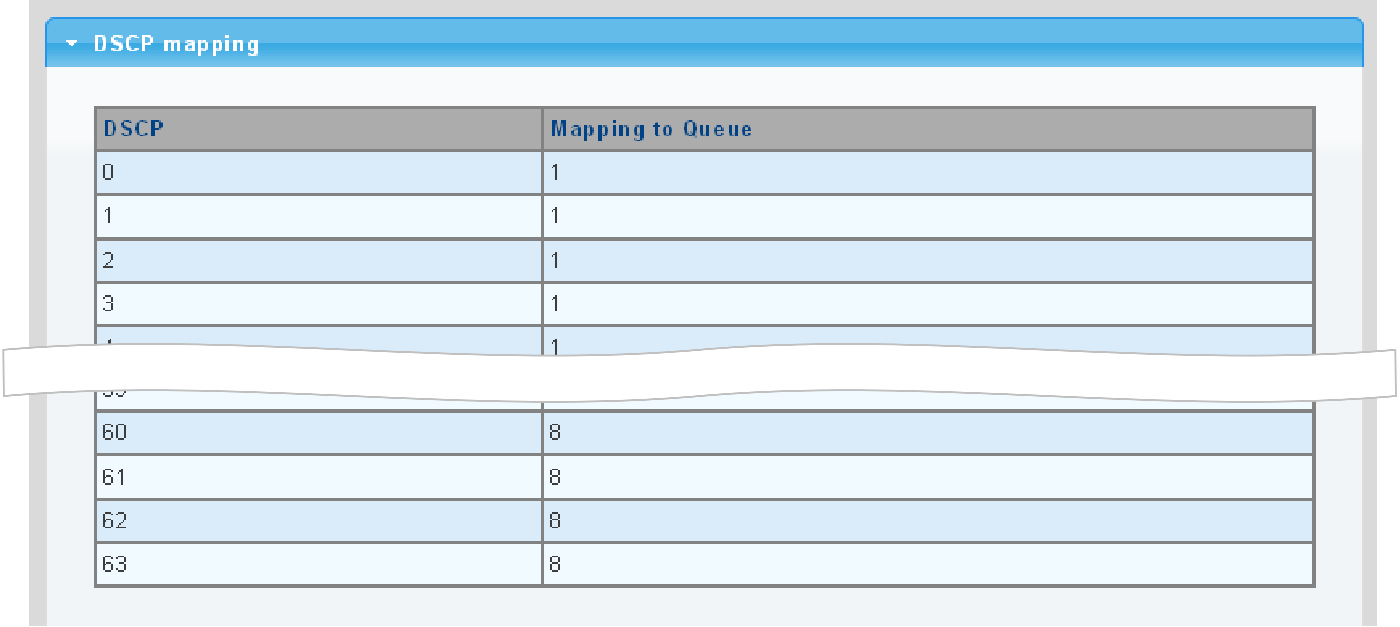
Figure 4-12-9 DSCP to Queue and Queue to DSCP Mapping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Queue**	Select Queue value from this drop-down list
• **DSCP**	Select DSCP value from this drop-down list

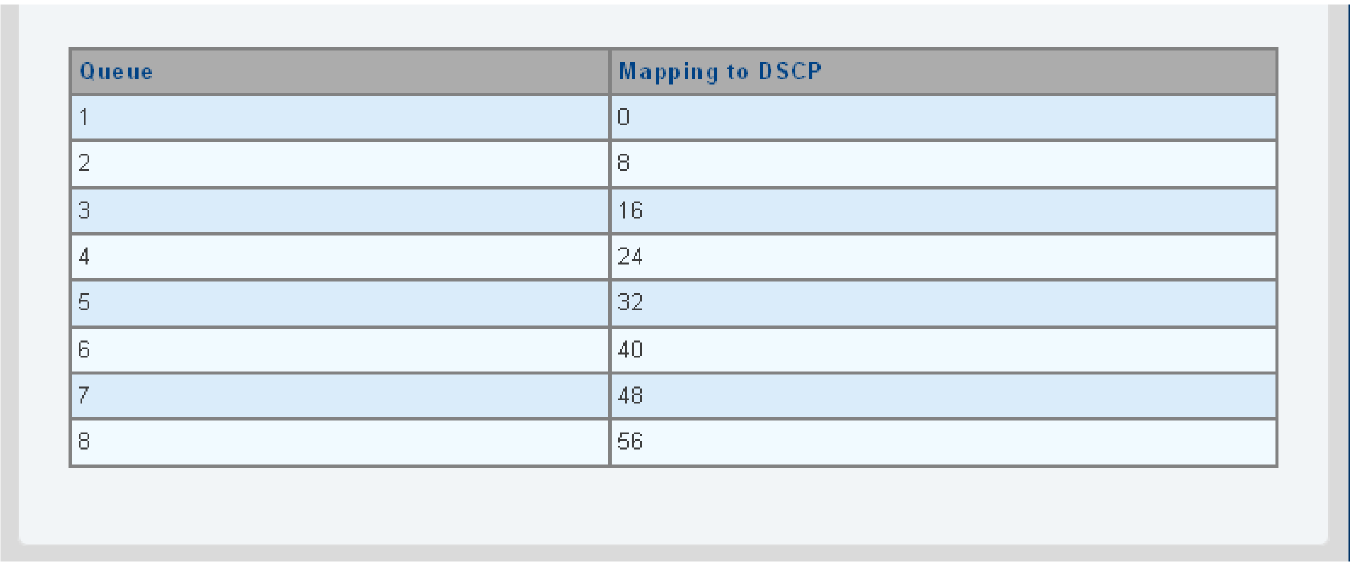
Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



DSCP mapping

DSCP	Mapping to Queue
0	1
1	1
2	1
3	1
4	1
60	8
61	8
62	8
63	8



Queue	Mapping to DSCP
1	0
2	8
3	16
4	24
5	32
6	40
7	48
8	56

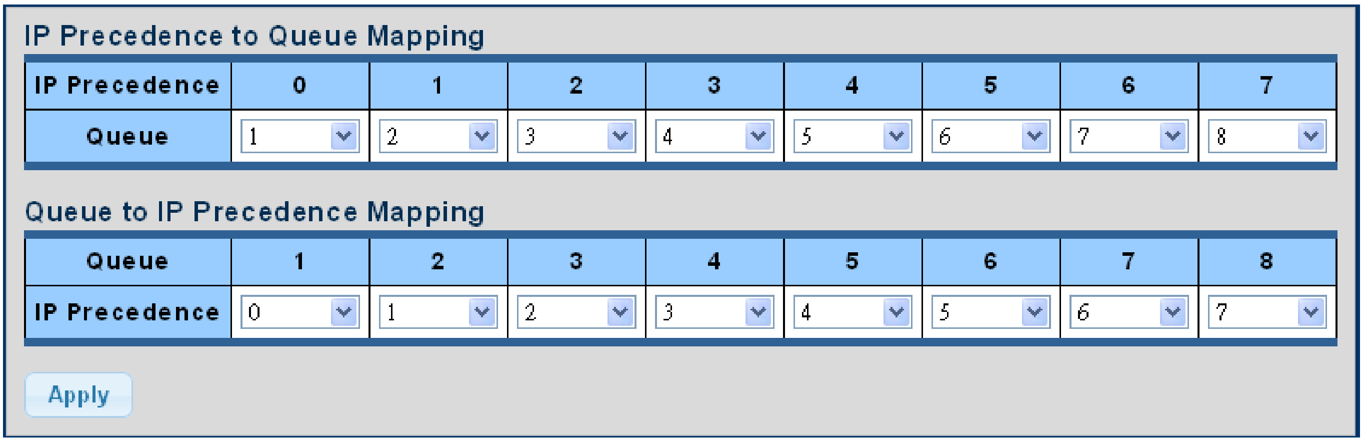
Figure 4-12-10 DSCP Mapping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **DSCP**	Display the current CoS value
• **Mapping to Queue**	Display the current mapping to queue
• **Queue**	Display the current queue value
• **Mapping to DSCP**	Display the current mapping to DSCP

4.12.2.6 IP Precedence Mapping

The IP Precedence to Queue and Queue to IP Precedence Mapping screens in Figure 4-12-11 & Figure 4-12-12 appear.



IP Precedence to Queue Mapping

IP Precedence	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Queue	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

Queue to IP Precedence Mapping

Queue	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
IP Precedence	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

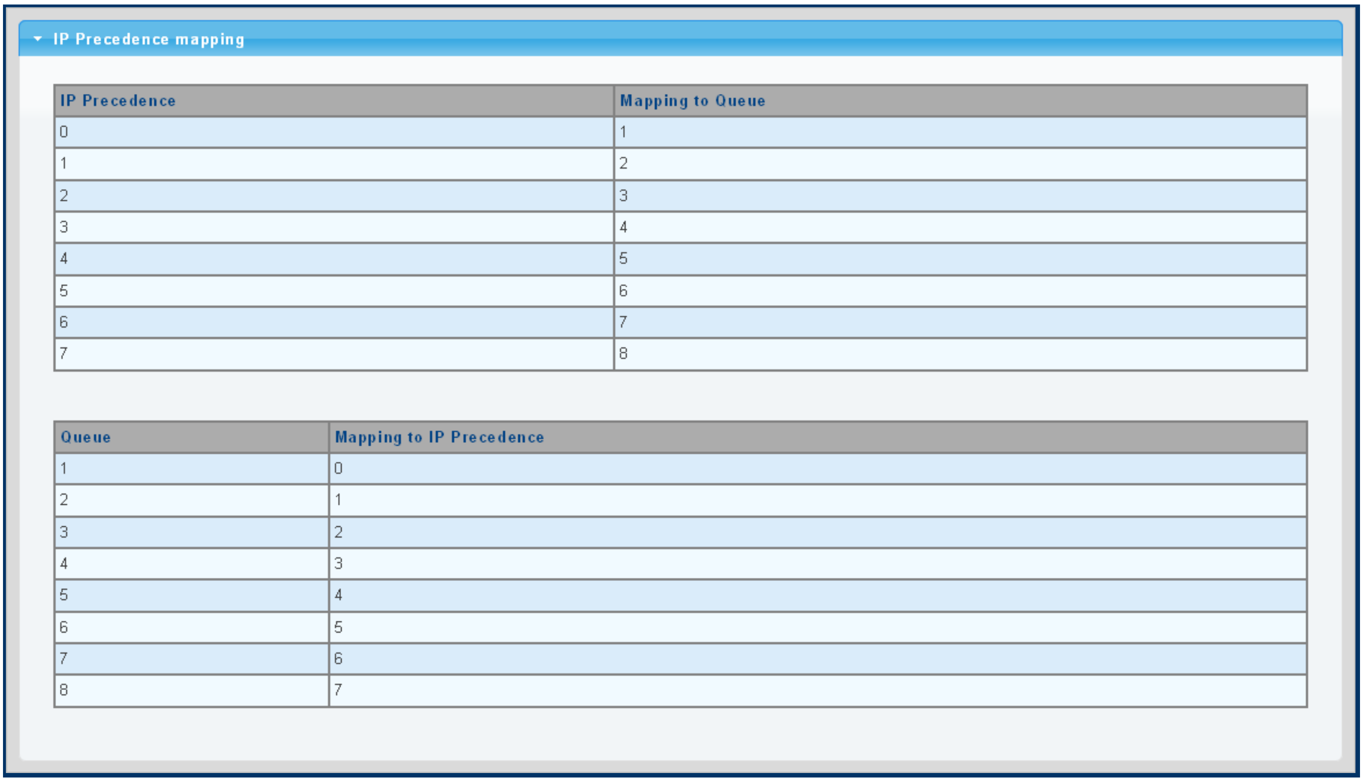
Figure 4-12-11 IP Precedence to Queue and Queue to IP Precedence Mapping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Queue**	Select Queue value from this drop-down list
• **IP Precedence**	Select IP Precedence value from this drop-down list

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



IP Precedence	Mapping to Queue
0	1
1	2
2	3
3	4
4	5
5	6
6	7
7	8

Queue	Mapping to IP Precedence
1	0
2	1
3	2
4	3
5	4
6	5
7	6
8	7

Figure 4-12-12 IP Precedence Mapping Page Screenshot

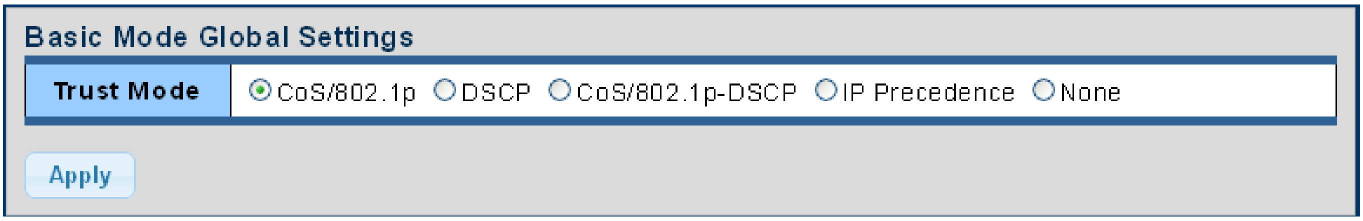
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **IP Precedence**	Display the current CoS value
• **Mapping to Queue**	Display the current mapping to queue
• **Queue**	Display the current queue value
• **Mapping to IP Precedence**	Display the current mapping to IP Precedence

4.12.3 QoS Basic Mode

4.12.3.1 Global Settings

The Basic Mode Global Settings and QoS Information screen in Figure 4-12-13 & Figure 4-12-14 appear.



Basic Mode Global Settings

Trust Mode ● CoS/802.1p ○ DSCP ○ CoS/802.1p-DSCP ○ IP Precedence ○ None

Figure 4-12-13 Basic Mode Global Settings Page Screenshot

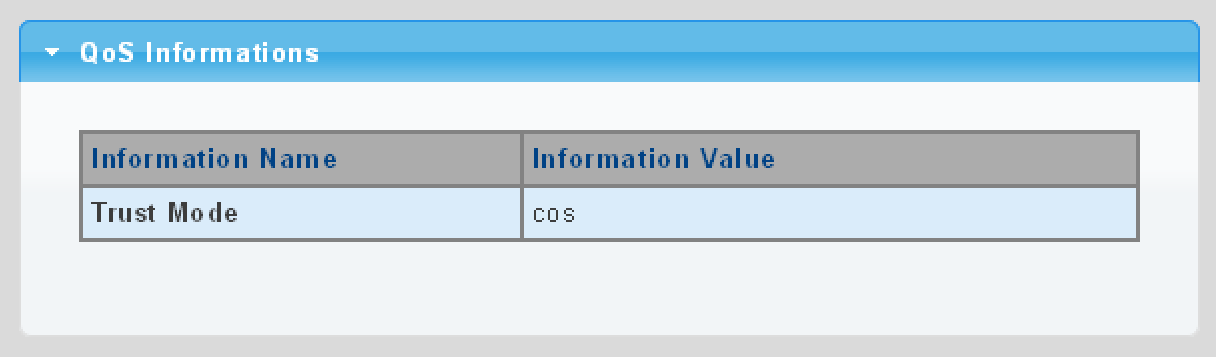
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Trust Mode**	Set the QoS mode

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

- **QoS Information**



QoS Informations

Information Name	Information Value
Trust Mode	cos

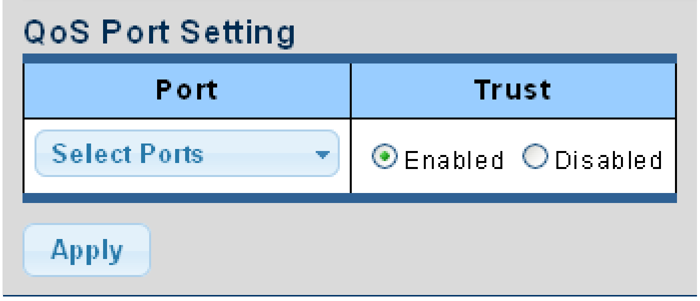
Figure 4-12-14 QoS Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Trust Mode**	Display the current QoS mode

4.12.3.2 Port Settings

The QoS Port Setting and Status screen in Figure 4-12-15 & Figure 4-12-16 appear.



QoS Port Setting

Port	Trust
Select Ports	● Enabled ○ Disabled

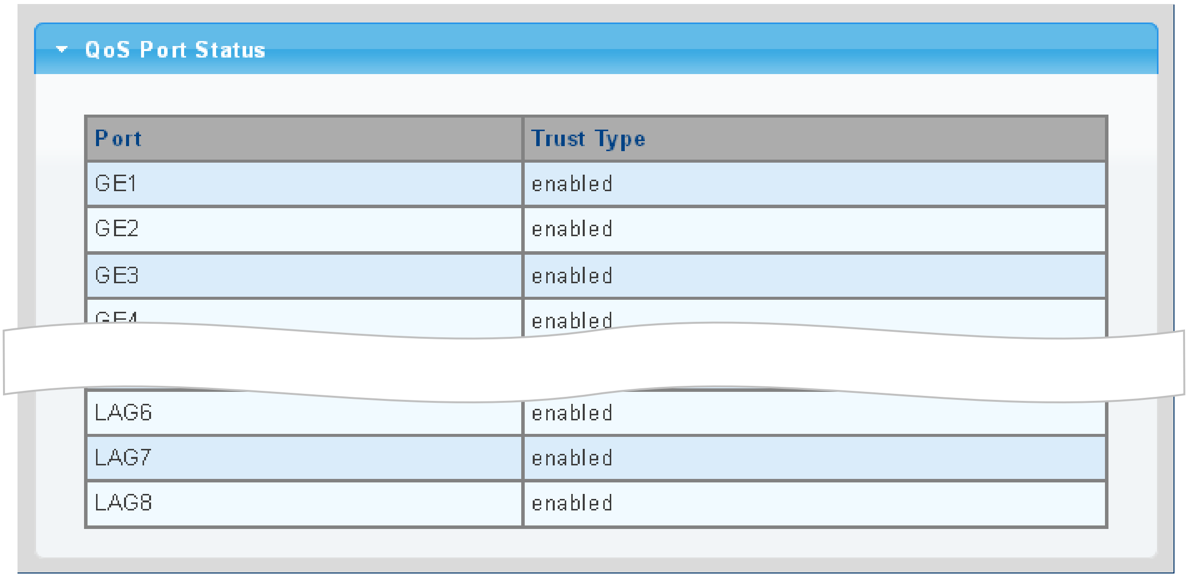
Figure 4-12-15 Basic Mode Global Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **Trust Mode**	Enable or disable the trust mode

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



QoS Port Status

Port	Trust Type
GE1	enabled
GE2	enabled
GE3	enabled
GE4	enabled
LAG6	enabled
LAG7	enabled
LAG8	enabled

Figure 4-12-16 QoS Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

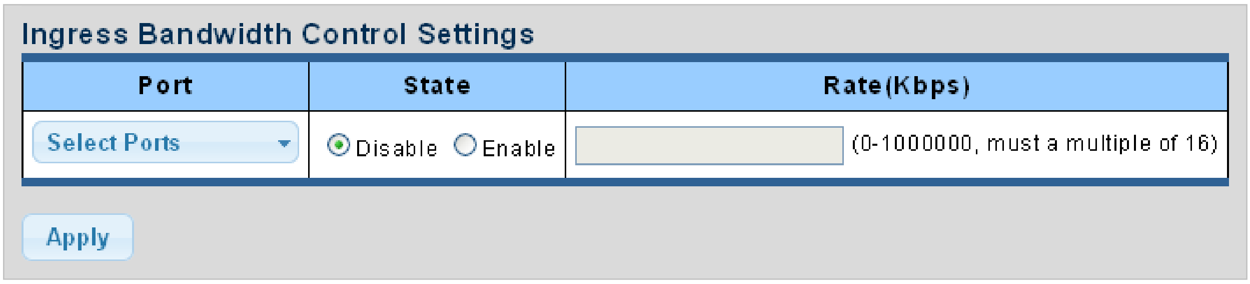
Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Trust Mode**	Display the current trust type

4.12.4 Bandwidth Control

Configure the switch port rate limit for the switch port on this page.

4.12.4.1 Ingress Bandwidth Control

This page provides to select the ingress bandwidth preamble. The Ingress Bandwidth Control Setting and Status screens in Figure 4-12-17 & Figure 4-12-18 appear.



Ingress Bandwidth Control Settings

Port	State	Rate(Kbps)
Select Ports	● Disable ○ Enable	(0-1000000, must a multiple of 16)

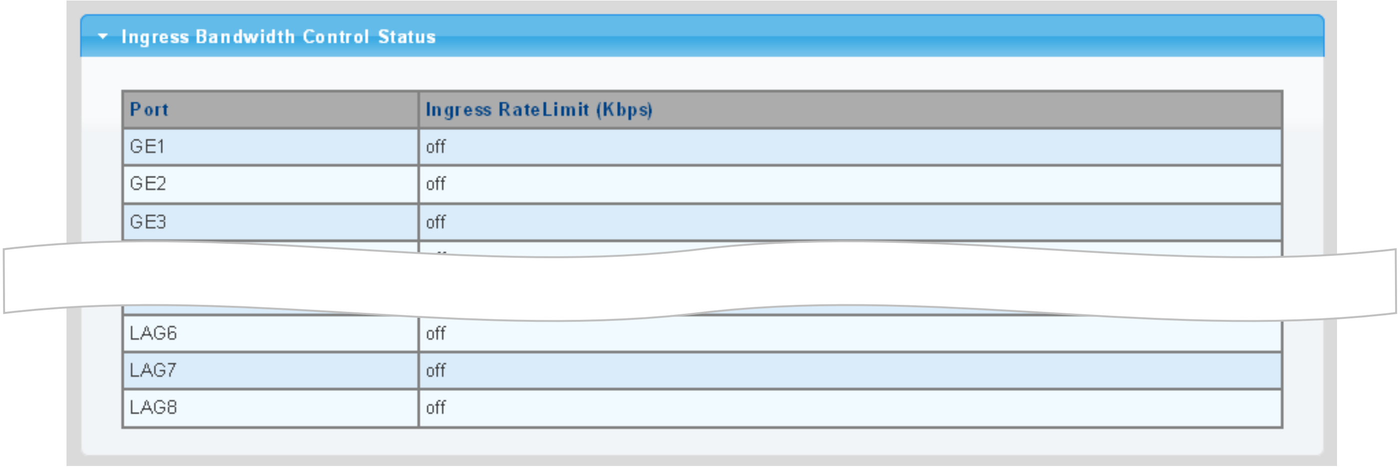
Figure 4-12-17 Ingress Bandwidth Control Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **State**	Enable or disable the port rate policer. The default value is "Disabled".
• **Rate (Kbps)**	Configure the rate for the port policer. The default value is "unlimited". Valid values are in the range 0 to 1000000.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



Ingress Bandwidth Control Status

Port	Ingress RateLimit (Kbps)
GE1	off
GE2	off
GE3	off
LAG6	off
LAG7	off
LAG8	off

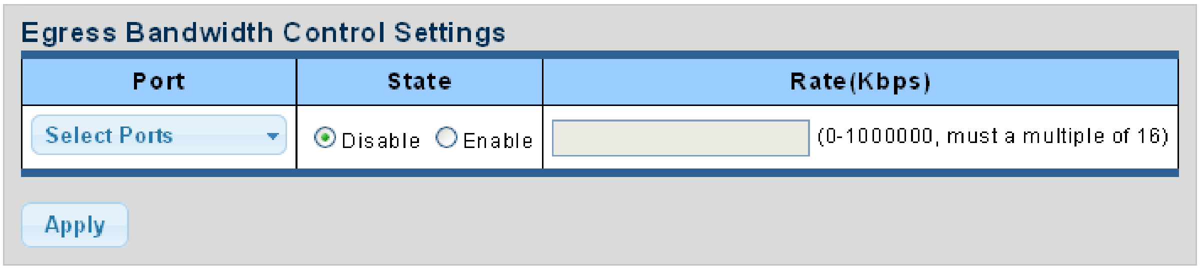
Figure 4-12-18 Ingress Bandwidth Control Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Ingress Rate Limit (Kbps)**	Display the current ingress rate limit

4.12.4.2 Egress Bandwidth Control

This page provides to select the egress bandwidth preamble. The Egress Bandwidth Control Setting and Status screens in Figure 4-12-19 & Figure 4-12-20 appear.



Egress Bandwidth Control Settings

Port	State	Rate(Kbps)
Select Ports	● Disable ○ Enable	(0-1000000, must a multiple of 16)

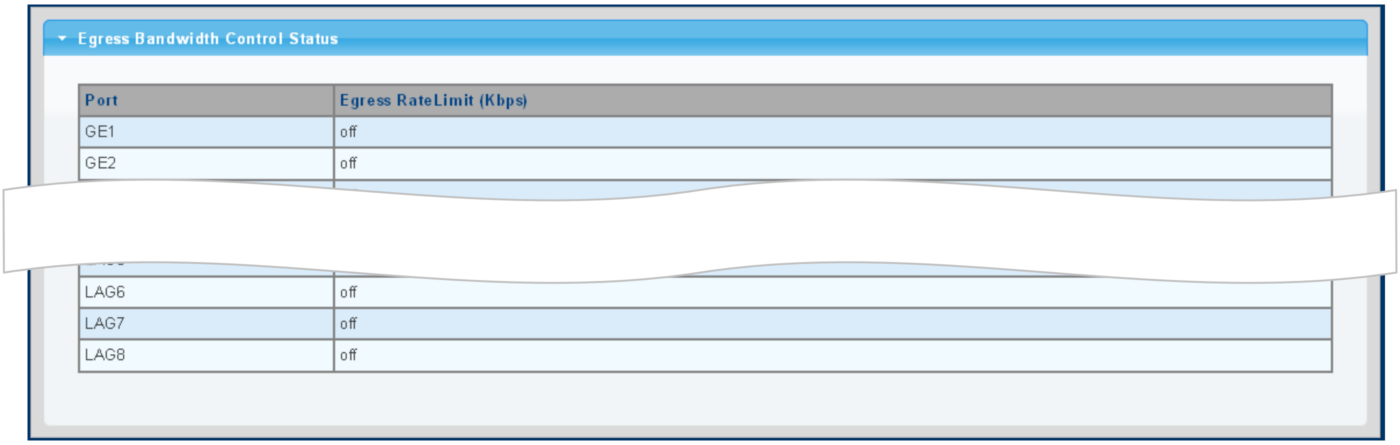
Figure 4-12-19 Egress Bandwidth Control Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list
- **State**	Enable or disable the port rate policer. The default value is "Disabled".
- **Rate (Kbps)**	Configure the rate for the port policer. The default value is "unlimited". Valid values are in the range 0 to 1000000.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Egress Bandwidth Control Status

Port	Egress RateLimit (Kbps)
GE1	off
GE2	off
LAG6	off
LAG7	off
LAG8	off

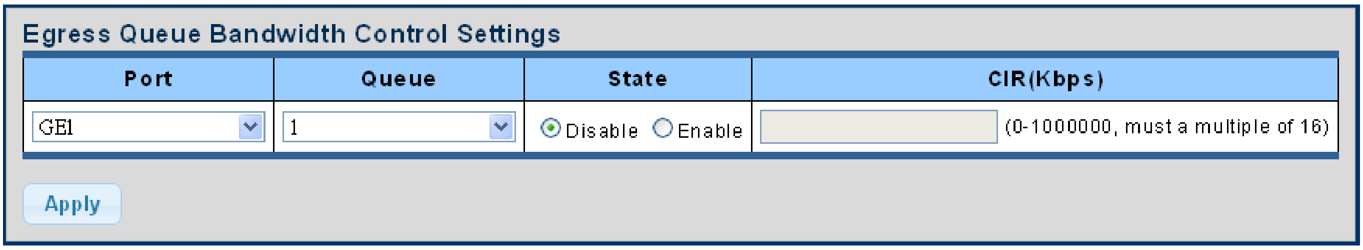
Figure 4-12-20 Egress Bandwidth Control Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Egress Rate Limit (Kbps)**	Display the current egress rate limit

4.12.4.3 Egress Queue

The Egress Queue Bandwidth Control Settings and Status screens in Figure 4-12-21 & Figure 4-12-22 appear.



Egress Queue Bandwidth Control Settings

Port	Queue	State	CIR(Kbps)
GE1	1	● Disable ○ Enable	(0-1000000, must a multiple of 16)

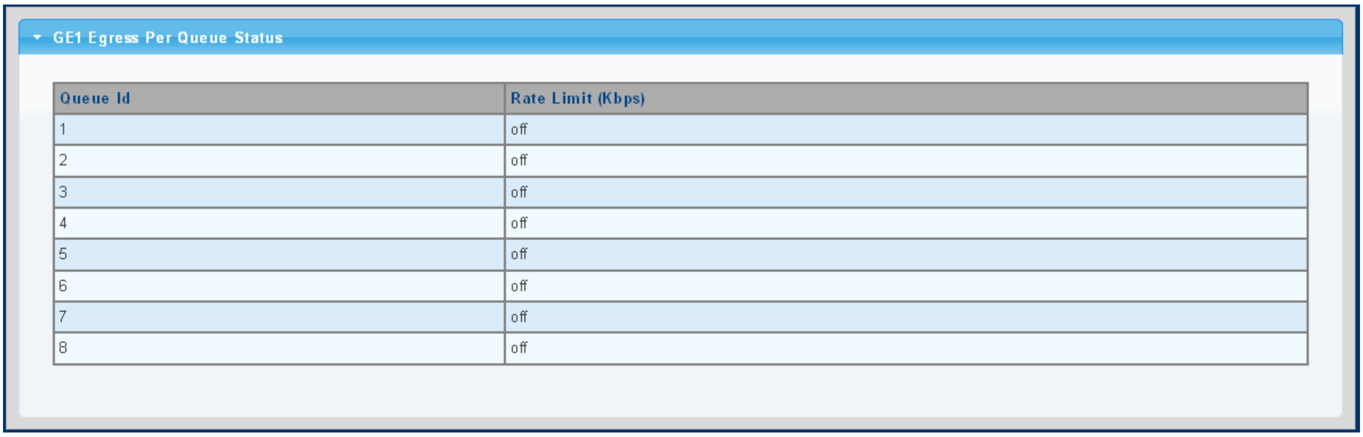
Figure 4-12-21 Egress Queue Bandwidth Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **Queue**	Select queue number from this drop-down list
• **State**	Enable or disable the port rate policer. The default value is "Disabled".
• **CIR (Kbps)**	Configure the CIR for the port policer. The default value is "unlimited". Valid values are in the range 0 to 1000000.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



GE1 Egress Per Queue Status

Queue Id	Rate Limit (Kbps)
1	off
2	off
3	off
4	off
5	off
6	off
7	off
8	off

Figure 4-12-22 Egress Queue Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Queue ID**	Display the current queue ID
• **Rate Limit (Kbps)**	Display the current rate limit

4.12.5 Storm Control

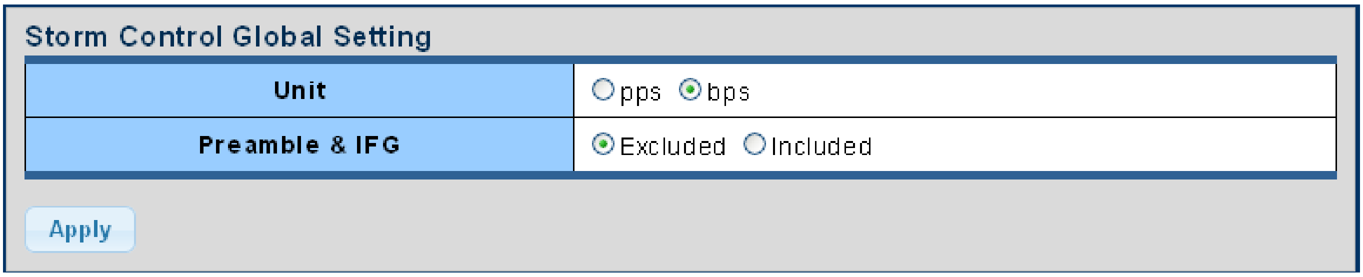
Storm control for the switch is configured on this Page.

There is an unknown unicast storm rate control, unknown multicast storm rate control, and a broadcast storm rate control.

These only affect flooded frames, i.e. frames with a (VLAN ID, DMAC) pair not present on the MAC Address table.

4.12.5.1 Global Setting

The Storm Control Global Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-12-23 & Figure 4-12-24 appear.



Storm Control Global Setting

Unit	○ pps ● bps
Preamble & IFG	● Excluded ○ Included

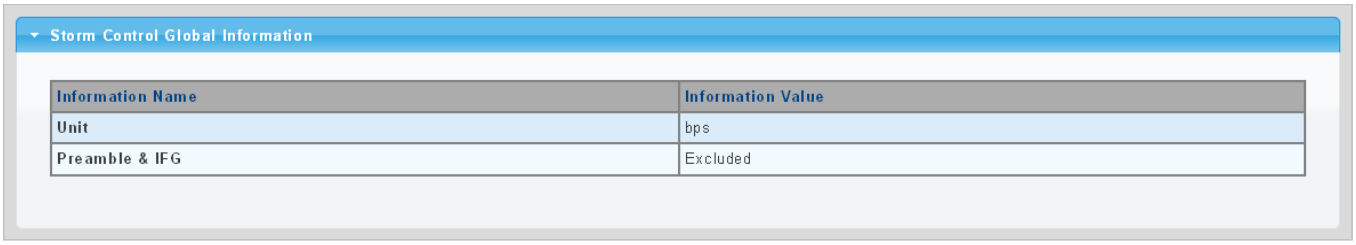
Figure 4-12-23 Storm Control Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Unit**	Controls the unit of measure for the storm control rate as "pps" or "bps". The default value is "bps".
• **Preamble & IFG**	Set the excluded or included interframe gap

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Storm Control Global Information

Information Name	Information Value
Unit	bps
Preamble & IFG	Excluded

Figure 4-12-24 Storm Control Global Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Unit**	Display the current unit
• **Preamble & IFG**	Display the current preamble & IFG

4.12.5.2 Port Setting

Storm control for the switch is configured on this page. There are three types of storm rate control:

- **Broadcast** storm rate control
- **Unknown Unicast** storm rate control
- **Unknown Multicast** storm rate control

The configuration indicates the permitted packet rate for unknown unicast, unknown multicast, or broadcast traffic across the switch. The Storm Control Configuration screens in Figure 4-12-25 & Figure 4-12-26 appear.

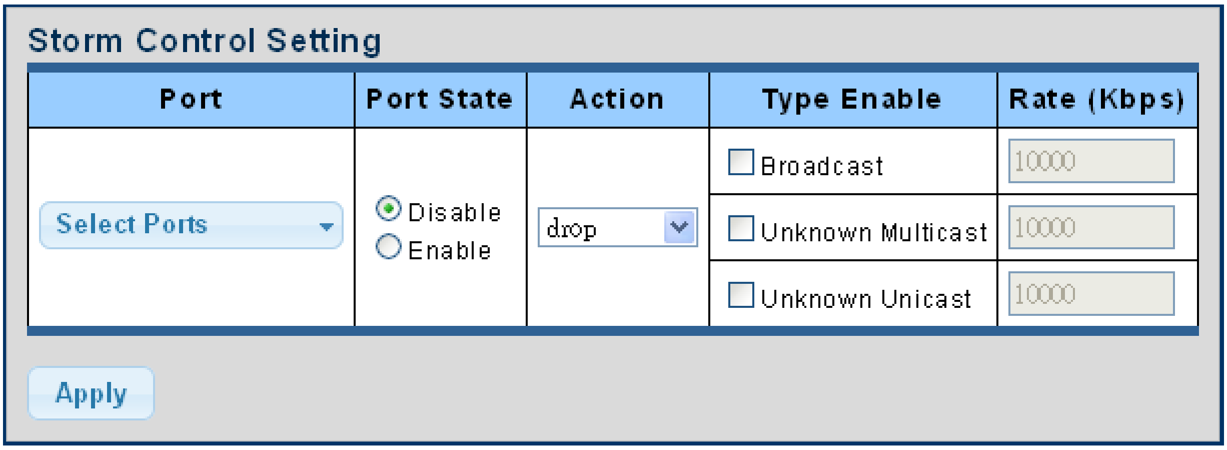

Storm Control Setting
Port
Port State
Action
Type Enable
Rate (Kbps)
Select Ports
● Disable
○ Enable
drop
☐ Broadcast
☐ Unknown Multicast
☐ Unknown Unicast
10000
10000
10000
Apply

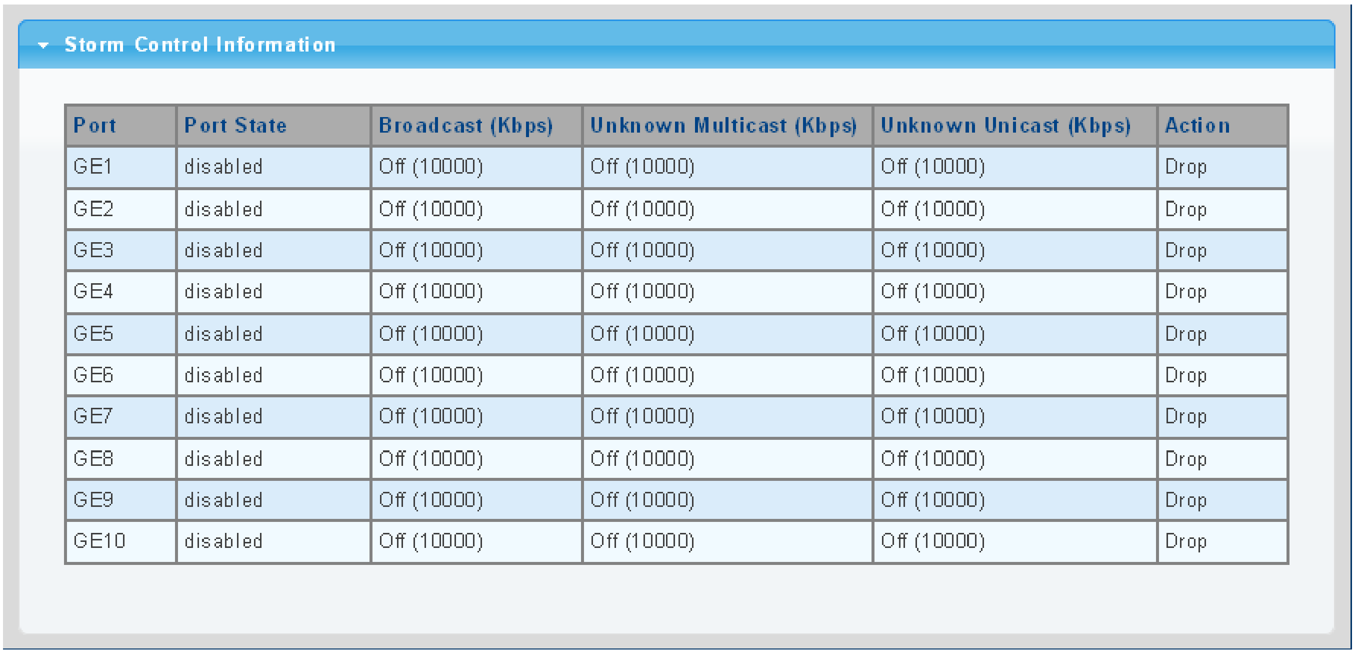
Figure 4-12-25 Storm Control Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list.
• **Port State**	Enable or disable the storm control status for the given storm type.
• **Action**	Configures the action performed when storm control is over rate on a port. Valid values are **Shutdown** or **Drop**.
• **Type Enable**	The settings in a particular row apply to the frame type listed here: ■ **broadcast** ■ **unknown unicast** ■ **unknown multicast**
• **Rate (kbps/pps)**	Configure the rate for the storm control. The default value is "10,000".

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes



Port	Port State	Broadcast (Kbps)	Unknown Multicast (Kbps)	Unknown Unicast (Kbps)	Action
GE1	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE2	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE3	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE4	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE5	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE6	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE7	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE8	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE9	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop
GE10	disabled	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Off (10000)	Drop

Figure 4-12-26 Storm Control Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Port State**	Display the current port state
• **Broadcast (Kbps/pps)**	Display the current broadcast storm control rate
• **Unknown Multicast (Kbps/pps)**	Display the current unknown multicast storm control rate
• **Unknown Unicast (Kbps/pps)**	Display the current unknown unicast storm control rate
• **Action**	Display the current action

4.12.6 Voice VLAN

4.12.6.1 Introduction to Voice VLAN

Configure the switch port rate limit for the switch port on this page.

Voice VLAN is specially configured for the user voice data traffic. By setting a Voice VLAN and adding the ports of the connected voice equipments to Voice VLAN, the user will be able to configure QoS (Quality of service) service for voice data, and improve voice data traffic transmission priority to ensure the calling quality.

The switch can judge if the data traffic is the voice data traffic from specified equipment according to the source MAC address field of the data packet entering the port. The packet with the source MAC address complying with the system defined voice equipment **OUI (Organizationally Unique Identifier)** will be considered the voice data traffic and transmitted to the Voice VLAN.

The configuration is based on MAC address, acquiring a mechanism in which every voice equipment transmitting information through the network has got its unique MAC address. VLAN will trace the address belongs to specified MAC. By This means, VLAN allows the voice equipment always belong to Voice VLAN when relocated physically. The greatest advantage of the VLAN is the equipment can be automatically placed into Voice VLAN according to its voice traffic which will be transmitted at specified priority. Meanwhile, when voice equipment is physically relocated, it still belongs to the Voice VLAN without any further configuration modification, which is because it is based on voice equipment other than switch port.

Note

The Voice VLAN feature enables the voice traffic to forward on the Voice VLAN, and then the switch can be classified and scheduled to network traffic. **It is recommended there are two VLANs on a port** -- one for voice, one for data.

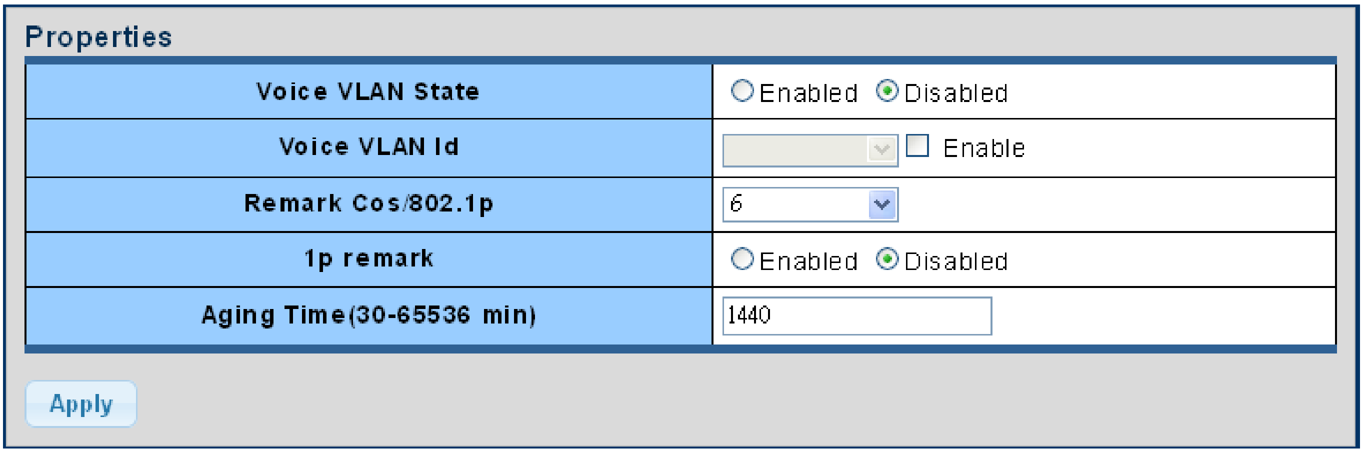
Note

Before connecting the IP device to the switch, **the IP phone should configure the voice VLAN ID correctly**. It should be configured through its own GUI.

4.12.6.2 Properties

The Voice VLAN feature enables voice traffic to forward on the Voice VLAN, and then the switch can be classified and scheduled to network traffic. It is recommended that there are two VLANs on a port -- one for voice, one for data.

Before connecting the IP device to the switch, the IP phone should configure the voice VLAN ID correctly. It should be configured through its own GUI. This page provides to select the ingress bandwidth preamble. The Ingress Bandwidth Control Setting/Status screen in Figure 4-12-27 & Figure 4-12-28 appears.



Properties

Voice VLAN State	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Voice VLAN Id	☐ Enable
Remark Cos/802.1p	6
1p remark	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Aging Time(30-65536 min)	1440

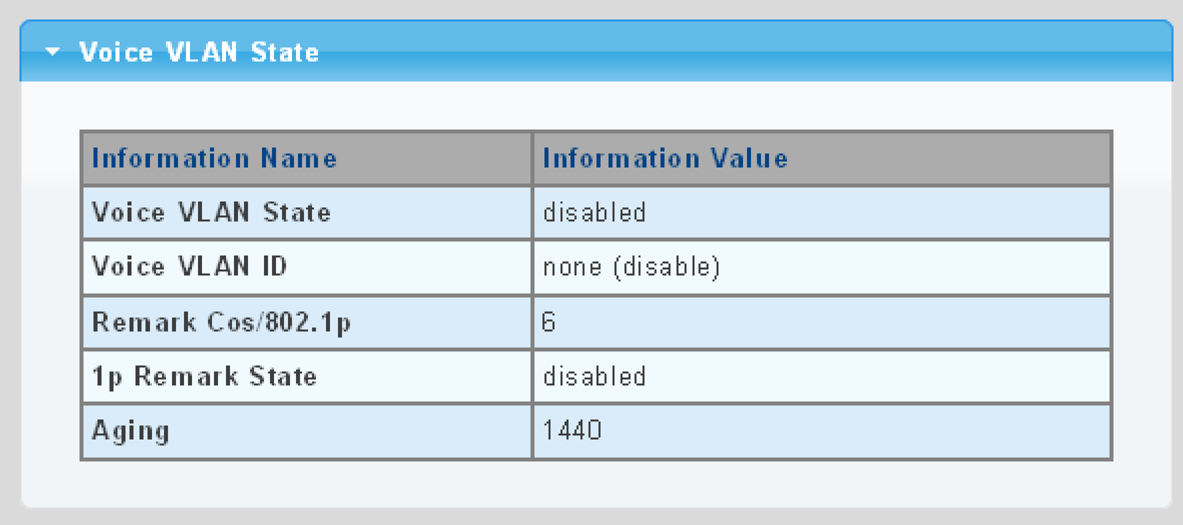
Figure 4-12-27 Properties Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Voice VLAN State**	Indicates the Voice VLAN mode operation. We must disable MSTP feature before we enable Voice VLAN. It can avoid the conflict of ingress filter. Possible modes are: ■ **Enabled**: Enable Voice VLAN mode operation. ■ **Disabled**: Disable Voice VLAN mode operation
• **Voice VLAN ID**	Indicates the Voice VLAN ID. It should be a unique VLAN ID in the system and cannot equal each port PVID. It is conflict configuration if the value equal management VID, MVR VID, PVID, etc. The allowed range is 1 to 4095.
• **Remark CoS/802.1p**	Select 802.1p value from this drop-down list
• **1p remark**	Enable or disable 802.1p remark
• **Aging Time (30-65536 min)**	The time after which a port is removed from the Voice VLAN when VoIP traffic is no longer received on the port. (\Default: **1440** minutes).

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Voice VLAN State

Information Name	Information Value
Voice VLAN State	disabled
Voice VLAN ID	none (disable)
Remark Cos/802.1p	6
1p Remark State	disabled
Aging	1440

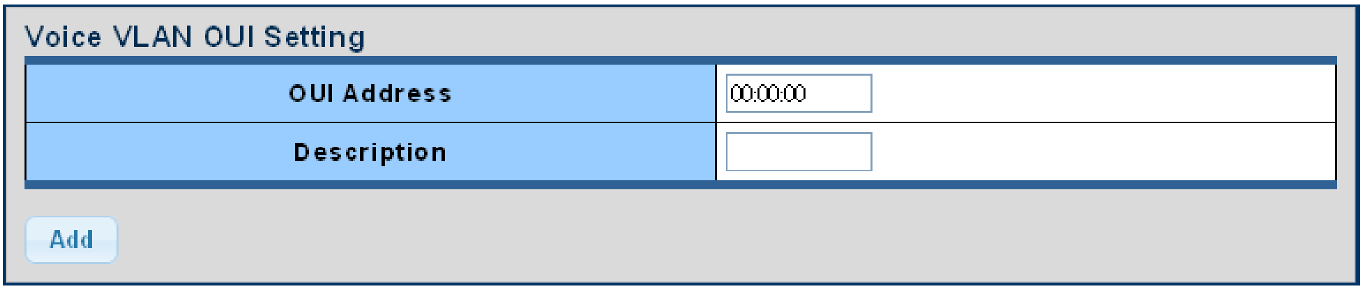
Figure 4-12-28 Properties Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Voice VLAN State**	Display the current voice VLAN state.
• **Voice VLAN ID**	Display the current voice VLAN ID.
• **Remark CoS/802.1p**	Display the current remark CoS/802.1p.
• **1p remark**	Display the current 1p remark.
• **Aging**	Display the current aging time.

4.12.6.3 Telephony OUI MAC Setting

Configure VOICE VLAN OUI table on this Page. The Telephony OUI MAC Setting screens in Figure 4-12-29 & Figure 4-12-30 appear.



Voice VLAN OUI Setting

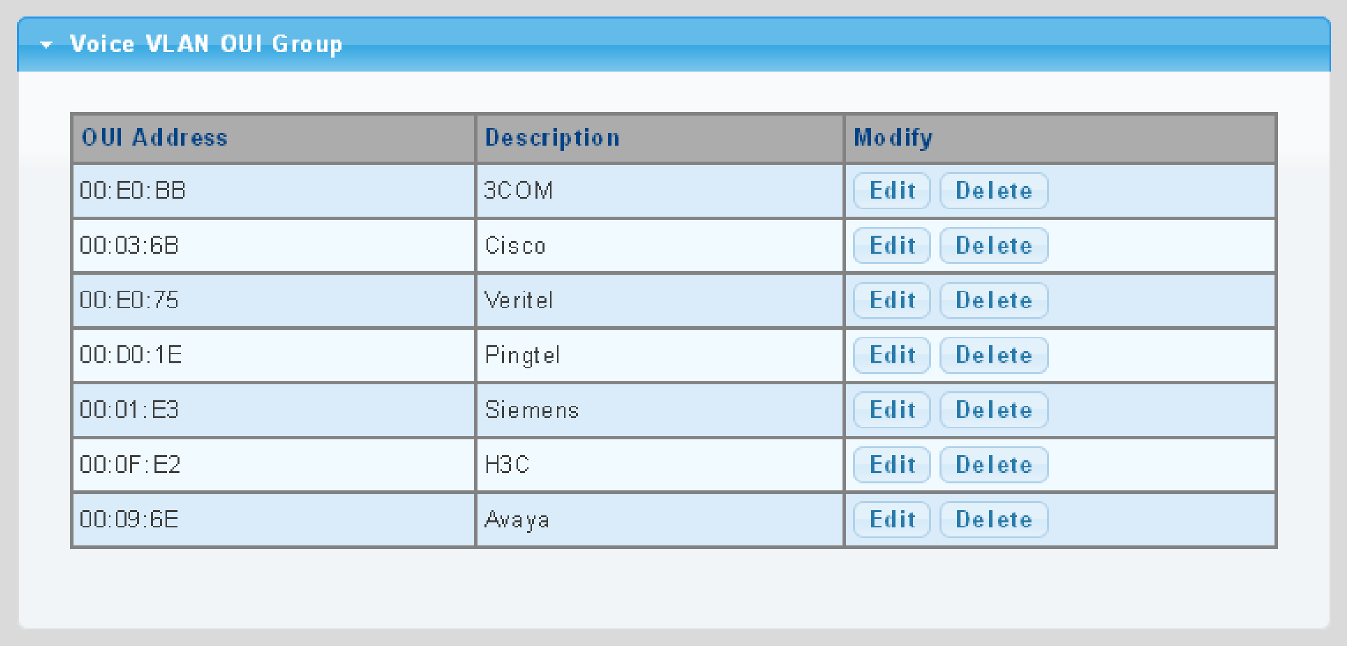
OUI Address	00:00:00
Description	

Figure 4-12-29 Voice VLAN OUI Settings Page ScreenshotThe page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **OUI Address**	A telephony OUI address is a globally unique identifier assigned to a vendor by IEEE. It must be 6 characters long and the input format is "xx:xx:xx" (x is a hexadecimal digit).
- **Description**	User-defined text that identifies the VoIP devices

Buttons

Add : Click to add voice VLAN OUI setting.



OUI Address	Description	Modify
00:E0:BB	3COM	Edit Delete
00:03:6B	Cisco	Edit Delete
00:E0:75	Veritel	Edit Delete
00:D0:1E	Pingtel	Edit Delete
00:01:E3	Siemens	Edit Delete
00:0F:E2	H3C	Edit Delete
00:09:6E	Avaya	Edit Delete

Figure 4-12-30 Voice VLAN OUI Group Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **OUI Address**	Display the current OUI address
- **Description**	Display the current description
- **Modify**	Click Edit to edit voice VLAN OUI group parameter Click Delete to delete voice VLAN OUI group parameter

4.12.6.4 Telephony OUI Port Setting

The Voice VLAN feature enables voice traffic forwarding on the Voice VLAN, then the switch can classify and schedule network traffic. It is recommended that there be two VLANs on a port - one for voice, one for data. Before connecting the IP device to the switch, the IP phone should configure the voice VLAN ID correctly. It should be configured through its own GUI. The Telephony OUI MAC Setting screens in Figure 4-12-31 & Figure 4-12-32 appear.

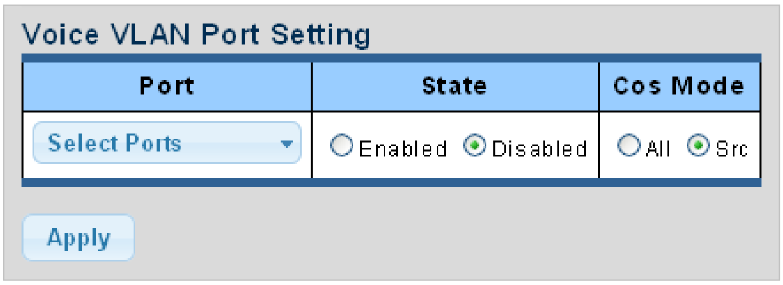


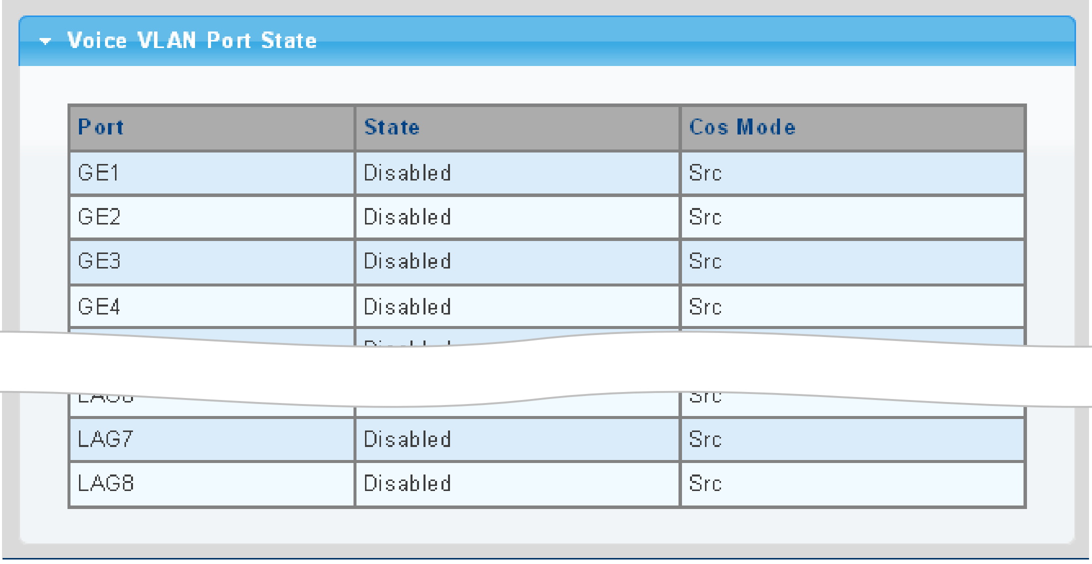
Figure 4-12-31 Voice VLAN Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port number from this drop-down list
• **State**	Enable or disable the voice VLAN port setting. The default value is "Disabled".
• **CoS Mode**	Select the current CoS mode

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Port	State	Cos Mode
GE1	Disabled	Src
GE2	Disabled	Src
GE3	Disabled	Src
GE4	Disabled	Src
LAG7	Disabled	Src
LAG8	Disabled	Src

Figure 4-12-32 Voice VLAN Port State Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **State**	Display the current state
• **CoS Mode**	Display the current CoS mode

4.13 Security

This section is to control the access of the Managed Switch, including the user access and management control.

The Security Page contains links to the following main topics:

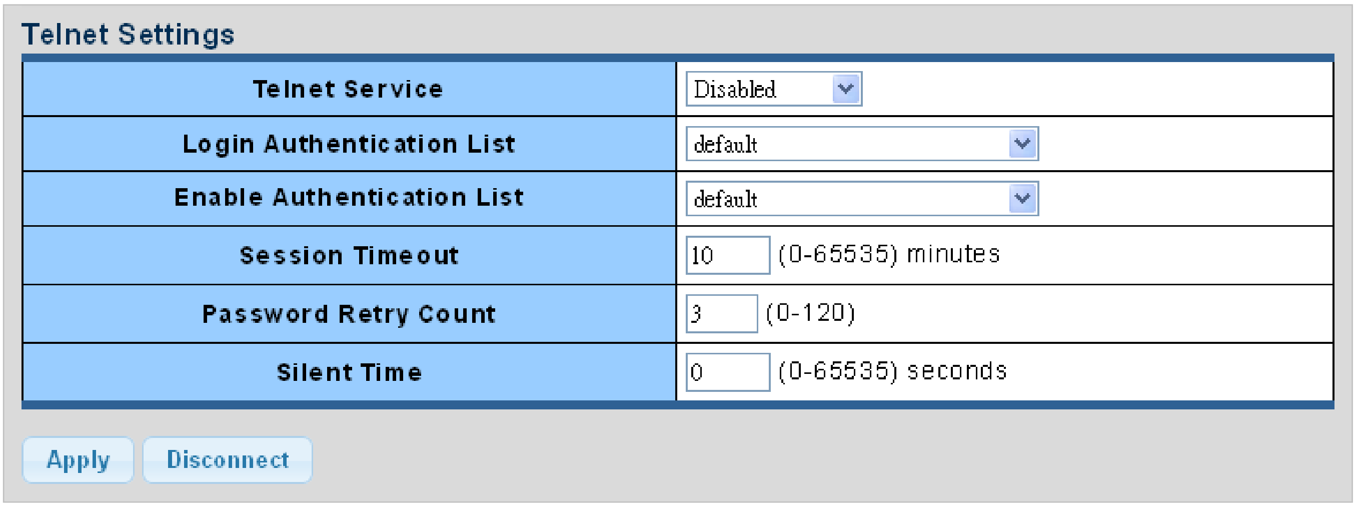
- **802.1x**
- **Radius Server**
- **TACACS+ Server**
- **AAA**
- **Access**
- **Management Access Method**
- **DHCP Snooping**
- **Dynamic ARP Inspection**
- **IP Source Guard**
- **Port Security**
- **DoS**
- **Strom Control**

4.13.1 Access

This section is to control the access of the Managed Switch, including the different access methods – Telnet, SSH, HTTP and HTTPs.

4.13.1.1 Telnet

The Telnet Settings and Information screen in Figure 4-13-1 & Figure 4-13-2 appear.



Telnet Settings

Telnet Service	Disabled
Login Authentication List	default
Enable Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10 (0-65535) minutes
Password Retry Count	3 (0-120)
Silent Time	0 (0-65535) seconds

Figure 4-13-1 Telnet Settings Page Screenshot

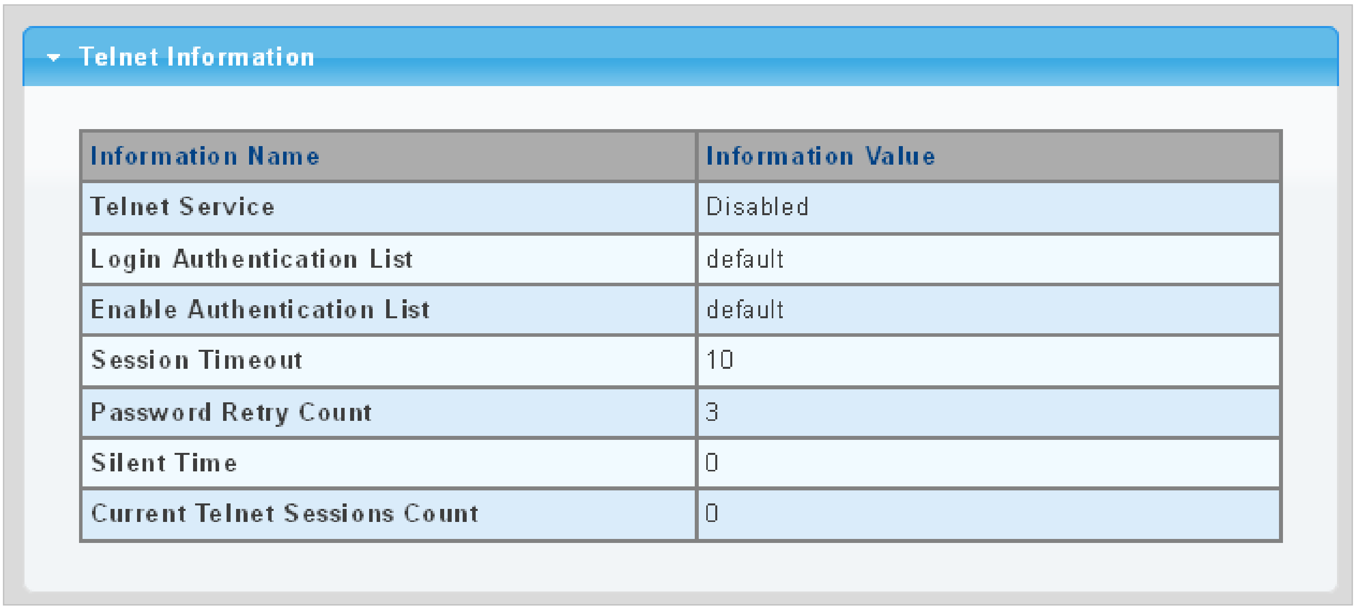
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Telnet Service**	Disable or enable telnet service
• **Login Authentication List**	Select login authentication list from this drop-down list
• **Enable Authentication List**	Select enable authentication list from this drop-down list
• **Session Timeout**	Set the session timeout value
• **Password Retry Count**	Set the password retry count value
• **Silent Time**	Set the silent time value

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes

Disconnect: Click to disconnect telnet communication



Information Name	Information Value
Telnet Service	Disabled
Login Authentication List	default
Enable Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10
Password Retry Count	3
Silent Time	0
Current Telnet Sessions Count	0

Figure 4-13-2 Telnet Information Page Screenshot

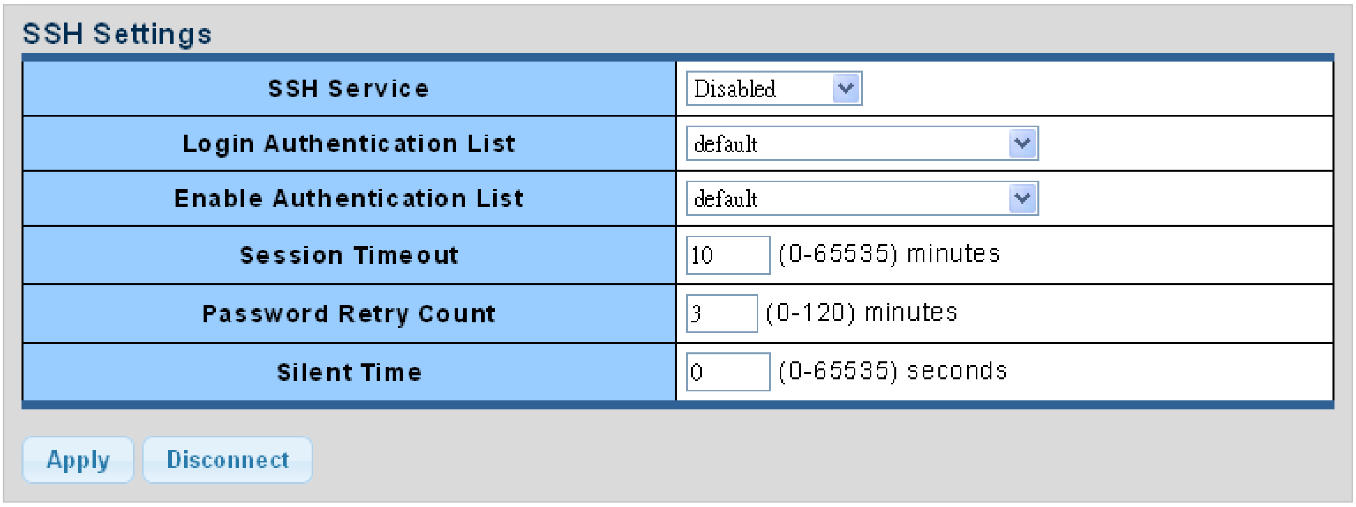
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Telnet Service**	Display the current Telnet service
• **Login Authentication List**	Display the current login authentication list
• **Enable Authentication List**	Display the current enable authentication list
• **Session Timeout**	Display the current session timeout
• **Password Retry Count**	Display the current password retry count
• **Silent Time**	Display the current silent time
• **Current Telnet Session Count**	Display the current telnet session count

4.13.1.2 SSH

Configure SSH on this Page. This Page shows the Port Security status. Port Security is a module with no direct configuration. Configuration comes indirectly from other modules - the user modules. When a user module has enabled port security on a port, the port is set-up for software-based learning. In this mode, frames from unknown MAC addresses are passed on to the port security module, which in turn asks all user modules whether to allow this new MAC address to forward or block it. For a MAC address to be set in the forwarding state, all enabled user modules must unanimously agree on allowing the MAC address to forward. If only one chooses to block it, it will be blocked until that user module decides otherwise.

The SSH Settings and Information screens in Figure 4-13-3 & Figure 4-13-4 appear.



SSH Settings

SSH Service	Disabled
Login Authentication List	default
Enable Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10 (0-65535) minutes
Password Retry Count	3 (0-120) minutes
Silent Time	0 (0-65535) seconds

Figure 4-13-3 SSH Settings Page Screenshot

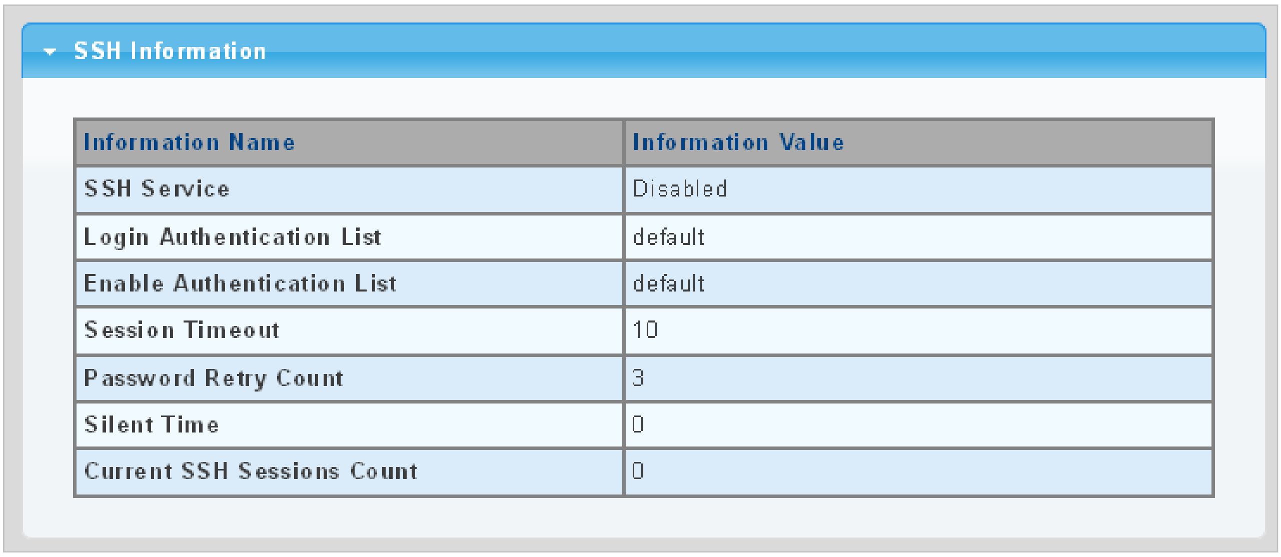
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **SSH Service**	Disable or enable SSH service
• **Login Authentication List**	Select login authentication list from this drop-down list
• **Enable Authentication List**	Select enable authentication list from this drop-down list
• **Session Timeout**	Set the session timeout value
• **Password Retry Count**	Set the password retry count value
• **Silent Time**	Set the silent time value

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Disconnect : Click to disconnect telnet communication.



Information Name	Information Value
SSH Service	Disabled
Login Authentication List	default
Enable Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10
Password Retry Count	3
Silent Time	0
Current SSH Sessions Count	0

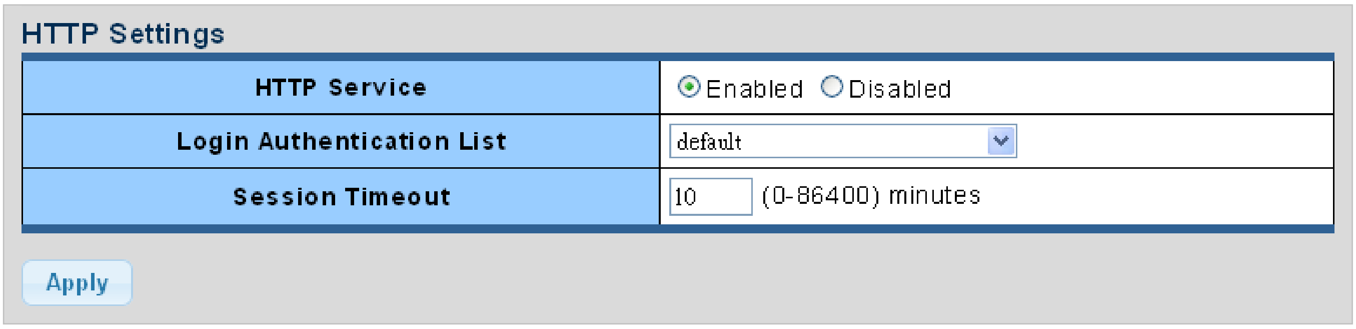
Figure 4-13-4 SSH Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **SSH Service**	Display the current SSH service
• **Login Authentication List**	Display the current login authentication list
• **Enable Authentication List**	Display the current enable authentication list
• **Session Timeout**	Display the current session timeout
• **Password Retry Count**	Display the current password retry count
• **Silent Time**	Display the current silent time
• **Current SSH Session Count**	Display the current SSH session count

4.13.1.3 HTTP

The HTTP Settings and Information screens in Figure 4-13-5 & Figure 4-13-6 appear.



HTTP Settings

HTTP Service	● Enabled ○ Disabled
Login Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10 (0-86400) minutes

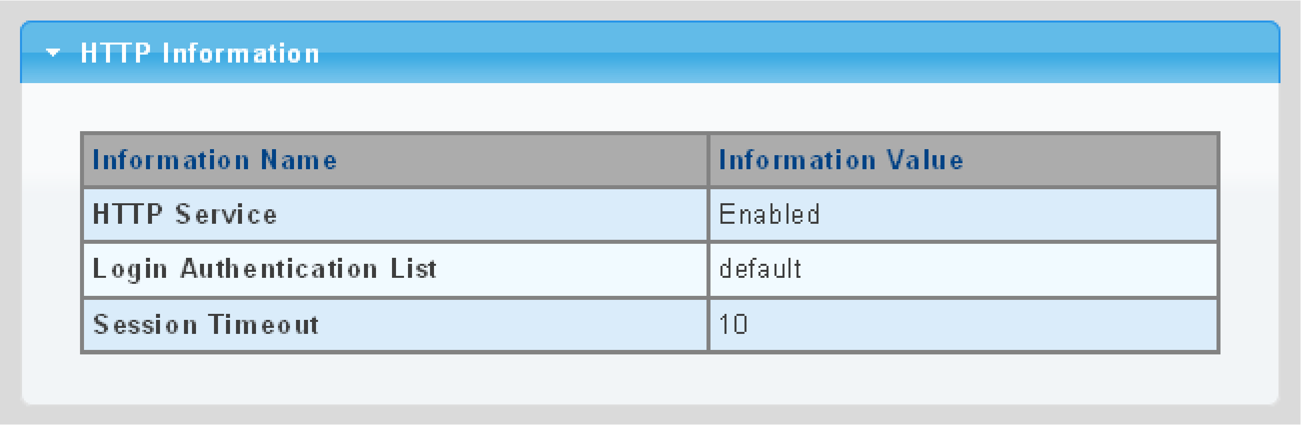
Figure 4-13-5 HTTP Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **HTTP Service**	Disable or enable HTTP service
- **Login Authentication List**	Select login authentication list from this drop-down list
- **Session Timeout**	Set the session timeout value

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



HTTP Information

Information Name	Information Value
HTTP Service	Enabled
Login Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10

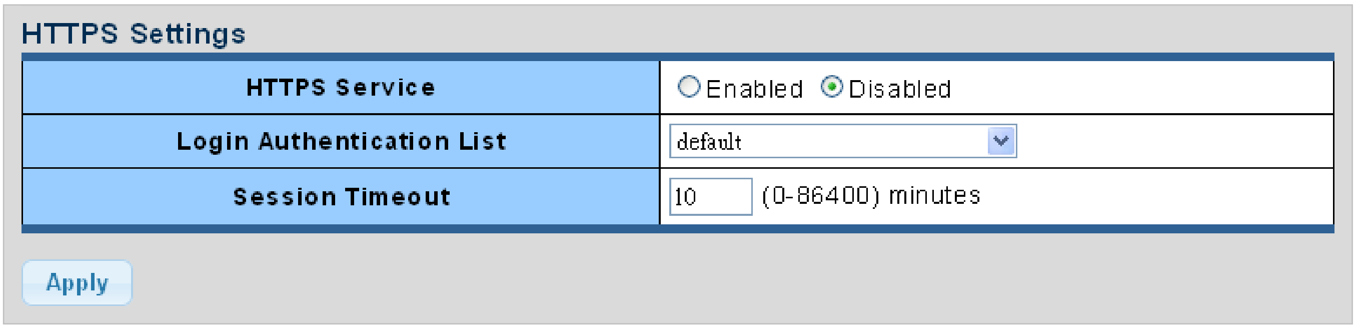
Figure 4-13-6 HTTP Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **HTTP Service**	Display the current HTTP service
- **Login Authentication List**	Display the current login authentication list
- **Session Timeout**	Display the current session timeout

4.13.1.4 HTTPs

The HTTPs Settings and Information screen in Figure 4-13-7 & Figure 4-13-8 appear.



HTTPS Settings

HTTPS Service	○ Enabled ● Disabled
Login Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10 (0-86400) minutes

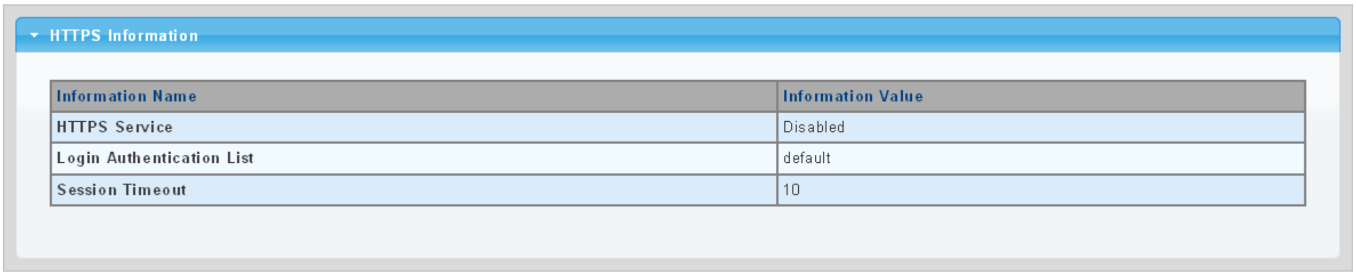
Figure 4-13-7 HTTPs Settings Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **HTTPs Service**	Disable or enable HTTPs service
• **Login Authentication List**	Select login authentication list from this drop-down list
• **Session Timeout**	Set the session timeout value

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



HTTPS Information

Information Name	Information Value
HTTPS Service	Disabled
Login Authentication List	default
Session Timeout	10

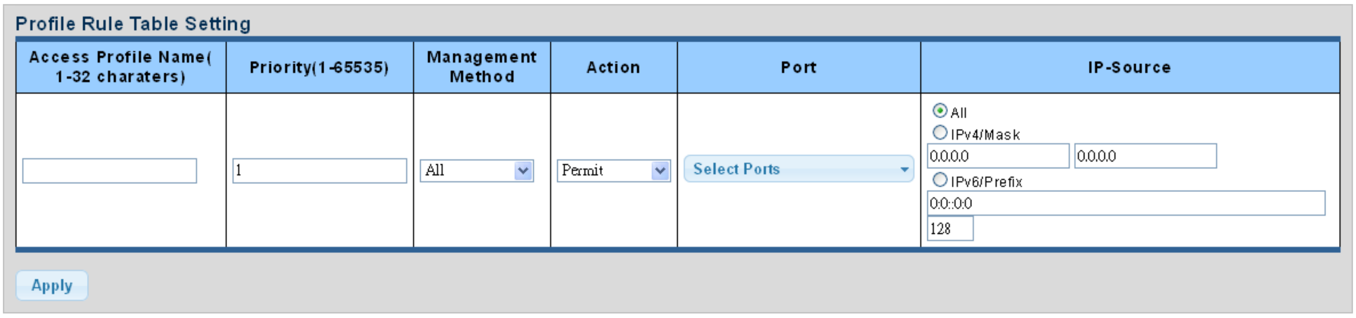
Figure 4-13-8 HTTPs Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **HTTPs Service**	Display the current HTTPs service
• **Login Authentication List**	Display the current login authentication list
• **Session Timeout**	Display the current session timeout

4.13.1.5 Access Method Profile Rules

The Profile Rule Table Setting and Table screens in Figure 4-13-9 & Figure 4-13-10 appear.



Access Profile Name(1-32 charaters)	Priority(1-65535)	Management Method	Action	Port	IP-Source
	1	All	Permit	Select Ports	● All ○ IPv4/Mask 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 ○ IPv6/Prefix 0:0::0:0 128

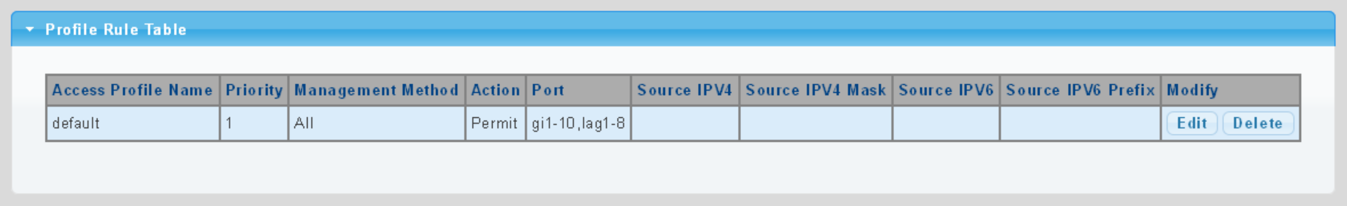
Figure 4-13-9 Profile Rule Table Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Access Profile Name (1-32 characters)**	Indicates the access profile name
• **Priority (1-65535)**	Set priority The allowed value is from 1 to 65535
• **Management Method**	Indicates the host can access the switch from HTTP/HTTPs/telnet/SSH/SNMP/All interface that the host IP address matched the entry.
• **Action**	An IP address can contain any combination of permit or deny rules. (Default: **Permit** rules)Sets the access mode of the profile; either **permit** or **deny**.
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **IP-Source**	Indicates the IP address for the access management entry

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Profile Rule Table

Access Profile Name	Priority	Management Method	Action	Port	Source IPV4	Source IPV4 Mask	Source IPV6	Source IPV6 Prefix	Modify
default	1	All	Permit	gi1-10,lag1-8					Edit Delete

Figure 4-13-10 Profile Rule Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Access Profile Name**	Display the current access profile name
• **Priority**	Display the current priority
• **Management Method**	Display the current management method
• **Action**	Display the current action
• **Port**	Display the current port list
• **Source IPv4**	Display the current source IPv4 address
• **Source IPv4 Mask**	Display the current source IPv4 mask
• **Source IPv6**	Display the current source IPv6 address
• **Source IPv6 Prefix**	Display the current source IPv6 prefix
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit profile rule parameter Click Delete to delete profile rule entry

4.13.1.6 Access Rules

The access profile screens in Figure 4-13-11 & Figure 4-13-12 appear.

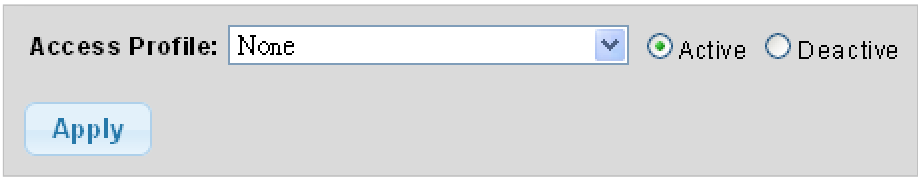

Access Profile:
None
● Active
○ Deactive
Apply

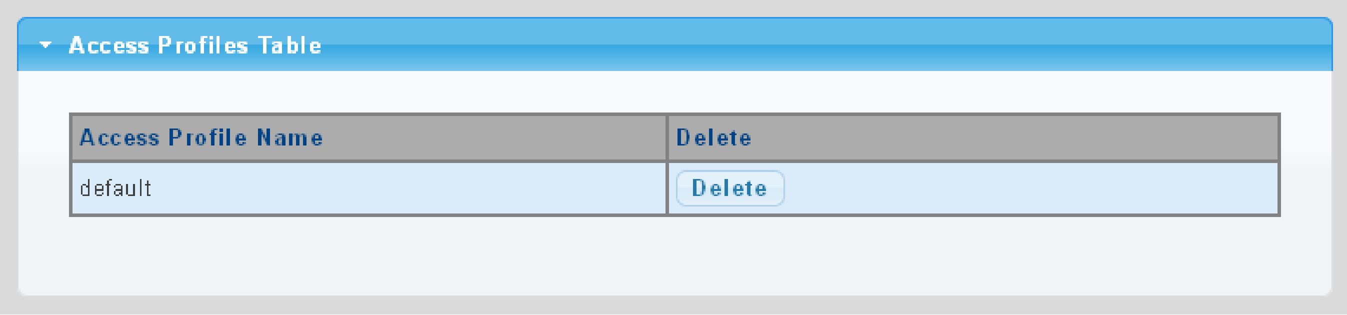
Figure 4-13-11 Access Profile Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Access Profile**	Select access profile from this drop-down list

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.


Access Profiles Table

Access Profile Name	Delete
default	Delete

Figure 4-13-12 Access Profile Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Access Profile**	Display the current access profile
• **Delete**	Click Delete to delete access profile entry

4.13.2 AAA

Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) provides a framework for configuring access control on the Managed Switch. The three security functions can be summarized as follows:

- **Authentication** — Identifies users that request access to the network.
- **Authorization** — Determines if users can access specific services.
- **Accounting** — Provides reports, auditing, and billing for services that users have accessed on the network.

The AAA functions require the use of configured RADIUS or TACACS+ servers in the network. The security servers can be defined as sequential groups that are then applied as a method for controlling user access to specified services. For example, when the switch attempts to authenticate a user, a request is sent to the first server in the defined group, if there is no response the second server will be tried, and so on. If at any point a pass or fail is returned, the process stops.

The Managed Switch supports the following AAA features:

- Accounting for **IEEE 802.1X authenticated users** that access the network through the Managed Switch.
- Accounting for users that access **management interfaces** on the Managed Switch through the Telnet.
- Accounting for **commands** that users enter at specific CLI privilege levels. Authorization of users that access management interfaces on the Managed Switch through the Telnet.

To configure AAA on the Managed Switch, you need to follow this general process:

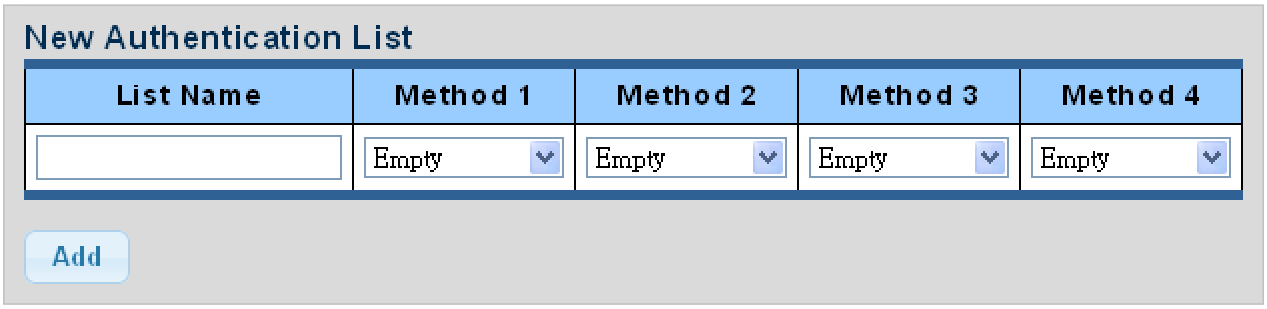
1. Configure RADIUS and TACACS+ server access parameters. See "**Configuring Local/Remote Logon Authentication**".
2. Define RADIUS and TACACS+ server groups to support the accounting and authorization of services.
3. Define a method name for each service to which you want to apply accounting or authorization and specify the RADIUS or TACACS+ server groups to use. Apply the method names to port or line interfaces.

Note

This guide assumes that RADIUS and TACACS+ servers have already been configured to support AAA. The configuration of RADIUS and TACACS+ server software is beyond the scope of this guide, refer to the documentation provided with the RADIUS or TACACS+ server software.

4.13.2.1 Login List

This page is to login list parameters. The authentication list screen in Figure 4-13-13 & Figure 4-13-14 appears.



New Authentication List

List Name	Method 1	Method 2	Method 3	Method 4
	Empty	Empty	Empty	Empty

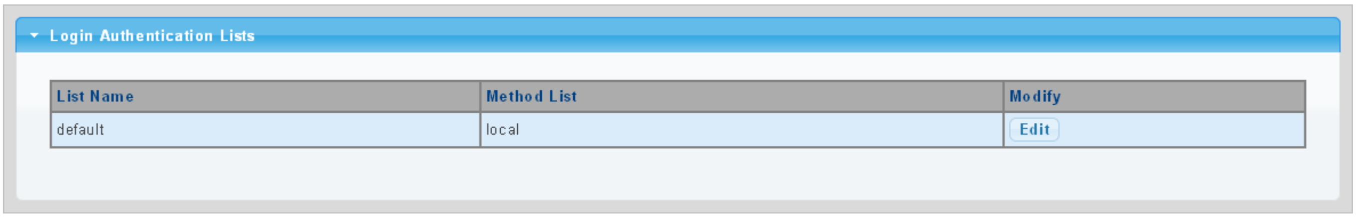
Figure 4-13-13 New Authentication List Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **List Name**	Defines a name for the authentication list
• **Method 1-4**	Set the login authentication method: Empty / None / Local / TACACS+ / RADIUS / Enable

Buttons

Add: Click to add authentication list.



Login Authentication Lists

List Name	Method List	Modify
default	local	Edit

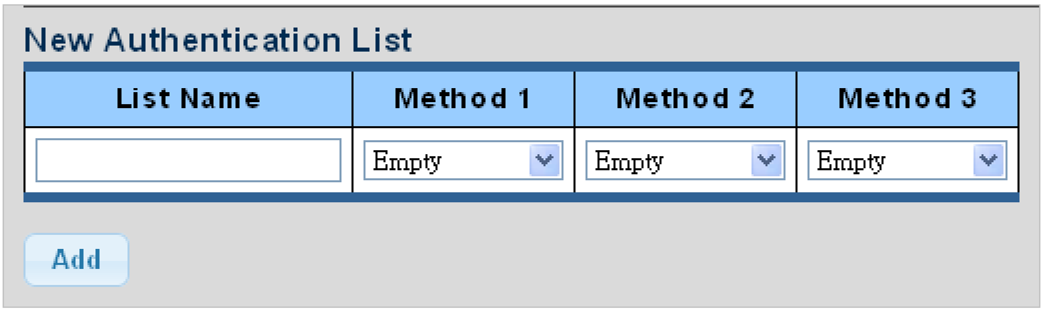
Figure 4-13-14 Login Authentication List Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **List Name**	Display the current list name
• **Method List**	Display the current method list
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit login authentication list parameter Click Delete to delete login authentication list entry

4.13.2.2 Enable List

This page is to login list parameters. The authentication list screens in Figure 4-3-15 & Figure 4-13-16 appear.



New Authentication List

List Name	Method 1	Method 2	Method 3
	Empty	Empty	Empty

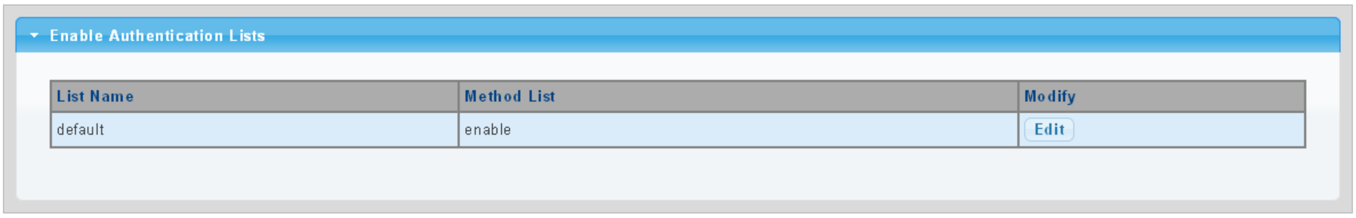
Figure 4-13-15 New Authentication List Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **List Name**	Defines a name for the authentication list
• **Method 1-3**	Set the login authentication method: Empty / None / Enable / TACACS+ / RADIUS

Buttons

Add: Click to add authentication list.



Enable Authentication Lists

List Name	Method List	Modify
default	enable	Edit

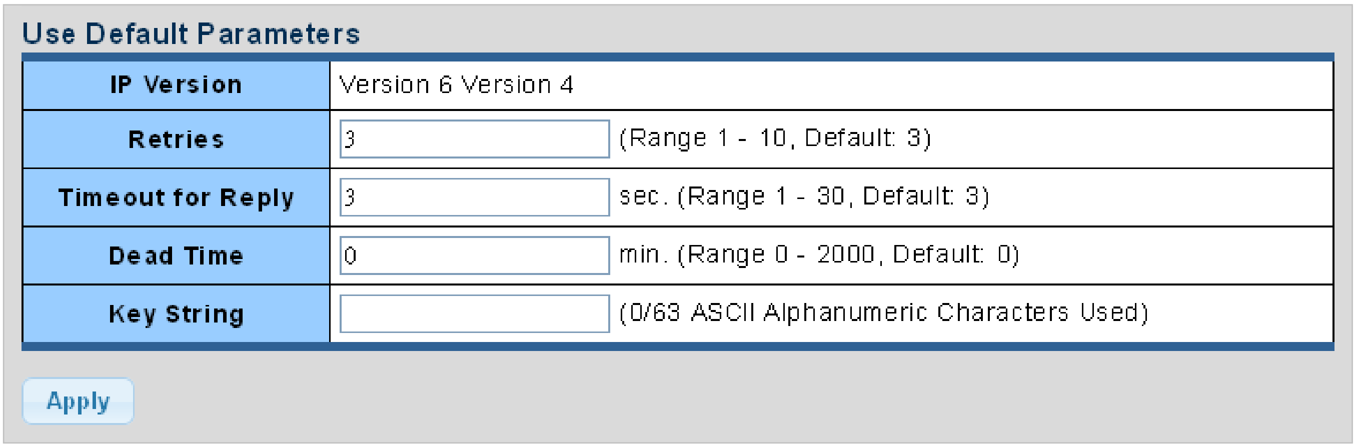
Figure 4-13-16 Login Authentication List Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **List Name**	Display the current list name
• **Method List**	Display the current method list
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit login authentication list parameter Click Delete to delete login authentication list entry

4.13.2.3 RADIUS Server

This page is to configure the RADIUS server connection session parameters. The RADIUS Settings screens in Figure 4-13-17, Figure 4-13-18 & Figure 4-13-19 appears.



Use Default Parameters

IP Version	Version 6 Version 4
Retries	3 (Range 1 - 10, Default: 3)
Timeout for Reply	3 sec. (Range 1 - 30, Default: 3)
Dead Time	0 min. (Range 0 - 2000, Default: 0)
Key String	(0/63 ASCII Alphanumeric Characters Used)

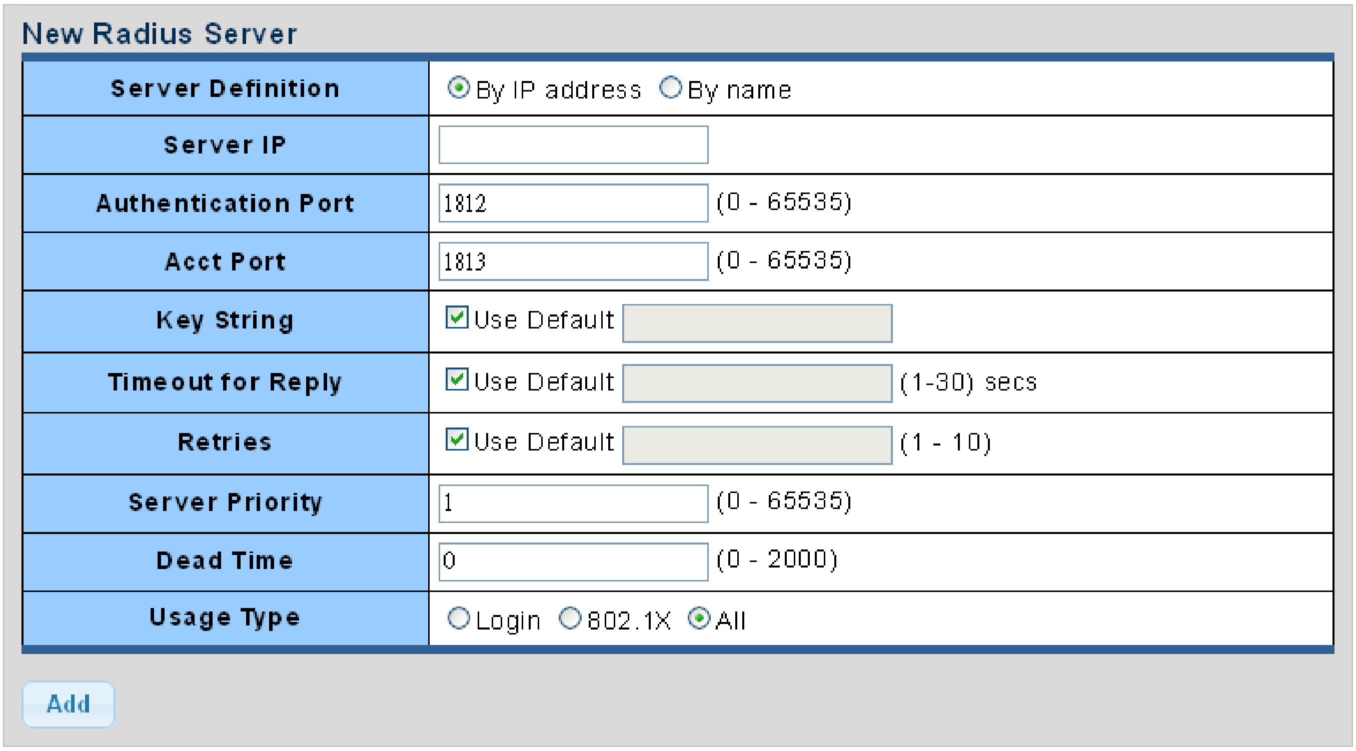
Figure 4-13-17 Use Default Parameters Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Retries**	Timeout is the number of seconds, in the range 1 to 10, to wait for a reply from a RADIUS server before retransmitting the request.
• **Timeout for Reply**	Retransmit is the number of times, in the range 1 to 30, a RADIUS request is retransmitted to a server that is not responding. If the server has not responded after the last retransmit it is considered to be dead.
• **Dead Time**	The Dead Time, which can be set to a number between 0 and 3600 seconds, is the period during which the switch will not send new requests to a server that has failed to respond to a previous request. This will stop the switch from continually trying to contact a server that it has already determined as dead. Setting the Dead Time to a value greater than 0 (zero) will enable this feature, but only if more than one server has been configured.
• **Key String**	The secret key - up to 63 characters long - shared between the RADIUS server and the switch.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



New Radius Server

Server Definition	● By IP address ○ By name
Server IP	
Authentication Port	1812 (0 - 65535)
Acct Port	1813 (0 - 65535)
Key String	☑ Use Default
Timeout for Reply	☑ Use Default (1-30) secs
Retries	☑ Use Default (1 - 10)
Server Priority	1 (0 - 65535)
Dead Time	0 (0 - 2000)
Usage Type	○ Login ○ 802.1X ● All

Figure 4-13-18 New Radius Server Page Screenshot

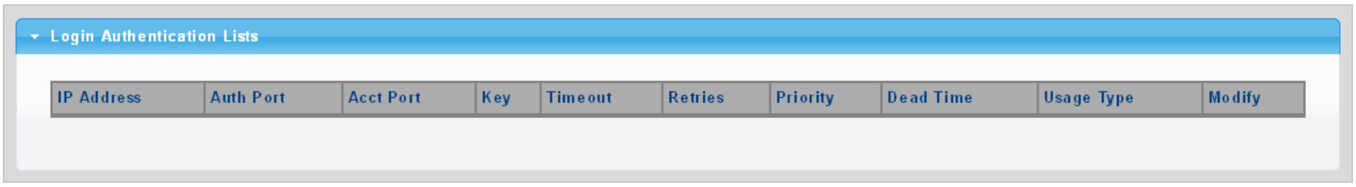
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Server Definition**	Set the server definition
- **Server IP**	Address of the Radius server IP/name
- **Authentication Port**	The UDP port to use on the RADIUS Authentication Server. If the port is set to 0 (zero), the default port (1812) is used on the RADIUS Authentication Server.
- **Acct Port**	The UDP port to use on the RADIUS Accounting Server. If the port is set to 0 (zero), the default port (1813) is used on the RADIUS Accounting Server.
- **Key String**	The shared key - shared between the RADIUS Authentication Server and the switch.
- **Timeout for Reply**	The Timeout, which can be set to a number between 1 and 30 seconds, is the maximum time to wait for a reply from a server. If the server does not reply within this timeframe, we will consider it to be dead and continue with the next enabled server (if any). RADIUS servers are using the UDP protocol, which is unreliable by design. In order to cope with lost frames, the timeout interval is divided into 3 subintervals of equal length. If a reply is not received within the subinterval, the request is transmitted again. This algorithm causes the RADIUS server to be queried up to 3 times before it is considered to be dead.
- **Retries**	Timeout is the number of seconds, in the range 1 to 10, to wait for a reply from a

	RADIUS server before retransmitting the request.
• **Server Priority**	Set the server priority
• **Dead Time**	The Dead Time, which can be set to a number between 0 and 3600 seconds, is the period during which the switch will not send new requests to a server that has failed to respond to a previous request. This will stop the switch from continually trying to contact a server that it has already determined as dead. Setting the Dead Time to a value greater than 0 (zero) will enable this feature, but only if more than one server has been configured.
• **Usage Type**	Set the usage type. The following modes are available: ■ **Login** ■ **802.1X** ■ **All**

Buttons

Add: Click to add Radius server setting.



IP Address	Auth Port	Acct Port	Key	Timeout	Retries	Priority	Dead Time	Usage Type	Modify

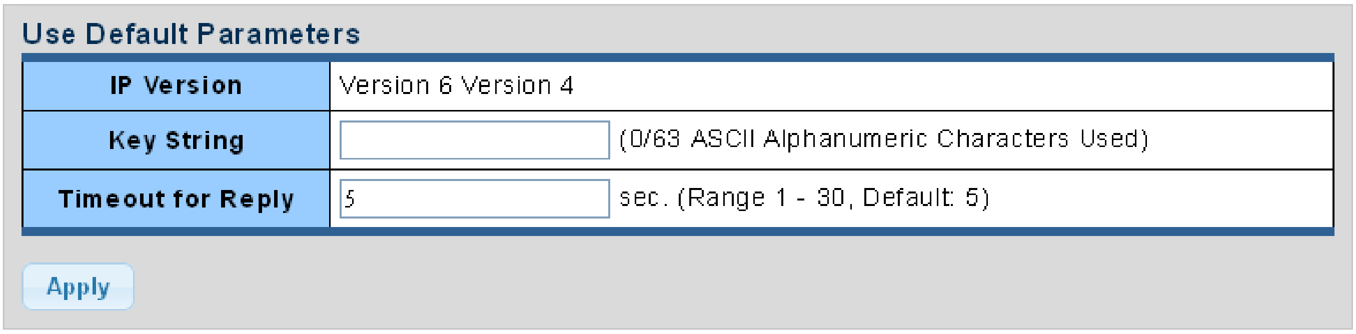
Figure 4-13-19 Login Authentication List Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **IP Address**	Display the current IP address
• **Auth Port**	Display the current auth port
• **Acct Port**	Display the current acct port
• **Key**	Display the current key
• **Timeout**	Display the current timeout
• **Retries**	Display the current retry times
• **Priority**	Display the current priority
• **Dead Time**	Display the current dead time
• **Usage Type**	Display the current usage type
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit login authentication list parameter. Click Delete to delete login authentication list entry.

4.13.2.4 TACACS+ Server

This page is to configure the RADIUS server connection session parameters. The RADIUS Settings screens in Figure 4-13-20, Figure 4-13-21 & Figure 4-13-22 appear.



Use Default Parameters

IP Version	Version 6 Version 4
Key String	(0/63 ASCII Alphanumeric Characters Used)
Timeout for Reply	5 sec. (Range 1 - 30, Default: 5)

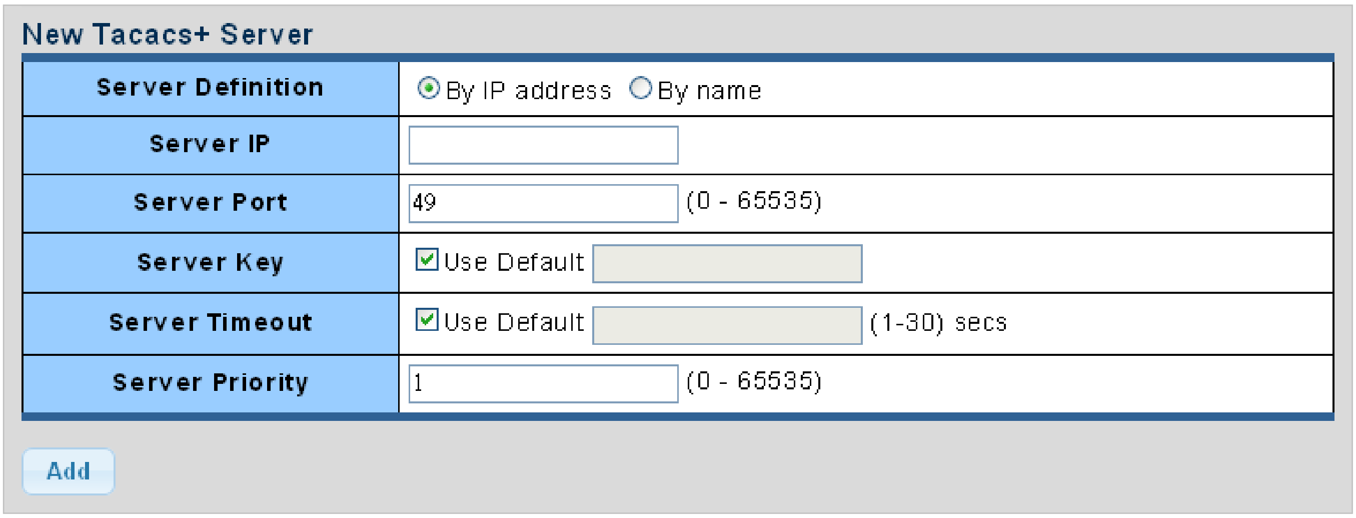
Figure 4-13-20 Guest VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Key String**	The secret key - up to 63 characters long - shared between the TACACS+ server and the switch.
• **Timeout for Reply**	Retransmit is the number of times, in the range 1 to 30, a TACACS+ request is retransmitted to a server that is not responding. If the server has not responded after the last retransmit it is considered to be dead.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



New Tacacs+ Server

Server Definition	● By IP address ○ By name
Server IP	
Server Port	49 (0 - 65535)
Server Key	☑ Use Default
Server Timeout	☑ Use Default (1-30) secs
Server Priority	1 (0 - 65535)

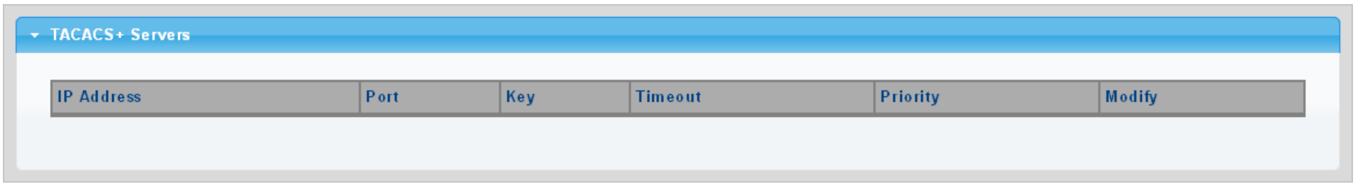
Figure 4-13-21 New Radius Server Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Server Definition**	Set the server definition
• **Server IP**	Address of the TACACS+ server IP/name
• **Server Port**	Network (TCP) port of TACACS+ server used for authentication messages. (Range: 1-65535; Default: **49**)
• **Server Key**	The key- shared between the TACACS+ Authentication Server and the switch.
• **Server Timeout**	The number of seconds the switch waits for a reply from the server before it resends the request.
• **Server Priority**	Set the server priority

Buttons

Add: Click to add Radius server setting.



IP Address	Port	Key	Timeout	Priority	Modify

Figure 4-13-22 Login Authentication List Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **IP Address**	Display the current IP address
• **Port**	Display the current port
• **Key**	Display the current key
• **Timeout**	Display the current timeout
• **Retries**	Display the current retry times
• **Priority**	Display the current priority
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit login authentication list parameter Click Delete to delete login authentication list entry

4.13.3 802.1X

Overview of 802.1X (Port-based) Authentication

In the 802.1X-world, the user is called the supplicant, the switch is the authenticator, and the RADIUS server is the authentication server. The switch acts as the man-in-the-middle, forwarding requests and responses between the supplicant and the authentication server. Frames sent between the supplicant and the switch are special 802.1X frames, known as **EAPOL (EAP over LANs)** frames. EAPOL frames encapsulate **EAP PDU**s (RFC3748). Frames sent between the switch and the RADIUS server are RADIUS packets. RADIUS packets also encapsulate EAP PDUs together with other attributes like the switch's IP address, name, and the supplicant's port number on the switch. EAP is very flexible, in that it allows for different authentication methods, like **MD5-Challenge**, **PEAP**, and **TLS**. The important thing is that the authenticator (the switch) doesn't need to know which authentication method the supplicant and the authentication server are using, or how many information exchange frames are needed for a particular method. The switch simply encapsulates the EAP part of the frame into the relevant type (EAPOL or RADIUS) and forwards it.

When authentication is complete, the RADIUS server sends a special packet containing a success or failure indication. Besides forwarding this decision to the supplicant, the switch uses it to open up or block traffic on the switch port connected to the supplicant.

Overview of User Authentication

It is allowed to configure the Managed Switch to authenticate users logging into the system for management access using local or remote authentication methods, such as telnet and Web browser. This Managed Switch provides secure network management access using the following options:

- **Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service (RADIUS)**
- **Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+)**
- **Local user name and Privilege Level control**

4.13.3.1 Understanding IEEE 802.1X Port-based Authentication

The IEEE 802.1X standard defines a client-server-based access control and authentication protocol that restricts unauthorized clients from connecting to a LAN through publicly accessible ports. The authentication server authenticates each client connected to a switch port before making available any services offered by the switch or the LAN.

Until the client is authenticated, 802.1X access control allows only **Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL)** traffic through the port to which the client is connected. After authentication is successful, normal traffic can pass through the port.

This section includes this conceptual information:

- Device Roles
- Authentication Initiation and Message Exchange
- Ports in Authorized and Unauthorized States

- **Device Roles**

With 802.1X port-based authentication, the devices in the network have specific roles as shown below.

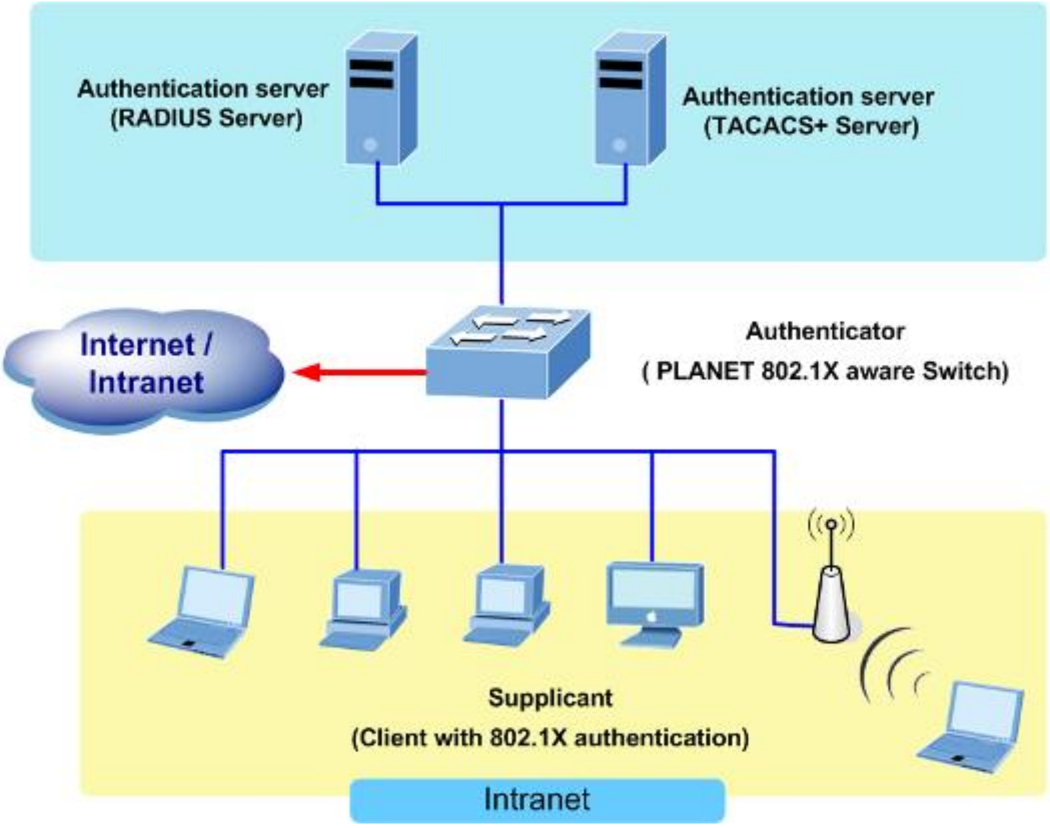

Authentication server
(RADIUS Server)
Authentication server
(TACACS+ Server)
Internet /
Intranet
Authenticator
(PLANET 802.1X aware Switch)
Supplicant
(Client with 802.1X authentication)
Intranet

Figure 4-13-23

- ***Client***—the device (workstation) that requests access to the LAN and switch services and responds to requests from the switch. The workstation must be running 802.1X-compliant client software such as that offered in the Microsoft Windows XP operating system. (The client is the *supplicant* in the IEEE 802.1X specification.)

- ***Authentication server***—performs the actual authentication of the client. The authentication server validates the identity of the client and notifies the switch whether or not the client is authorized to access the LAN and switch services. Because the switch acts as the proxy, the authentication service is transparent to the client. In this release, the Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) security system with **Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP)** extensions is the only supported authentication server; it is available in Cisco Secure Access Control Server version 3.0. RADIUS operates in a client/server model in which secure authentication information is exchanged between the RADIUS server and one or more RADIUS clients.

- ***Switch* (802.1X device)**—controls the physical access to the network based on the authentication status of the client. The switch acts as an intermediary (proxy) between the client and the authentication server, requesting identity information from the client, verifying that information with the authentication server, and relaying a response to the client. The switch includes the RADIUS client, which is responsible for encapsulating and decapsulating the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) frames and interacting with the authentication server. When the switch receives EAPOL frames and relays them to the authentication server, the Ethernet header is stripped and the remaining EAP frame is re-encapsulated in the RADIUS format. The EAP frames are not modified or examined during encapsulation, and the authentication server must support EAP within the native frame format. When the switch receives frames from the authentication server, the server's frame header is removed, leaving the EAP frame, which is then encapsulated for Ethernet and sent to the client.

■ Authentication Initiation and Message Exchange

The switch or the client can initiate authentication. If you enable authentication on a port by using the **dot1x port-control auto** interface configuration command, the switch must initiate authentication when it determines that the port link state transitions from down to up. It then sends an EAP-request/identity frame to the client to request its identity (typically, the switch sends an initial identity/request frame followed by one or more requests for authentication information). Upon receipt of the frame, the client responds with an EAP-response/identity frame.

However, if during bootup, the client does not receive an EAP-request/identity frame from the switch, the client can initiate authentication by sending an EAPOL-start frame, which prompts the switch to request the client's identity

Note

If 802.1X is not enabled or supported on the network access device, any EAPOL frames from the client are dropped. If the client does not receive an EAP-request/identity frame after three attempts to start authentication, the client transmits frames as if the port is in the authorized state. A port in the authorized state effectively means that the client has been successfully authenticated.

When the client supplies its identity, the switch begins its role as the intermediary, passing EAP frames between the client and the authentication server until authentication succeeds or fails. If the authentication succeeds, the switch port becomes authorized.

The specific exchange of EAP frames depends on the authentication method being used. "Figure 4-13-24" shows a message exchange initiated by the client using the One-Time-Password (OTP) authentication method with a RADIUS server.

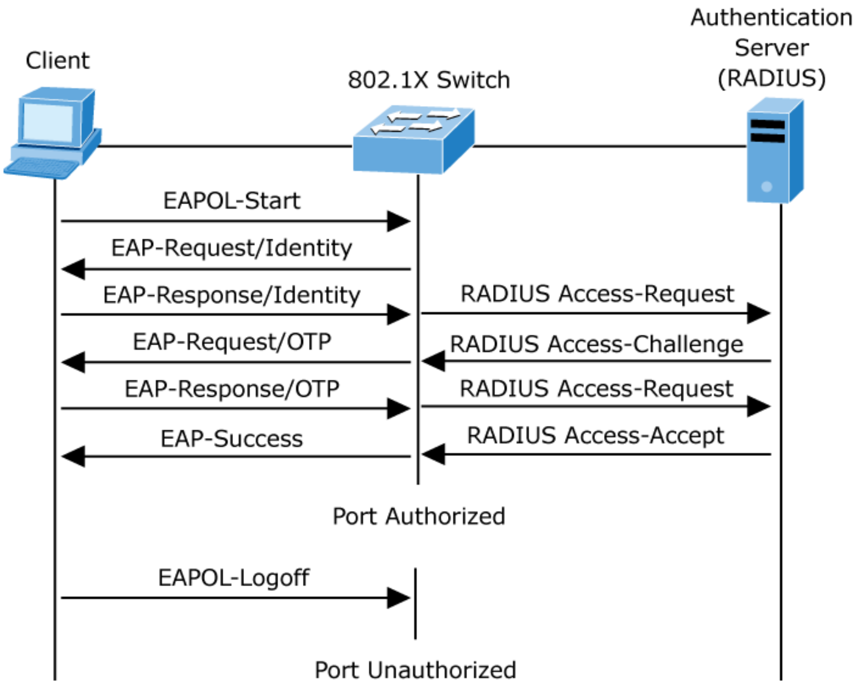

Client
802.1X Switch
Authentication Server (RADIUS)
EAPOL-Start
EAP-Request/Identity
EAP-Response/Identity
RADIUS Access-Request
EAP-Request/OTP
RADIUS Access-Challenge
EAP-Response/OTP
RADIUS Access-Request
EAP-Success
RADIUS Access-Accept
Port Authorized
EAPOL-Logoff
Port Unauthorized

Figure 4-13-24 EAP Message Exchange

- **Ports in Authorized and Unauthorized States**

The switch port state determines whether or not the client is granted access to the network. The port starts in the *unauthorized* state. While in this state, the port disallows all ingress and egress traffic except for 802.1X protocol packets. When a client is successfully authenticated, the port transitions to the *authorized* state, allowing all traffic for the client to flow normally.

If a client that does not support 802.1X is connected to an unauthorized 802.1X port, the switch requests the client's identity. In this situation, the client does not respond to the request, the port remains in the unauthorized state, and the client is not granted access to the network.

In contrast, when an 802.1X-enabled client connects to a port that is not running the 802.1X protocol, the client initiates the authentication process by sending the EAPOL-start frame. When no response is received, the client sends the request for a fixed number of times. Because no response is received, the client begins sending frames as if the port is in the authorized state

If the client is successfully authenticated (receives an Accept frame from the authentication server), the port state changes to authorized, and all frames from the authenticated client are allowed through the port. If the authentication fails, the port remains in the unauthorized state, but authentication can be retried. If the authentication server cannot be reached, the switch can retransmit the request. If no response is received from the server after the specified number of attempts, authentication fails, and network access is not granted.

When a client logs off, it sends an EAPOL-logoff message, causing the switch port to transition to the unauthorized state.

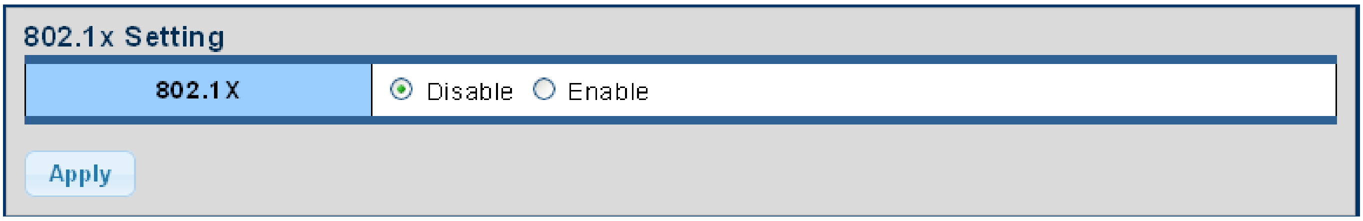
If the link state of a port transitions from up to down, or if an EAPOL-logoff frame is received, the port returns to the unauthorized state.

4.13.3.2 802.1X Setting

This page allows you to configure the IEEE 802.1X authentication system.

The IEEE 802.1X standard defines a port-based access control procedure that prevents unauthorized access to a network by requiring users to first submit credentials for authentication. One or more central servers, the backend servers, determine whether the user is allowed access to the network. These backend (RADIUS) servers are configured on the "**Security→802.1X Access Control→802.1X Setting**" page. The IEEE802.1X standard defines port-based operation, but non-standard variants overcome security limitations as shall be explored below.

The 802.1X Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-13-25 & Figure 4-13-26 appear.


802.1x Setting

802.1X ● Disable ○ Enable

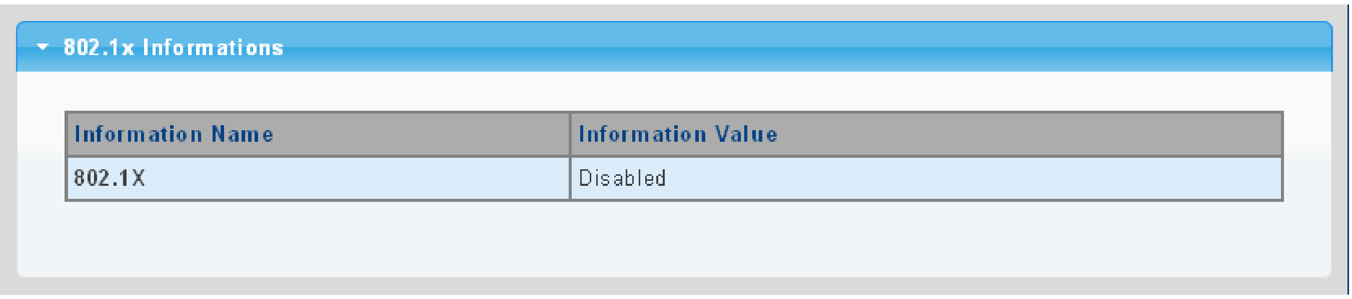
Figure 4-13-25 802.1X Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **802.1X**	Indicates if NAS is globally enabled or disabled on the switch. If globally disabled, all ports are allowed forwarding of frames.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.


802.1x Informations

Information Name	Information Value
802.1X	Disabled

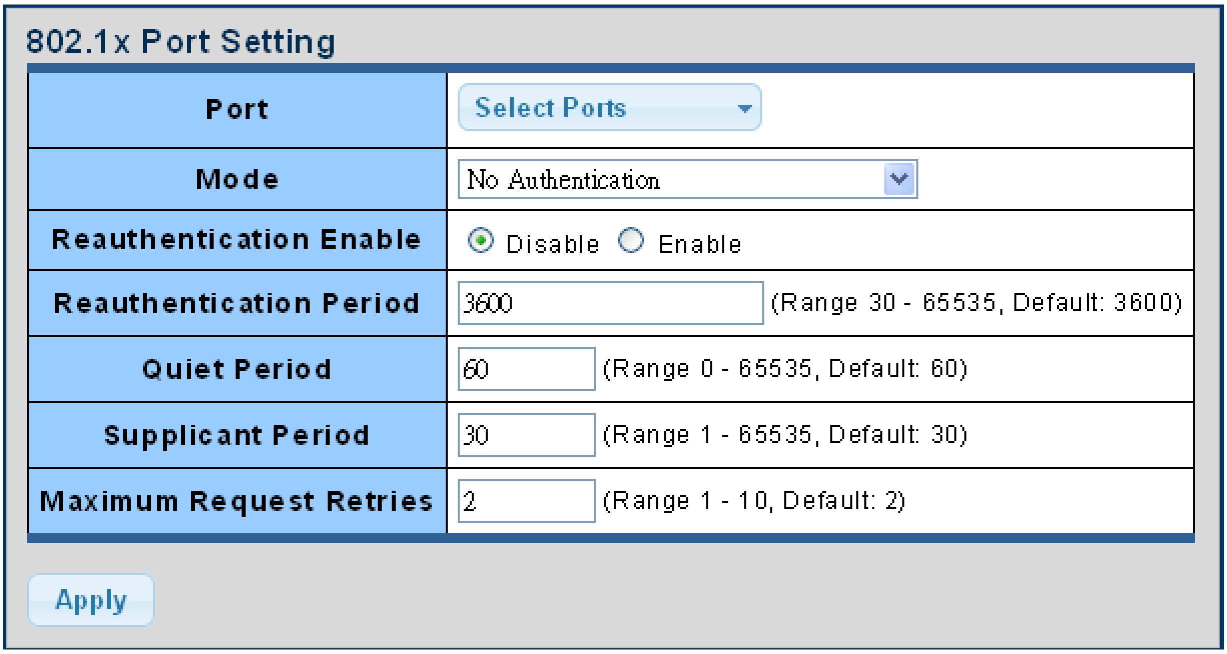
Figure 4-13-26 802.1X Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **802.1X**	Display the current 802.1X state

4.13.3.3 802.1X Port Setting

This page allows you to configure the IEEE 802.1X Port Setting. The 802.1X Port Setting screens in Figure 4-13-27 & Figure 4-13-28 appear.



802.1x Port Setting

Port	Select Ports
Mode	No Authentication
Reauthentication Enable	● Disable ○ Enable
Reauthentication Period	3600 (Range 30 - 65535, Default: 3600)
Quiet Period	60 (Range 0 - 65535, Default: 60)
Supplicant Period	30 (Range 1 - 65535, Default: 30)
Maximum Request Retries	2 (Range 1 - 10, Default: 2)

Figure 4-13-27 802.1X Port Setting Page Screenshot

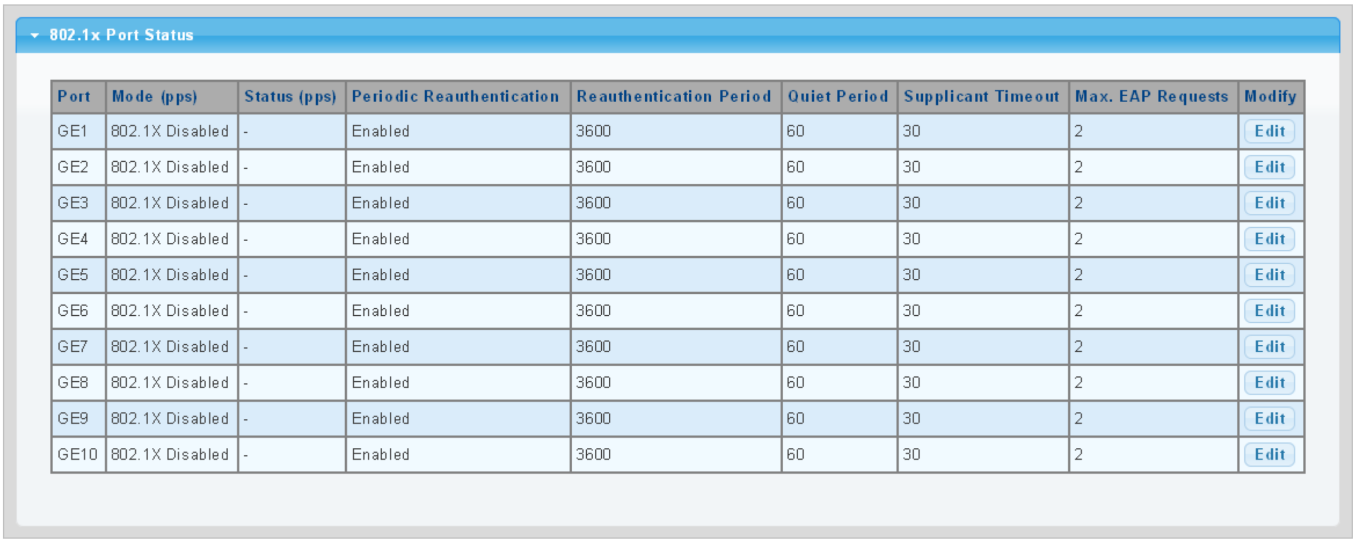
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Mode**	If NAS is globally enabled, this selection controls the port's authentication mode. The following modes are available: ■ **No Authentication** ■ **Authentication** ■ **Force Authorized** In this mode, the switch will send one EAPOL Success frame when the port link comes up, and any client on the port will be allowed network access without authentication. ■ **Force Unauthorized** In this mode, the switch will send one EAPOL Failure frame when the port link comes up, and any client on the port will be disallowed network access.
• **Reauthentication Enable**	If checked, successfully authenticated supplicants/clients are reauthenticated after the interval specified by the Reauthentication Period. Reauthentication for 802.1X-enabled ports can be used to detect if a new device is plugged into a switch port or if a supplicant is no longer attached.

• **Reauthentication Period**	Determines the period, in seconds, after which a connected client must be reauthenticated. This is only active if the Reauthentication Enabled checkbox is checked. Valid values are in the range 30 to 65535 seconds.
• **Quiet Period**	Sets time to keep silent on supplicant authentication failure.
• **Supplicant Period**	Sets the interval for the supplicant to re-transmit EAP request/identify frame.
• **Maximum Request Retries**	The number of times that the switch transmits an EAPOL Request Identity frame without response before considering entering the Guest VLAN is adjusted with this setting. The value can only be changed if the Guest VLAN option is globally enabled.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



802.1x Port Status

Port	Mode (pps)	Status (pps)	Periodic Reauthentication	Reauthentication Period	Quiet Period	Supplicant Timeout	Max. EAP Requests	Modify
GE1	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE2	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE3	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE4	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE5	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE6	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE7	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE8	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE9	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit
GE10	802.1X Disabled	-	Enabled	3600	60	30	2	Edit

Figure 4-13-28 802.1X Port Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port.
• **Mode (pps)**	Display the current mode.
• **Status (pps)**	Display the current status.
• **Periodic Reauthentication**	Display the current periodic reauthentication.
• **Reauthentication Period**	Display the current reauthentication period.
• **Quiet Period**	Display the current quiet period.
• **Supplicant Timeout**	Display the current supplicant timeout.
• **Max. EAP Requests**	Display the current Max. EAP requests.
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit 802.1X port setting parameter.

4.13.3.4 Guest VLAN Setting

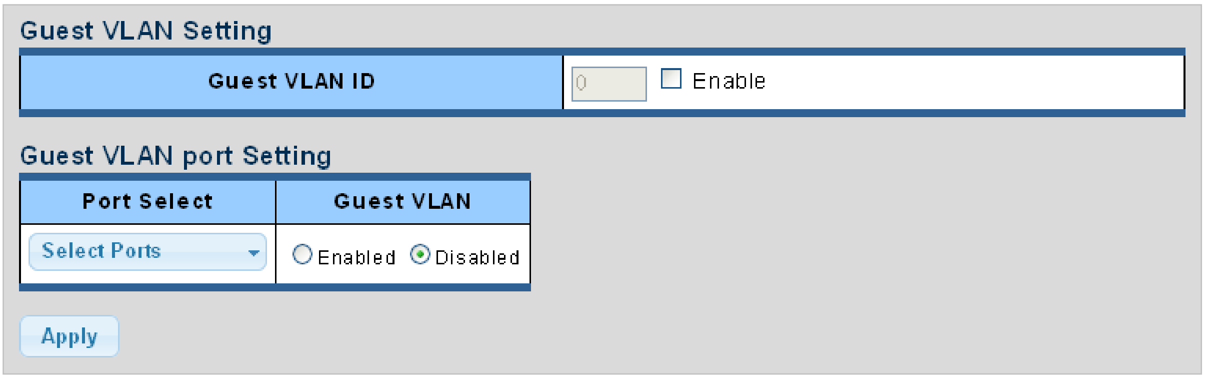
Overview

When a Guest VLAN enabled port's link comes up, the switch starts transmitting EAPOL Request Identity frames. If the number of transmissions of such frames exceeds Max. Reauth. Count and no EAPOL frames have been received in the meantime, the switch considers entering the Guest VLAN. The interval between transmission of EAPOL Request Identity frames is configured with EAPOL Timeout. If Allow Guest VLAN if EAPOL Seen is enabled, the port will now be placed in the Guest VLAN. If disabled, the switch will first check its history to see if an EAPOL frame has previously been received on the port (this history is cleared if the port link goes down or the port's Admin State is changed), and if not, the port will be placed in the Guest VLAN. Otherwise it will not move to the Guest VLAN, but continue transmitting EAPOL Request Identity frames at the rate given by EAPOL Timeout.

Once in the Guest VLAN, the port is considered authenticated, and all attached clients on the port are allowed access on this VLAN. The switch will not transmit an EAPOL Success frame when entering the Guest VLAN.

While in the Guest VLAN, the switch monitors the link for EAPOL frames, and if one such frame is received, the switch immediately takes the port out of the Guest VLAN and starts authenticating the supplicant according to the port mode. If an EAPOL frame is received, the port will never be able to go back into the Guest VLAN if the "Allow Guest VLAN if EAPOL Seen" is disabled.

The 802.1X Guest VLAN setting screens in Figure 4-13-29 & Figure 4-13-30 appear.



Guest VLAN Setting

Guest VLAN ID	0 ☐ Enable

Guest VLAN port Setting

Port Select	Guest VLAN
Select Ports	○ Enabled ● Disabled

Figure 4-13-29 Guest VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

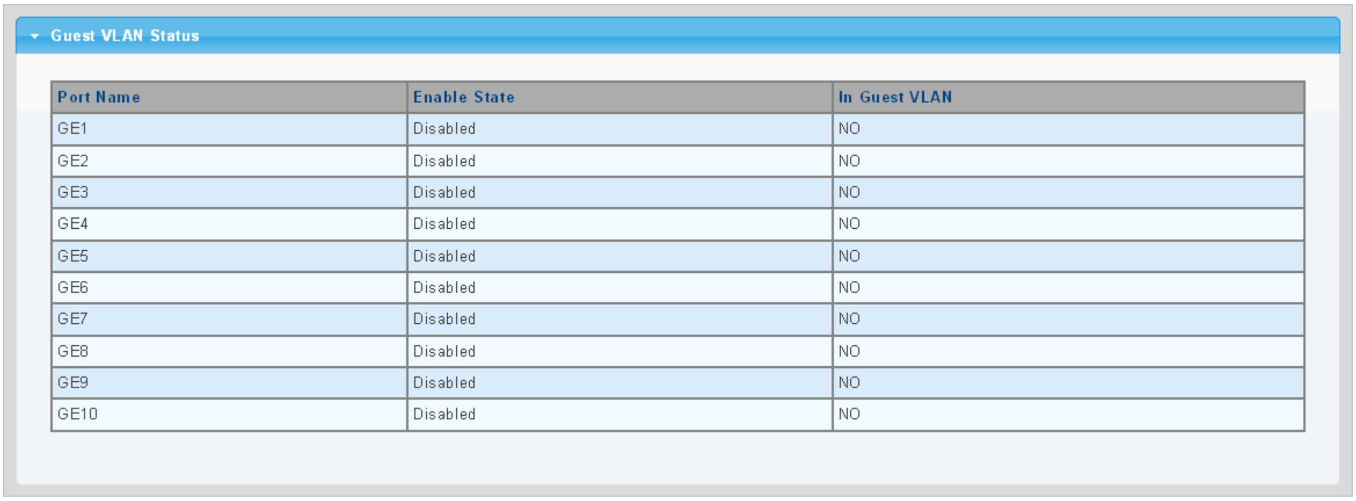
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Guest VLAN ID**	This is the value that a port's Port VLAN ID is set to if a port is moved into the Guest VLAN. It is only changeable if the Guest VLAN option is globally enabled. Valid values are in the range [1~4094].
- **Guest VLAN Enabled**	A Guest VLAN is a special VLAN - typically with limited network access - on which 802.1X-unaware clients are placed after a network administrator-defined timeout. The switch follows a set of rules for entering and leaving the Guest

	VLAN as listed below. The "Guest VLAN Enabled" checkbox provides a quick way to globally enable/disable Guest VLAN functionality. ■ When checked, the individual ports' ditto setting determines whether the port can be moved into Guest VLAN. ■ When unchecked, the ability to move to the Guest VLAN is disabled for all ports.
• **Guest VLAN Port Setting**	When Guest VLAN is both globally enabled and enabled (checked) for a given port, the switch considers moving the port into the Guest VLAN according to the rules outlined below. This option is only available for EAPOL-based modes, i.e.: **• Port-based 802.1X**

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



Port Name	Enable State	In Guest VLAN
GE1	Disabled	NO
GE2	Disabled	NO
GE3	Disabled	NO
GE4	Disabled	NO
GE5	Disabled	NO
GE6	Disabled	NO
GE7	Disabled	NO
GE8	Disabled	NO
GE9	Disabled	NO
GE10	Disabled	NO

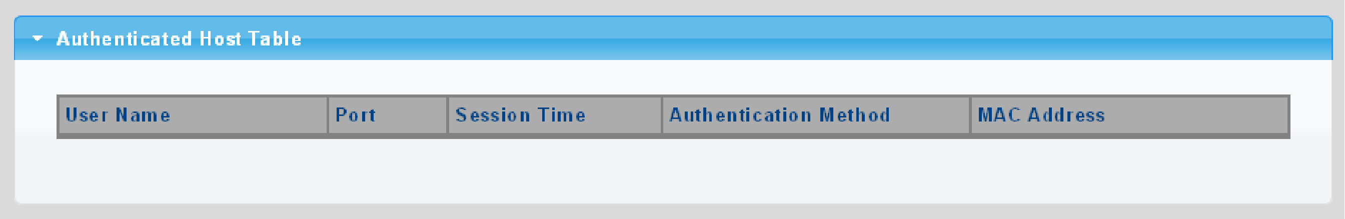
Figure 4-13-30 Guest VLAN Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Name**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Enable State**	Display the current state
• **In Guest VLAN**	Display the current guest VLAN

4.13.3.5 Authenticated Host

The Authenticated Host Table screen in Figure 4-13-31 appears.



User Name	Port	Session Time	Authentication Method	MAC Address

Figure 4-13-31 Authenticated Host Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

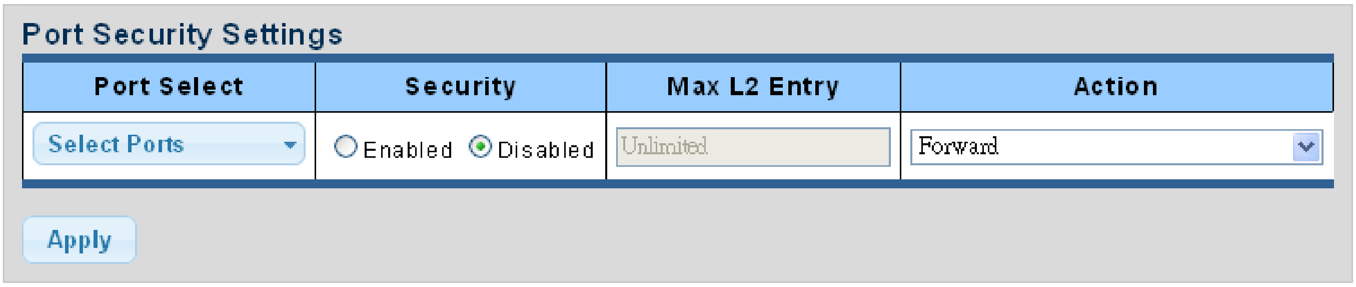
Object	Description
• **User Name**	Display the current user name
• **Port**	Display the current port number
• **Session Time**	Display the current session time
• **Authentication Method**	Display the current authentication method
• **MAC Address**	Display the current MAC address

4.13.3.6 Port Security

This page allows you to configure the Port Security Limit Control system and port settings. Limit Control allows for limiting the number of users on a given port. A user is identified by a MAC address and VLAN ID. If Limit Control is enabled on a port, the limit specifies the maximum number of users on the port. If this number is exceeded, an action is taken. The action can be one of four different as described below.

The Limit Control module is one of the modules that utilize a lower-layer module while the Port Security module manages MAC addresses learned on the port.

The Limit Control configuration consists of two sections, a system- and a port-wid. The IP Source Guard Static Binding Entry and Table Status screens in Figure 4-13-32 & Figure 4-13-33 appear.



Port Security Settings

Port Select	Security	Max L2 Entry	Action
Select Ports	○ Enabled ● Disabled	Unlimited	Forward

Figure 4-13-32 Port Security Setting Page Screenshot

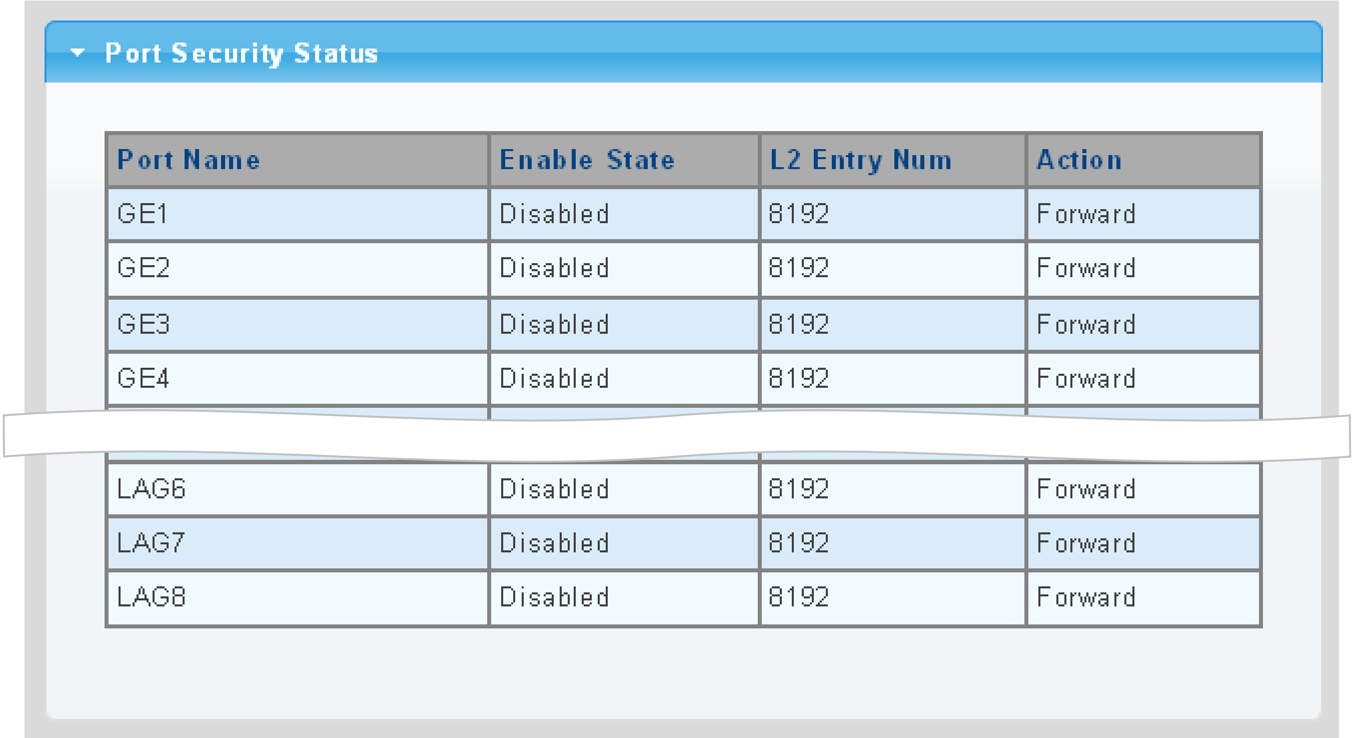
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Security**	Enable or disable the port security
• **Mac L2 Entry**	The maximum number of MAC addresses that can be secured on this port. If the limit is exceeded, the corresponding action is taken. The switch is "born" with a total number of MAC addresses from which all ports draw whenever a new MAC address is seen on a Port Security-enabled port. Since all ports draw from the same pool, it may happen that a configured maximum cannot be granted, if the remaining ports have already used all available MAC addresses.
• **Action**	If Limit is reached, the switch can take one of the following actions: ■ **Forward**: Do not allow more than Limit MAC addresses on the port, but take no further action. ■ **Shutdown**: If Limit + 1 MAC addresses is seen on the port, shut down the port. This implies that all secured MAC addresses will be removed from the

	port, and no new will be learned. Even if the link is physically disconnected and reconnected on the port (by disconnecting the cable), the port will remain shut down. There are three ways to re-open the port: 1) Disable and re-enable Limit Control on the port or the switch, 2) Click the Reopen button. ■ **Discard**: If Limit + 1 MAC addresses is seen on the port, it will trigger the action that do not learn the new MAC and drop the package.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



Port Name	Enable State	L2 Entry Num	Action
GE1	Disabled	8192	Forward
GE2	Disabled	8192	Forward
GE3	Disabled	8192	Forward
GE4	Disabled	8192	Forward
LAG6	Disabled	8192	Forward
LAG7	Disabled	8192	Forward
LAG8	Disabled	8192	Forward

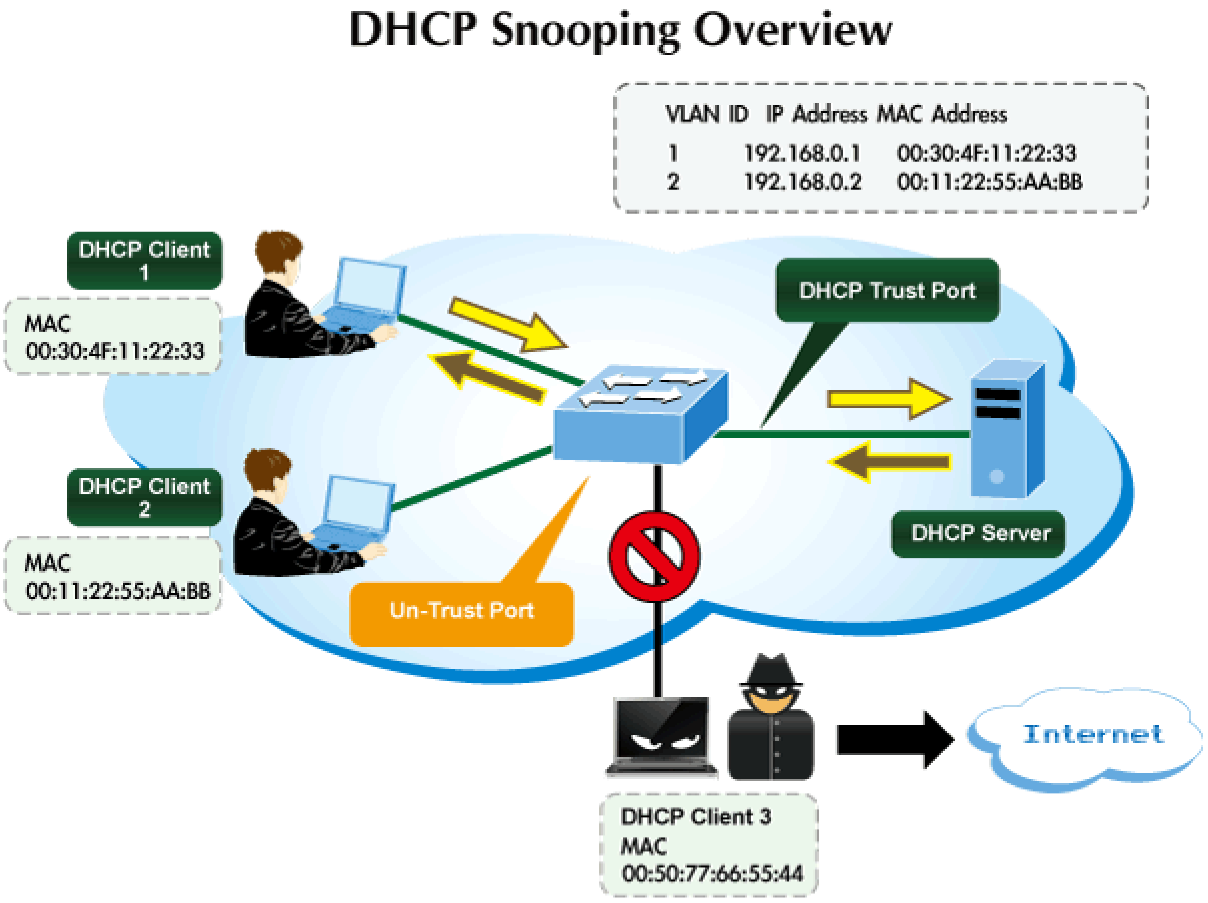
Figure 4-13-33 Port Security Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Name**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Enable State**	Display the current per port security status
• **L2 Entry Num**	Display the current L2 entry number
• **Action**	Display the current action

4.13.4 DHCP Snooping

The addresses assigned to DHCP clients on unsecure ports can be carefully controlled using the dynamic bindings registered with DHCP Snooping. DHCP snooping allows a switch to protect a network from rogue DHCP servers or other devices which send port-related information to a DHCP server. This information can be useful in tracking an IP address back to a physical port.


DHCP Snooping Overview
VLAN ID IP Address MAC Address
1 192.168.0.1 00:30:4F:11:22:33
2 192.168.0.2 00:11:22:55:AA:BB
DHCP Client 1
MAC 00:30:4F:11:22:33
DHCP Client 2
MAC 00:11:22:55:AA:BB
DHCP Trust Port
DHCP Server
Un-Trust Port
Internet
DHCP Client 3
MAC 00:50:77:66:55:44

Command Usage

- Network traffic may be disrupted when malicious DHCP messages are received from an outside source. **DHCP snooping is used to filter DHCP messages received on a non-secure interface from outside the network or firewall**. When DHCP snooping is enabled globally and enabled on a VLAN interface, **DHCP messages received on an untrusted interface from a device not listed in the DHCP snooping table will be dropped**.

- Table entries are only learned for trusted interfaces. An entry is added or removed dynamically to the DHCP snooping table when a client receives or releases an IP address from a DHCP server. Each entry includes a MAC address, IP address, lease time, VLAN identifier, and port identifier.

- When DHCP snooping is enabled, DHCP messages entering an untrusted interface are filtered based upon dynamic entries learned via DHCP snooping.

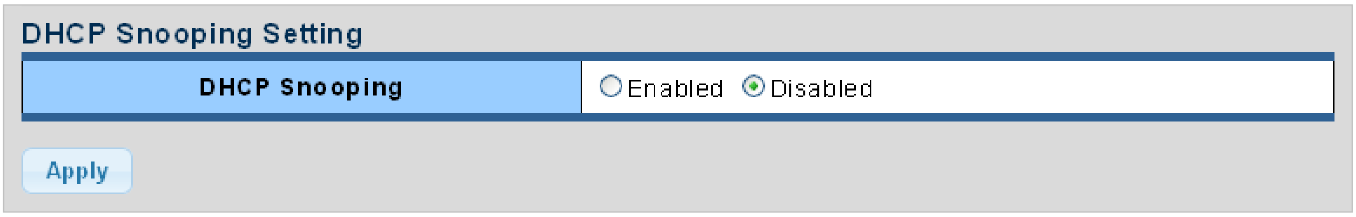
- Filtering rules are implemented as follows:
    - If the global DHCP snooping is disabled, all DHCP packets are forwarded.
    - If DHCP snooping is enabled globally, and also enabled on the VLAN where the DHCP packet is received, all DHCP packets are forwarded for a trusted port. If the received packet is a DHCP ACK message, a dynamic DHCP snooping entry is also added to the binding table.
    - If DHCP snooping is enabled globally, and also enabled on the VLAN where the DHCP packet is received, but the port is not trusted, it is processed as follows:
        - If the DHCP packet is a reply packet from a DHCP server (including OFFER, ACK or NAK messages), the packet is dropped.
        - If the DHCP packet is from a client, such as a DECLINE or RELEASE message, the switch forwards the packet only if the corresponding entry is found in the binding table.
        - If the DHCP packet is from a client, such as a DISCOVER, REQUEST, INFORM, DECLINE or RELEASE message, the packet is forwarded if MAC address verification is disabled. However, if MAC address verification is enabled, then the packet will only be forwarded if the client's hardware address stored in the DHCP packet is the same as the source MAC address in the Ethernet header.
        - If the DHCP packet is not a recognizable type, it is dropped.

- If a DHCP packet from a client passes the filtering criteria above, it will only be forwarded to trusted ports in the same VLAN.
- If a DHCP packet is from server is received on a trusted port, it will be forwarded to both trusted and untrusted ports in the same VLAN.
- If the DHCP snooping is globally disabled, all dynamic bindings are removed from the binding table.

    - Additional considerations when the switch itself is a DHCP client – The port(s) through which the switch submits a client request to the DHCP server must be configured as trusted. Note that the switch will not add a dynamic entry for itself to the binding table when it receives an ACK message from a DHCP server. Also, when the switch sends out DHCP client packets for itself, no filtering takes place. However, when the switch receives any messages from a DHCP server, any packets received from untrusted ports are dropped.

4.13.4.1 Global Setting

DHCP Snooping is used to block intruder on the untrusted ports of switch when it tries to intervene by injecting a bogus DHCP reply packet to a legitimate conversation between the DHCP client and server. Configure DHCP Snooping on this page. The DHCP Snooping Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-13-34 & Figure 4-13-35 appear.



DHCP Snooping Setting

DHCP Snooping	○ Enabled ● Disabled

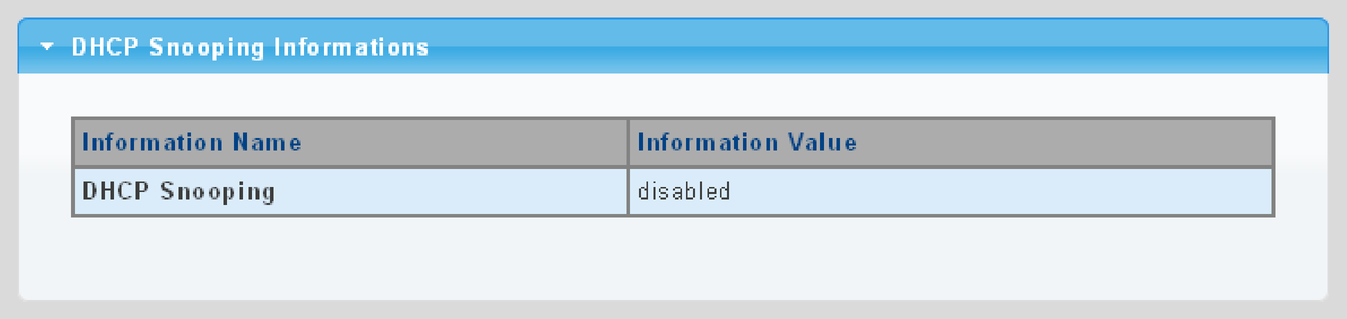
Figure 4-13-34 DHCP Snooping Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **DHCP Snooping**	Indicates the DHCP snooping mode operation. Possible modes are: ■ **Enabled**: Enable DHCP snooping mode operation. When enable DHCP snooping mode operation, the request DHCP messages will be forwarded to trusted ports and only allowed reply packets from trusted ports. ■ **Disabled**: Disable DHCP snooping mode operation.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



DHCP Snooping Informations

Information Name	Information Value
DHCP Snooping	disabled

Figure 4-13-35 DHCP Snooping Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

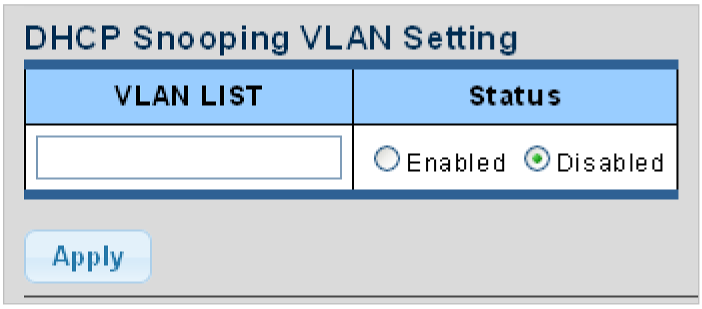
Object	Description
• **DHCP Snooping**	Display the current DHCP snooping status

4.13.4.2 VLAN Setting

Command Usage

- When DHCP snooping is enabled globally on the switch, and enabled on the specified VLAN, DHCP packet filtering will be performed on any untrusted ports within the VLAN.
- When the DHCP snooping is globally disabled, DHCP snooping can still be configured for specific VLANs, but the changes will not take effect until DHCP snooping is globally re-enabled.
- When DHCP snooping is globally enabled, and DHCP snooping is then disabled on a VLAN, all dynamic bindings learned for this VLAN are removed from the binding table.

The DHCP Snooping VLAN Setting screens in Figure 4-13-36 & Figure 4-13-37 appear.



DHCP Snooping VLAN Setting

VLAN LIST	Status
	○ Enabled ● Disabled

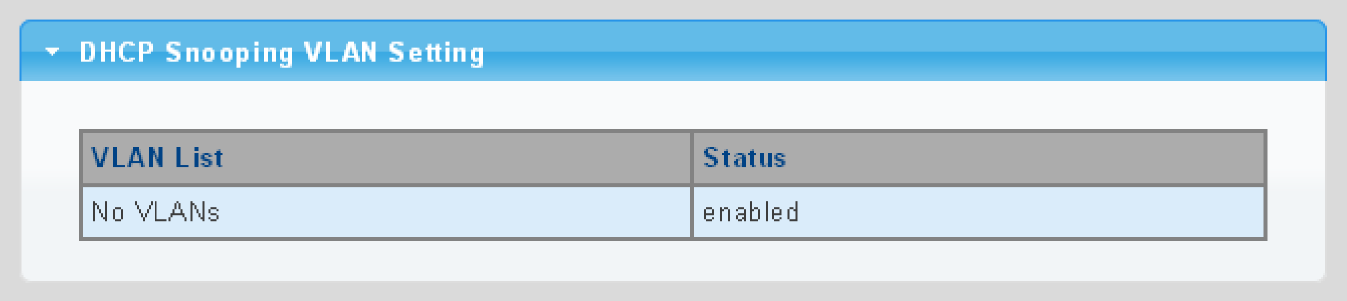
Figure 4-13-36 DHCP Snooping VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN List**	Indicates the ID of this particular VLAN.
• **Status**	Indicates the DHCP snooping mode operation. Possible modes are: ■ **Enabled**: Enable DHCP snooping mode operation. When enable DHCP snooping mode operation, the request DHCP messages will be forwarded to trusted ports and only allowed reply packets from trusted ports. ■ **Disabled**: Disable DHCP snooping mode operation.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



VLAN List	Status
No VLANs	enabled

Figure 4-13-37 DHCP Snooping VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN List**	Display the current VLAN list
• **Status**	Display the current DHCP snooping status

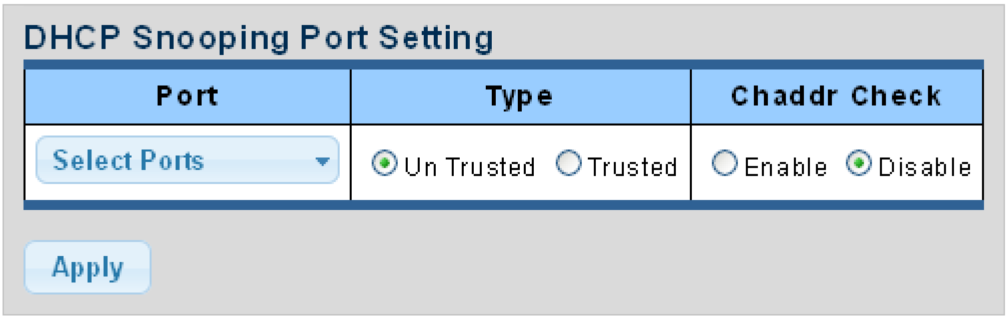
4.13.4.3 Port Setting

Configures switch ports as trusted or untrusted.

Command Usage

- A trusted interface is an interface that is configured to receive only messages from within the network. An untrusted interface is an interface that is configured to receive messages from outside the network or firewall.
- When DHCP snooping enabled both globally and on a VLAN, DHCP packet filtering will be performed on any untrusted ports within the VLAN.
- When an untrusted port is changed to a trusted port, all the dynamic DHCP snooping bindings associated with this port are removed.
- Set all ports connected to DHCP servers within the local network or firewall to trusted state. Set all other ports outside the local network or firewall to untrusted state.

The DHCP Snooping Port Setting screen in Figure 4-13-38 & Figure 4-13-39 appears.



Port	Type	Chaddr Check
Select Ports	● Un Trusted ○ Trusted	○ Enable ● Disable

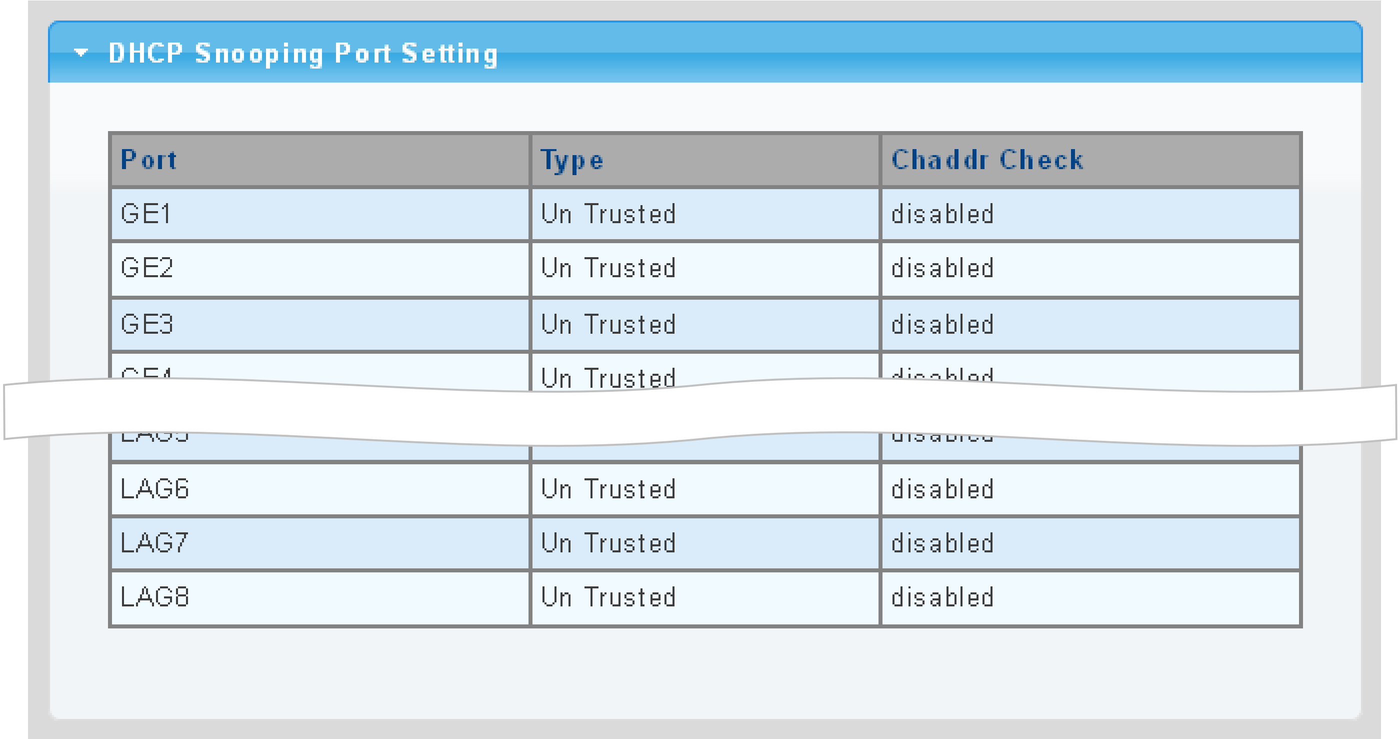
Figure 4-13-38 DHCP Snooping Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Type**	Indicates the DHCP snooping port mode. Possible port modes are: ■ **Trusted**: Configures the port as trusted sources of the DHCP message. ■ **Untrusted**: Configures the port as untrusted sources of the DHCP message.
• **Chaddr Check**	Indicates that the Chaddr check function is enabled on selected port. Chaddr: Client hardware address.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



DHCP Snooping Port Setting

Port	Type	Chaddr Check
GE1	Un Trusted	disabled
GE2	Un Trusted	disabled
GE3	Un Trusted	disabled
GE4	Un Trusted	disabled
LAG5		disabled
LAG6	Un Trusted	disabled
LAG7	Un Trusted	disabled
LAG8	Un Trusted	disabled

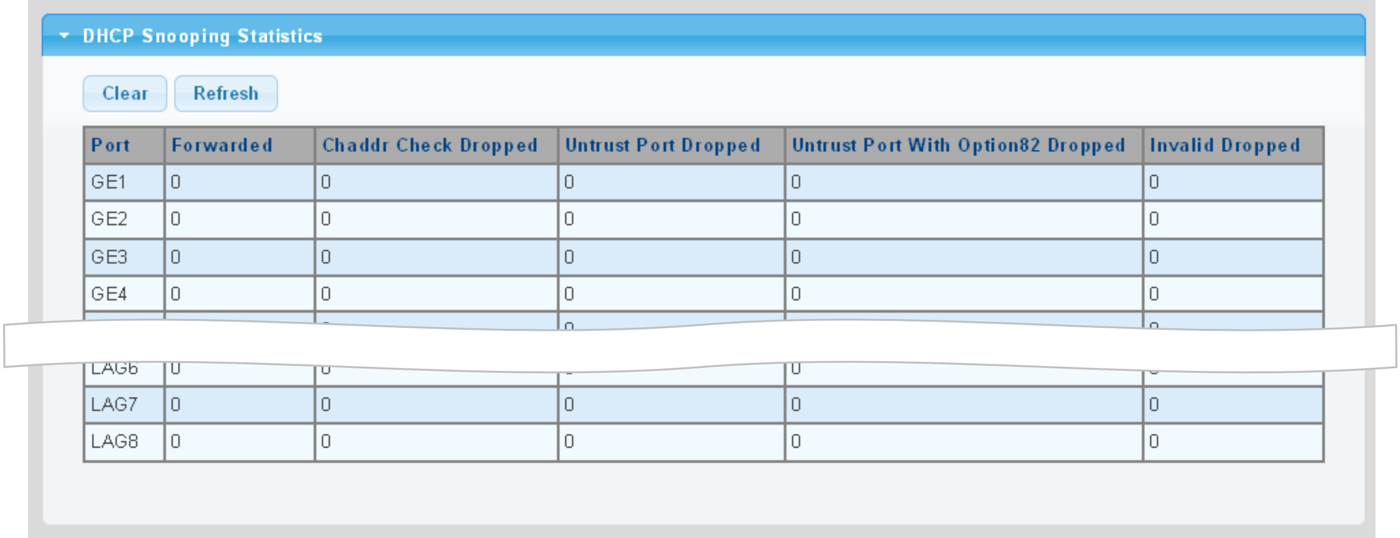
Figure 4-13-39 DHCP Snooping Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Type**	Display the current type
• **Chaddr Check**	Display the current chaddr check

4.13.4.4 Statistics

The DHCP Snooping Statistics screen in Figure 4-13-40 appears.



Port	Forwarded	Chaddr Check Dropped	Untrust Port Dropped	Untrust Port With Option82 Dropped	Invalid Dropped
GE1	0	0	0	0	0
GE2	0	0	0	0	0
GE3	0	0	0	0	0
GE4	0	0	0	0	0
LAG6	0	0	0	0	0
LAG7	0	0	0	0	0
LAG8	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 4-13-40 DHCP Snooping Statistics Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Forwarded**	Display the current forwarded
- **Chaddr Check Dropped**	Display the chaddr check dropped
- **Untrusted Port Dropped**	Display untrusted port dropped
- **Untrusted Port with Option82 Dropped**	Display untrusted port with option82 dropped
- **Invalid Dropped**	Display invalid dropped

Buttons

Clear : Click to clear the statistics.

Refresh : Click to refresh the statistics.

4.13.4.5 Database Agent

Overview of the DHCP Snooping Database Agent

When DHCP snooping is enabled, the switch uses the DHCP snooping binding database to store information about untrusted interfaces. The database can have up to 8192 bindings.

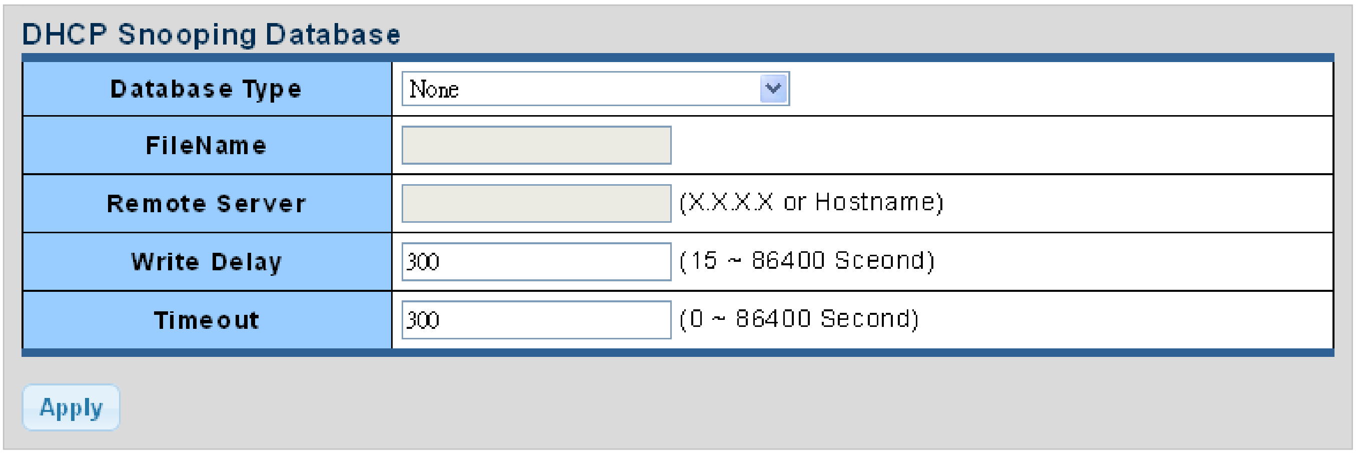
Each database entry (*binding*) has an IP address, an associated MAC address, the lease time (in hexadecimal format), the interface to which the binding applies, and the VLAN to which the interface belongs. A *checksum* value, the end of each entry, is the number of bytes from the start of the file to end of the entry. Each entry is 72 bytes, followed by a space and then the checksum value.

To keep the bindings when the switch reloads, you must use the DHCP snooping database agent. If the agent is disabled, dynamic ARP or IP source guard is enabled, and the DHCP snooping binding database has dynamic bindings, the switch loses its connectivity. If the agent is disabled and only DHCP snooping is enabled, the switch does not lose its connectivity, but DHCP snooping might not prevent DCHP spoofing attacks.

The database agent stores the bindings in a file at a configured location. When reloading, the switch reads the binding file to build the DHCP snooping binding database. The switch keeps the file current by updating it when the database changes.

When a switch learns of new bindings or when it loses bindings, the switch immediately updates the entries in the database. The switch also updates the entries in the binding file. The frequency at which the file is updated is based on a configurable delay, and the updates are batched. If the file is not updated in a specified time (set by the write-delay and abort-timeout values), the update stops.

The DHCP Snooping Database and Information screens in Figure 4-13-41 & Figure 4-13-42 appear.


DHCP Snooping Database

Database Type	None
FileName	
Remote Server	(X.X.X.X or Hostname)
Write Delay	300 (15 ~ 86400 Sceond)
Timeout	300 (0 ~ 86400 Second)

Figure 4-13-41 DHCP Snooping Database Setting Page Screenshot

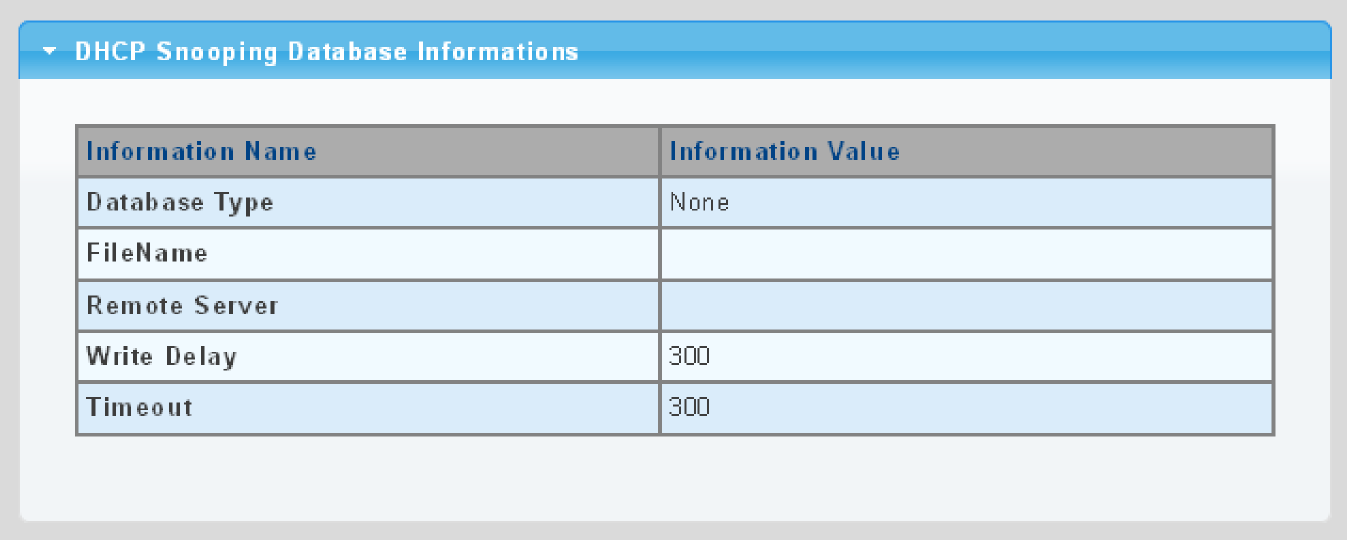
The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Database Type**	Select database type
• **File Name**	The name of file image

- **Remote Server**	Fill in your remote server IP address
- **Write Delay**	Specify the duration for which the transfer should be delayed after the binding database changes. The range is from 15 to 86400 seconds. The default is 300 seconds (5 minutes).
- **Timeout**	Specify when to stop the database transfer process after the binding database changes. The range is from 0 to 86400. Use 0 for an infinite duration. The default is 300 seconds (5 minutes).

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



DHCP Snooping Database Informations

Information Name	Information Value
Database Type	None
FileName	
Remote Server	
Write Delay	300
Timeout	300

Figure 4-13-42 DHCP Snooping Database Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Database Type**	Display the current database type
- **File Name**	Display the current file name
- **Remote Server**	Display the current remote server
- **Write Delay**	Display the current write delay
- **Timeout**	Display the current timeout

4.13.4.6 Rate Limit

After enabling DHCP snooping, the switch will monitor all the DHCP messages and implement software transmission. The DHCP Rate Limit Setting and Config screens in Figure 4-13-43 & Figure 4-13-44 appear.

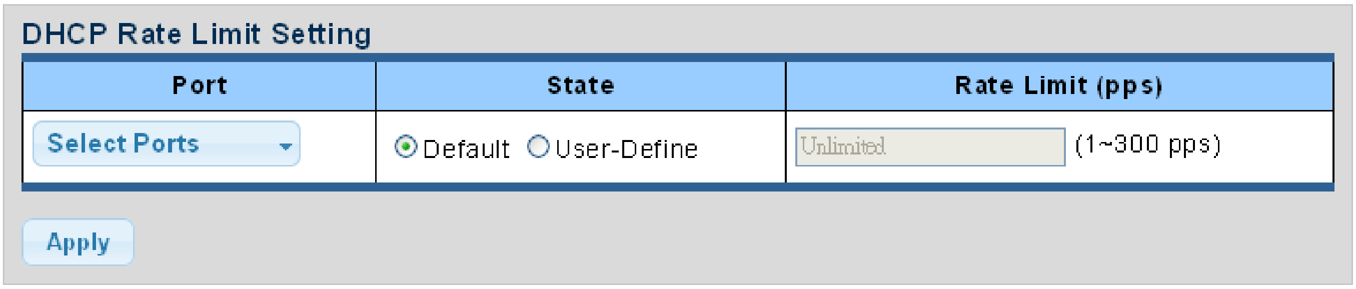

DHCP Rate Limit Setting
Port
State
Rate Limit (pps)
Select Ports
● Default ○ User-Define
Unlimited
(1~300 pps)
Apply

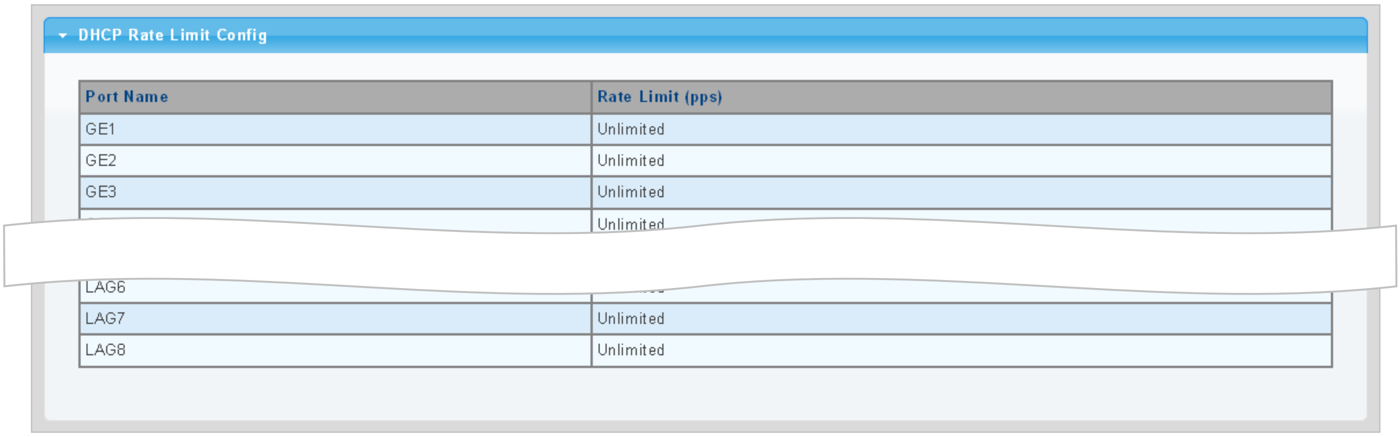
Figure 4-13-43 DHCP Rate Limit Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **State**	Set default or user-define
• **Rate Limit (pps)**	Configure the rate limit for the port policer. The default value is "unlimited". Valid values are in the range 1 to 300.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes


DHCP Rate Limit Config

Port Name	Rate Limit (pps)
GE1	Unlimited
GE2	Unlimited
GE3	Unlimited
	Unlimited
LAG6	
LAG7	Unlimited
LAG8	Unlimited

Figure 4-13-44 DHCP Rate Limit Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Rate Limit (pps)**	Display the current rate limit

4.13.4.7 Option82 Global Setting

DHCP provides a relay mechanism for sending information about the switch and its DHCP clients to DHCP servers. Known as **DHCP Option 82**, it allows compatible DHCP servers to use the information when assigning IP addresses, or to set other services or policies for clients. It is also an effective tool in preventing malicious network attacks from attached clients on DHCP services, such as IP Spoofing, Client Identifier Spoofing, MAC Address Spoofing, and Address Exhaustion.

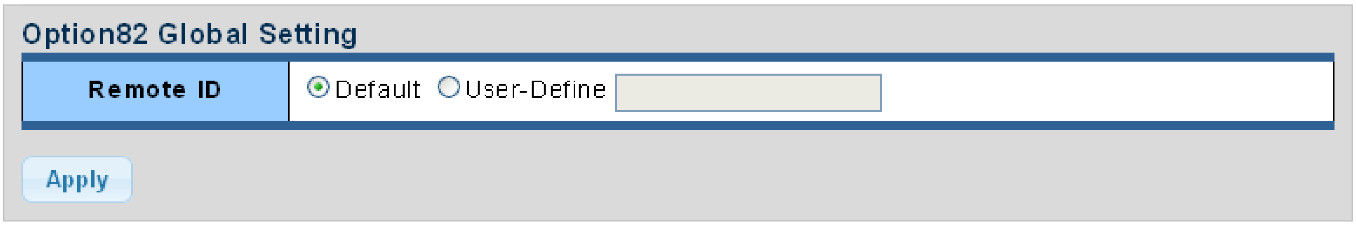
The **DHCP option 82** enables a DHCP relay agent to insert specific information into a DHCP request packets when forwarding client DHCP packets to a DHCP server and remove the specific information from a DHCP reply packets when forwarding server DHCP packets to a DHCP client. The DHCP server can use this information to implement IP address or other assignment policies. Specifically the option works by setting two sub-options:

- Circuit ID (option 1)
- Remote ID (option2).

The Circuit ID sub-option is supposed to include information specific to which circuit the request came in on.
The Remote ID sub-option was designed to carry information relating to the remote host end of the circuit.

The definition of Circuit ID in the switch is 4 bytes in length and the format is "vlan_id" "module_id" "port_no". The parameter of "vlan_id" is the first two bytes represent the VLAN ID. The parameter of "module_id" is the third byte for the module ID (in standalone switch it always equal 0, in switch it means switch ID). The parameter of "port_no" is the fourth byte and it means the port number.

After enabling DHCP snooping, the switch will monitor all the DHCP messages and implement software transmission. The DHCP Rate Limit Setting and Config screens in Figure 4-13-45 & Figure 4-13-46 appear.



Option82 Global Setting

Remote ID	● Default ○ User-Define

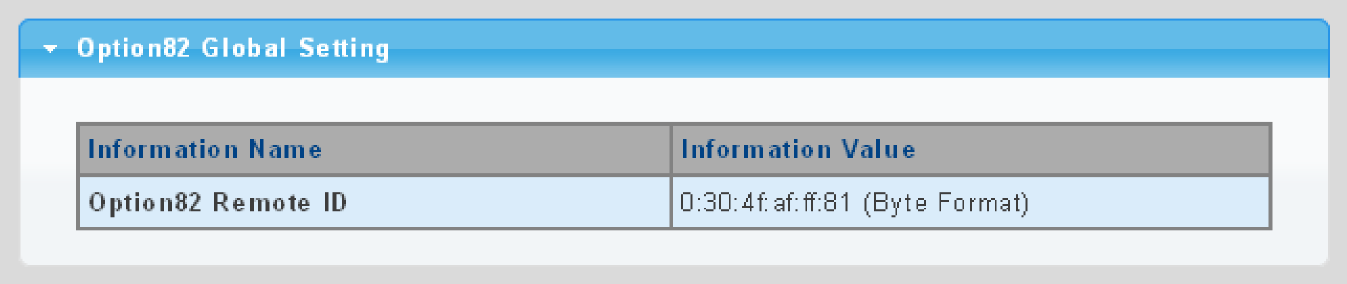
Figure 4-13-45 Option82 Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **State**	Set the option2 (remote ID option) content of option 82 added by DHCP request packets. ■ **Default** means the default VLAN MAC format. ■ **User-Define** means the remote-id content of option 82 specified by users

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



Option82 Global Setting

Information Name	Information Value
Option82 Remote ID	0:30:4f:af:ff:81 (Byte Format)

Figure 4-13-46 Option82 Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

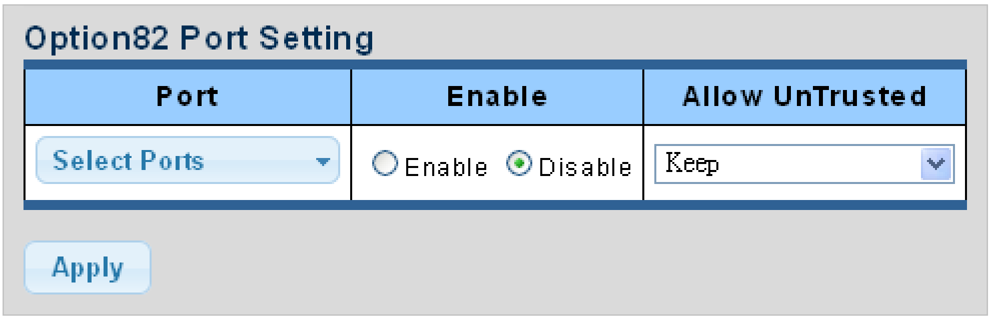
Object	Description
- **Option82 Remote ID**	Display the current option82 remote ID

4.13.4.8 Option82 Port Setting

This function is used to set the retransmitting policy of the system for the received DHCP request message which contains option82.

- The **drop** mode means that if the message has option82, then the system will drop it without processing.
- The **keep** mode means that the system will keep the original option82 segment in the message, and forward it to the server to process
- The **replace** mode means that the system will replace the option 82 segment in the existing message with its own option 82, and forward the message to the server to process.

Option82 Port Setting screens in Figure 4-13-47 & Figure 4-13-48 appear.



Option82 Port Setting

Port	Enable	Allow UnTrusted
Select Ports	○ Enable ● Disable	Keep

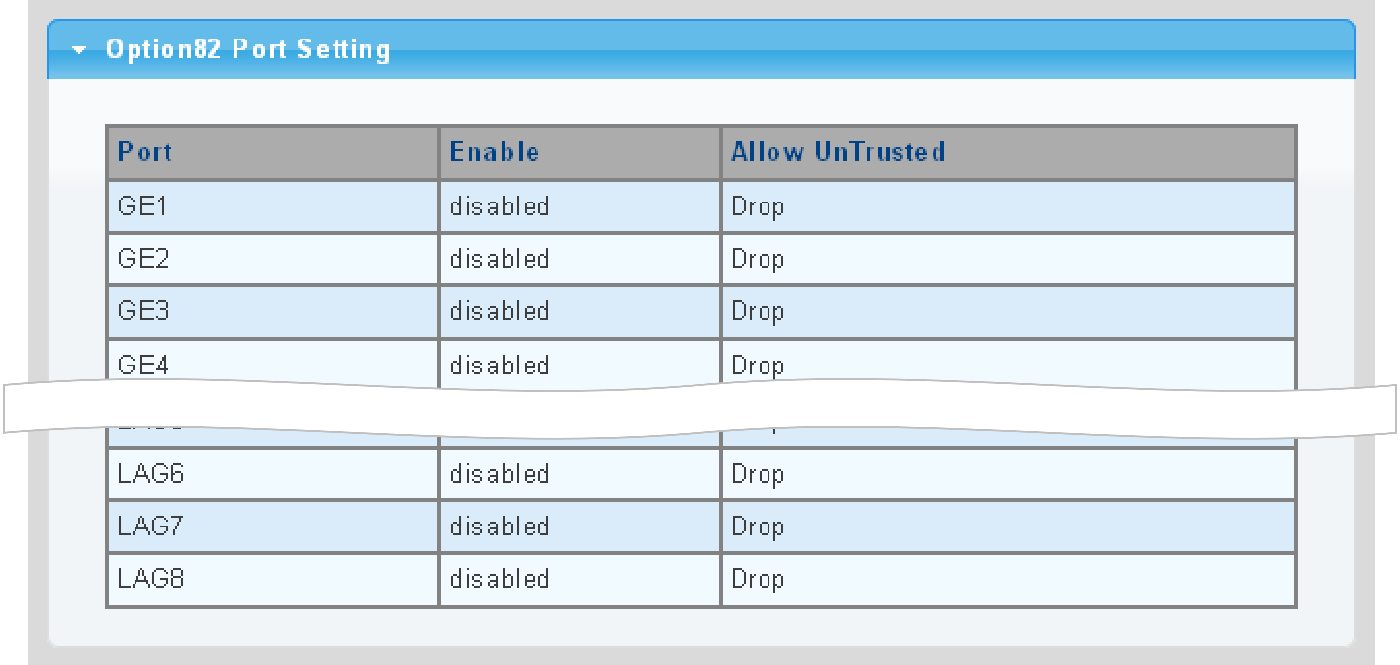
Figure 4-13-47 Option82 Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Enable**	Enable or disable option82 function on port
• **Allow Untrusted**	Select modes from this drop-down list. The following modes are available: ■ **Drop** ■ **Keep** ■ **Replace**

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Option82 Port Setting

Port	Enable	Allow UnTrusted
GE1	disabled	Drop
GE2	disabled	Drop
GE3	disabled	Drop
GE4	disabled	Drop
LAG6	disabled	Drop
LAG7	disabled	Drop
LAG8	disabled	Drop

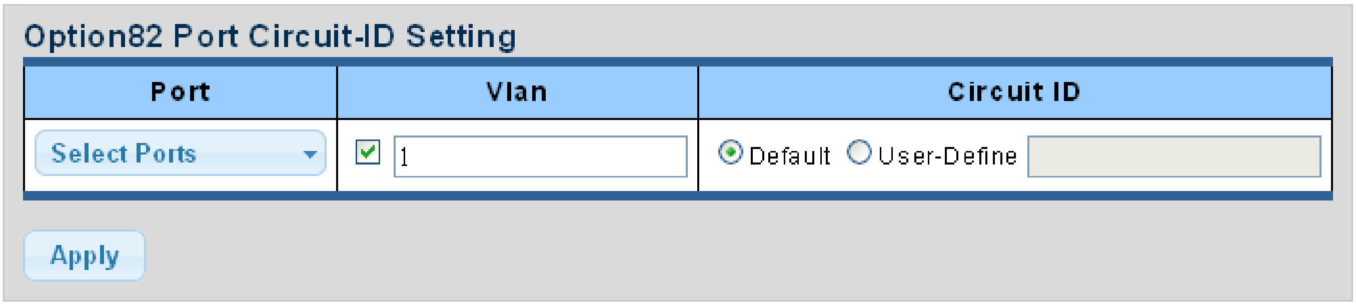
Figure 4-13-48 Option82 Global Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Enable**	Display the current status
• **Allow Untrusted**	Display the current untrusted mode

4.13.4.9 Option82 Circuit-ID Setting

Set creation method for option82, users can define the parameters of circuit-id suboption by themselves. Option82 Circuit-ID Setting screens in Figure 4-13-49 & Figure 4-13-50 appear.


Option82 Port Circuit-ID Setting
Port
Vlan
Circuit ID
Select Ports
Apply

Vlan: ☑ 1

Circuit ID: ● Default ○ User-Define

Figure 4-13-49 Option82 Port Circuit-ID Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **VLAN**	Indicates the ID of this particular VLAN
• **Circuit ID**	Set the option1 (Circuit ID) content of option 82 added by DHCP request packets

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

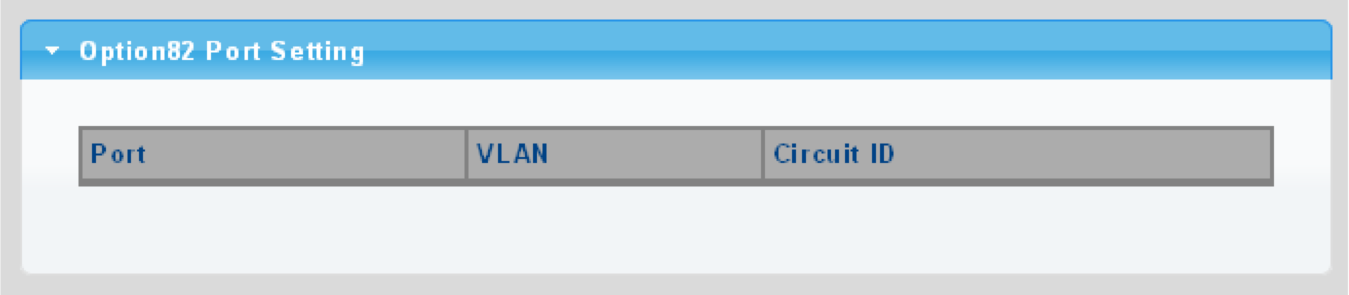

Option82 Port Setting
Port
VLAN
Circuit ID

Figure 4-13-50 Option82 Port Circuit-ID Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Display the current port
• **VLAN**	Display the current VLAN
• **Circuit ID**	Display the current circuit ID

4.13.5 Dynamic ARP Inspection

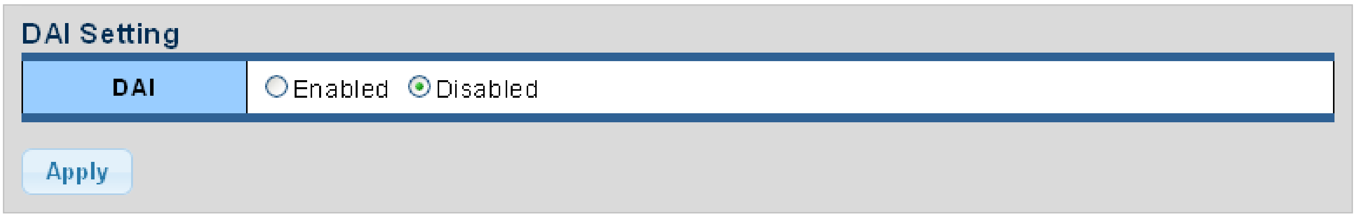
Dynamic ARP Inspection (DAI) is a secure feature. Several types of attacks can be launched against a host or devices connected to Layer 2 networks by "poisoning" the ARP caches. This feature is used to block such attacks. Only valid ARP requests and responses can go through DUT. This page provides ARP Inspection related configuration.

Note

A Dynamic ARP prevents the untrusted ARP packets based on the DHCP Snooping Database.

4.13.5.1 Global Setting

DAI Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-13-51 & Figure 4-13-52 appear.



DAI Setting

DAI	○ Enabled ● Disabled

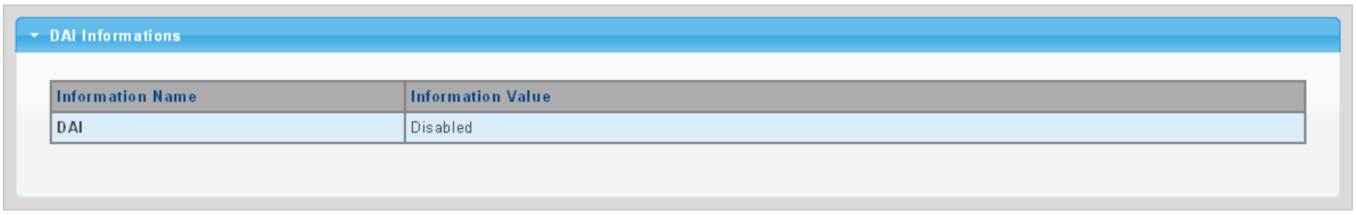
Figure 4-13-51 DAI Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **DAI**	Enable the Global Dynamic ARP Inspection or disable the Global ARP Inspection

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



DAI Informations

Information Name	Information Value
DAI	Disabled

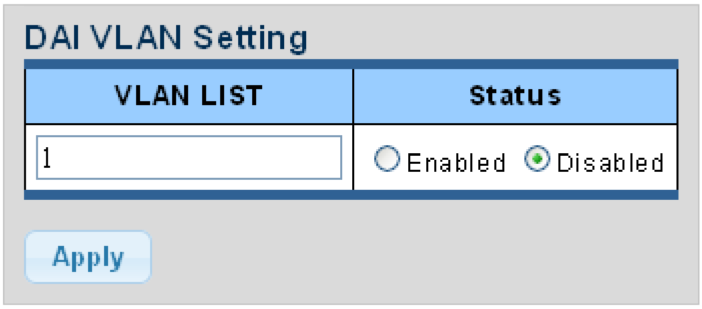
Figure 4-13-52 DAI Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **DAI**	Display the current DAI status

4.13.5.2 VLAN Setting

DAI VLAN Setting screens in Figure 4-13-53 & Figure 4-13-54 appear.



DAI VLAN Setting

VLAN LIST	Status
1	○ Enabled ● Disabled

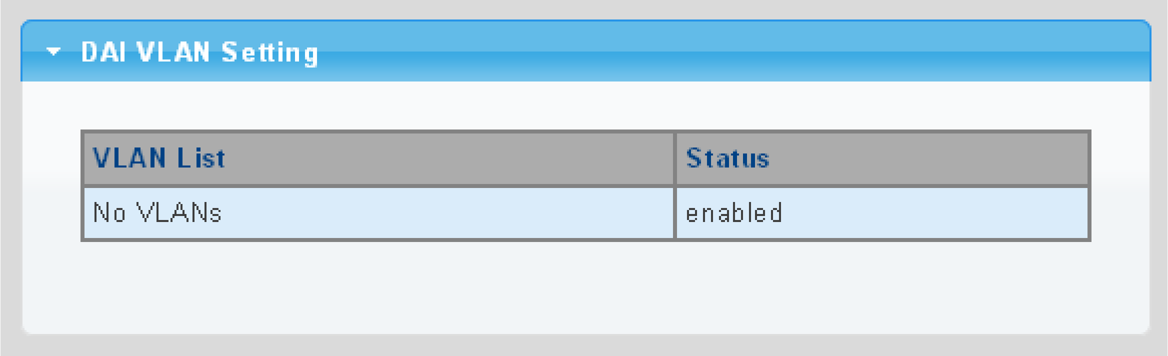
Figure 4-13-53 DAI VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN ID**	Indicates the ID of this particular VLAN
Status	Enables Dynamic ARP Inspection on the specified VLAN Options: ■ **Enable** ■ **Disable**

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



DAI VLAN Setting

VLAN List	Status
No VLANs	enabled

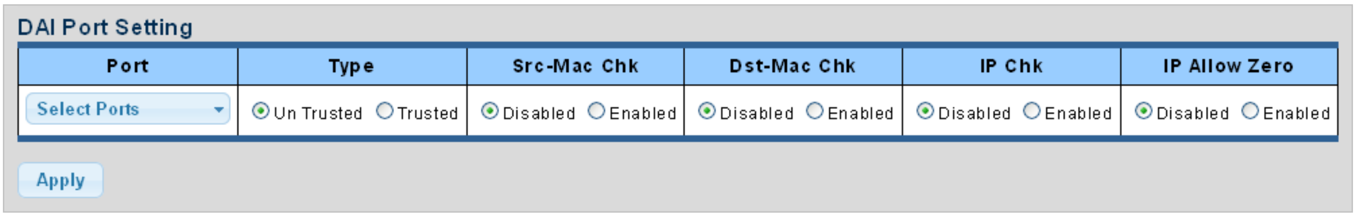
Figure 4-13-54 DAI VLAN Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **VLAN List**	Display the current VLAN list
• **Status**	Display the current status

4.13.5.3 Port Setting

Configures switch ports as DAI trusted or untrusted and check mode. DAI Port Setting screens in Figure 4-13-55 & Figure 4-13-56 appear.


DAI Port Setting

Port	Type	Src-Mac Chk	Dst-Mac Chk	IP Chk	IP Allow Zero
Select Ports	● Un Trusted ○ Trusted	● Disabled ○ Enabled	● Disabled ○ Enabled	● Disabled ○ Enabled	● Disabled ○ Enabled

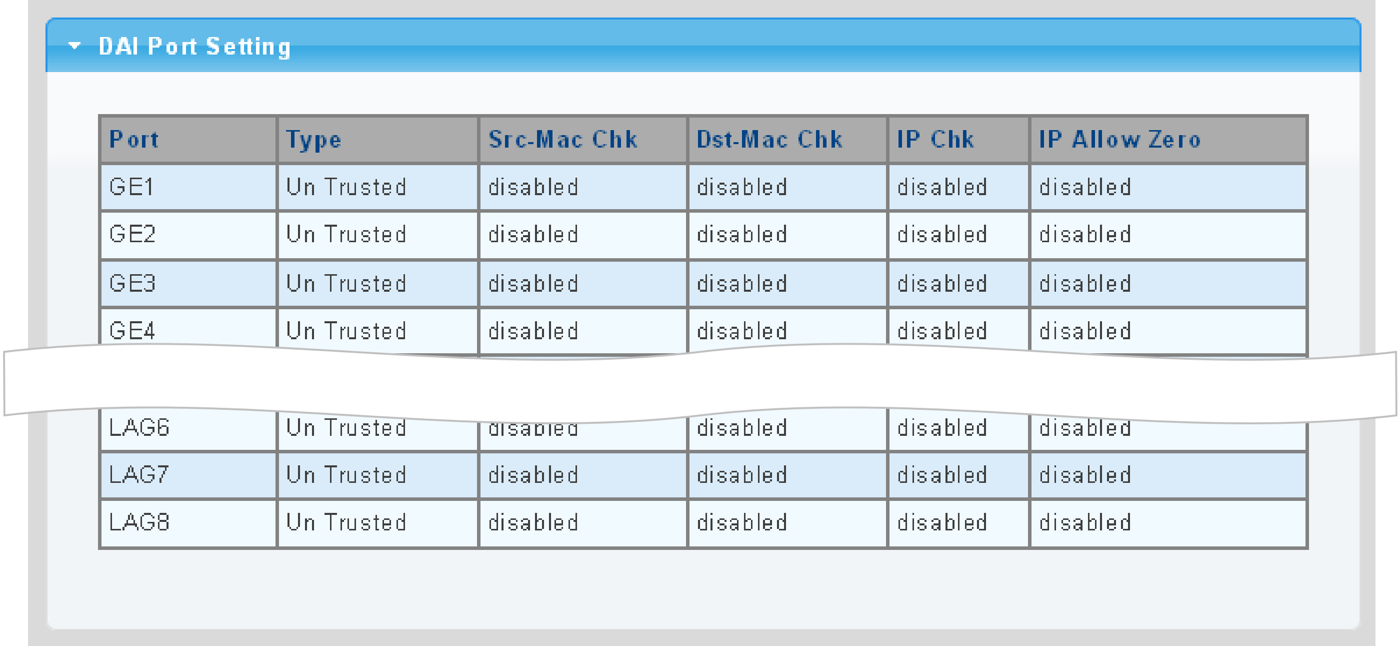
Figure 4-13-55 DAI Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Type**	Specify ARP Inspection is enabled on which ports. Only when both Global Mode and Port Mode on a given port are enabled, ARP Inspection is enabled on this given port. Default: All interfaces are untrusted.
• **Src-Mac Chk**	Enable or disable to checks the source MAC address in the Ethernet header against the sender MAC address in the ARP body. This check is performed on both ARP requests and responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.
• **Dst-Mac Chk**	Enable or disable to checks the destination MAC address in the Ethernet header against the target MAC address in ARP body. This check is performed for ARP responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.
• **IP Chk**	Enable or disable to checks the source and destination IP addresses of ARP packets. The all-zero, all-one or multicast IP addresses are considered invalid and the corresponding packets are discarded.
• **IP Allow Zero**	Enable or disable to checks all-zero IP addresses.

Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.



DAI Port Setting

Port	Type	Src-Mac Chk	Dst-Mac Chk	IP Chk	IP Allow Zero
GE1	Un Trusted	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled
GE2	Un Trusted	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled
GE3	Un Trusted	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled
GE4	Un Trusted	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled
LAG6	Un Trusted	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled
LAG7	Un Trusted	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled
LAG8	Un Trusted	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled

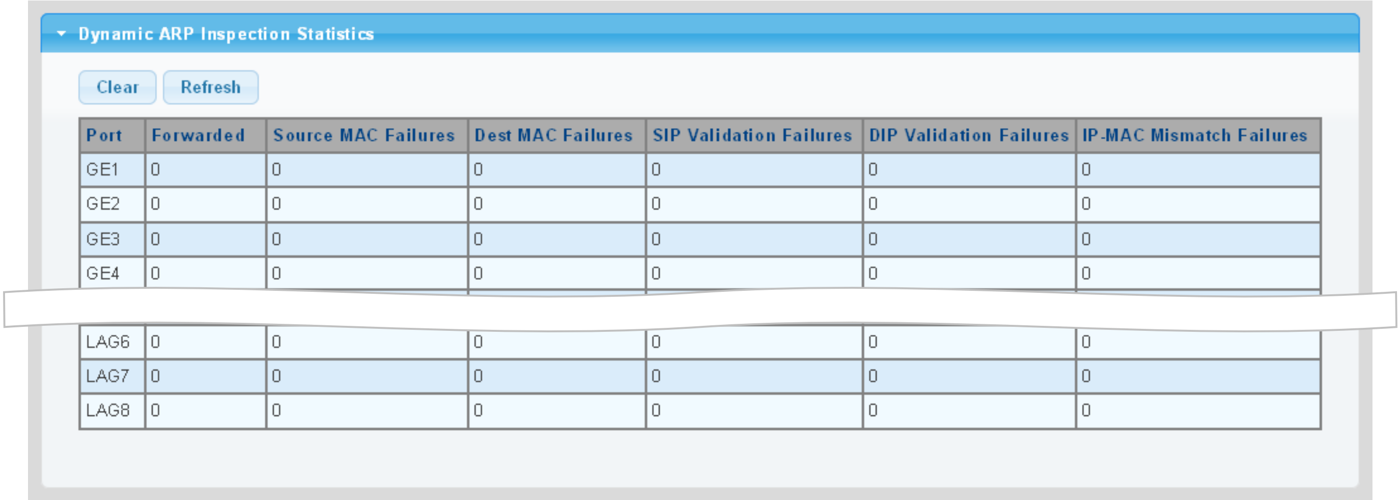
Figure 4-13-56 DAI Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Type**	Display the current port type
• **Src-Mac Chk**	Display the current Src-Mac Chk status
• **Dst-Mac Chk**	Display the current Dst-Mac Chk status
• **IP Chk**	Display the current IP Chk status
• **IP Allow Zero**	Display the current IP allow zero status

4.13.5.4 Statistics

Configures switch ports as DAI trusted or untrusted and check mode. DAI Port Setting screen in Figure 4-13-57 appears.



Port	Forwarded	Source MAC Failures	Dest MAC Failures	SIP Validation Failures	DIP Validation Failures	IP-MAC Mismatch Failures
GE1	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE2	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE3	0	0	0	0	0	0
GE4	0	0	0	0	0	0
LAG6	0	0	0	0	0	0
LAG7	0	0	0	0	0	0
LAG8	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 4-13-57 DAI Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Forwarded**	Display the current forwarded
Source MAC Failures	Display the current source MAC failures
• **Dest MAC Failures**	Display the current source MAC failures
• **SIP Validation Failures**	Display the current SIP Validation failures
• **DIP Validation Failures**	Display the current DIP Validation failures
• **IP-MAC Mismatch Failures**	Display the current IP-MAC mismatch failures

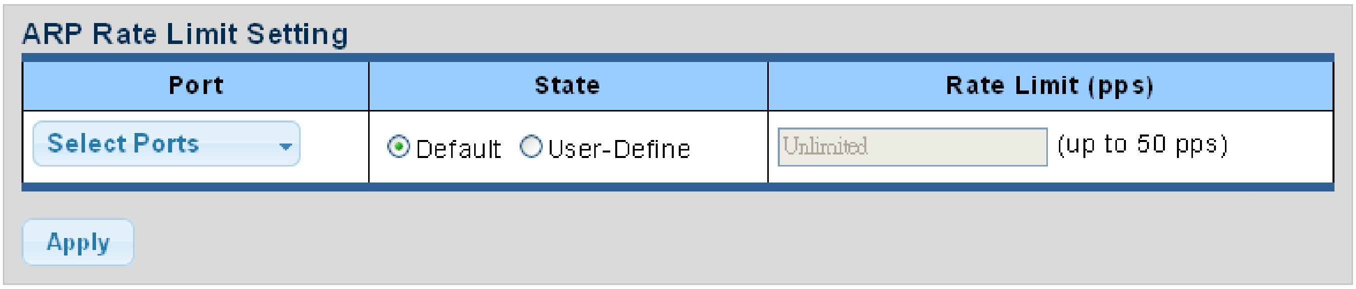
Buttons

Clear: Click to clear the statistics.

Refresh: Click to refresh the statistics.

4.13.5.5 ARP Rate Limit

The ARP Rate Limit Setting and Config screens in Figure 4-13-58 & Figure 4-13-59 appear.



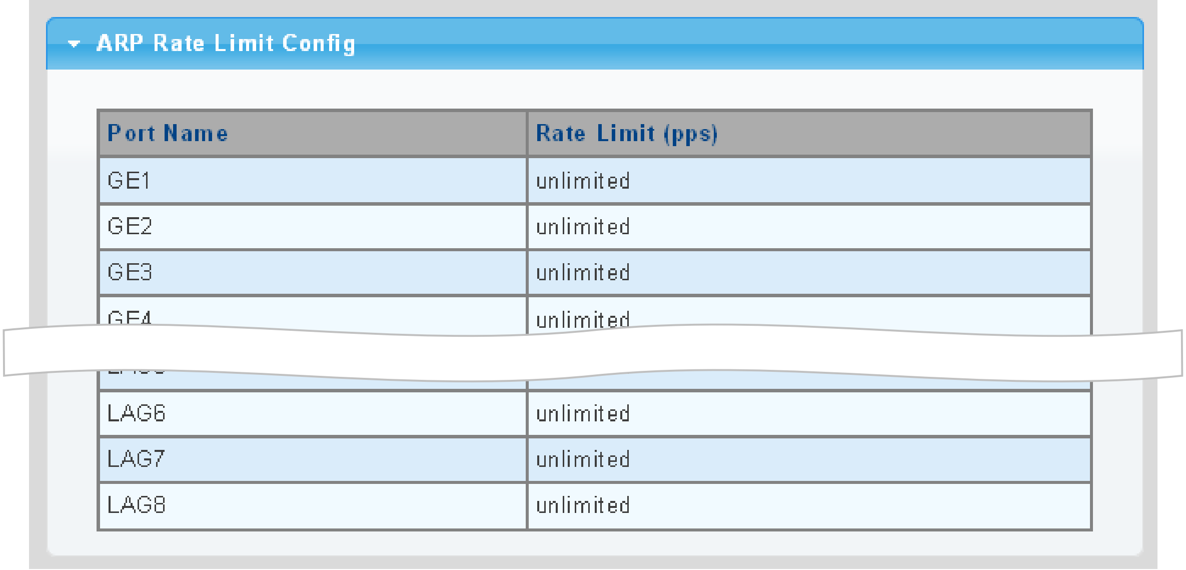
ARP Rate Limit Setting

Port	State	Rate Limit (pps)
Select Ports	● Default ○ User-Define	Unlimited (up to 50 pps)

Figure 4-13-58 ARP Rate Limit Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
- **State**	Set default or user-define
- **Rate Limit (pps)**	Configure the rate limit for the port policer. The default value is "unlimited".



ARP Rate Limit Config

Port Name	Rate Limit (pps)
GE1	unlimited
GE2	unlimited
GE3	unlimited
GE4	unlimited
LAG6	unlimited
LAG7	unlimited
LAG8	unlimited

Figure 4-13-59 ARP Rate Limit Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
- **Rate Limit (pps)**	Display the current rate limit

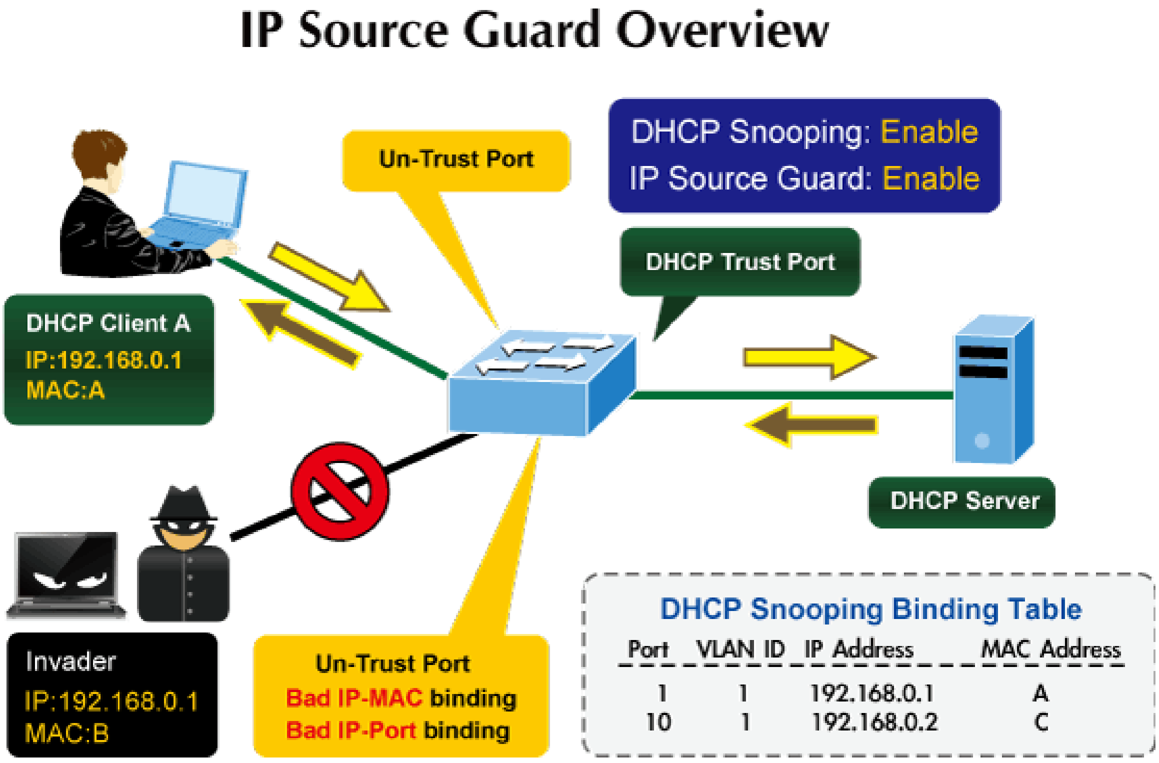
4.13.6 IP Source Guard

IP Source Guard is a secure feature used to restrict IP traffic on DHCP snooping untrusted ports by filtering traffic based on the DHCP Snooping Table or manually configured IP Source Bindings. It helps prevent IP spoofing attacks when a host tries to spoof and use the IP address of another host.

After receiving a packet, the port looks up the key attributes (including IP address, MAC address and VLAN tag) of the packet in the binding entries of the IP source guard. If there is a matching entry, the port will forward the packet. Otherwise, the port will abandon the packet.

IP source guard filters packets based on the following types of binding entries:

- IP-port binding entry
- MAC-port binding entry
- IP-MAC-port binding entry

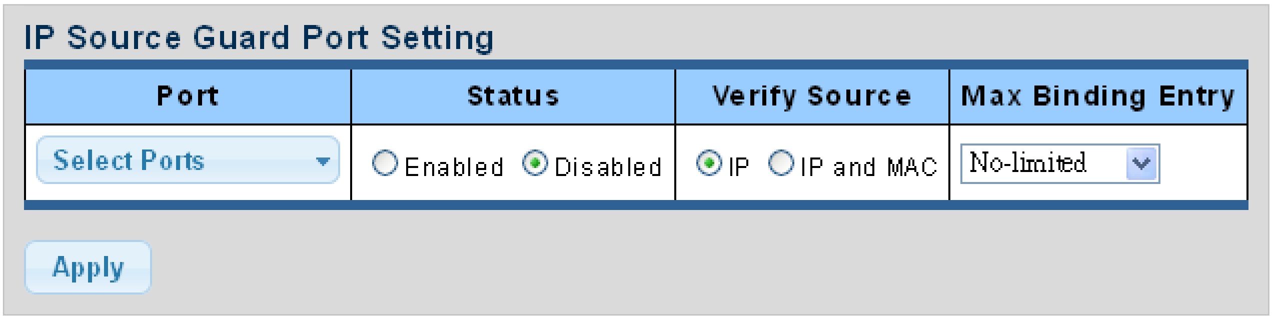

IP Source Guard Overview
Un-Trust Port
DHCP Snooping: Enable
IP Source Guard: Enable
DHCP Trust Port
DHCP Client A
IP:192.168.0.1
MAC:A
DHCP Server
Invader
IP:192.168.0.1
MAC:B
Un-Trust Port
Bad IP-MAC binding
Bad IP-Port binding
DHCP Snooping Binding Table

Port	VLAN ID	IP Address	MAC Address
1	1	192.168.0.1	A
10	1	192.168.0.2	C

4.13.6.1 Port Settings

IP Source Guard is a secure feature used to restrict IP traffic on **DHCP snooping untrusted ports** by filtering traffic based on the DHCP Snooping Table or manually configured IP Source Bindings. It helps prevent IP spoofing attacks when a host tries to spoof and use the IP address of another host.

The IP Source Guard Port Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-13-60 & Figure 4-13-61 appear.



IP Source Guard Port Setting

Port	Status	Verify Source	Max Binding Entry
Select Ports	○ Enabled ● Disabled	● IP ○ IP and MAC	No-limited

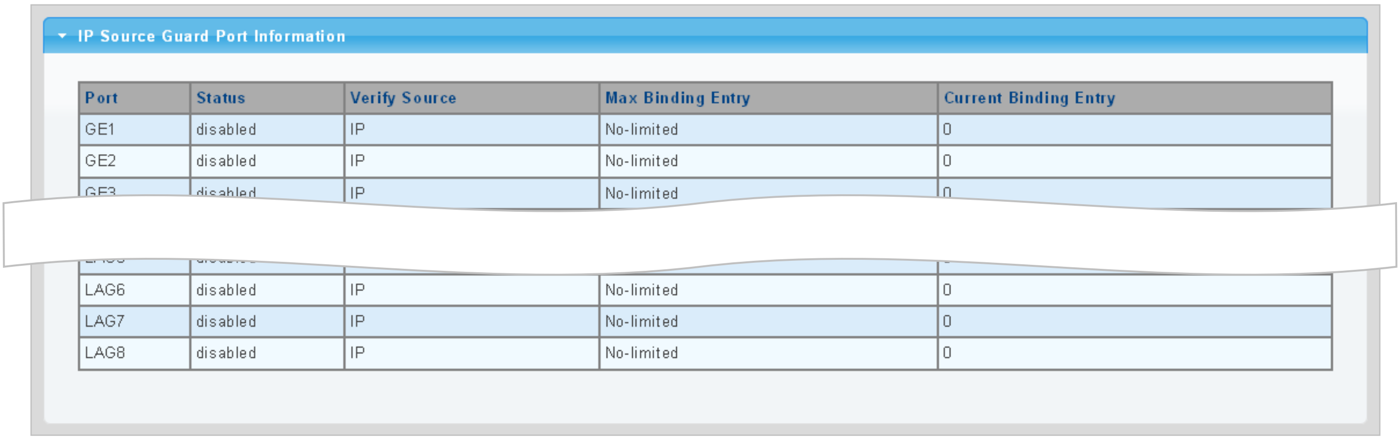
Figure 4-13-60 IP Source Guard Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **Status**	Enable or disable the IP source guard
• **Verify Source**	Configures the switch to filter inbound traffic based IP address, or IP address and MAC address. ■ **None** Disables IP source guard filtering on the Managed Switch. ■ **IP** Enables traffic filtering based on IP addresses stored in the binding table. ■ **IP and MAC** Enables traffic filtering based on IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses stored in the binding table.
• **Max Binding Entry**	The maximum number of IP source guard that can be secured on this port

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



IP Source Guard Port Information

Port	Status	Verify Source	Max Binding Entry	Current Binding Entry
GE1	disabled	IP	No-limited	0
GE2	disabled	IP	No-limited	0
GE3	disabled	IP	No-limited	0
LAG6	disabled	IP	No-limited	0
LAG7	disabled	IP	No-limited	0
LAG8	disabled	IP	No-limited	0

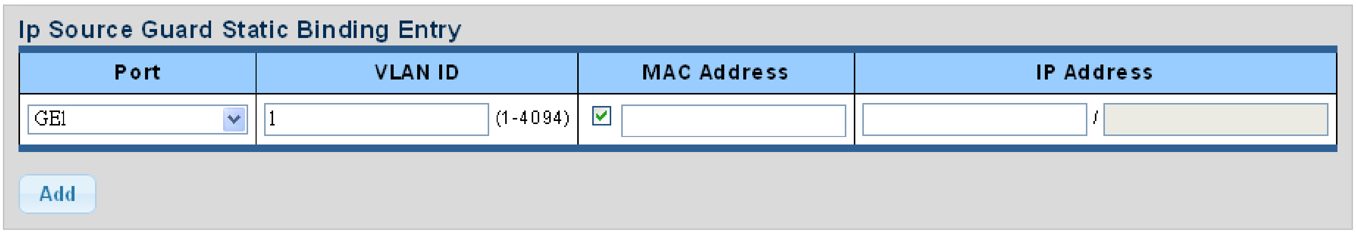
Figure 4-13-61 IP Source Guard Port Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	**Description**
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **Status**	Display the current status
• **Verify Source**	Display the current verify source
• **Max Binding Entry**	Display the current max binding entry
• **Current Binding Entry**	Display the current binding entry

4.13.6.2 Binding Table

The IP Source Guard Static Binding Entry and Table Status screens in Figure 4-13-62 & Figure 4-13-63 appear.



Ip Source Guard Static Binding Entry

Port	VLAN ID	MAC Address	IP Address
GE1	1 (1-4094)	☑	/

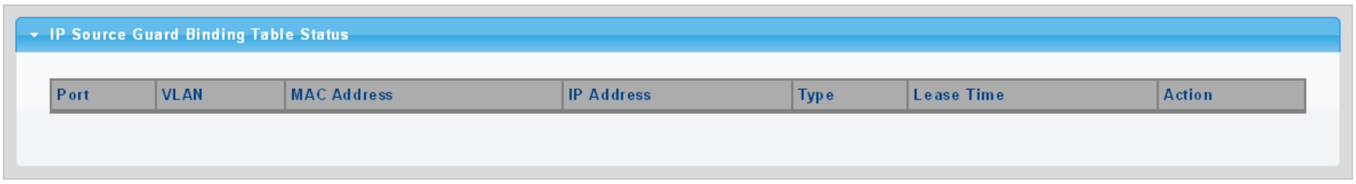
Figure 4-13-62 IP Source Guard Static Binding Entry Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **VLAN ID**	Indicates the ID of this particular VLAN
• **MAC Address**	Sourcing MAC address is allowed
• **IP Address**	Sourcing IP address is allowed

Buttons

Add : Click to add authentication list



IP Source Guard Binding Table Status

Port	VLAN	MAC Address	IP Address	Type	Lease Time	Action

Figure 4-13-63 IP Source Guard Binding Table Status Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Display the current port
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN
• **MAC Address**	Display the current MAC address
• **IP Address**	Display the current IP Address
• **Type**	Display the current entry type
• **Lease Time**	Display the current lease time
• **Action**	Click Delete to delete IP source guard binding table status entry

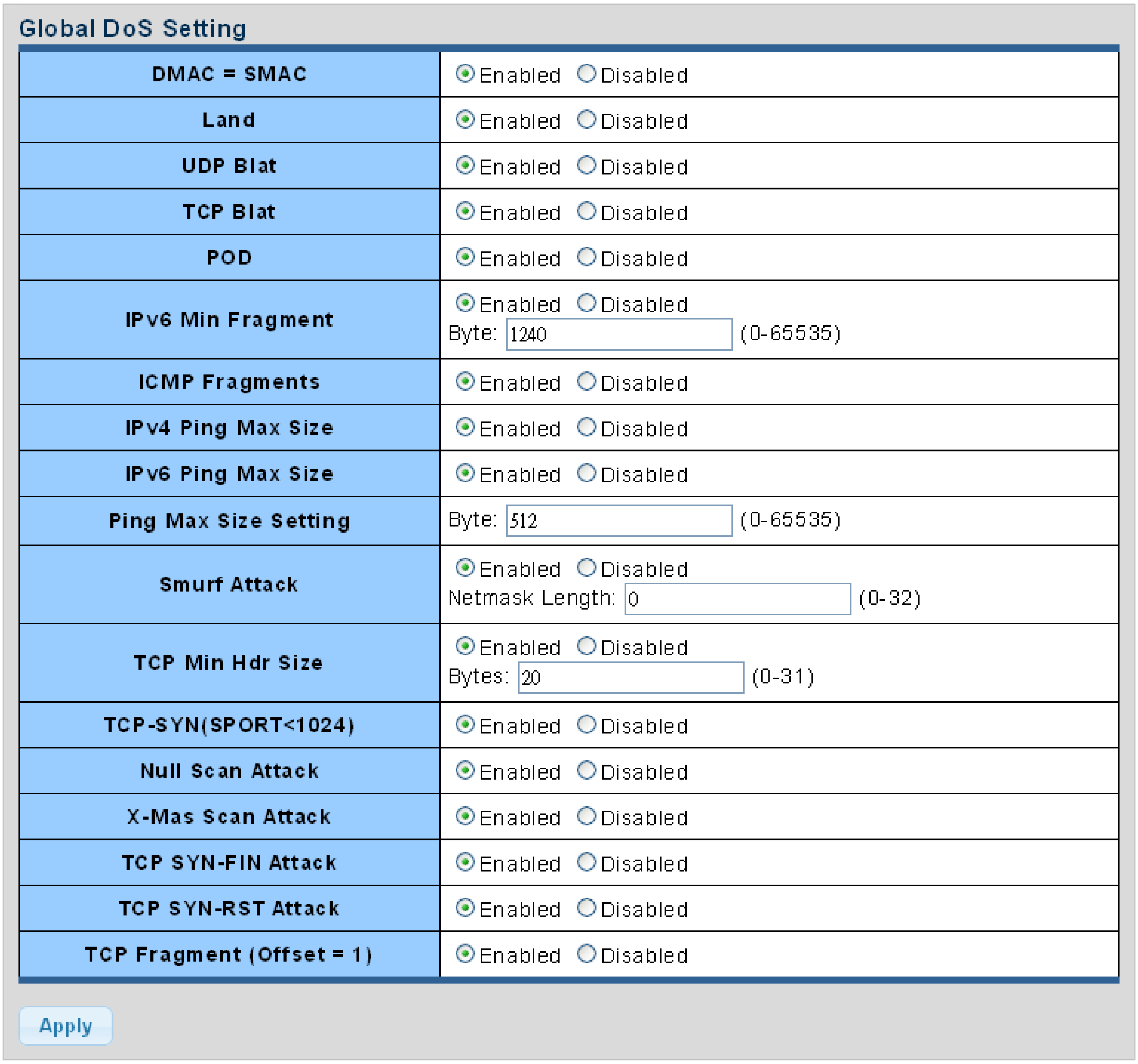
4.13.7 DoS

The DoS is short for **Denial of Service**, which is a simple but effective destructive attack on the internet. The server under DoS attack will drop normal user data packet due to non-stop processing the attacker's data packet, leading to the denial of the service and worse can lead to leak of sensitive data of the server.

Security feature refers to applications such as protocol check which is for protecting the server from attacks such as DoS. The protocol check allows the user to drop matched packets based on specified conditions. The security features provide several simple and effective protections against Dos attacks while acting no influence on the linear forwarding performance of the switch.

4.13.7.1 DoS Global Setting

The Global DoS Setting and Information screens in Figure 4-13-64 & Figure 4-13-65 appear.



Global DoS Setting

DMAC = SMAC	● Enabled ○ Disabled
Land	● Enabled ○ Disabled
UDP Blat	● Enabled ○ Disabled
TCP Blat	● Enabled ○ Disabled
POD	● Enabled ○ Disabled
IPv6 Min Fragment	● Enabled ○ Disabled Byte: 1240 (0-65535)
ICMP Fragments	● Enabled ○ Disabled
IPv4 Ping Max Size	● Enabled ○ Disabled
IPv6 Ping Max Size	● Enabled ○ Disabled
Ping Max Size Setting	Byte: 512 (0-65535)
Smurf Attack	● Enabled ○ Disabled Netmask Length: 0 (0-32)
TCP Min Hdr Size	● Enabled ○ Disabled Bytes: 20 (0-31)
TCP-SYN(SPORT<1024)	● Enabled ○ Disabled
Null Scan Attack	● Enabled ○ Disabled
X-Mas Scan Attack	● Enabled ○ Disabled
TCP SYN-FIN Attack	● Enabled ○ Disabled
TCP SYN-RST Attack	● Enabled ○ Disabled
TCP Fragment (Offset = 1)	● Enabled ○ Disabled

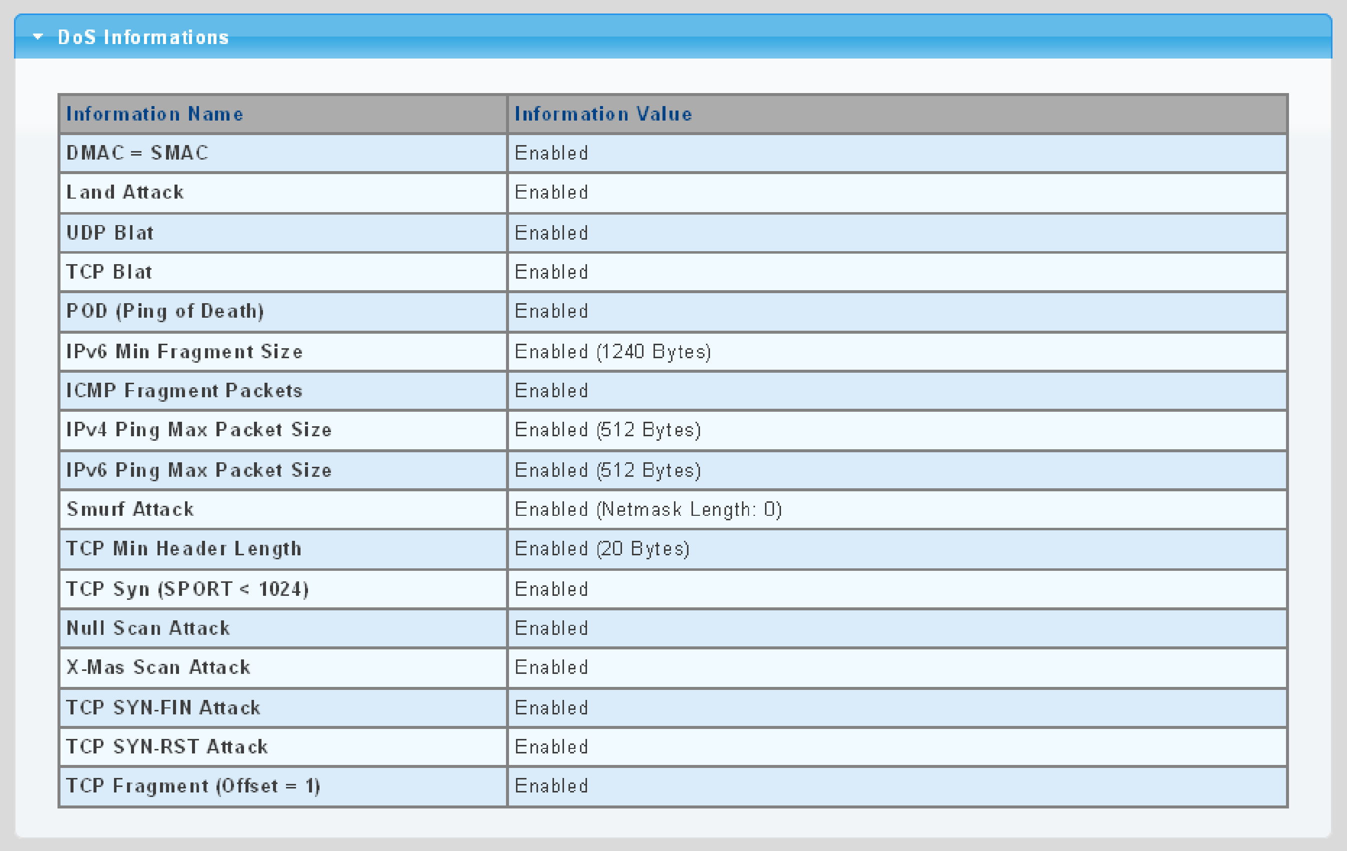
Figure 4-13-64 Global DoS Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **DMAC = SMAC**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by DMAC = SMAC
• **Land**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by land
• **UDP Blat**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by UDP blat
• **TCP Blat**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by TCP blat
• **POD**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by POD
• **IPv6 Min Fragment**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by IPv6 min fragment
• **ICMP Fragments**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by ICMP fragment
• **IPv4 Ping Max Size**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by IPv4 ping max size
• **IPv6 Ping Max Size**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by IPv6 ping max size
• **Ping Max Size Setting**	Set the max size for ping
• **Smurf Attack**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by smurf attack
• **TCP Min Hdr Size**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by TCP min hdr size
• **TCP-SYN (SPORT < 1024)**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by TCP-syn (sport < 1024)
• **Null Scan Attack**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by null scan attack
• **X-mas Scan Attack**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by x-mas scan attack
• **TCP SYN-FIN Attack**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by TCP syn-fin attack
• **TCP SYN-RST Attack**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by TCP syn-rst attack
• **TCP Fragment (Offset = 1)**	Enable or disable DoS check mode by TCP fragment (offset = 1)

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



Information Name	Information Value
DMAC = SMAC	Enabled
Land Attack	Enabled
UDP Blat	Enabled
TCP Blat	Enabled
POD (Ping of Death)	Enabled
IPv6 Min Fragment Size	Enabled (1240 Bytes)
ICMP Fragment Packets	Enabled
IPv4 Ping Max Packet Size	Enabled (512 Bytes)
IPv6 Ping Max Packet Size	Enabled (512 Bytes)
Smurf Attack	Enabled (Netmask Length: 0)
TCP Min Header Length	Enabled (20 Bytes)
TCP Syn (SPORT < 1024)	Enabled
Null Scan Attack	Enabled
X-Mas Scan Attack	Enabled
TCP SYN-FIN Attack	Enabled
TCP SYN-RST Attack	Enabled
TCP Fragment (Offset = 1)	Enabled

Figure 4-13-65 DoS Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **DMAC = SMAC**	Display the current DMAC = SMAC status
• **Land Attach**	Display the current land attach status
• **UDP Blat**	Display the current UDP blat status
• **TCP Blat**	Display the current TCP blat status
• **POD**	Display the current POD status
• **IPv6 Min Fragment**	Display the current IPv6 min fragment status
• **ICMP Fragments**	Display the current ICMP fragment status
• **IPv4 Ping Max Size**	Display the current IPv4 ping max size status
• **IPv6 Ping Max Size**	Display the current IPv6 ping max size status
• **Smurf Attack**	Display the current smurf attack status
• **TCP Min Header Length**	Display the current TCP min header length
• **TCP-SYN (SPORT < 1024)**	Display the current TCP syn status
• **Null Scan Attack**	Display the current null scan attack status
• **X-mas Scan Attack**	Display the current x-mas scan attack status
• **TCP SYN-FIN Attack**	Display the current TCP syn-fin attack status
• **TCP SYN-RST Attack**	Display the current TCP syn-rst attack status
• **TCP Fragment (Offset = 1)**	Display the TCP fragment (offset = 1) status

4.13.7.2 DoS Port Setting

The DoS Port Setting and Status screens in Figure 4-13-66 & Figure 4-13-67 appear.

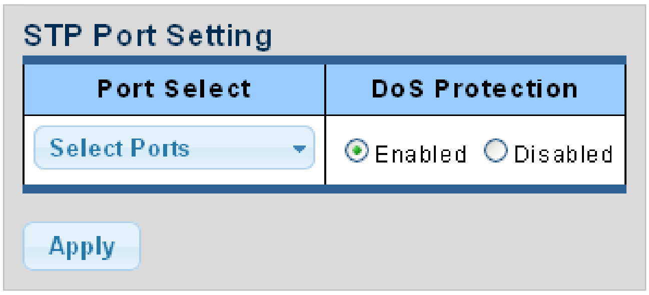


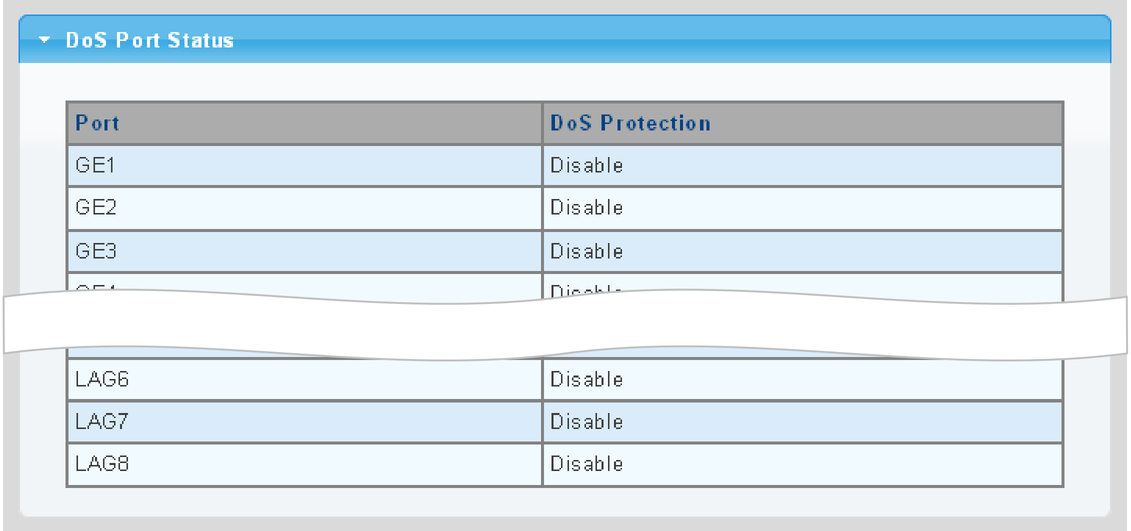
Figure 4-13-66 Port Security Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port Select**	Select port from this drop-down list.
• **DoS Protection**	Enable or disable per port DoS protection.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.


DoS Port Status

Port	DoS Protection
GE1	Disable
GE2	Disable
GE3	Disable
LAG6	Disable
LAG7	Disable
LAG8	Disable

Figure 4-13-67 Port Security Setting Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **DoS Protection**	Display the current DoS protection

4.13.8 Access Control List

ACL is an acronym for **Access Control List**. It is the list table of ACEs, containing access control entries that specify individual users or groups permitted or denied to specific traffic objects, such as a process or a program. Each accessible traffic object contains an identifier to its ACL. The privileges determine whether there are specific traffic object access rights.

ACL implementations can be quite complex, for example, when the ACEs are prioritized for the various situation. In networking, the ACL refers to a list of service ports or network services that are available on a host or server, each with a list of hosts or servers permitted or denied to use the service. ACL can generally be configured to control inbound traffic, and in this context, they are similar to firewalls.

ACE is an acronym for **Access Control Entry**. It describes access permission associated with a particular ACE ID.
There are three ACE frame types (Ethernet Type, ARP, and IPv4) and two ACE actions (permit and deny). The ACE also contains many detailed, different parameter options that are available for individual application.
The ACL page contains links to the following main topics:

■ **MAC-based ACL**	Configuration MAC-based ACL setting
■ **MAC-based ACE**	Add / Edit / Delete the MAC-based ACE (Access Control Entry) setting
■ **IPv4-based ACL**	Configuration IPv4-based ACL setting
■ **IPv4-based ACE**	Add / Edit / Delete the IPv4-based ACE (Access Control Entry) setting
■ **IPv6-based ACL**	Configuration IPv6-based ACL setting
■ **IPv6-based ACE**	Add / Edit / Delete the IPv6-based ACE (Access Control Entry) setting
■ **ACL Binding**	Configure the ACL parameters (ACE) of each switch port.

4.13.8.1 MAC-based ACL

This page shows the ACL status by different ACL users. Each row describes the ACE that is defined. It is a conflict if a specific ACE is not applied to the hardware due to hardware limitations. MAC-based ACL screens in Figure 4-13-68 & Figure 4-13-69 appear.

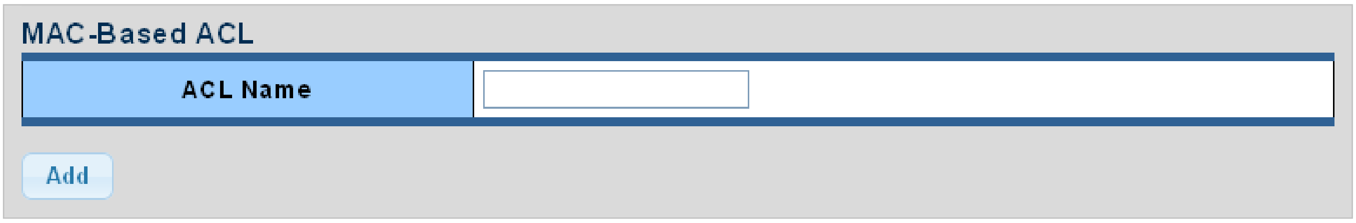


Figure 4-13-68 MAC-based ACL Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Create a named MAC-based ACL list

■ **ACL Table**

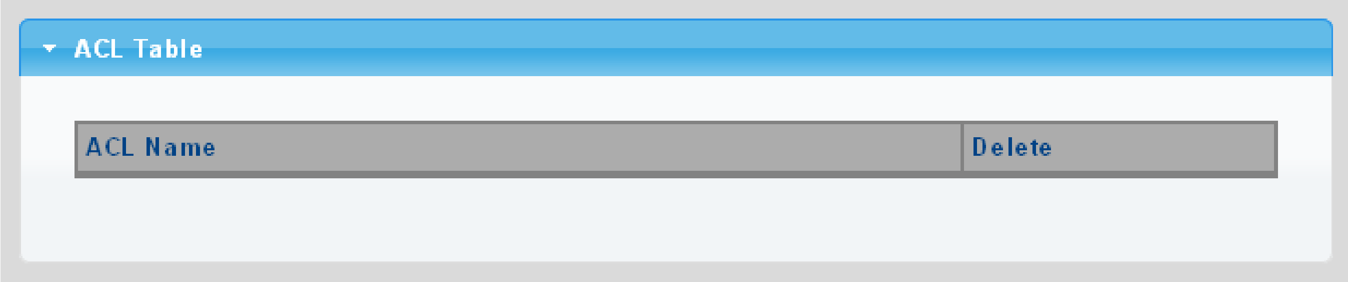


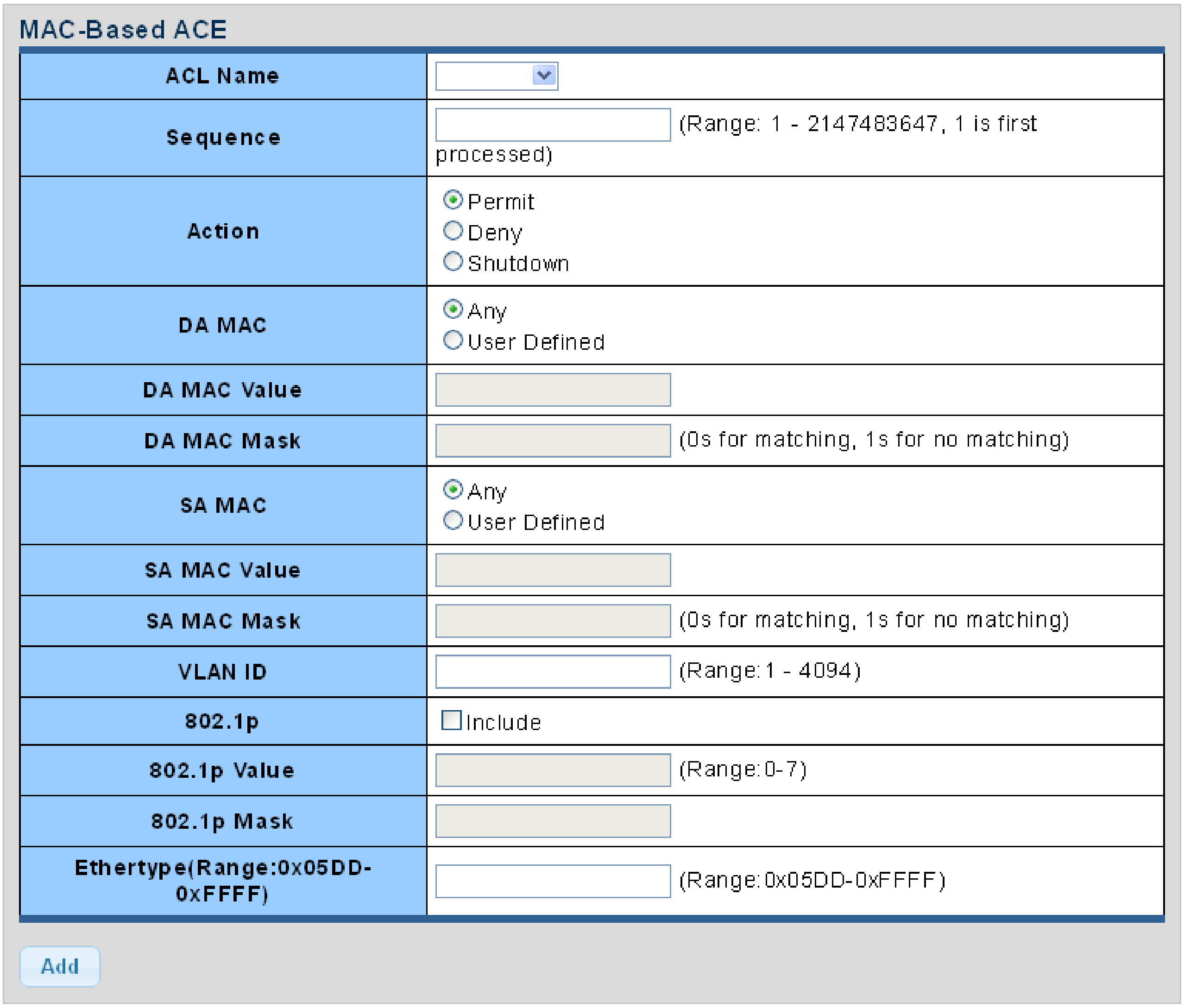
Figure 4-13-69 ACL Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Delete**	Click Delete to delete ACL name entry

4.13.8.2 MAC-based ACE

An ACE consists of several parameters. Different parameter options are displayed depending on the frame type that you selected. The MAC-based ACE screen in Figure 4-13-70 & Figure 4-13-71 appears.



MAC-Based ACE

ACL Name	
Sequence	(Range: 1 - 2147483647, 1 is first processed)
Action	● Permit ○ Deny ○ Shutdown
DA MAC	● Any ○ User Defined
DA MAC Value	
DA MAC Mask	(0s for matching, 1s for no matching)
SA MAC	● Any ○ User Defined
SA MAC Value	
SA MAC Mask	(0s for matching, 1s for no matching)
VLAN ID	(Range: 1 - 4094)
802.1p	☐ Include
802.1p Value	(Range: 0-7)
802.1p Mask	
Ethertype(Range:0x05DD-0xFFFF)	(Range: 0x05DD-0xFFFF)

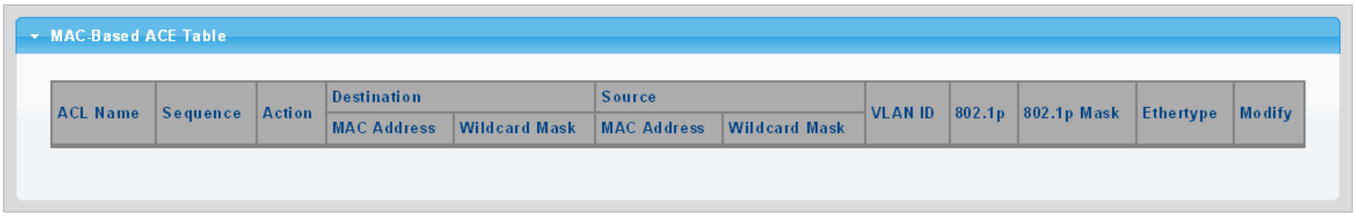
Figure 4-13-70 MAC-based ACE Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Select ACL name from this drop-down list
• **Sequence**	Set the ACL sequence
• **Action**	Indicates the forwarding action of the ACE. ■ **Permit**: Frames matching the ACE may be forwarded and learned. ■ **Deny**: Frames matching the ACE are dropped. ■ **Shutdown**: Port shutdown is disabled for the ACE.
• **DA MAC**	Specify the destination MAC filter for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No DA MAC filter is specified. ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific destination MAC address with this ACE, choose this value. A field for entering a DA MAC value appears.
• **DA MAC Value**	When "User Defined" is selected for the DA MAC filter, you can enter a specific destination MAC address. The legal format is "xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx". A frame that hits this ACE matches this DA MAC value.
• **DA MAC Mask**	Specify whether frames can hit the action according to their sender hardware address field (SHA) settings. ■ `0`: ARP frames where SHA is not equal to the DA MAC address. ■ `1`: ARP frames where SHA is equal to the DA MAC address.
• **SA MAC**	Specify the source MAC filter for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No SA MAC filter is specified. ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific source MAC address with this ACE, choose this value. A field for entering a SA MAC value appears.
• **SA MAC Value**	When "User Defined" is selected for the SA MAC filter, you can enter a specific source MAC address. The legal format is "xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx". A frame that hits this ACE matches this SA MAC value.
• **SA MAC Mask**	Specify whether frames can hit the action according to their sender hardware address field (SHA) settings. ■ `0`: ARP frames where SHA is not equal to the SA MAC address. ■ `1`: ARP frames where SHA is equal to the SA MAC address.
• **VLAN ID**	Indicates the ID of this particular VLAN
• **802.1p**	Include or exclude the 802.1p value
• **802.1p Value**	Set the 802.1p value
• **802.1p Mask**	■ `0`: where frame is not equal to the 802.1p value. ■ `1`: where frame is equal to the 802.1p value.
• **EtherType (Range:0x05DD – 0xFFFF)**	You can enter a specific EtherType value. The allowed range is **0x05DD** to **0xFFFF**. A frame that hits this ACE matches this EtherType value.

Buttons

Add: Click to add ACE list.


MAC-Based ACE Table

ACL Name	Sequence	Action	Destination		Source		VLAN ID	802.1p	802.1p Mask	Ethertype	Modify
			MAC Address	Wildcard Mask	MAC Address	Wildcard Mask					

Figure 4-13-71 MAC-based ACE Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Display the current ACL name
• **Sequence**	Display the current sequence
• **Action**	Display the current action
• **Destination MAC Address**	Display the current destination MAC address
• **Destination MAC Address Mask**	Display the current destination MAC address mask
• **Source MAC Address**	Display the current source MAC address
• **Source MAC Address Mask**	Display the current source MAC address mask
• **VLAN ID**	Display the current VLAN ID
• **802.1p**	Display the current 802.1p value
• **802.1p Mask**	Display the current 802.1p mask
• **EtherType**	Display the current Ethernet type
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit MAC-based ACL parameter Click Delete to delete MAC-based ACL entry

4.13.8.3 IPv4-based ACL

This page shows the ACL status by different ACL users. Each row describes the ACE that is defined. It is a conflict if a specific ACE is not applied to the hardware due to hardware limitations. IPv4-based ACL screens in Figure 4-13-72 & Figure 4-13-73 appear.

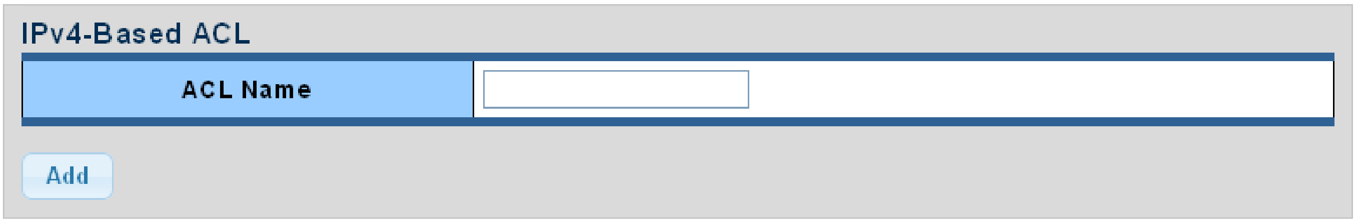


Figure 4-13-72 IPv4-based ACL Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Create a named IPv4-based ACL list

Buttons

Add: Click to add ACL name list.

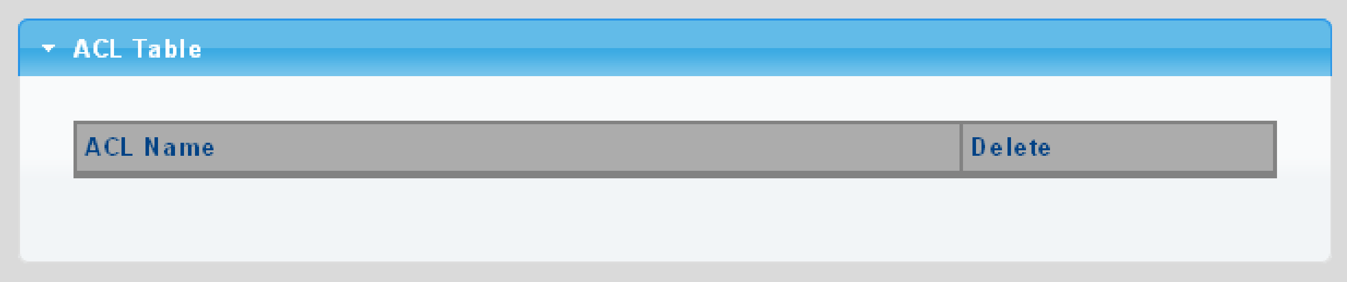


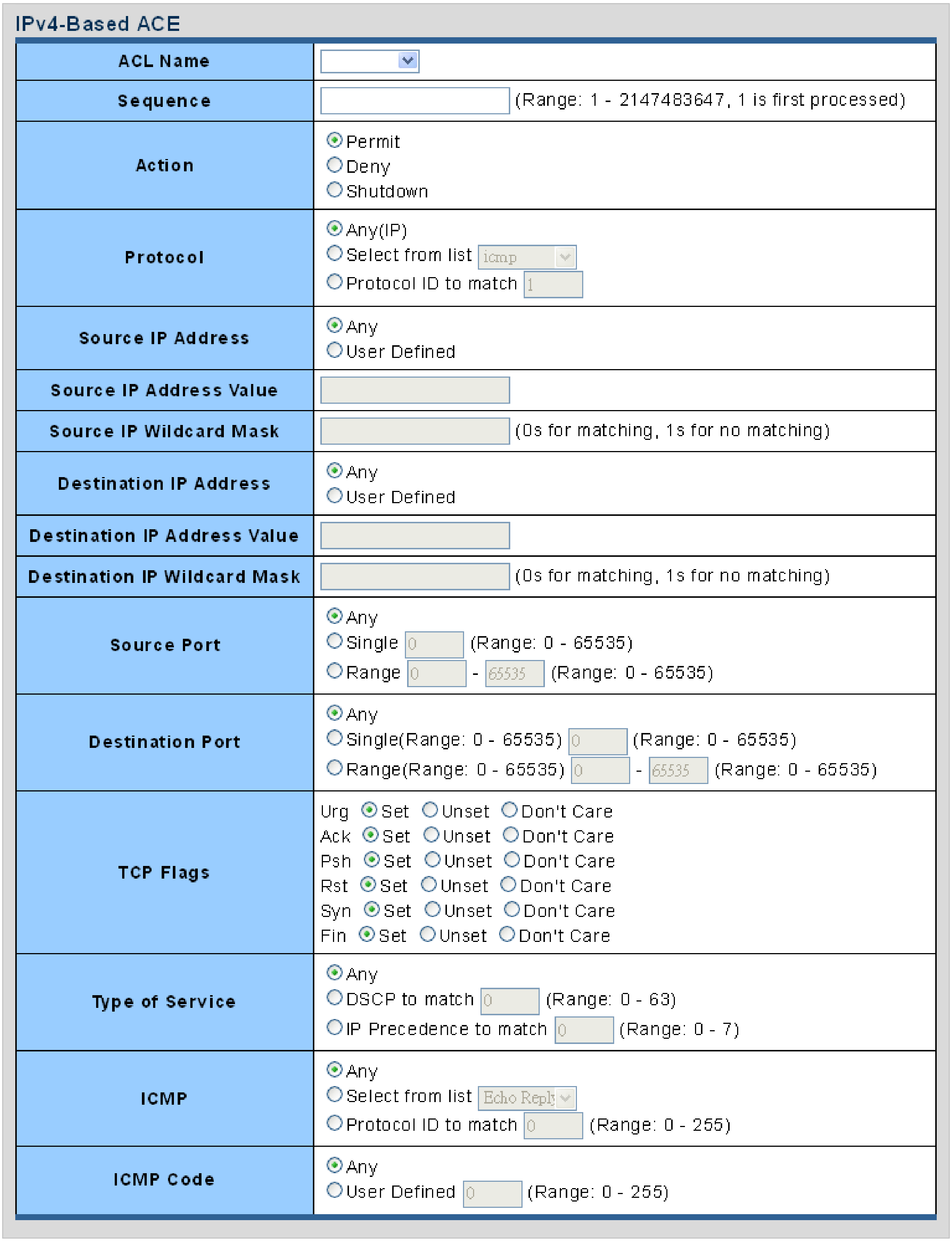
Figure 4-13-73 ACL Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Delete**	Click Delete to delete ACL name entry.

4.13.8.4 IPv4-based ACE

An ACE consists of several parameters. Different parameter options are displayed depending on the frame type that you selected. The IPv4-based ACE screens in Figure 4-13-74 & Figure 4-13-75 appear.



IPv4-Based ACE

ACL Name	
Sequence	(Range: 1 - 2147483647, 1 is first processed)
Action	● Permit ○ Deny ○ Shutdown
Protocol	● Any(IP) ○ Select from list icmp ○ Protocol ID to match 1
Source IP Address	● Any ○ User Defined
Source IP Address Value	
Source IP Wildcard Mask	(0s for matching, 1s for no matching)
Destination IP Address	● Any ○ User Defined
Destination IP Address Value	
Destination IP Wildcard Mask	(0s for matching, 1s for no matching)
Source Port	● Any ○ Single 0 (Range: 0 - 65535) ○ Range 0 - 65535 (Range: 0 - 65535)
Destination Port	● Any ○ Single(Range: 0 - 65535) 0 (Range: 0 - 65535) ○ Range(Range: 0 - 65535) 0 - 65535 (Range: 0 - 65535)
TCP Flags	Urg ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Ack ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Psh ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Rst ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Syn ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Fin ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care
Type of Service	● Any ○ DSCP to match 0 (Range: 0 - 63) ○ IP Precedence to match 0 (Range: 0 - 7)
ICMP	● Any ○ Select from list Echo Reply ○ Protocol ID to match 0 (Range: 0 - 255)
ICMP Code	● Any ○ User Defined 0 (Range: 0 - 255)

Figure 4-13-74 IP-based ACE Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Select ACL name from this drop-down list.
• **Sequence**	Set the ACL sequence.
• **Action**	Indicates the forwarding action of the ACE. ■ **Permit**: Frames matching the ACE may be forwarded and learned. ■ **Deny**: Frames matching the ACE are dropped. ■ **Shutdown**: Port shutdown is disabled for the ACE..
• **Protocol**	Specify the protocol filter for this ACE. ■ **Any(IP)**: No protocol filter is specified. ■ **Select from list**: If you want to filter a specific protocol with this ACE, choose this value and select protocol from this drop-down list. ■ **Protocol ID to match**: If you want to filter a specific protocol with this ACE, choose this value and set current protocol ID.
• **Source IP Address**	Specify the Source IP address filter for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No source IP address filter is specified. ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific source IP address with this ACE, choose this value. A field for entering a source IP address value appears.
• **Source IP Address Value**	When "User Defined" is selected for the source IP address filter, you can enter a specific source IP address. The legal format is "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". A frame that hits this ACE matches this source IP address value.
• **Source IP Wildcard Mask**	When "User Defined" is selected for the source IP filter, you can enter a specific SIP mask in dotted decimal notation.
• **Destination IP Address**	Specify the Destination IP address filter for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No destination IP address filter is specified. ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific destination IP address with this ACE, choose this value. A field for entering a source IP address value appears.
• **Destination IP Address Value**	When "User Defined" is selected for the destination IP address filter, you can enter a specific destination IP address. The legal format is "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". A frame that hits this ACE matches this destination IP address value.
• **Destination IP Wildcard Mask**	When "User Defined" is selected for the destination IP filter, you can enter a specific DIP mask in dotted decimal notation.
• **Source Port**	Specify the source port for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No specific source port is specified (source port status is "don't-care"). ■ **Single**: If you want to filter a specific source port with this ACE, you can enter a specific source port value. A field for entering a source port value

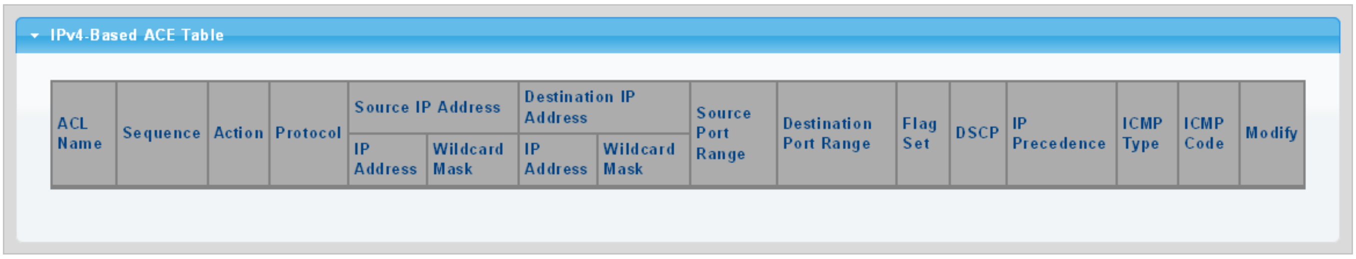
		appears. The allowed range is `0` to `65535`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this source port value. ■ **Range**: If you want to filter a specific source port range filter with this ACE, you can enter a specific source port range value. A field for entering a source port value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `65535`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this source port value.
• **Destination Port**		Specify the destination port for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No specific destination port is specified (destination port status is "don't-care"). ■ **Single**: If you want to filter a specific destination port with this ACE, you can enter a specific destination port value. A field for entering a destination port value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `65535`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this destination port value. ■ **Range**: If you want to filter a specific destination port range filter with this ACE, you can enter a specific destination port range value. A field for entering a destination port value appears.
• **TCP Flags**	UGR	Specify the TCP "Urgent Pointer field significant" (URG) value for this ACE. ■ **Set**: TCP frames where the URG field is set must be able to match this entry. ■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the URG field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don't Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
	ACK	Specify the TCP "Acknowledgment field significant" (ACK) value for this ACE. ■ **Set**: TCP frames where the ACK field is set must be able to match this entry. ■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the ACK field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don't Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
	PSH	Specify the TCP "Push Function" (PSH) value for this ACE. ■ **Set**: TCP frames where the PSH field is set must be able to match this entry. ■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the PSH field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don't Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
	RST	■ Specify the TCP "Reset the connection" (RST) value for this ACE. **Set**: TCP frames where the RST field is set must be able to match this entry.

		■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the RST field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don’t Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
	SYN	Specify the TCP "Synchronize sequence numbers" (SYN) value for this ACE. ■ **Set**: TCP frames where the SYN field is set must be able to match this entry. ■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the SYN field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don’t Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
	FIN	Specify the TCP "No more data from sender" (FIN) value for this ACE. ■ **Set**: TCP frames where the FIN field is set must be able to match this entry. ■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the FIN field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don’t Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
• **Type of Service**	Specify the type of service for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No specific type of service is specified (destination port status is "don't-care"). ■ **DSCP**: If you want to filter a specific DSCP with this ACE, you can enter a specific DSCP value. A field for entering a DSCP value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `63`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this DSCP value. ■ **IP Precedence**: If you want to filter a specific IP precedence with this ACE, you can enter a specific IP precedence value. A field for entering an IP precedence value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `7`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this IP precedence value.	
• **ICMP**	Specify the ICMP for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No specific ICMP is specified (destination port status is "don't-care"). ■ **List**: If you want to filter a specific list with this ACE, you can select a specific list value. ■ **Protocol ID**: If you want to filter a specific protocol ID filter with this ACE, you can enter a specific protocol ID value. A field for entering a protocol ID value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `255`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this protocol ID value.	
• **ICMP Code**	Specify the ICMP code filter for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No ICMP code filter is specified (ICMP code filter status is "don't-care"). ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific ICMP code filter with this	

	ACE, you can enter a specific ICMP code value. A field for entering an ICMP code value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `255`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this ICMP code value.

Buttons

Add: Click to add ACE list.



ACL Name	Sequence	Action	Protocol	Source IP Address		Destination IP Address		Source Port Range	Destination Port Range	Flag Set	DSCP	IP Precedence	ICMP Type	ICMP Code	Modify
				IP Address	Wildcard Mask	IP Address	Wildcard Mask								

Figure 4-13-75 IPv4-based ACE Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Display the current ACL name
• **Sequence**	Display the current sequence
• **Action**	Display the current action
• **Protocol**	Display the current protocol
• **Source IP Address**	Display the current source IP address
• **Source IP Address Wildcard Mask**	Display the current source IP address wildcard mask
• **Destination IP Address**	Display the current destination IP address
• **Destination IP Address Wildcard Mask**	Display the current destination IP address wildcard mask
• **Source Port Range**	Display the current source port range
• **Destination Port Range**	Display the current destination port range
• **Flag Set**	Display the current flag set
• **DSCP**	Display the current DSCP
• **IP Precedence**	Display the current IP precedence
• **ICMP Type**	Display the current ICMP Type
• **ICMP Code**	Display the current ICMP code
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit IPv4-based ACL parameter Click Delete to delete IPv4-based ACL entry

4.13.8.5 IPv6-based ACL

This page shows the ACL status by different ACL users. Each row describes the ACE that is defined. It is a conflict if a specific ACE is not applied to the hardware due to hardware limitations. IPv6-based ACL screens in Figure 4-13-76 & Figure 4-13-77 appear.

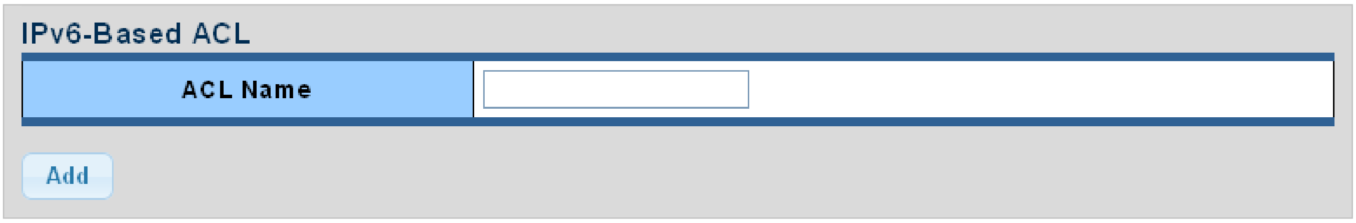


Figure 4-13-76 IPv6-based ACL Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Create a named IPv6-based ACL list

Buttons

Add: Click to add ACL name list.

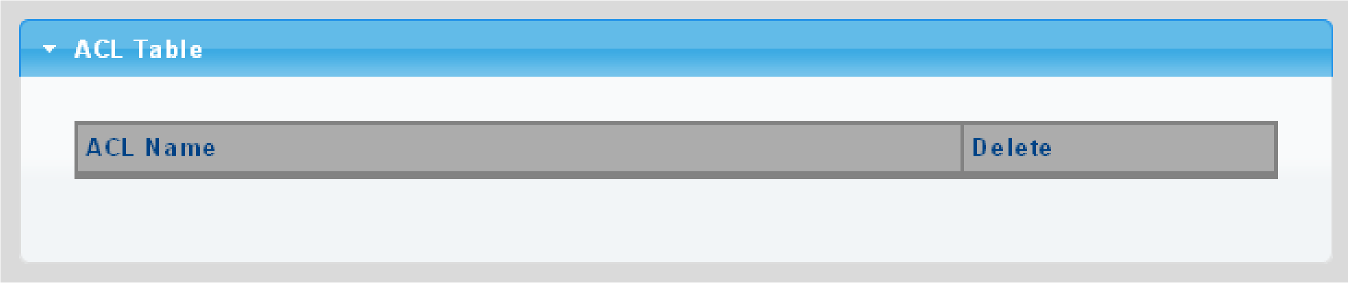


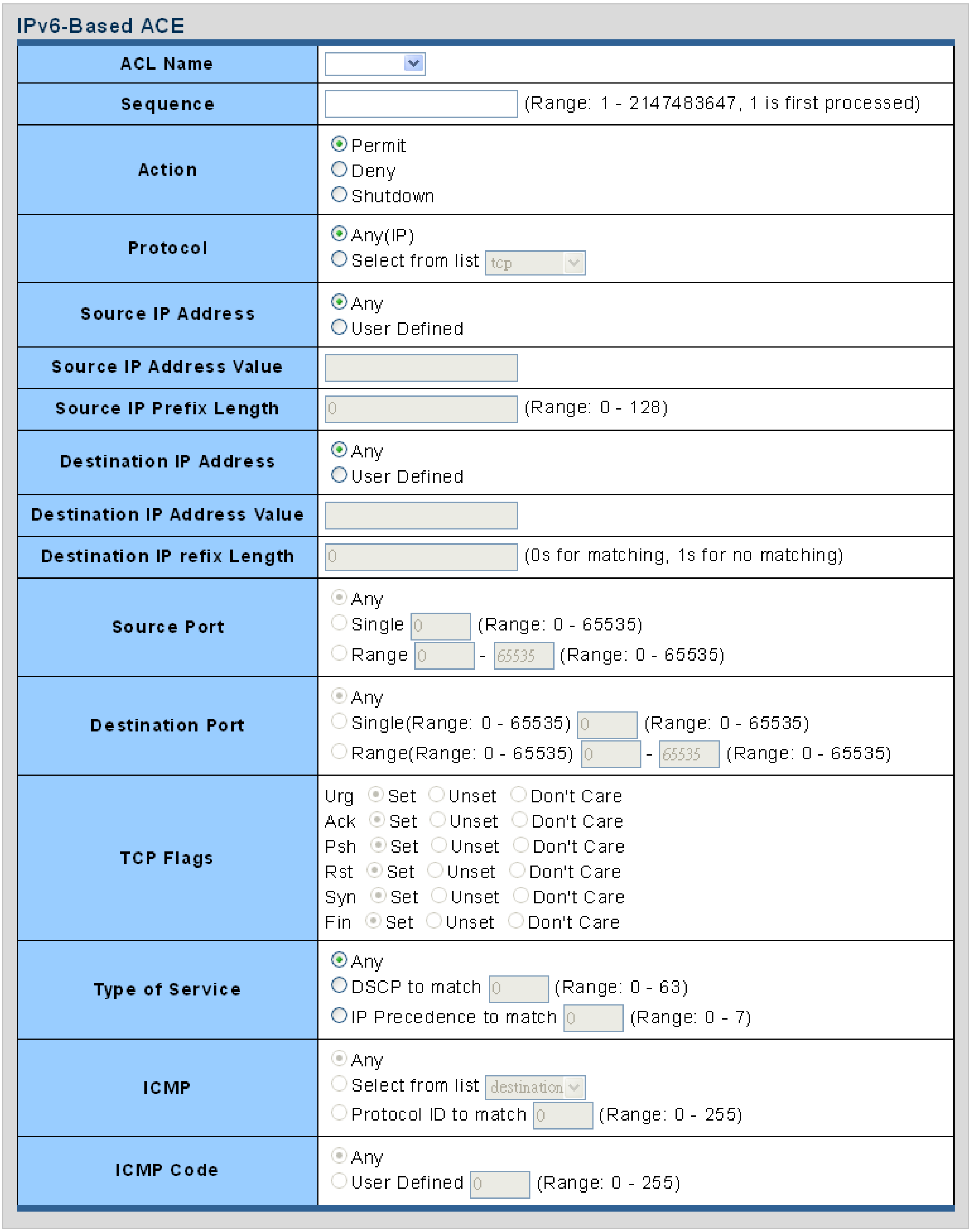
Figure 4-13-77 ACL Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Delete**	Click Delete to delete ACL name entry

4.13.8.6 IPv6-based ACE

An ACE consists of several parameters. Different parameter options are displayed depending on the frame type that you selected. The IPv6-based ACE screens in Figure 4-13-78 & Figure 4-13-79 appear.



IPv6-Based ACE

ACL Name	
Sequence	(Range: 1 - 2147483647, 1 is first processed)
Action	● Permit ○ Deny ○ Shutdown
Protocol	● Any(IP) ○ Select from list tcp
Source IP Address	● Any ○ User Defined
Source IP Address Value	
Source IP Prefix Length	0 (Range: 0 - 128)
Destination IP Address	● Any ○ User Defined
Destination IP Address Value	
Destination IP refix Length	0 (0s for matching, 1s for no matching)
Source Port	● Any ○ Single 0 (Range: 0 - 65535) ○ Range 0 - 65535 (Range: 0 - 65535)
Destination Port	● Any ○ Single(Range: 0 - 65535) 0 (Range: 0 - 65535) ○ Range(Range: 0 - 65535) 0 - 65535 (Range: 0 - 65535)
TCP Flags	Urg ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Ack ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Psh ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Rst ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Syn ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care Fin ● Set ○ Unset ○ Don't Care
Type of Service	● Any ○ DSCP to match 0 (Range: 0 - 63) ○ IP Precedence to match 0 (Range: 0 - 7)
ICMP	● Any ○ Select from list destination ○ Protocol ID to match 0 (Range: 0 - 255)
ICMP Code	● Any ○ User Defined 0 (Range: 0 - 255)

Figure 4-13-78 IP-based ACE Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

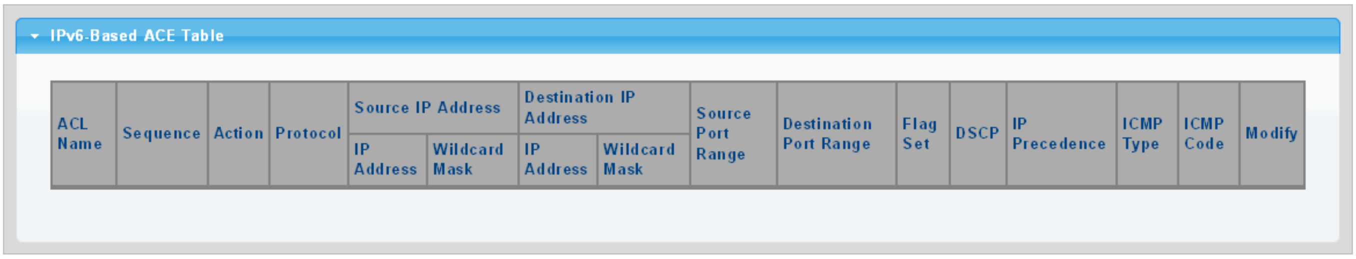
Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Select ACL name from this drop-down list
• **Sequence**	Set the ACL sequence
• **Action**	Indicates the forwarding action of the ACE ■ **Permit**: Frames matching the ACE may be forwarded and learned. ■ **Deny**: Frames matching the ACE are dropped. ■ **Shutdown**: Port shutdown is disabled for the ACE.
• **Protocol**	Specify the protocol filter for this ACE ■ **Any (IP)**: No protocol filter is specified. ■ **Select from list**: If you want to filter a specific protocol with this ACE, choose this value and select protocol from this drop-down list.
• **Source IP Address**	Specify the Source IP address filter for this ACE ■ **Any**: No source IP address filter is specified. ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific source IP address with this ACE, choose this value. A field for entering a source IP address value appears.
• **Source IP Address Value**	When "User Defined" is selected for the source IP address filter, you can enter a specific source IP address. The legal format is "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx". A frame that hits this ACE matches this source IP address value.
• **Source IP Prefix Length**	When "User Defined" is selected for the source IP filter, you can enter a specific SIP prefix length in dotted decimal notation.
• **Destination IP Address**	Specify the Destination IP address filter for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No destination IP address filter is specified. ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific destination IP address with this ACE, choose this value. A field for entering a source IP address value appears.
• **Destination IP Address Value**	When "User Defined" is selected for the destination IP address filter, you can enter a specific destination IP address. The legal format is " xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx ". A frame that hits this ACE matches this destination IP address value.
• **Destination IP Prefix Length**	When "User Defined" is selected for the destination IP filter, you can enter a specific DIP prefix length in dotted decimal notation.
• **Source Port**	Specify the source port for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No specific source port is specified (source port status is "don't-care"). ■ **Single**: If you want to filter a specific source port with this ACE, you can enter a specific source port value. A field for entering a source port value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `65535`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this source port value.

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">■ Range: If you want to filter a specific source port range filter with this ACE, you can enter a specific source port range value. A field for entering a source port value appears. The allowed range is <code>0</code> to <code>65535</code>. A frame that hits this ACE matches this source port value.</td></tr>
<tr><td>• Destination Port</td><td colspan="2">Specify the destination port for this ACE.
■ Any: No specific destination port is specified (destination port status is "don't-care").
■ Single: If you want to filter a specific destination port with this ACE, you can enter a specific destination port value. A field for entering a destination port value appears. The allowed range is <code>0</code> to <code>65535</code>. A frame that hits this ACE matches this destination port value.
■ Range: If you want to filter a specific destination port range filter with this ACE, you can enter a specific destination port range value. A field for entering a destination port value appears.</td></tr>
<tr><td>• TCP Flags</td><td>UGR</td><td>Specify the TCP "Urgent Pointer field significant" (URG) value for this ACE.
■ Set: TCP frames where the URG field is set must be able to match this entry.
■ Unset: TCP frames where the URG field is set must not be able to match this entry.
■ Don't Care: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>ACK</td><td>Specify the TCP "Acknowledgment field significant" (ACK) value for this ACE.
■ Set: TCP frames where the ACK field is set must be able to match this entry.
■ Unset: TCP frames where the ACK field is set must not be able to match this entry.
■ Don't Care: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>PSH</td><td>Specify the TCP "Push Function" (PSH) value for this ACE.
■ Set: TCP frames where the PSH field is set must be able to match this entry.
■ Unset: TCP frames where the PSH field is set must not be able to match this entry.
■ Don't Care: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>RST</td><td>Specify the TCP "Reset the connection" (RST) value for this ACE.
■ Set: TCP frames where the RST field is set must be able to match this entry.
■ Unset: TCP frames where the RST field is set must not be able to match this entry.</td></tr>
</table>

		■ **Don't Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
	SYN	Specify the TCP "Synchronize sequence numbers" (SYN) value for this ACE. ■ **Set**: TCP frames where the SYN field is set must be able to match this entry. ■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the SYN field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don't Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
	FIN	Specify the TCP "No more data from sender" (FIN) value for this ACE. ■ **Set**: TCP frames where the FIN field is set must be able to match this entry. ■ **Unset**: TCP frames where the FIN field is set must not be able to match this entry. ■ **Don't Care**: Any value is allowed ("don't-care").
• **Type of Service**	Specify the type of service for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No specific type of service is specified (destination port status is "don't-care"). ■ **DSCP**: If you want to filter a specific DSCP with this ACE, you can enter a specific DSCP value. A field for entering a DSCP value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `63`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this DSCP value. ■ **IP Precedence**: If you want to filter a specific IP precedence with this ACE, you can enter a specific IP precedence value. A field for entering an IP precedence value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `7`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this IP precedence value.	
• **ICMP**	Specify the ICMP for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No specific ICMP is specified (destination port status is "don't-care"). ■ **List**: If you want to filter a specific list with this ACE, you can select a specific list value. ■ **Protocol ID**: If you want to filter a specific protocol ID filter with this ACE, you can enter a specific protocol ID value. A field for entering a protocol ID value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `255`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this protocol ID value.	
• **ICMP Code**	Specify the ICMP code filter for this ACE. ■ **Any**: No ICMP code filter is specified (ICMP code filter status is "don't-care"). ■ **User Defined**: If you want to filter a specific ICMP code filter with this ACE, you can enter a specific ICMP code value. A field for entering an ICMP code value appears. The allowed range is `0` to `255`. A frame that hits this ACE matches this ICMP code value.	

Buttons

Add : Click to add ACE list



ACL Name	Sequence	Action	Protocol	Source IP Address		Destination IP Address		Source Port Range	Destination Port Range	Flag Set	DSCP	IP Precedence	ICMP Type	ICMP Code	Modify
				IP Address	Wildcard Mask	IP Address	Wildcard Mask								

Figure 4-13-79 IPv6-based ACE Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **ACL Name**	Display the current ACL name
• **Sequence**	Display the current sequence
• **Action**	Display the current action
• **Protocol**	Display the current protocol
• **Source IP Address**	Display the current source IP address
• **Source IP Address Wildcard Mask**	Display the current source IP address wildcard mask
• **Destination IP Address**	Display the current destination IP address
• **Destination IP Address Wildcard Mask**	Display the current destination IP address wildcard mask
• **Source Port Range**	Display the current source port range
• **Destination Port Range**	Display the current destination port range
• **Flag Set**	Display the current flag set
• **DSCP**	Display the current DSCP
• **IP Precedence**	Display the current IP precedence
• **ICMP Type**	Display the current ICMP Type
• **ICMP Code**	Display the current ICMP code
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit IPv6-based ACL parameter. Click Delete to delete IPv6-based ACL entry.

4.13.8.7 ACL Binding

This page allows you to bind the Policy content to the appropriate ACLs. The ACL Policy screens in Figure 4-13-80 & Figure 4-13-81 appears.

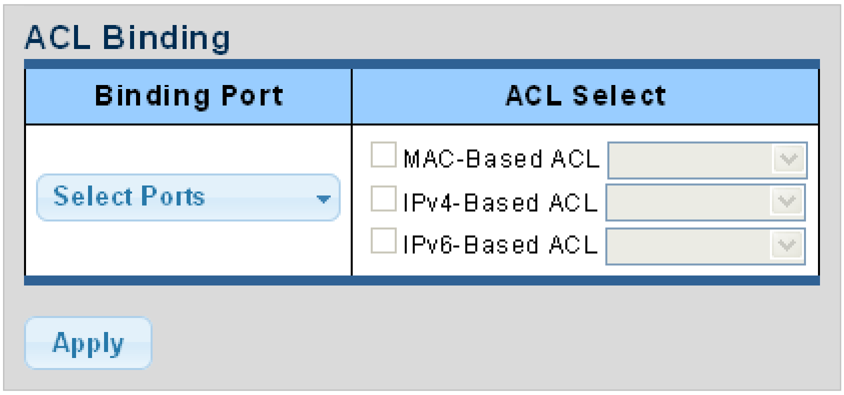

ACL Binding
Binding Port
ACL Select
Select Ports
☐ MAC-Based ACL
☐ IPv4-Based ACL
☐ IPv6-Based ACL
Apply

Figure 4-13-80 ACL Binding Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Binding Port**	Select port from this drop-down list
• **ACL Select**	Select ACL list from this drop-down list

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

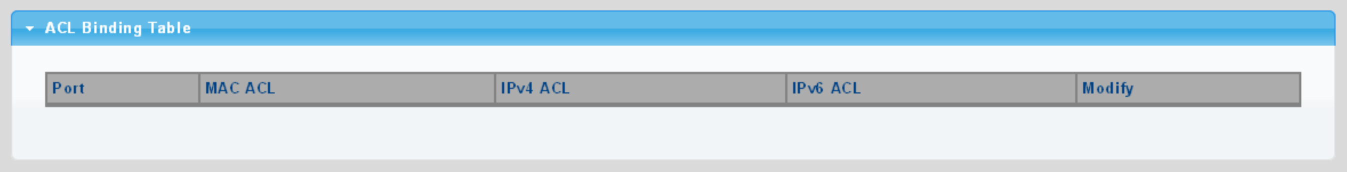

ACL Binding Table
Port
MAC ACL
IPv4 ACL
IPv6 ACL
Modify

Figure 4-13-81 ACL Binding Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

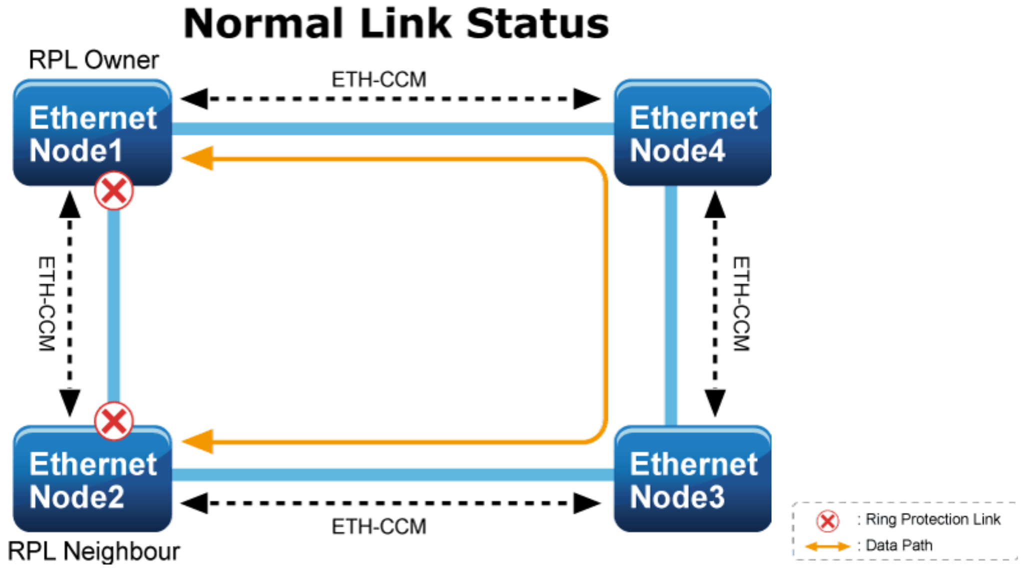
Object	Description
• **Port**	The switch port number of the logical port
• **MAC ACL**	Display the current MAC ACL
• **IPv4 ACL**	Display the current IPv4 ACL
• **IPv6 ACL**	Display the current IPv6 ACL
• **Modify**	Click Edit to edit ACL binding table parameter Click Delete to delete ACL binding entry

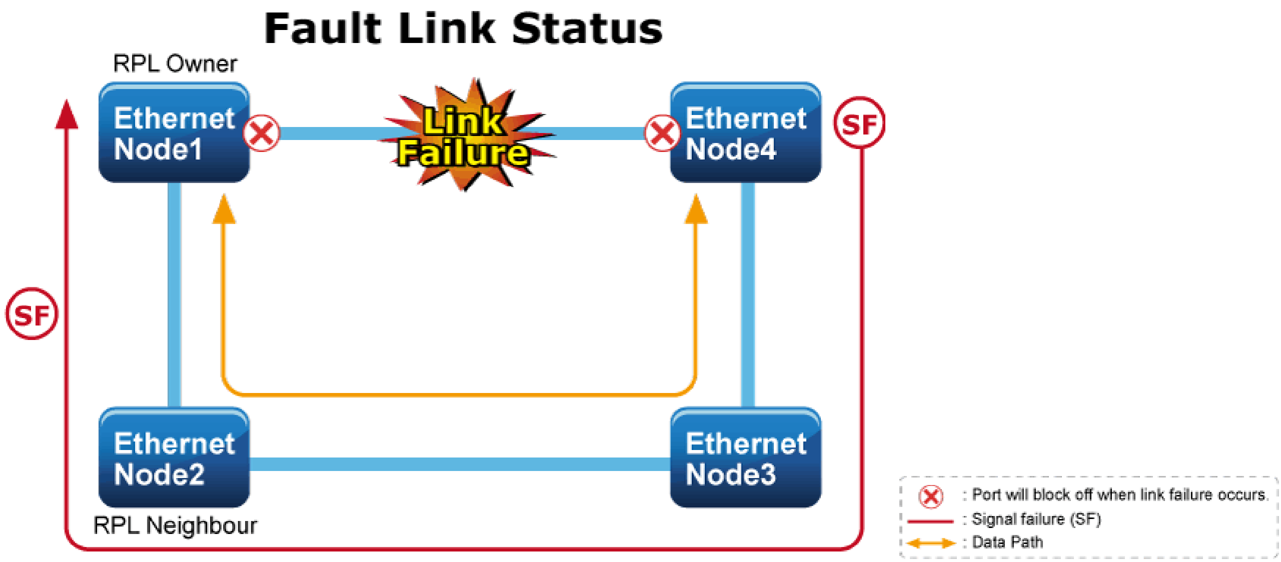
4.14 Ring

Use the Maintenance menu items to display and configure basic configurations of The Wall-mount Managed Switch. Under maintenance, the following topics are provided to back up, upgrade, save and restore the configuration. This section has the following items:

■ **Ring Wizard**	You can quickly buld an ERPS ring by wizard.
■ **ERPS**	You can configure ERPS ring in detail.

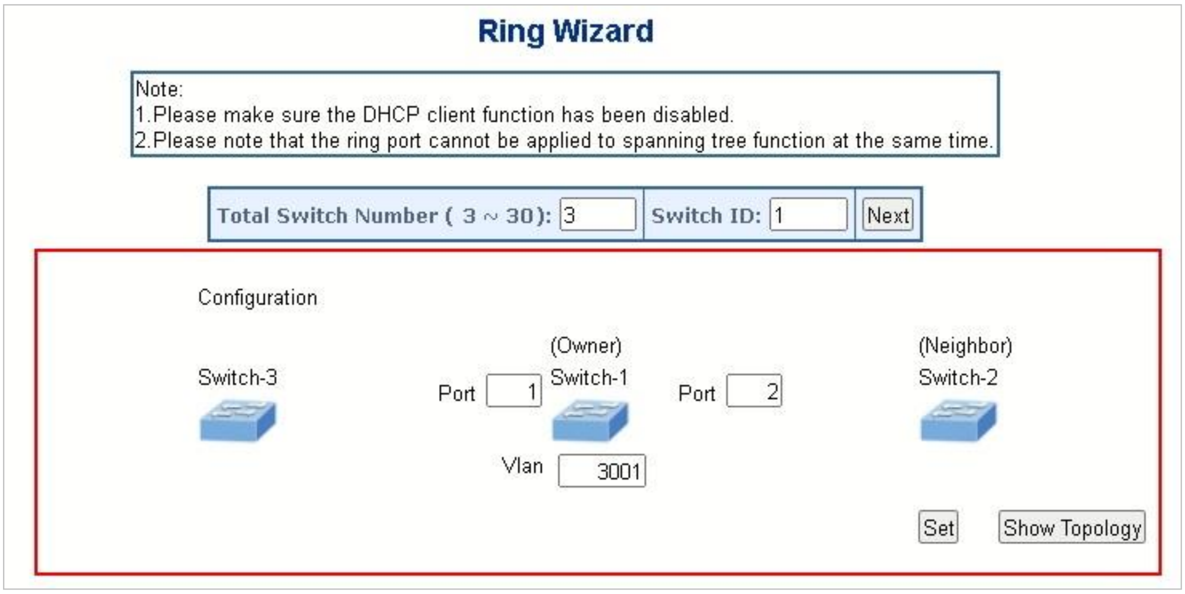
ITU-T G.8032 **Ethernet Ring protection switching** (**ERPS**) is a link layer protocol applied on Ethernet loop protection to provide sub-450ms protection and recovery switching for Ethernet traffic in a ring topology.
ERPS provides a faster redundant recovery than Spanning Tree topology. The action is similar to STP or RSTP, but the algorithms between them are not the same. In the Ring topology, every switch should be enabled with Ring function and two ports should be assigned as the member ports in the ERPS. Only one switch in the Ring group would be set as the RPL owner switch that one port would be blocked, called **owner port**, and PRL neighbor switch has one port that one port would be blocked, called **neighbor port** that connect to owner port directly and this link is called the **Ring Protection Link** or **RPL**. Each switch will sends ETH-CCM message to check the link status in the ring group. When the failure of network connection occurs, the nodes block the failed link and report the signal failure message, the RPL owner switch will automatically unblocks the PRL to recover from the failure.


Normal Link Status
RPL Owner
ETH-CCM
Ethernet Node1
Ethernet Node4
ETH-CCM
ETH-CCM
Ethernet Node2
Ethernet Node3
ETH-CCM
RPL Neighbour
: Ring Protection Link
: Data Path


Fault Link Status
RPL Owner
Ethernet Node1
Link Failure
Ethernet Node4
SF
SF
Ethernet Node2
Ethernet Node3
RPL Neighbour
: Port will block off when link failure occurs.
: Signal failure (SF)
: Data Path

4.14.1 Ring Wizard

The Ring Wizard instances are configured here; screen in Figure 4-14-1 appears.



Ring Wizard

Note:
1.Please make sure the DHCP client function has been disabled.
2.Please note that the ring port cannot be applied to spanning tree function at the same time.

Total Switch Number (3 ~ 30): 3 | Switch ID: 1 | Next

Configuration

Port: 1

Vlan: 3001

Port: 2

Figure 4-14-1: Ring Wizard page screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **All Switch Numbers**	Set all the switch numbers for the ring group. The default number is 3 and maximum number is 30.
• **Number ID**	The switch where you are requesting ERPS.
• **Port**	Configures the port number for the MEP.
• **VLAN**	Set the ERPS VLAN.

Buttons

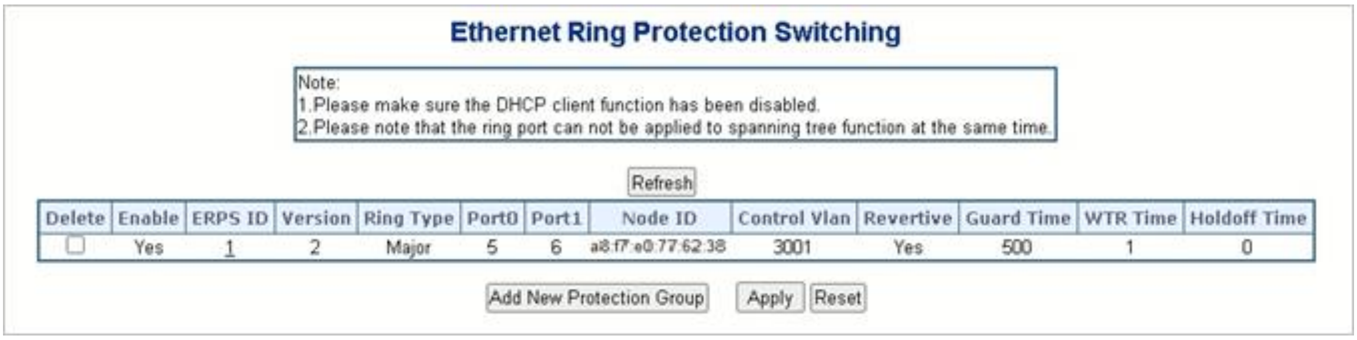
Next: Click to configure ERPS.

Set: Click to save changes.

Show Topology: Click to show the ring topology.

4.14.2 ERPS

This page allows the user to inspect and configure the current ERPS Instance; screen in Figure 4-14-2 and Figure 4-14-3 appears.



Ethernet Ring Protection Switching

Note:
1.Please make sure the DHCP client function has been disabled.
2.Please note that the ring port can not be applied to spanning tree function at the same time.

Delete	Enable	ERPS ID	Version	Ring Type	Port0	Port1	Node ID	Control Vlan	Revertive	Guard Time	WTR Time	Holdoff Time
☐	Yes	1	2	Major	5	6	a8:f7:e0:77:62:38	3001	Yes	500	1	0

Figure 4-14-2: Ethernet Ring Protection Switching page screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Delete**	This box is used to mark a ERPS for deletion in next Save operation.
• **Enable**	The ID of the MEP. Click on the ID of a MEP to enter the configuration page.
• **ERPS ID**	**Port**: This is a MEP in the Port Domain. 'Flow Instance' is a Port. **Esp**: Future use **Evc**: This is a MEP in the EVC Domain. 'Flow Instance' is a EVC **Mpls**: Future use
• **Version**	**MEP**: This is a Maintenance Entity End Point. **MIP**: This is a Maintenance Entity Intermediate Point.
• **Ring Type**	**Ingress**: This is a Ingress (down) MEP - monitoring ingress traffic on 'Residence Port'. **Egress**: This is a Egress (up) MEP - monitoring egress traffic on 'Residence Port'.
• **Port0**	The port where MEP is monitoring - see 'Direction'.
• **Port1**	The MEG level of this MEP.
• **Control Vlan**	The MEP is related to this flow - See 'Domain'.
• **Revertive**	**Port MEP**: An outer C/S-tag (depending on VLAN Port Type) is added with this VID. Entering '0' means no TAG added.
• **Guard Time**	The MAC of this MEP - can be used by other MEP when unicast is selected (Info only).
• **WTR Time**	There is an active alarm on the MEP.
• **Holdoff Time**	Hold off time in ms. Value is rounded down to 100ms precision. Valid range is 0 - 10000 ms.

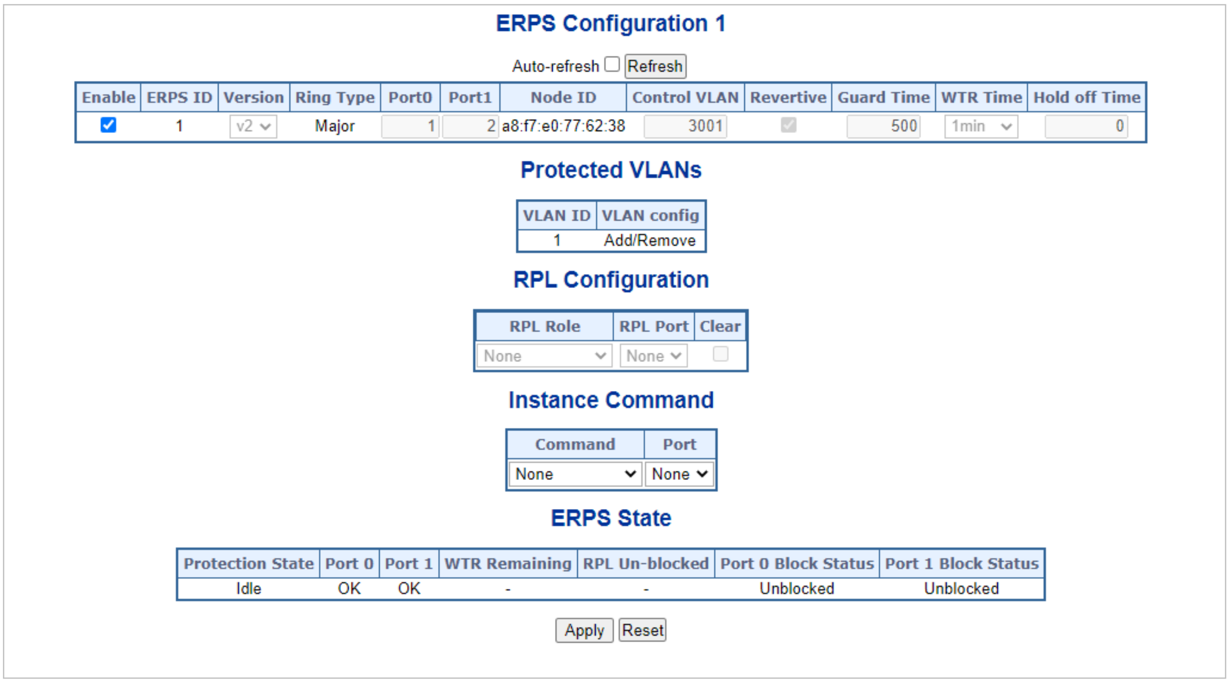
Buttons

Add New Protection Group: Click to add a new Protection group entry.

Refresh: Click to refresh the page immediately.

Save: Click to save changes.

Reset: Click to undo any changes made locally and revert to previously saved values.



ERPS Configuration 1

Auto-refresh ☐ Refresh

Enable	ERPS ID	Version	Ring Type	Port0	Port1	Node ID	Control VLAN	Revertive	Guard Time	WTR Time	Hold off Time
☑	1	v2	Major	1	2	a8:f7:e0:77:62:38	3001	☑	500	1min	0

Protected VLANs

VLAN ID	VLAN config
1	Add/Remove

RPL Configuration

RPL Role	RPL Port	Clear
None	None	☐

Instance Command

Command	Port
None	None

ERPS State

Protection State	Port 0	Port 1	WTR Remaining	RPL Un-blocked	Port 0 Block Status	Port 1 Block Status
Idle	OK	OK	-	-	Unblocked	Unblocked

Figure 4-14-3: Ethernet Ring Protocol Switch Configuration page screenshot

PRL Configuration:

Object	Description
• **PRL Role**	It can be either RPL owner or RPL Neighbor.
• **PRL Port**	This allows to select the east port or west port as the RPL block.
• **Clear**	If the owner has to be changed, then the clear check box allows to clear the RPL owner for that ERPS ring.

Instance Command:

Object	Description
• **Command**	Administrative command. A port can be administratively configured to be in either manual switch or forced switch state.
• **Port**	Port selection - Port0 or Port1 of the protection Group on which the command is applied.

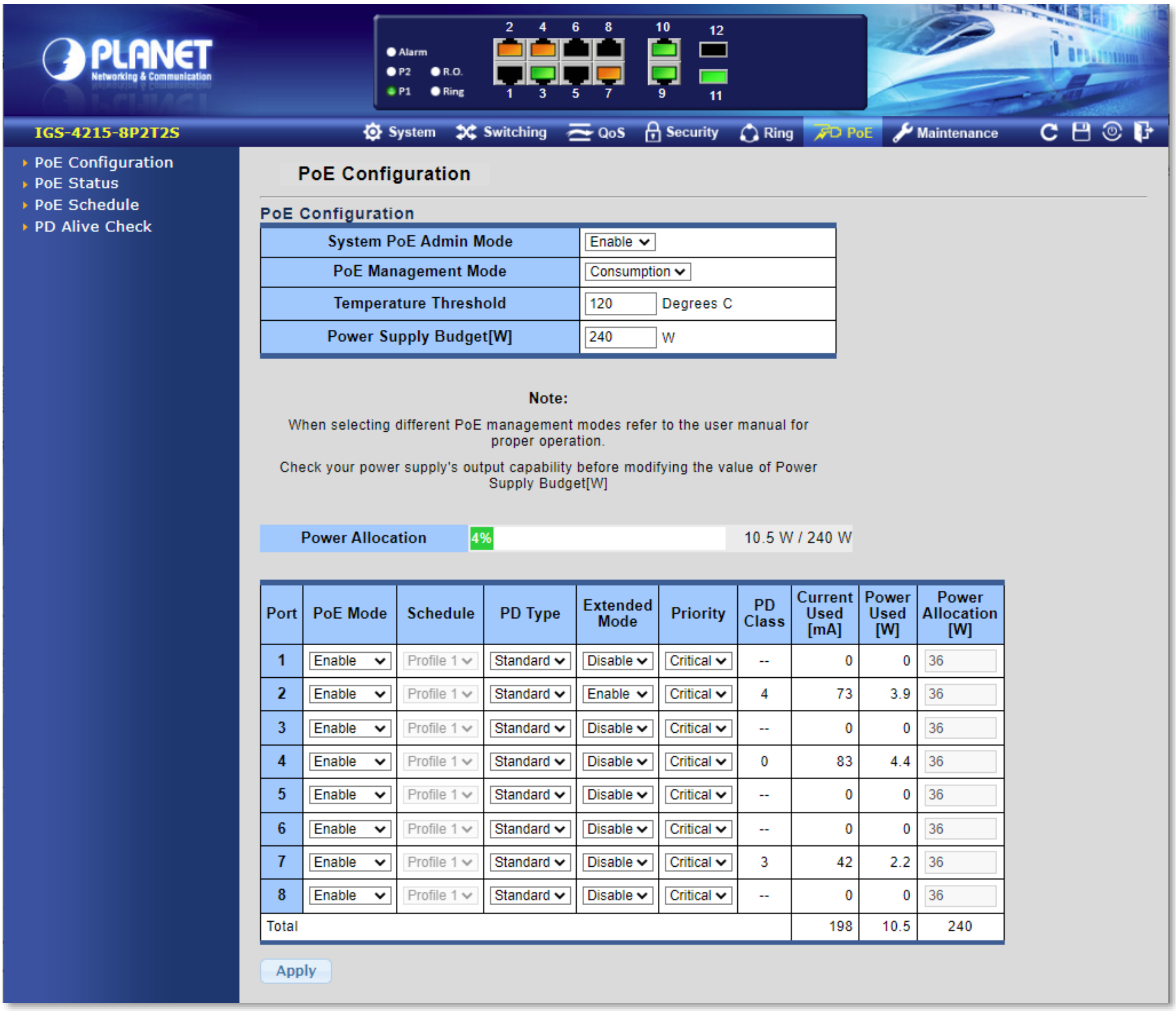
ERPS state:

Object	Description
• **Protection State**	ERPS state according to State Transition Tables in G.8032.
• **Port 0**	**OK**: State of East port is ok **SF**: State of East port is Signal Fail
• **Port 1**	**OK**: State of West port is ok **SF**: State of West port is Signal Fail
• **WTR Remaining**	Remaining WTR timeout in milliseconds.
• **RPL Un-blocked**	APS is received on the working flow.
• **Port 0 Block Status**	Block status for Port 0 (Both traffic and R-APS block status). R-APS channel is never blocked on sub-rings without virtual channel.
• **Port 1 Block Status**	Block status for Port 1 (Both traffic and R-APS block status). R-APS channel is never blocked on sub-rings without virtual channel.

4.15 Power over Ethernet

4.15.1 PoE Switch Introduction

Providing IEEE 802.3at PoE+ or IEEE 802.3bt PoE++ in-line power interfaces, the IGS-4215 PoE Switch Series can easily build a power central-controlled IP phone system, IP Camera system, AP group for the enterprise. For instance, these cameras/APs can be easily installed around the corners of the company for surveillance demands or a wireless roaming environment in the office can be built. Without the power-socket limitation, the IGS-4215 PoE Switch Series makes the installation of cameras or WLAN AP easier and more efficient.


PLANET
Networking & Communication
Alarm
P2
P1
R.O.
Ring
2
4
6
8
10
12
1
3
5
7
9
11
IGS-4215-8P2T2S
System
Switching
QoS
Security
Ring
PoE
Maintenance
PoE Configuration
PoE Status
PoE Schedule
PD Alive Check
Apply

PoE Configuration

PoE Configuration

System PoE Admin Mode	Enable
PoE Management Mode	Consumption
Temperature Threshold	120 Degrees C
Power Supply Budget[W]	240 W

Note:

When selecting different PoE management modes refer to the user manual for proper operation.

Check your power supply's output capability before modifying the value of Power Supply Budget[W]

Power Allocation 4% 10.5 W / 240 W

Port	PoE Mode	Schedule	PD Type	Extended Mode	Priority	PD Class	Current Used [mA]	Power Used [W]	Power Allocation [W]
1	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
2	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Enable	Critical	4	73	3.9	36
3	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
4	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	0	83	4.4	36
5	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
6	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
7	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	3	42	2.2	36
8	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
Total							198	10.5	240

Figure 4-15-1: Power over Ethernet Status

4.15.2 Power over Ethernet Powered Device

In a power over Ethernet system, operating power is applied from a power source (PSU or -power supply unit) over the LAN infrastructure to **powered devices (PDs)**, which are connected to ports.

 3~5 watts	**Voice over IP phones** Enterprises can install PoE VoIP phones, ATA sand other Ethernet/non-Ethernet end-devices in the center where UPS is installed for un-interruptible power system and power control system.
 6~12 watts	**Wireless LAN Access Points** Access points can be installed at museums, sightseeing sites, airports, hotels, campuses, factories, warehouses, etc.
 10~12 watts	**IP Surveillance** IP cameras can be installed at enterprises, museums, campuses, hospitals, banks, etc. without worrying about electrical outlets.
 3~12 watts	**PoE Splitter** PoE Splitter split the PoE 56V DC over the Ethernet cable into 5/12V DC power output. It frees the device deployment from restrictions due to power outlet locations, which eliminate the costs for additional AC wiring and reduces the installation time.
 3~25 watts	**High Power PoE Splitter** High PoE Splitter split the PoE 56V DC over the Ethernet cable into 24/12V DC power output. It frees the device deployment from restrictions due to power outlet locations, which eliminate the costs for additional AC wiring and reduces the installation time.
 30~90 watts	**High Power Speed Dome** Its state-of-the-art design fits in various network environments like traffic centers, shopping malls, railway stations, warehouses, airports and production facilities for the most demanding outdoor surveillance applications. No electricians are needed to install AC sockets.

PD Classifications

A PD may be classified by the PSE based on the classification information provided by the PD. The intent of PD classification is to provide information about the maximum power required by the PD during operation. However, to improve power management at the PSE, the PD provides a signature about **Class level.**

The PD is classified based on power. The classification of the PD is the maximum power that the PD will draw across all input voltages and operational modes.

A PD will return to Class 0 to 8 in accordance with the maximum power draw as specified by Table 4-15-1.

Class	Usage	Range of maximum power used by the PD	Class Description
0	Default	0.44 to 12.95 watts	Classification unimplement
1	Optional	0.44 to 3.84 watts	Very low power
2	Optional	3.84 to 6.49 watts	Low power
3	Optional	6.49 to 12.95 watts (or to 15.4 watts)	Mid power
4	Valid for Type 2 (802.3at) devices, not allowed for 802.3af devices	12.95 to 25.5 watts	High power
5	Valid for Type 3 (802.3bt) devices	40 watts	High power
6		51 watts (4-pair)	High power
7	Valid for Type 4 (802.3bt) devices	62 watts (4-pair)	High power
8		71.3 watts (4-pair)	High power

Table 4-15-1 Device Class.

Note

Since the IGS-4215 PoE Switch Series per PoE port supports 48~54V DC PoE power output, please check and assure the Powered Device's (PD) acceptable DC power range is 56V DC; otherwise, it will damage the Powered Device (PD).

4.15.3 Power over Ethernet Configuration

In a power over Ethernet system, operating power is applied from a power source (PSU-power supply unit) over the LAN infrastructure to **powered devices (PDs)**, which are connected to ports. Under some conditions, the total output power required by PDs can exceed the maximum available power provided by the PSU. The system with a PSU is capable of supplying less power than the total potential power consumption of all the PoE ports in the system. In order to maintain the function of the majority of the ports, power management is implemented.

The PSU input power consumption is monitored by measuring voltage and current .The input power consumption is equal to the system's aggregated power consumption .The power management concept allows all ports to be active and activates additional ports, as long as the aggregated power of the system is lower than the power level at which additional PDs cannot be connected .When this value is exceeded, ports will be deactivated, according to user-defined priorities. The power budget is managed according to the following user-definable parameters: maximum available power, ports priority and maximum allowable power per port.

Reserved Power

There are five modes for configuring how the ports/PDs may reserve power and when to shut down ports.

- **Consumption mode**

  In this mode each port automatic determines how much power to reserve according to real power consumption of the PD

- **Allocation mode**

  In this mode, the user allocates the amount of power that each port may reserve. The allocated/reserved power for each port/PD is specified in the Maximum Power fields. The ports are shut down when total reserved power exceeds the amount of power that the power supply can deliver.

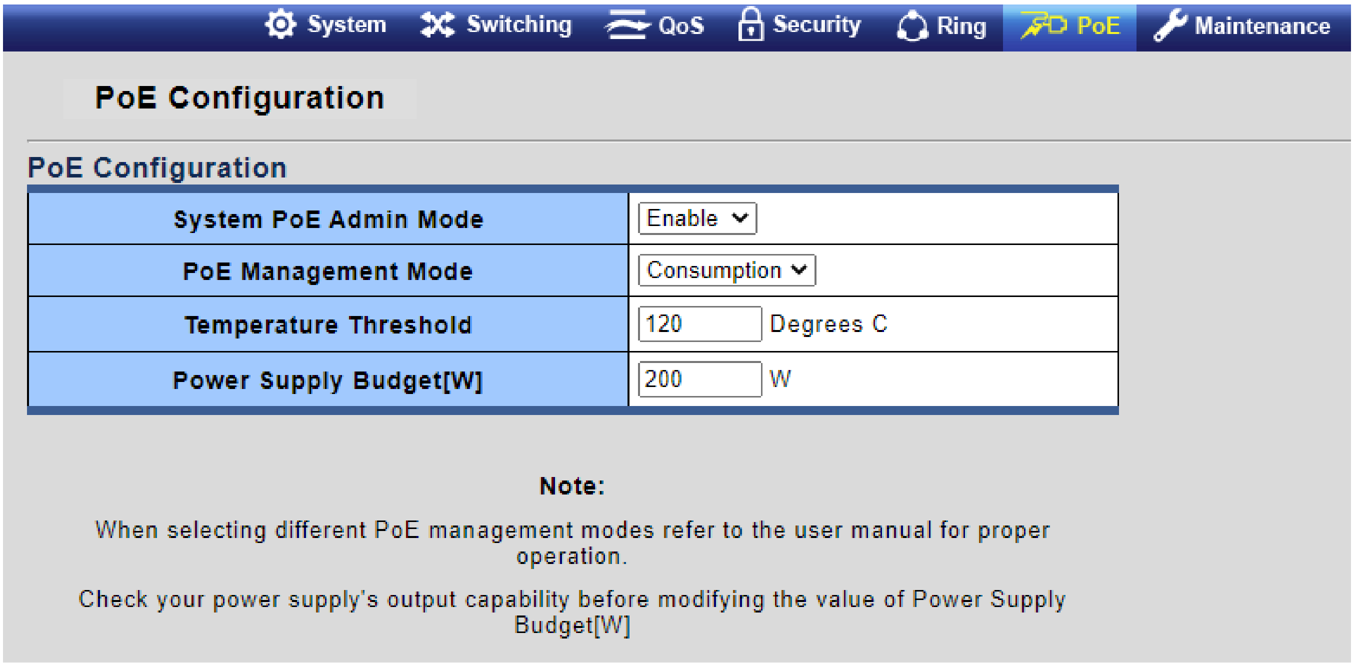
Note

In this mode, the port power is not turned on if the PD requests more available power.

This section allows the user to inspect and configure the current PoE configuration setting as screen in Figure 4-15-2 appears.

Note

The following web screen is based on the WGS-4215-8P2S. The display of the WGS-4215-8P2S is the same as WGS-804HPT, except PoE budget and PoE ports.



PoE Configuration

PoE Configuration

System PoE Admin Mode	Enable
PoE Management Mode	Consumption
Temperature Threshold	120 Degrees C
Power Supply Budget[W]	200 W

Note:

When selecting different PoE management modes refer to the user manual for proper operation.

Check your power supply's output capability before modifying the value of Power Supply Budget[W]

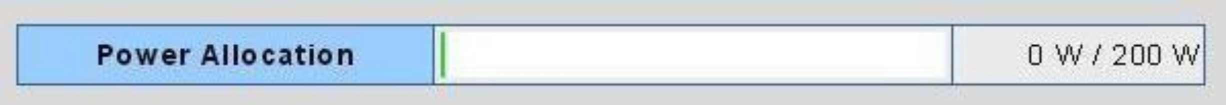
Figure 4-15-2: PoE Configuration Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **System PoE Admin Mode**	Allows user to enable or disable PoE function. It will cause all of PoE ports to supply or not to supply power.
• **PoE Management Mode**	There are six modes for configuring how the ports/PDs may reserve power and when to shut down ports. ■ **Consumption mode:** The system offers PoE power according to PD real power consumption. ■ **Allocation mode:** Users allow to assign how much PoE power to each port and the system will reserve PoE power to PD.
• **Temperature Threshold**	Allows setting over temperature protection threshold value. If the system temperature is overly high, the system will lower the total PoE power budget automatically.
• **Power Budget**	Configure PoE power output budget.

Models	Power Supply Budget [W]
WGS-804HPT	144 watts
WGS-4215-8P2S	200 watts
WGS-4215-16P2S	240 watts

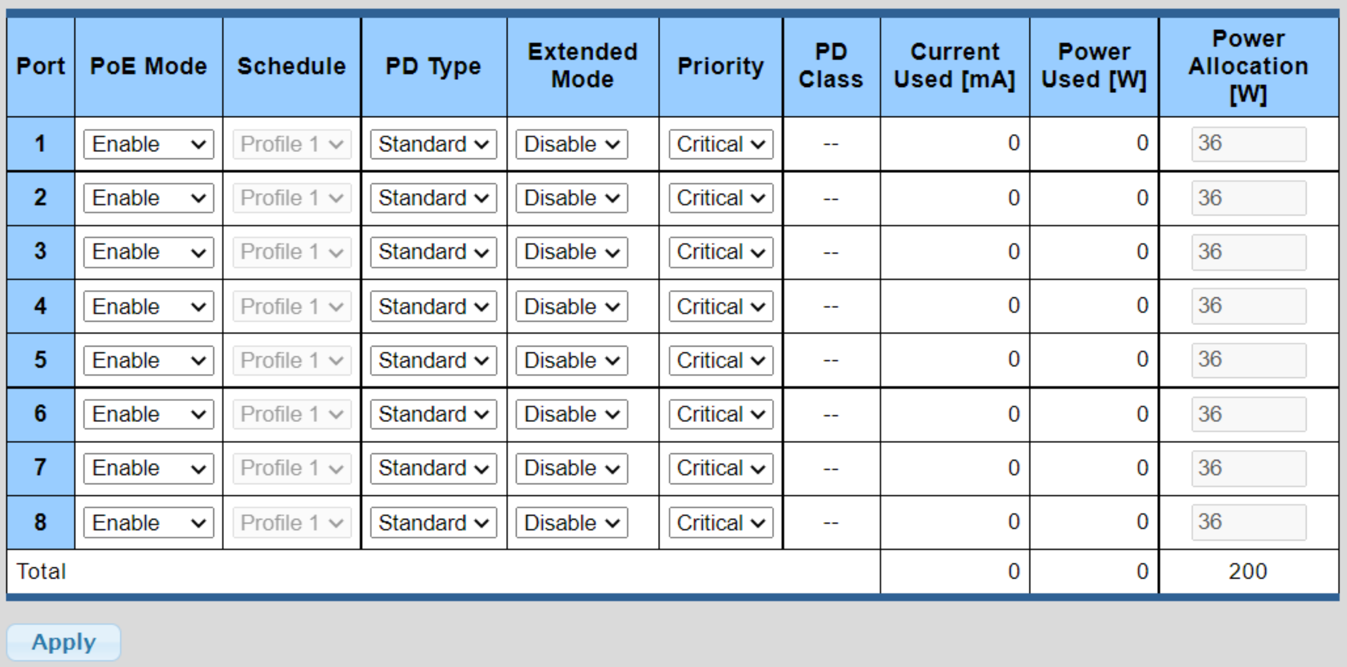
This section displays the **PoE Power Usage** of Current Power Consumption as Figure 4-15-3 shows.



Power Allocation | 0 W / 200 W

Figure 4-15-3: Current Power Consumption Screenshot

This section allows the user to inspect and configure the current PoE port settings as Figure 4-15-4 shows.



Port	PoE Mode	Schedule	PD Type	Extended Mode	Priority	PD Class	Current Used [mA]	Power Used [W]	Power Allocation [W]
1	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
2	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
3	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
4	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
5	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
6	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
7	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
8	Enable	Profile 1	Standard	Disable	Critical	--	0	0	36
Total							0	0	200

Figure 4-15-4: Power over Ethernet Configuration Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **PoE Mode**	There are three modes for PoE mode. ■ **Enable**: enable PoE function. ■ **Disable**: disable PoE function. ■ **Schedule**: enable PoE function in schedule mode.
• **Schedule**	Indicates the scheduled profile mode. Possible profiles are: ■ **Profile1** ■ **Profile2** ■ **Profile3** ■ **Profile4**

• **PD Type**	It allows user to enable legacy mode or force power function in a specified PoE Inline mode. ■ **Standard**: (default) Fully conforms to the IEEE 802.3 at/bt standard ■ **Legacy:** The legacy detection is to identify the valid current signature of the PDs that do not fully follow the IEEE 802.3af/at standard. This protects against damage to the PDs as the right PoE mode is applied. ■ **Force**: Once the force power is enabled, the PoE port will ignore the PoE classification behaviors and directly deliver power over UTP cable no matter what Ethernet device is attached, or even there is no Ethernet cable plugged. ⚠ Please be careful when using force power function and make sure the remote device is PoE powered device (PD).
• **Extended Mode**	For user to enable or disable per port PoE Extension function. Default setting is "Disable". In the Extend operation mode, the PoE port operates at **10Mbps duplex** operation but can support PoE power output over a distance of up to 250 meters overcoming the 100m limit on Ethernet UTP cable.
• **Priority**	The Priority represents PoE ports priority. There are three levels of power priority named **Low**, **High** and **Critical**. The priority is used in case the total power consumption is over the total power budget. In this case the port with the lowest priority will be turned off, and offer power for the port of higher priority.
• **PD Class**	Displays the class of the PD attached to the port, as established by the classification process. Class 0 is the default for PDs. The PD is powered based on PoE Class level if the system is working in Classification mode. The PD will return to Class 0 to 4 in accordance with the maximum power draw as specified by **Table 4-15-2-1**.

• **Current Used [mA]**	The **Power Used** shows how much current the PD currently is using.
• **Power Used [W]**	The **Power Used** shows how much power the PD currently is using.
• **Power Allocation**	It can limit the port PoE supply watts. Per port maximum value must be less than **30.8/36 watts**. Total port values must be less than the Power Reservation value. Once power overload is detected, the port will auto shut down and keep in detection mode until PD's power consumption is lower than the power limit value.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.

4.15.4 PoE Status

This section provide per port PoE status and the screen in Figure 4-15-5 appears.

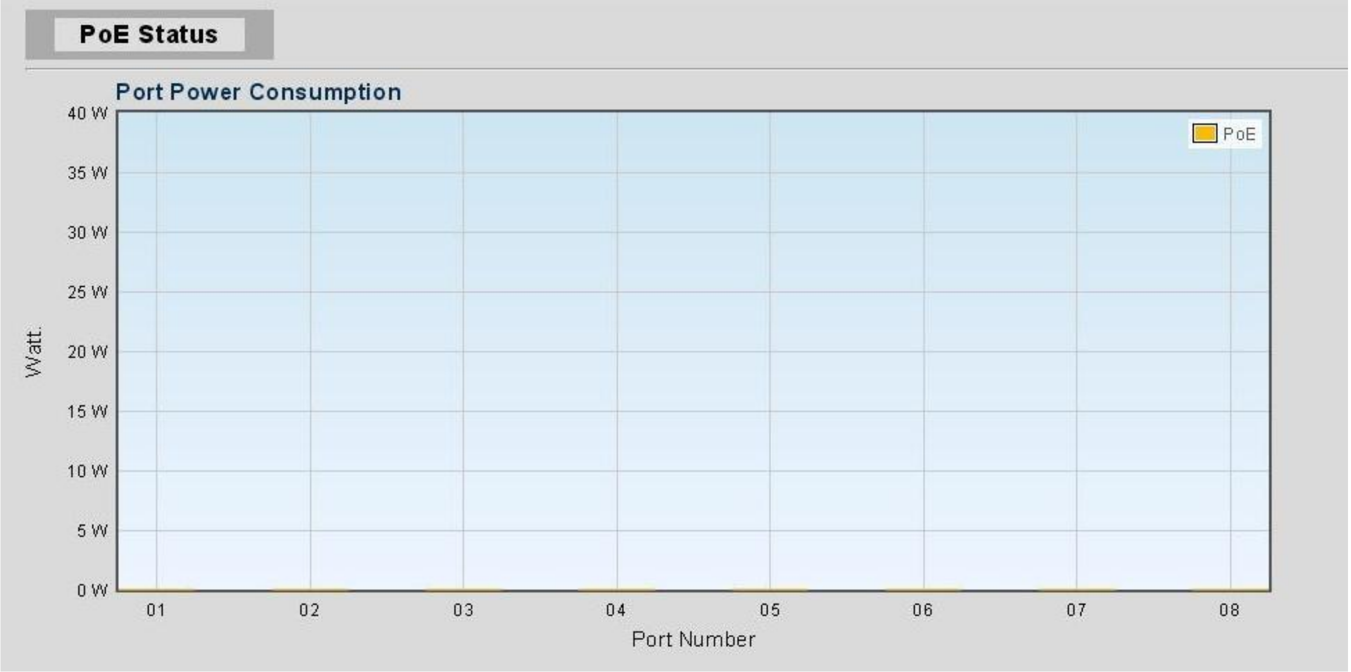

PoE Status
Port Power Consumption
40 W
35 W
30 W
25 W
20 W
15 W
10 W
5 W
0 W
Watt.
PoE
01
02
03
04
05
06
07
08
Port Number

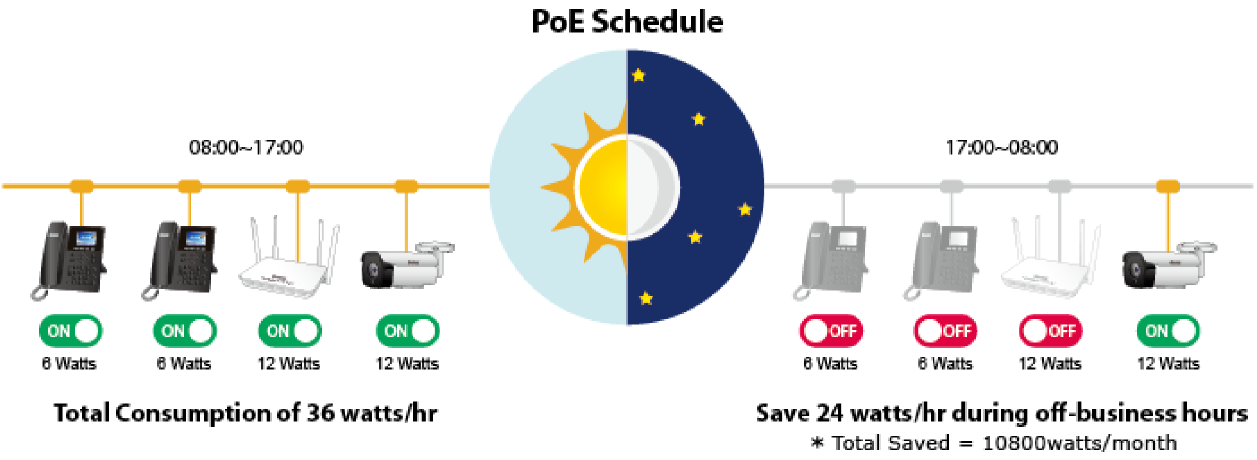
Figure 4-15-5 Power over Ethernet Status Screenshot

4.15.5 PoE Schedule

This page allows the user to define PoE schedule and scheduled power recycling.

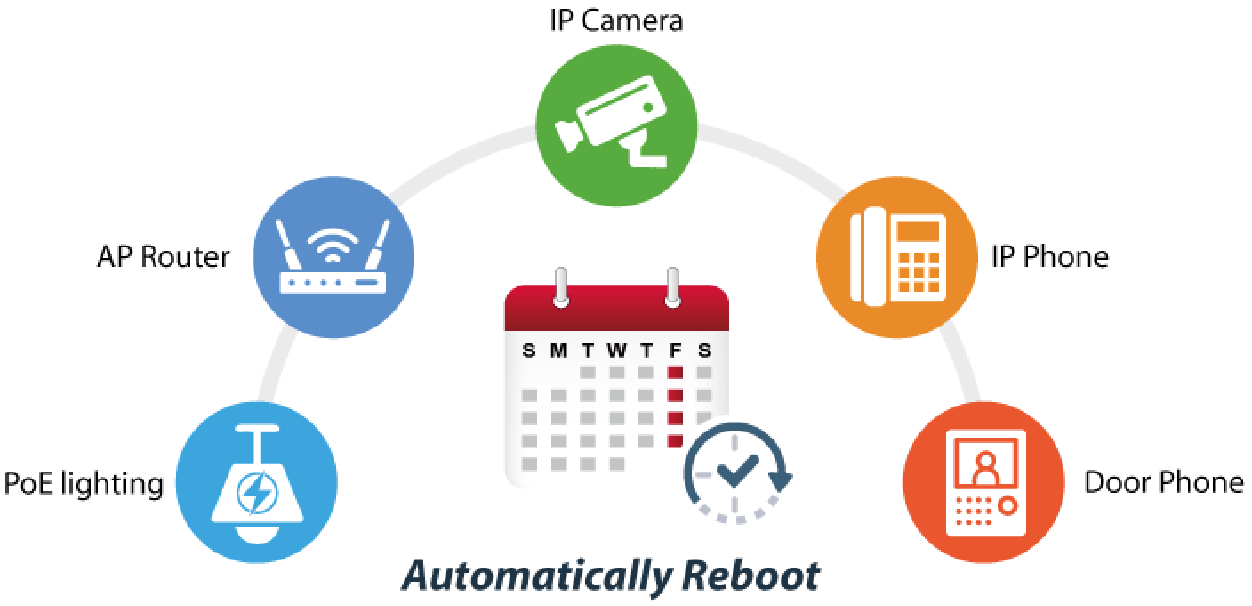
PoE Schedule

Besides being used as an IP Surveillance, the Managed PoE switch is certainly applicable to construct any PoE network including VoIP and Wireless LAN. Under the trend of energy saving worldwide and contributing to the environmental protection on the Earth, the Managed PoE switch can effectively control the power supply besides its capability of giving high watts power. The "**PoE schedule**" function helps you to enable or disable PoE power feeding for each PoE port during specified time intervals and it is a powerful function to help SMB or Enterprise saving power and money.


PoE Schedule
08:00~17:00
ON
6 Watts
ON
6 Watts
ON
12 Watts
ON
12 Watts
Total Consumption of 36 watts/hr
17:00~08:00
OFF
6 Watts
OFF
6 Watts
OFF
12 Watts
ON
12 Watts
Save 24 watts/hr during off-business hours
* Total Saved = 10800watts/month

Scheduled Power Recycling

The Managed PoE switch allows each of the connected PoE IP cameras to reboot at a specified time each week. Therefore, it will reduce the chance of IP camera crash resulting from buffer overflow.


IP Camera
AP Router
IP Phone
S M T W T F S
PoE lighting
Door Phone
Automatically Reboot

The screen in Figure 4-15-6 appears.

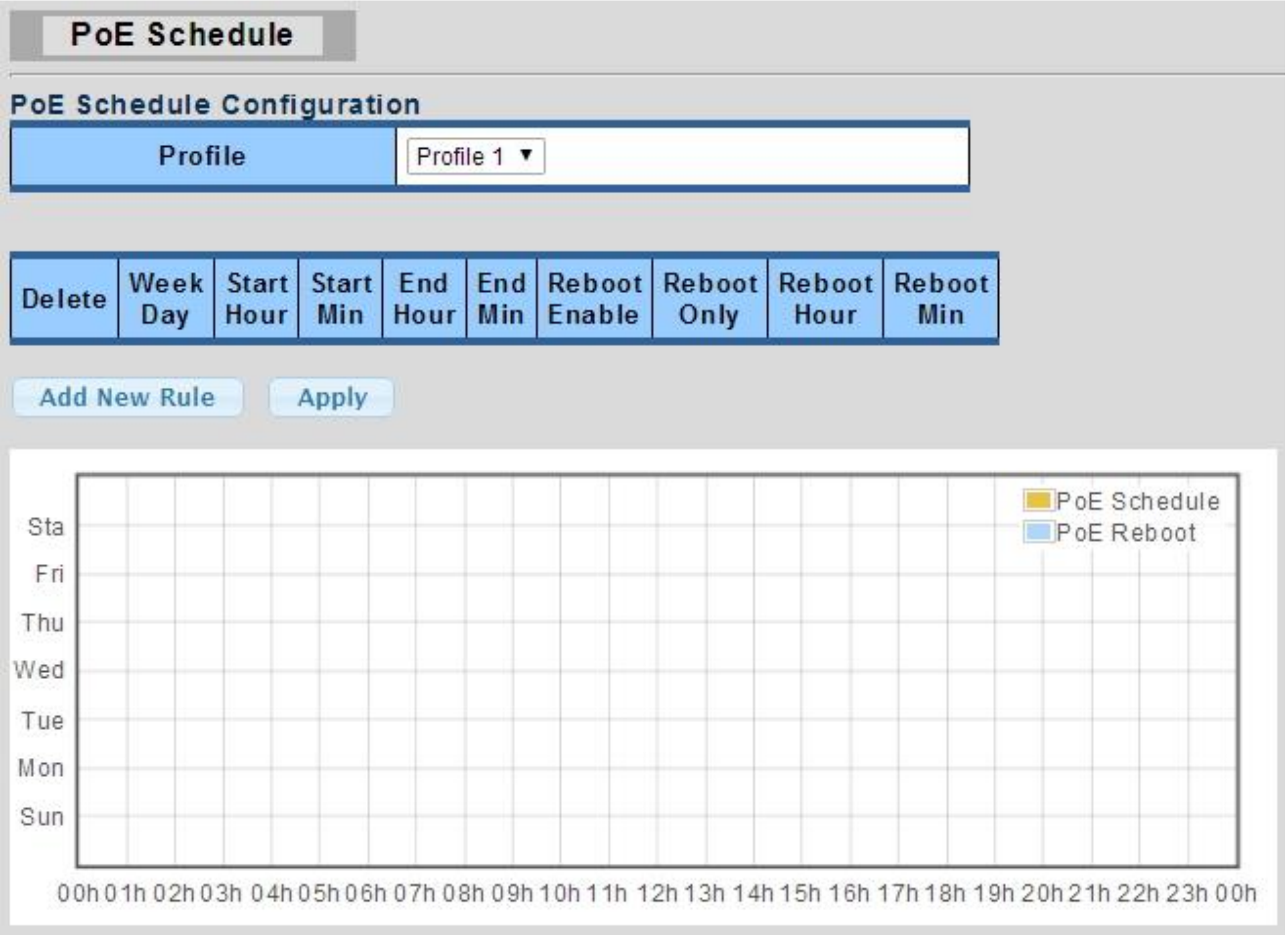

PoE Schedule
PoE Schedule Configuration
Profile
Profile 1
Delete
Week Day
Start Hour
Start Min
End Hour
End Min
Reboot Enable
Reboot Only
Reboot Hour
Reboot Min
Add New Rule
Apply
PoE Schedule
PoE Reboot
Sta
Fri
Thu
Wed
Tue
Mon
Sun
00h 01h 02h 03h 04h 05h 06h 07h 08h 09h 10h 11h 12h 13h 14h 15h 16h 17h 18h 19h 20h 21h 22h 23h 00h

Figure 4-15-6 PoE Schedule Screenshot

Please press **Add New Rule** button to start setting PoE Schedule function. You have to set PoE schedule to profile and then go back to PoE Port Configuration, and select "**Schedule**" mode from per port "**PoE Mode**" option to enable you to indicate which schedule profile could be applied to the PoE port.

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Profile**	Set the schedule profile mode. Possible profiles are: **Profile1** **Profile2** **Profile3** **Profile4**
• **Week Day**	Allows user to set week day for defining PoE function by enabling it on the day.
• **Start Hour**	Allows user to set what hour PoE function does by enabling it.
• **Start Min**	Allows user to set what minute PoE function does by enabling it.
• **End Hour**	Allows user to set what hour PoE function does by disabling it.
• **End Min**	Allows user to set what minute PoE function does by disabling it.
• **Reboot Enable**	Allows user to enable or disable the whole PoE port reboot by PoE reboot schedule. Please note that if you want PoE schedule and PoE reboot schedule to work at the same time, please use this function, and don't use **Reboot Only** function. This function offers administrator to reboot PoE device at an indicated time if administrator has this kind of requirement.
• **Reboot Only**	Allows user to reboot PoE function by PoE reboot schedule. Please note that if administrator enables this function, PoE schedule will not set time to profile. This function is just for PoE port to reset at an indicated time.
• **Reboot Hour**	Allows user to set what hour PoE reboots. This function is only for PoE reboot schedule.
• **Reboot Min**	Allows user to set what minute PoE reboots. This function is only for PoE reboot schedule.

Buttons

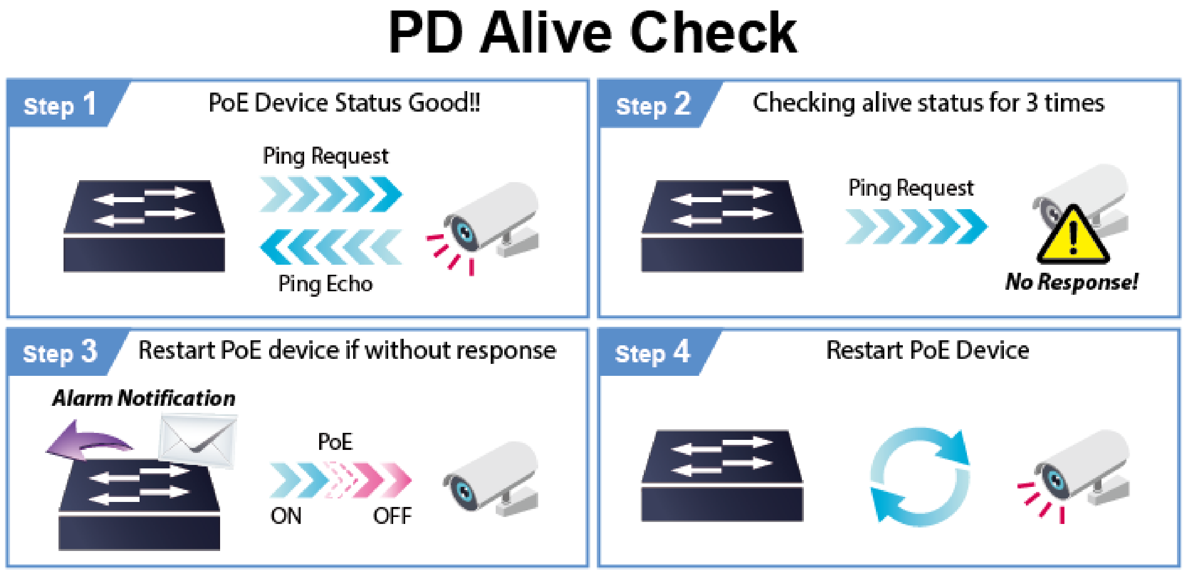
Add New Rule : Click to add new rule.

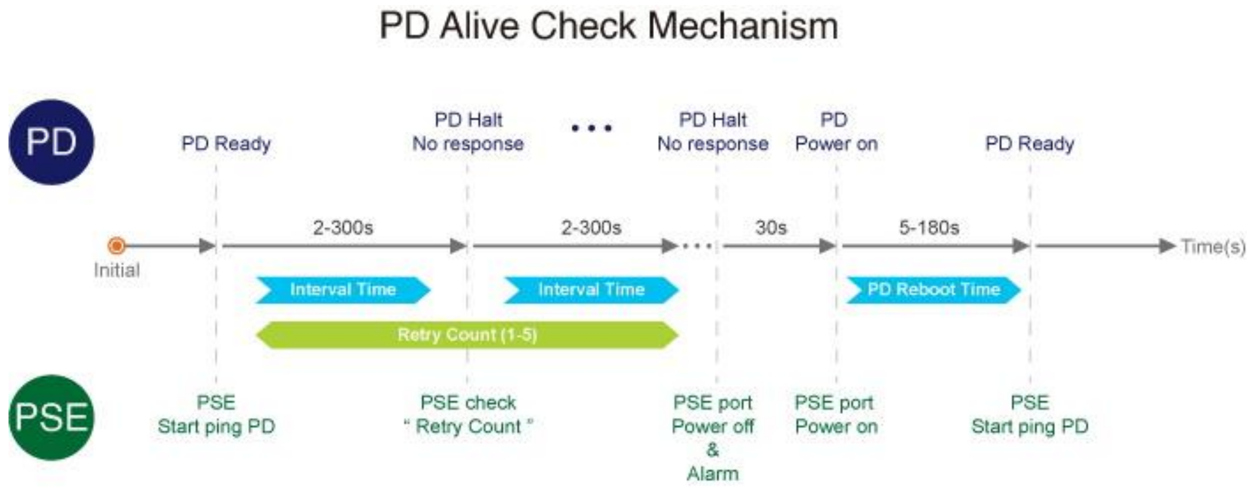
Apply : Click to apply changes

Delete : Check to delete the entry.

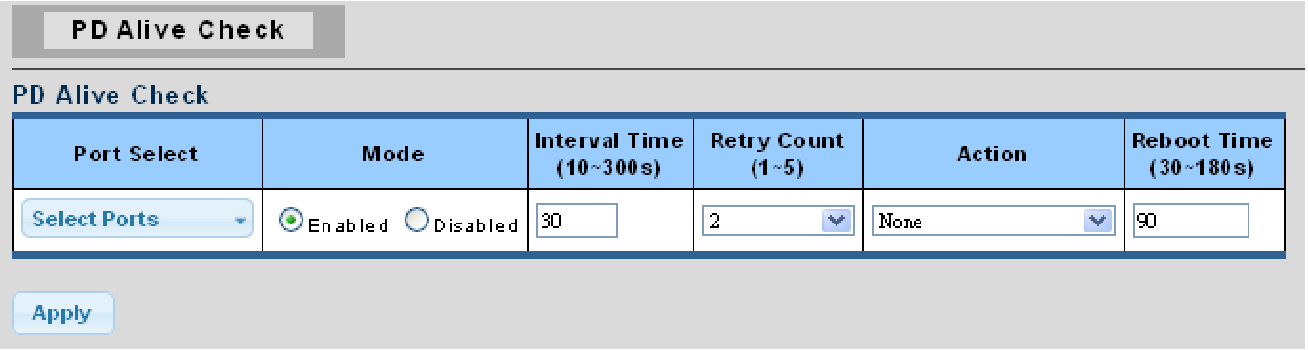
4.15.6 PD Alive Check

The WGS PoE Managed Switch Series can be configured to monitor connected PD's status in real-time via ping action. Once the PD stops working and without response, the PoE Switch is going to restart PoE port power, and bring the PD back to work. It will greatly enhance the reliability and reduces administrator management burden.


PD Alive Check
Step 1
PoE Device Status Good!!
Ping Request
Ping Echo
Step 2
Checking alive status for 3 times
Ping Request
No Response!
Step 3
Restart PoE device if without response
Alarm Notification
PoE
ON
OFF
Step 4
Restart PoE Device


PD Alive Check Mechanism
PD
PD Ready
PD Halt
No response
• • •
PD Halt
No response
PD
Power on
PD Ready
2-300s
2-300s
30s
5-180s
Time(s)
Initial
Interval Time
Interval Time
PD Reboot Time
Retry Count (1-5)
PSE
PSE
Start ping PD
PSE check
" Retry Count "
PSE port
Power off
&
Alarm
PSE port
Power on
PSE
Start ping PD

This page provides you with how to configure PD Alive Check. The screen in Figure 4-15-7 appears.


PD Alive Check

PD Alive Check

Port Select	Mode	Interval Time (10~300s)	Retry Count (1~5)	Action	Reboot Time (30~180s)
Select Ports	● Enabled ○ Disabled	30	2	None	90

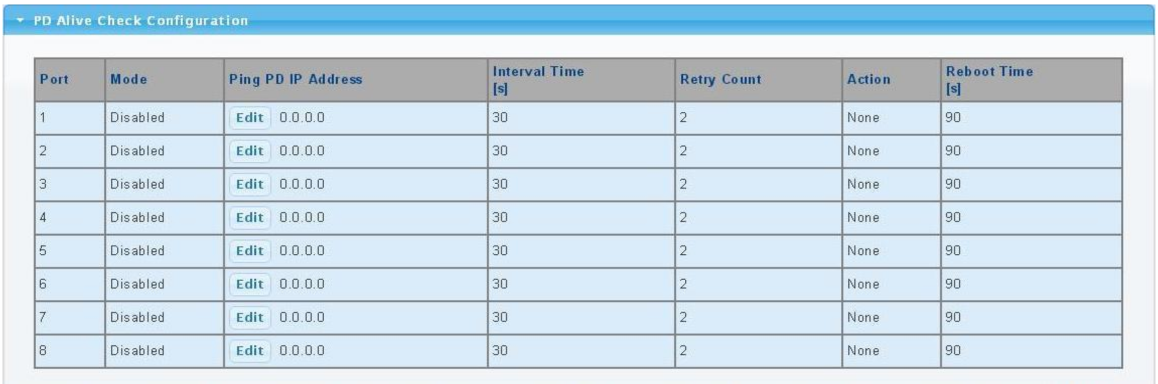
Figure 4-15-7 PD Alive Check Configuration Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Mode**	Allows user to enable or disable per port PD Alive Check function. By default, all ports are disabled.
• **Ping PD IP Address**	This column allows user to set PoE device IP address for system making ping to the PoE device. Please note that the PD's IP address must be set to the same network segment with the PoE Switch.
• **Interval Time (10~300s)**	This column allows user to set how long system should issue a ping request to PD for detecting whether PD is alive or dead. Interval time range is from 10 seconds to 300 seconds.
• **Retry Count (1~5)**	This column allows user to set the number of times system retries ping to PD. For example, if we set count 2, it means that if system retries ping to the PD and the PD doesn't response continuously, the PoE port will be reset.
• **Action**	Allows user to set which action will be applied if the PD is without any response. The PoE Switch Series offers the following 3 actions: ■ **PD Reboot:** It means system will reset the PoE port that is connected to the PD. ■ **PD Reboot & Alarm:** It means system will reset the PoE port and issue an alarm message via Syslog. ■ **Alarm:** It means system will issue an alarm message via Syslog.
• **Reboot Time (30~180s)**	This column allows user to set the PoE device rebooting time as there are so many kinds of PoE devices on the market and they have a different rebooting time. The PD Alive-check is not a defining standard, so the PoE device on the market doesn't report reboot done information to the PoE Switch. Thus, user has to make sure how long the PD will take to finish booting, and then set the time value to this column. System is going to check the PD again according to the reboot time. If you are not sure of the precise booting time, we suggest you set it longer.

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply changes.



PD Alive Check Configuration

Port	Mode	Ping PD IP Address	Interval Time [s]	Retry Count	Action	Reboot Time [s]
1	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90
2	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90
3	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90
4	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90
5	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90
6	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90
7	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90
8	Disabled	Edit 0.0.0.0	30	2	None	90

Figure 4-15-8 PD Alive Check Configuration Screenshot

4.16 Maintenance

Use the Maintenance menu items to display and configure basic configurations of the Managed Switch. Under maintenance, the following topics are provided to back up, upgrade, save and restore the configuration. This section has the following items:

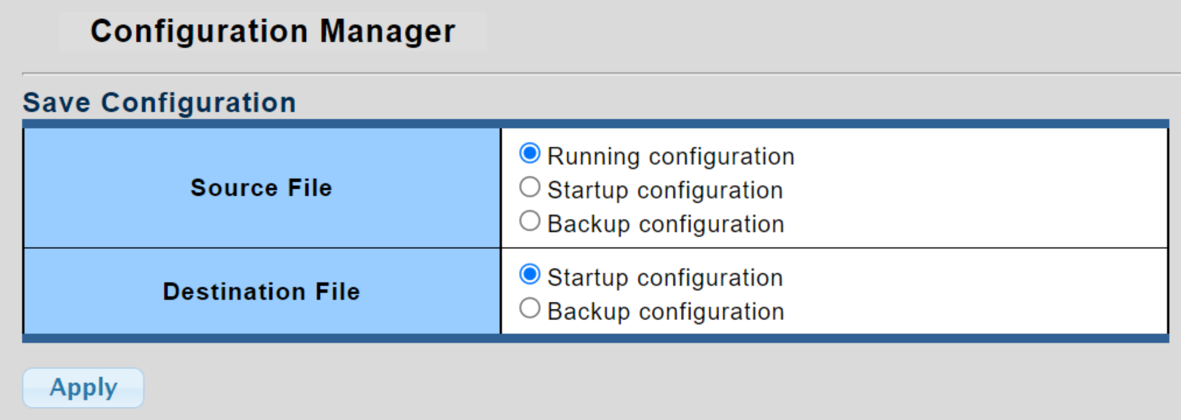
■ **Save Configuration**	Save Running-config from the RAM to FLASH
■ **Factory Default**	You can reset the configuration of the switch on this page.
■ **Reboot Switch**	You can restart the switch on this page. After restart, the switch will boot normally.
■ **Backup Manager**	You can back up the switch configuration.
■ **Upgrade Manager**	You can upgrade the switch configuration.
■ **Dual Image**	Select active or backup image on this Page.

4.16.1 Save Configuration

In the Managed Switch, the running configuration file stores in the RAM. In the current version, the running configuration sequence of running-config can be saved from the RAM to FLASH by "**Save Configurations to FLASH**" function, so that the running configuration sequence becomes the startup configuration file, which is called configuration save.

To save all applied changes and set the current configuration as a startup configuration. The startup-configuration file will be loaded automatically across a system reboot.

1. Click "**Save"** and enter "**Configuration Manager**" page.

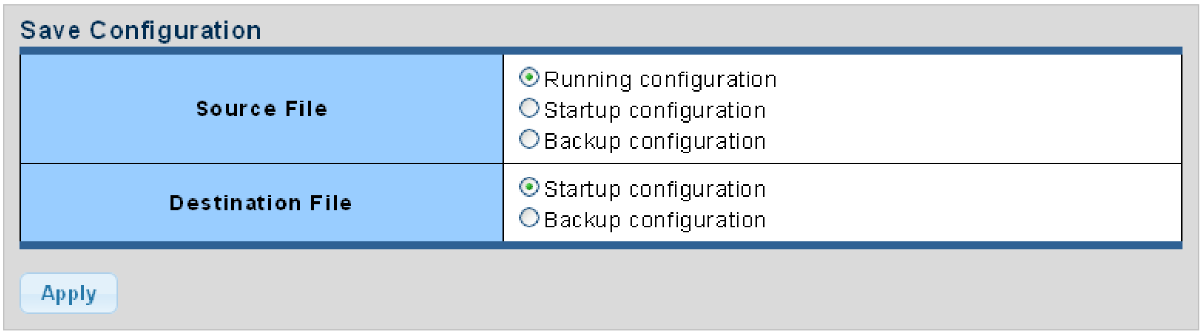


Configuration Manager

Save Configuration

Source File	● Running configuration ○ Startup configuration ○ Backup configuration
Destination File	● Startup configuration ○ Backup configuration

2. Select "Source File = Running Configuration" and "Destination File = Startup Configuration".



Save Configuration

Source File	● Running configuration ○ Startup configuration ○ Backup configuration
Destination File	● Startup configuration ○ Backup configuration

3. Press the "**Apply**" button to save running configuration to startup configuration.

4.16.2 Factory Default

You can reset the configuration of the switch on this page. Only the IP configuration is retained. The new configuration is available immediately, which means that no restart is necessary. The Factory Default screen in Figure 4-16-1 appears and clicks to reset the configuration to Factory Defaults.

Figure 4-16-1 Factory Default Page Screenshot

After the "**Factory**" button is pressed and rebooted, the system will load the default IP settings as follows:

- Default IP address: **192.168.0.100**
- Subnet mask: **255.255.255.0**
- Default Gateway: **192.168.0.254**
- The other setting value is back to disable or none.

Note

To reset the Managed Switch to the Factory default setting, you can also press the hardware reset button at the front panel about 10 seconds. After the device be rebooted. You can login the management WEB interface within the same subnet of 192.168.0.xx.

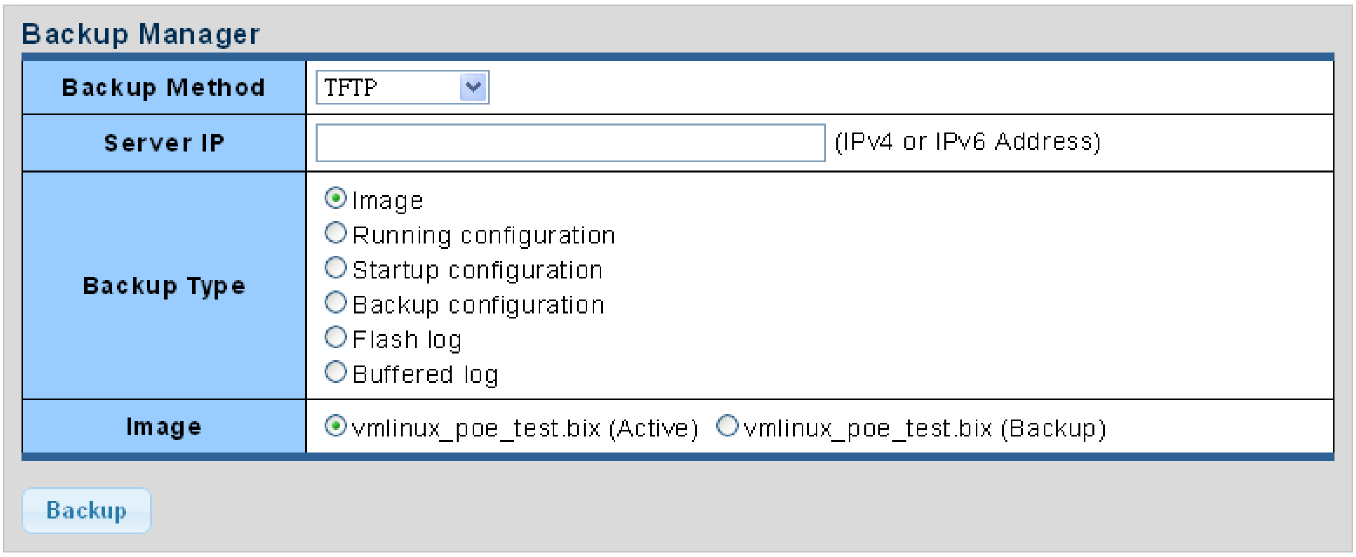
4.16.3 Reboot Switch

The **Reboot** page enables the device to be rebooted from a remote location. Once the Reboot button is pressed, user has to re-login the Web interface for about 60 seconds. The Reboot Switch screen in Figure 4-16-2 appears and clicks to reboot the system.

Figure 4-16-2 Reboot Switch Page Screenshot

4.16.4 Backup Manager

This function allows backup of the current image or configuration of the Managed Switch to the local management station. The Backup Manager screen in Figure 4-16-3 appears.



Backup Manager

Backup Method	TFTP
Server IP	(IPv4 or IPv6 Address)
Backup Type	● Image ○ Running configuration ○ Startup configuration ○ Backup configuration ○ Flash log ○ Buffered log
Image	● vmlinux_poe_test.bix (Active) ○ vmlinux_poe_test.bix (Backup)

Figure 4-16-3 Backup Manager Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

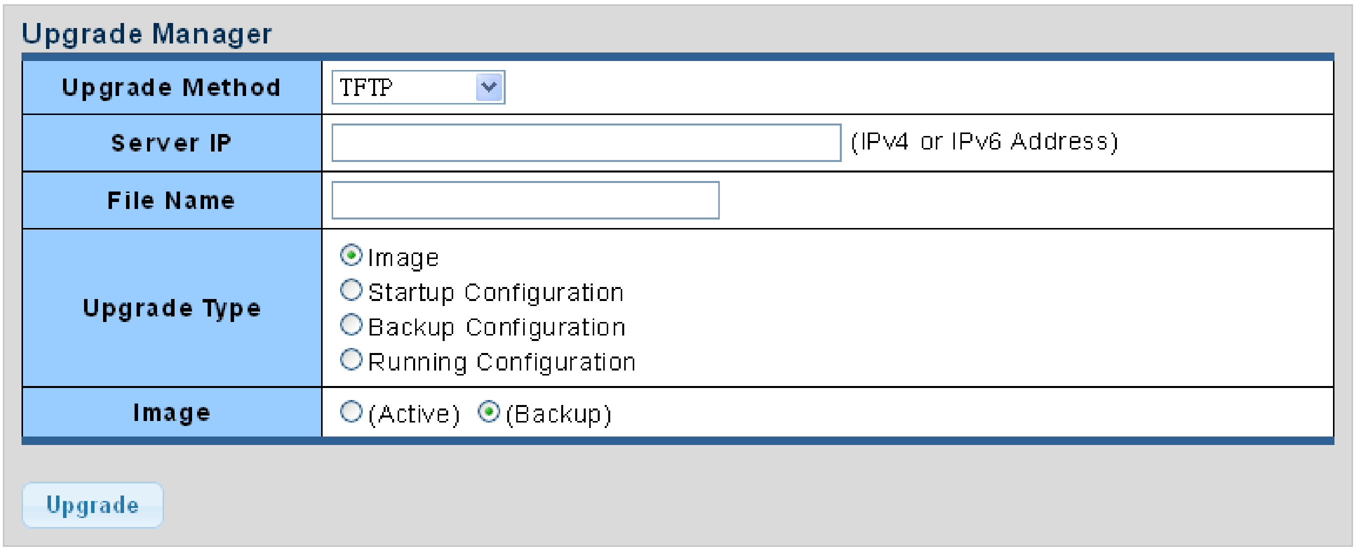
Object	Description
• **Backup Method**	Select backup method from this drop-down list.
• **Server IP**	Fill in your TFTP server IP address.
• **Backup Type**	Select backup type.
• **Image**	Select active or backup image.

Buttons

Backup: Click to back up image, configuration or log.

4.16.5 Upgrade Manager

This function allows reloading of the current image or configuration of the Managed Switch to the local management station. The Upgrade Manager screen in Figure 4-16-4 appears.



Upgrade Manager

Upgrade Method	TFTP
Server IP	(IPv4 or IPv6 Address)
File Name	
Upgrade Type	● Image ○ Startup Configuration ○ Backup Configuration ○ Running Configuration
Image	○ (Active) ● (Backup)

Figure 4-16-4 Upgrade Manager Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

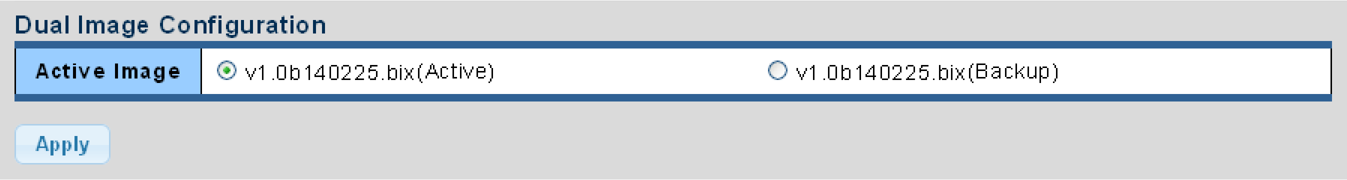
Object	Description
- **Upgrade Method**	Select upgrade method from this drop-down list.
- **Server IP**	Fill in your TFTP server IP address.
- **File Name**	The name of firmware image or configuration.
- **Upgrade Type**	Select upgrade type.
- **Image**	Select active or backup image.

Buttons

Upgrade: Click to upgrade image or configuration.

4.16.6 Dual Image

This page provides information about the active and backup firmware images in the device, and allows you to revert to the backup image. The web page displays two tables with information about the active and backup firmware images. The Dual Image Configuration and Information screens in Figure 4-16-5 & Figure 4-16-6 appear.



Dual Image Configuration

Active Image	● v1.0b140225.bix(Active)	○ v1.0b140225.bix(Backup)

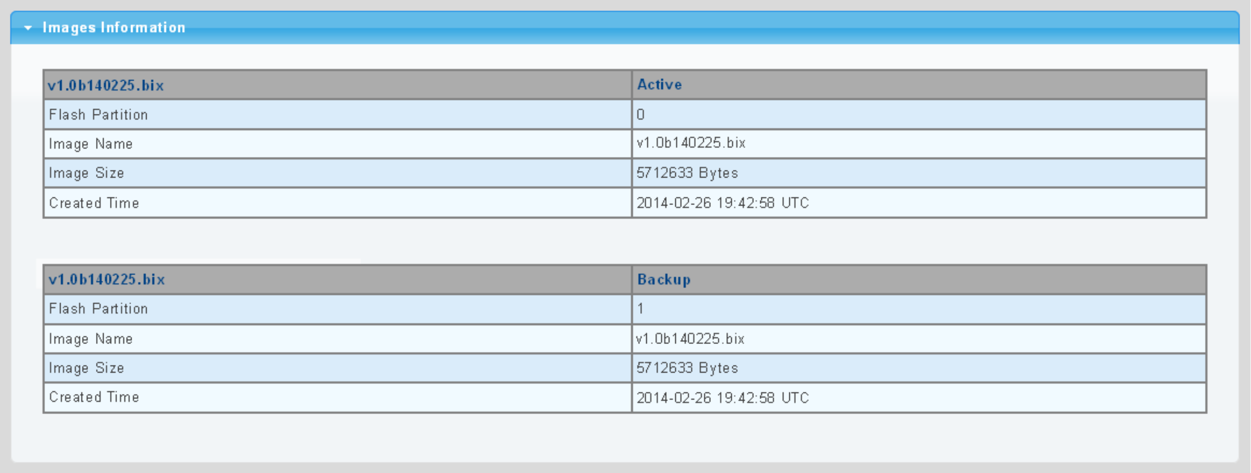
Figure 4-15-5: Dual Image Configuration Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Active Image**	Select the active or backup image

Buttons

Apply: Click to apply active image.



v1.0b140225.bix	Active
Flash Partition	0
Image Name	v1.0b140225.bix
Image Size	5712633 Bytes
Created Time	2014-02-26 19:42:58 UTC

v1.0b140225.bix	Backup
Flash Partition	1
Image Name	v1.0b140225.bix
Image Size	5712633 Bytes
Created Time	2014-02-26 19:42:58 UTC

Figure 4-16-6: Dual Image Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Flash Partition**	Display the current flash partition
• **Image Name**	Display the current image name
• **Image Size**	Display the current image size
• **Created Time**	Display the created time

4.17 Diagnostics

This section provide the Physical layer and IP layer network diagnostics tools for troubleshoot. The diagnostic tools are designed for network manager to help them quickly diagnose problems between point to point and better service customers.

Use the Diagnostics menu items to display and configure basic administrative details of the Managed Switch. Under System the following topics are provided to configure and view the system information:
This section has the following items:

- **Cable Diagnostics**
- **Ping Test**
- **IPv6 Ping Test**
- **Trace Route**

4.17.1 Cable Diagnostics

The Cable Diagnostics performs tests on copper cables. These functions have the ability to identify the cable length and operating conditions, and to isolate a variety of common faults that can occur on the Cat5 twisted-pair cabling. There might be two statuses as follow:

- If the link is established on the twisted-pair interface in 1000Base-T mode, the Cable Diagnostics can run without disruption of the link or of any data transfer.
- If the link is established in 100Base-TX or 10Base-T, the Cable Diagnostics cause the link to drop while the diagnostics are running.

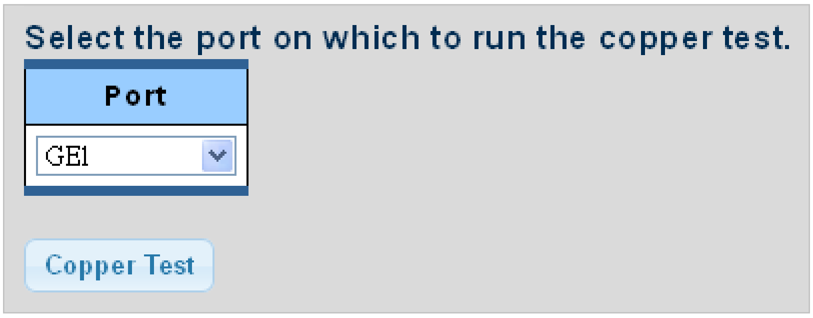
After the diagnostics are finished, the link is reestablished. And the following functions are available.

- Coupling between cable pairs.
- Cable pair termination
- Cable Length

Note

Cable Diagnostics is only accurate for cables of length from 15 to 100 meters.

The Copper test and test result screens in Figure 4-17-1 & Figure 4-17-2 appear.


Select the port on which to run the copper test.

Port: GE1

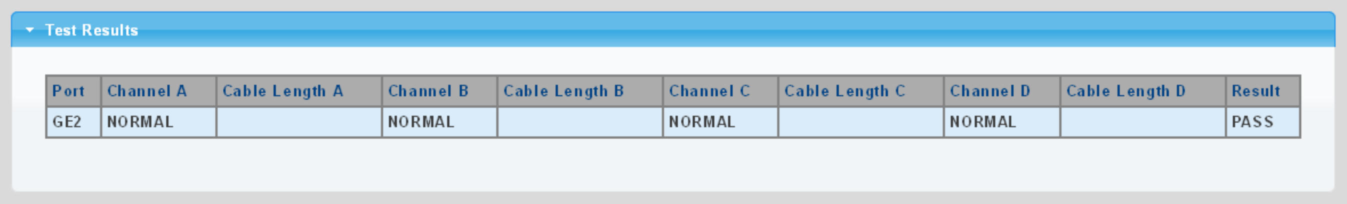
Figure 4-17-1 Copper Test Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **Port**	Select port from this drop-down list

Buttons

Copper Test: Click to run the diagnostics



Port	Channel A	Cable Length A	Channel B	Cable Length B	Channel C	Cable Length C	Channel D	Cable Length D	Result
GE2	NORMAL		NORMAL		NORMAL		NORMAL		PASS

Figure 4-17-2 Test Results Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

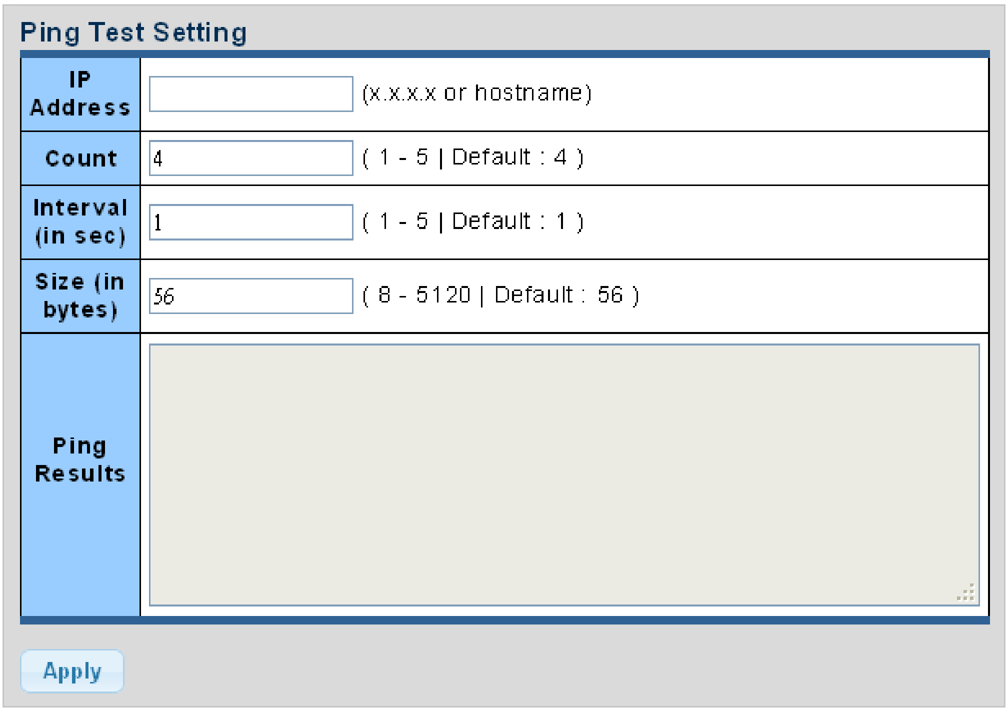
Object	Description
• **Port**	The port where you are requesting Cable Diagnostics
• **Channel A~D**	Display the current channel status
• **Cable Length A~D**	Display the current cable length
• **Result**	Display the test result

4.17.2 Ping Test

The ping and IPv6 ping allow you to issue ICMP PING packets to troubleshoot IP connectivity issues. The Managed Switch transmits ICMP packets, and the sequence number and roundtrip time are displayed upon reception of a reply.

This page allows you to issue ICMP PING packets to troubleshoot IP connectivity issues.

After you press "**Apply**", ICMP packets are transmitted, and the sequence number and roundtrip time are displayed upon reception of a reply. The page refreshes automatically until responses to all packets are received, or until a timeout occurs. The ICMP Ping screen in Figure 4-17-3 appears.



Ping Test Setting

IP Address	(x.x.x.x or hostname)
Count	4 (1 - 5 | Default : 4)
Interval (in sec)	1 (1 - 5 | Default : 1)
Size (in bytes)	56 (8 - 5120 | Default : 56)
Ping Results	

Figure 4-17-3 ICMP Ping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
• **IP Address**	The destination IP Address
• **Count**	Number of echo requests to send
• **Interval (in sec)**	Send interval for each ICMP packet
• **Size (in bytes)**	The payload size of the ICMP packet. Values range from 8bytes to 5120bytes.
• **Ping Results**	Display the current ping result.

Buttons

Apply: Click to transmit ICMP packets.

Note: Be sure the target IP Address is within the same network subnet of the switch, or you have to set up the correct gateway IP address.

4.17.3 IPv6 Ping Test

This page allows you to issue ICMPv6 PING packets to troubleshoot IPv6 connectivity issues.

After you press "**Apply**", 5 ICMPv6 packets are transmitted, and the sequence number and roundtrip time are displayed upon reception of a reply. The page refreshes automatically until responses to all packets are received, or until a timeout occurs. The ICMPv6 Ping screen in Figure 4-17-4 appears.

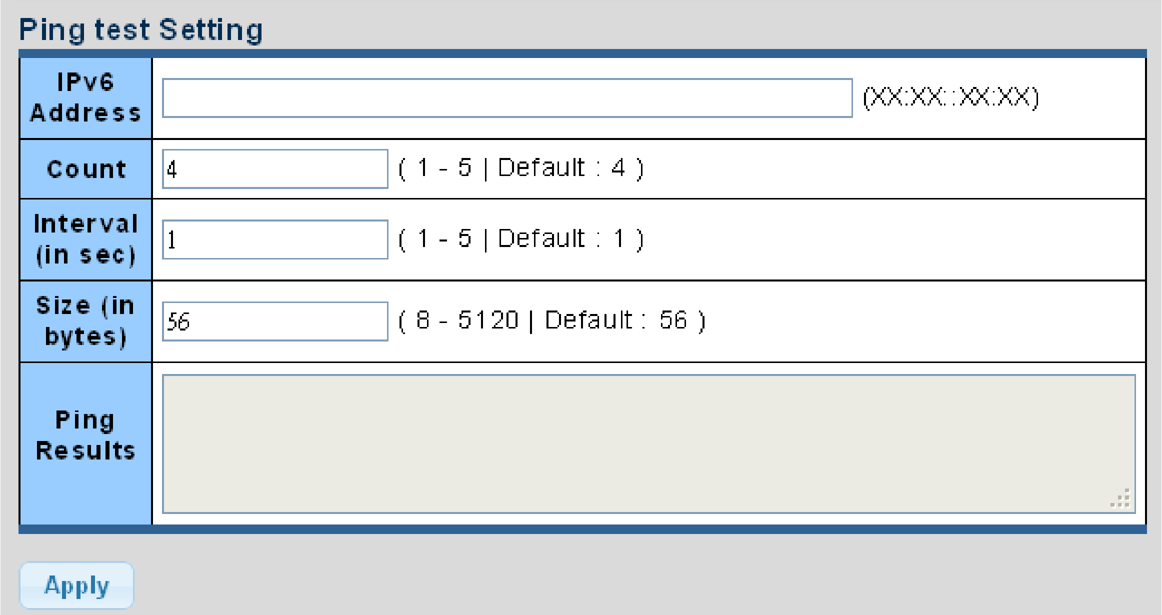

Ping test Setting
IPv6 Address
(XX:XX::XX:XX)
Count
4
(1 - 5 | Default : 4)
Interval (in sec)
1
(1 - 5 | Default : 1)
Size (in bytes)
56
(8 - 5120 | Default : 56)
Ping Results
Apply

Figure 4-17-4 ICMPv6 Ping Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
- **IP Address**	The destination IPv6 Address
- **Count**	Number of echo requests to send
- **Interval (in sec)**	Send interval for each ICMP packet
- **Size (in bytes)**	The payload size of the ICMP packet. Values range from 8bytes to 5120bytes
- **Ping Results**	Display the current ping result

Buttons

Apply: Click to transmit ICMPv6 packets

5. SWITCH OPERATION

5.1 Address Table

The Switch is implemented with an address table. This address table is composed of many entries. Each entry is used to store the address information of some nodes on the network, including MAC address, port no, etc. This information comes from the learning process of Ethernet Switch.

5.2 Learning

When one packet comes in from any port, the Switch will record the source address, port number and the other related information in the address table. This information will be used to decide either forwarding or filtering for future packets.

5.3 Forwarding & Filtering

When one packet comes from some port of the Ethernet Switching, it will also check the destination address besides the source address learning. The Ethernet Switching will look up the address table for the destination address. If not found, this packet will be forwarded to all the other ports except the port, which this packet comes in. And these ports will transmit this packet to the network it connected. If found, and the destination address is located at a different port from this packet comes in, the Ethernet Switching will forward this packet to the port where this destination address is located according to the information from the address table. But, if the destination address is located at the same port with this packet, then this packet will be filtered, thereby increasing the network throughput and availability

5.4 Store-and-Forward

Store-and-Forward is one type of packet-forwarding techniques. A Store-and-Forward Ethernet Switching stores the incoming frame in an internal buffer and does the complete error checking before transmission. Therefore, no error packets occur. It is the best choice when a network needs efficiency and stability.

The Ethernet Switch scans the destination address from the packet-header, searches the routing table provided for the incoming port and forwards the packet, only if required. The fast forwarding makes the switch attractive for connecting servers directly to the network, thereby increasing throughput and availability. However, the switch is most commonly used to segment existence hubs, which nearly always improves the overall performance. An Ethernet Switching can be easily configured in any Ethernet network environment to significantly boost bandwidth using the conventional cabling and adapters.

Due to the learning function of the Ethernet switching, the source address and corresponding port number of each incoming and outgoing packet is stored in a routing table. This information is subsequently used to filter packets whose destination address is on the same segment as the source address. This confines network traffic to its respective domain and reduces the overall load on the network.

The Switch performs "Store and forward"; therefore, no error packets occur. More reliably, it reduces the re-transmission rate. No packet loss will occur.

5.5 Auto-Negotiation

The STP ports on the Switch have a built-in "Auto-negotiation". This technology automatically sets the best possible bandwidth when a connection is established with another network device (usually at Power On or Reset). This is done by detecting the modes and speeds when both devices are connected. Both 10BASE-T and 100BASE-TX devices can connect with the port in either half- or full-duplex mode.

If attached device is:	100BASE-TX port will set to:
10Mbps, without auto-negotiation	**10Mbps.**
10Mbps, with auto-negotiation	**10/20Mbps (10BASE-T/full-duplex)**
100Mbps, without auto-negotiation	**100Mbps**
100Mbps, with auto-negotiation	**100/200Mbps (100BASE-TX/full-duplex)**

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

This chapter contains information to help you solve your issue. If the Managed Switch is not functioning properly, make sure the Managed Switch is set up according to instructions in this manual.

- **The Link LED is not lit**

Solution:

Check the cable connection and remove duplex mode of the Managed Switch

- **Some stations cannot talk to other stations located on the other port**

Solution:

Please check the VLAN settings, trunk settings, or port enabled/disabled status.

- **Performance is bad**

Solution:

Check the full duplex status of the Managed Switch. If the Managed Switch is set to full duplex and the partner is set to half duplex, then the performance will be poor. Please also check the in/out rate of the port.

- **Why the Switch doesn't connect to the network**

Solution:

1. Check the LNK/ACT LED on the Managed Switch
2. Try another port on the Managed Switch
3. Make sure the cable is installed properly
4. Make sure the cable is the right type
5. Turn off the power. After a while, turn on power again

- **100BASE-TX port link LED is lit, but the traffic is irregular**

Solution:

Check that the attached device is not set to full duplex. Some devices use a physical or software switch to change duplex modes. Auto-negotiation may not recognize this type of full-duplex setting.

- **Switch does not power up**

Solution:

1. AC power cord is not inserted or faulty
2. Check whether the AC power cord is inserted correctly
3. Replace the power cord if the cord is inserted correctly. Check whether the AC power source is working by connecting a different device in place of the switch.
4. If that device works, refer to the next step.
5. If that device does not work, check the AC power

- **Why the PoE Ethernet Switch doesn't connect to the network**

Solution:

Check the LNK/ACT LED on the PoE Ethernet Switch. Try another port on the PoE Ethernet Switch. Make sure the cable is installed properly and make sure the cable is the right type. Turn off the power. After a while, turn on power again.

- **When I connect my PoE device to PoE Ethernet Switch, it cannot be powered on**

Solution:

1. Please check the cable type of the connection from the PoE Ethernet Switch (port 1 to port 8) to the other end. The cable should be an 8-wire UTP, Category 5 or above, EIA568 cable within 100 meters. A cable with only 4-wire, short loop or over 100 meters will affect the power supply.
2. Please check and assure the device is fully complied with IEEE 802.3af/802.3at standard.

APPENDIX A Switch's RJ45 Pin Assignments

A.1 1000Mbps, 1000BASE-T

Contact	MDI	MDI-X
1	**BI_DA+**	**BI_DB+**
2	**BI_DA-**	**BI_DB-**
3	**BI_DB+**	**BI_DA+**
4	**BI_DC+**	**BI_DD+**
5	**BI_DC-**	**BI_DD-**
6	**BI_DB-**	**BI_DA-**
7	**BI_DD+**	**BI_DC+**
8	**BI_DD-**	**BI_DC-**

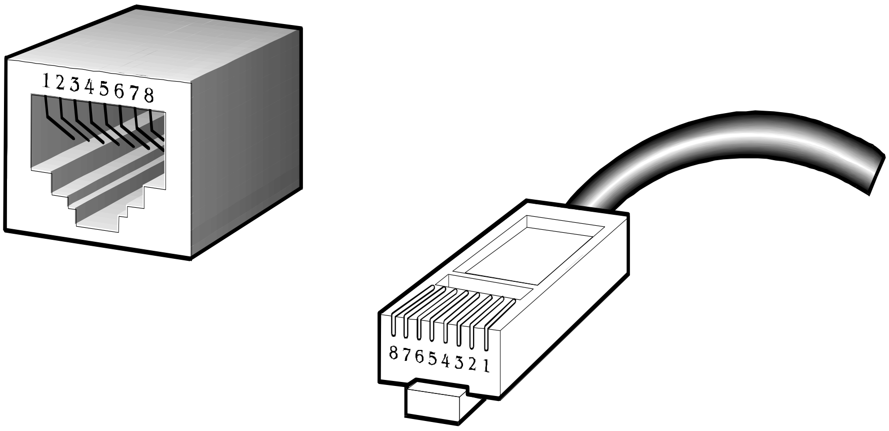
Implicit implementation of the crossover function within a twisted-pair cable, or at a wiring panel, while not expressly forbidden, is beyond the scope of this standard.

A.2 10/100Mbps, 10/100BASE-TX

When connecting your 10/100Mbps Ethernet Switch to another switch, a bridge or a hub, a straight or crossover cable is necessary. Each port of the Switch supports auto-MDI/MDI-X detection. That means you can directly connect the Switch to any Ethernet devices without making a crossover cable. The following table and diagram show the standard RJ45 receptacle/ connector and their pin assignments:

RJ45 Connector pin assignment		
Contact	**MDI** **Media Dependent Interface**	**MDI-X** **Media Dependent Interface-Cross**
1	**Tx + (transmit)**	**Rx + (receive)**
2	**Tx - (transmit)**	**Rx - (receive)**
3	**Rx + (receive)**	**Tx + (transmit)**
4, 5	**Not used**	
6	**Rx - (receive)**	**Tx - (transmit)**
7, 8	**Not used**	

The standard cable, RJ45 pin assignment



The standard RJ45 receptacle/connector

There are 8 wires on a standard UTP/STP cable and each wire is color-coded. The following shows the pin allocation and color of straight cable and crossover cable connection:

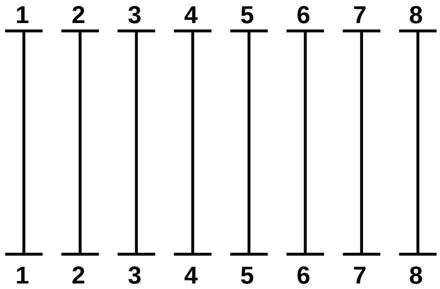
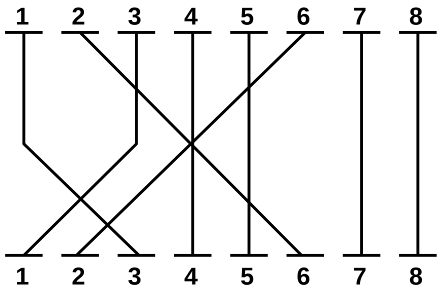
Straight-through Cable		**SIDE 1**	**SIDE 2**
	**SIDE 1**	**1 = White / Amber**	**1 = White / Amber**
		2 = Amber	**2 = Amber**
		3 = White / Green	**3 = White / Green**
		4 = Blue	**4 = Blue**
		5 = White / Blue	**5 = White / Blue**
		6 = Green	**6 = Green**
		7 = White / Brown	**7 = White / Brown**
	SIDE 2	**8 = Brown**	**8 = Brown**
Crossover Cable		**SIDE 1**	**SIDE 2**
	**SIDE 1**	**1 = White / Amber**	**1 = White / Green**
		2 = Amber	**2 = Green**
		3 = White / Green	**3 = White / Amber**
		4 = Blue	**4 = Blue**
		5 = White / Blue	**5 = White / Blue**
		6 = Green	**6 = Amber**
		7 = White / Brown	**7 = White / Brown**
	SIDE 2	**8 = Brown**	**8 = Brown**

Figure A-1: Straight-through and Crossover Cable

Please make sure your connected cables are with the same pin assignment and color as the above table before deploying the cables into your network.